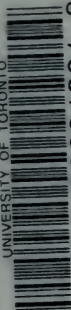


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 00361291 8

UNIV. OF
TORONTO
LIBRARY



461

I

13 - 100) 1000

II - IV

1 - 360

71 9

Lanfrank's "Science of Chirurgie."

Ed. by Robert v. Fleischhacker.

Early English Text Society.

"

Original Series, 102.

1894.

131838
91314

PR

1119

A2

no. 102

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.

NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.

PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

111

CORRECTIONS.

Page 18, line 17, *for vndir oon of þese iij entenciouns read vndir þese iij entenciouns* (note : both MSS. insert *oon of*)

„ 19, „ 18, *for vp on read vpon*

„ 25, „ 1, *for white oute read white* (note : MS. inserts *oute*)

„ 25, „ 12, put a semicolon after *lungis*

„ 27, „ 13, cancel *to þe maris*

„ 29, „ 7, cancel the comma between *brayn* and *& þe nucha*, and put a comma after *þe nucha* and after *þe lymes*

„ 30, note 3, *for fila read villi*

„ 31, line 7, *for vunnus read vulnus*

„ 34, „ 8, put a full stop after *seneve*, and transfer note 2 to the preceding *þat*

„ 38, „ 10, *for humourer read humoures*

„ 39, „ 14 and 33, cancel the semicolon after *lyme*

„ 43, „ 10, put a comma after *drie*

„ 46, „ 17, cancel the inverted commas

„ 49, „ 6, put a comma after *myzt*

„ 52, „ 16, *for eills read ellis*

„ 55, „ 18, cancel the inverted commas

„ 77, „ 1, put an asterisk and ellipsis after *condicioun*

„ 77, „ 19, put an asterisk after *askyth*

„ 83, „ 1, cancel note 1

„ 89, „ 6, p. 90, l. 16, p. 99, l. 6, *for compounned read compounned*

„ 108, „ 19, cancel the comma after *clepid*

„ 110, sidenote line 1, *for Tassillus read Passillus*

CONTENTS.

Ashmole MS. 1396.

¹The firste tretis of^t surgerie halt^t wipinne him general ruelis & [¹ leaf 1]
 4 canones, & hap .iij. techingis / þe firste techinge of^t þe firste tretis,
 hap þre chapitlis. ¶ Cap. j. of^t þe first tretis of^t þe firste techynge page 7
 is of definicionis & of parties þat ben sugettis to surgerie / Cap. ij. page 8
 is of þe qualite, foorme & maners of a surgien / ¶ Cap. iij. is of page 18
 8 intencioun of a surgien / The secunde techynge of^t þe first tretis page 20
 is on summe & oon chapitle of anotomie, & þat is to seie: þe
 knouleche of^t þe foorme, & þe complexiouns, & þe helpingis of
 alle þe senews, veines, grustlis, brawnys, guttis, bladdre, lyuere,
 12 milte, & alle opere synguler lymes, & of þe engendringe of þe child
 in þe modir wombe / The first² techinge of þe first tretis hap page 31
 .xv. chapitlis /

¶ Cap. j. of^t þe þridde techinge of þe .j.³ tretis ⁴is of a comoun [⁴ leaf 1, bk.]
 16 word of woundis, & olde woundis / p. 31

² first, mistake for *þridde*, as below.

³ Chafed: not room for *first*.

Addit. MS. Brit. Mus. 12,056.

⁵Assit Principio Sancta Maria meo

[⁵ fol. 31 a]

þe ffirste tretys of surgerie halt with inne hym generall Rulys
 20 & Canons, & hath þre techynges. þe ffurste techynge of þe furste
 tretys hap þre Chapyttles. Cap. j. of þe furste techynge of the firste
 tretys of dyffinicionis & of parties þat beþ suggettys to surgerie.
 Cap. ij. is of qualite, fforme & Maners of a Surgien.

24 ¶ Cap. iij. ys of Intencioun of a Surgien. þe secunde techynge
 of þe ffurste tretys ys O summe & on Chapiteff of a notamye, þat is
 to sugge þe knowlechyng of þe forme, & þe complexion, & þe
 helpynges of alle þe synwes, veyne, grustlys, brawnys, guttys,
 28 bleddre, lyuere, Mylte, & alle opere senglere lymes, & of þe engend-
 ryng of þe child in þe modire wombe. The þridde techynge of þe
 firste tretys hath xv. Chapytells. Cap. j. on of þe þridde techynge,
 of þe þridde tretys, ys a comyn worde of woundes & olde woundes.

SURGERY.

B

Ashmole
1396.

¶ Cap. ij. of heelynge of a wounde I-maad in fleisch /	p. 33
¶ Cap. iij. of heelynge of a wounde maad in senewe /	p. 39
¶ Cap. iiij. of a wounde in þe boon /	p. 47
¶ Cap. v. of a wounde maad wiþ smytynge /	p. 50 4
¶ Cap. vj. of a wounde bollid and out of kynde, to hoot or to coold /	p. 54
¶ Cap. vij. of a wounde of a wode hound or of a uenymous beest /	p. 59 8
¶ Cap. viij. of a wounde þat is out of ioynthe and to-broken /	p. 62
¶ Cap. ix. of to miche flux of blood of a wounde /	p. 64
¶ Cap. x. of dietynge of men þat ben woundid /	p. 72
¶ Capitulum xi ^m of olde woundis /	p. 77 12
¶ Capitulum xij ^m of a festre ¹ /	p. 89
¶ Cap. xiiij. of a canker I-woundid /	p. 92
¶ Cap. xiiij. of causis þat letten helynge of woundis and of olde woundis /	p. 97 16
¶ Cap. xv. of crampe þat comeþ in a wounde /	p. 99

The secunde tretis is of particuler woundis of alle lymes of office
from þe heed to the foot, techinge þe anotomie of alle lymes
from þe heed to þe foot, þat happiþ to be woundid; & þou haddist 20
tofore þe anatomie² of veynes & senewis, & opere smale lymes.

[² leaf 2]

¹ After *festre* in a later hand is written *festula*.

Add. MS.
12,056.

¶ Cap. ij. off helynge of a wounde y-makyde in flesch.	
¶ Cap. iij. off helynge of a wonde y-makyde in þe synwe.	
¶ Cap. iiij. of a wounde in þe bon.	24
¶ Cap. v. of a wounde y-makyd with smytynge.	
¶ Cap. vj. of a wounde to bolled & out of kynde, to hote opere to colde	
¶ Cap. vij. of a wounde of a wod hound, opere a venymouse 28 beste.	
¶ Cap. viij. of a wounde þat is out of Ioynte & to-broken.	
¶ Cap. ix. of to myche fflux of blod of wounde.	
¶ Cap. x. of dyotyng of men þat beþ y-woundyde.	32
¶ Cap. xj. of olde woundes	
¶ Cap. xij. off a ffestre	
¶ Cap. xiiij. of a cancre y-woundyd	
¶ Cap. xiiij off causes þat lettyde helynge of woundes & olde 36 woundes	
¶ Cap. xv. of crampe þat comyth to wounde	

[³ fol. 31 v]

¶ **þe secunde tretis** is of particuler woundes of alle lymes of
office from þe hed to þe³ ffot, & techynge þe Anotamye of alle lymes 40
from þe hed to þe fote, þat happyde to be woundyde; & þou haddist

And so whanne þis tretis is ful eendid, þou hast anotamie of alle lymes of þi bodi, & þis tretis vndir oon summe conteyneþ x. chapitlis. Ashmole 1396.

- 4 ¶ Cap. j. of þe secunde tretis is of woundis of þe heed and is anotamie / p. 106
 ¶ Cap. ij. is of woundis of þe face, and of anotamie of þe same face / p. 141
 8 ¶ Cap. iij. is of anotamie of þe nekke, and of woundis of þe same / p. 145
 ¶ Cap. iiij. of woundis of schuldris, armes and hondis, & anotamie of þe same / p. 155
 12 ¶ Cap. v.¹ of woundis of þe brest, & lymes þat ben wiþinne þe brest, & anotamie of þe same. p. 161
 ¶ Cap. vj. of woundis of þe rigboon & of whirlebones of þe rigge, & of anotamie of þe same / p. 166
 16 ¶ Cap. vij. of woundis of þe wesounde þat goþ to þe stomak, & of þe stomak, and of þe guttis, and þe wombe anotamie / p. 167
 ¶ Cap. viij. of woundis of þe lyuere & splene. p. 171
 ¶ Cap. ix. of woundis of þe 3erde, þat is, in þi pintil, and
 20 anotamie / p. 173

¹ v. above line.

to forþ þe Anotamye of veynes & synwes, & opere smale lymes, & so whanne þis tretys is fully endyde þou hast anotamye of alle lymes of thy body. And þis tretys under summe conteynde x. Add. MS. 12,056.

24 Chapyttles.

- ¶ Cap. j. of þe secunde tretys is of woundys of þe hed, and hys Anotamye.
 ¶ Cap. ij. is of woundes of þe face, & anotamye of þe same
 28 vysage.
 ¶ Cap. iij. of Anotamie of þe nekke, and of þe woundes of þe same.
 ¶ Cap. iiij. of woundys of schuldre. Armys & hondys, &
 32 Anotamie of þe same.
 ¶ Cap. v. of woundes of þe brest, and lymes þat beth wiþ ynne the brest, & Anotamye of þe same.
 ¶ Cap. vj. of woundes of þe ruggebone & of whirele bonys of
 36 þe rugge, & Anotamye of þe same.
 ¶ Cap. vij. of woundes off the wesand þat goth to the stomak, & of þe stomak, & þe guttes, & þe wombe, & Anotamie of the same.
 40 ¶ Cap. viij. of woundes of þe lyffere & the splene.
 ¶ Cap. ix. of woundes of þe 3erde, þat ys thyn pyntel, & Anotamie.

Ashmole 1396.	¶ Cap. x. of woundis of þe haunche, pies & feet, and anotamie of þe same /	p. 176
sign. ij.	<i>The Ashmole MS. breaks off here.</i>	

Add. MS. 12,056.	¶. Cap. x. of woundes of the hanche, thyes, ffet, and Anotamye. 4
---------------------	---

	¶ þe þridde tretis is of cures of opere seknesse, þat beþ nouȝt woundes þat mowen falle to dyuers lymes from þe hed to þe fote, þat comyn to be helyde off a surgien, & haþ þre techynges :	
	þe furste techynge of þe þridde tretys hath viij Chapyttles :	8
	¶ Cap. j of the furste techynge of þe þridde tretys ys off Ornamentys of heer.	p. 178
	¶ Cap. ij ys of ffallynge off heer & of scabbe.	p. 180
	¶ Cap. iij of whelkys in þe vysage, & scalys and crustlys	p. 188 12
[¹ fol. 32 a]	¶ Cap. iiij of Morfu, ffrakles, ¹ Goute, rosed of þe vysage, & Cicatrices of woundes	p. 189
	¶ Cap. v of ȝyechynge & scabbe	p. 191
	¶ Cap. vi of drye scabbe & wete scabbe	p. 193 16
	¶ Cap. vii of lepre, & of knowlechyng of leprys Man	p. 196
	¶ Cap. viii of fastnyng a lene lyme, & to lenen a fat lyme	p. 199
	¶ þe secunde techynge of þe þridde tretys is of apostemes, & hath xviij Chapittles	20
	¶ Cap. j of þe secunde techynge of þe þridde techynge, of gener- aciones of humour & here lyknesse	p. 201
	¶ Cap. ij of vniuersel word of enpostemes	p. 204
	¶ Cap. iij of enposteme of the hed & watire congregated in 24 children hedys.	p. 214
	¶ Cap. iiij of emposteme undire þe rote of þe ere.	p. 216
	¶ Cap. v of aposteme of þe nekke & þe þrote.	p. 217
	¶ Cap. vj of Aposteme undire þe Arme hole.	p. 222 28
	¶ Cap. vii of Aposteme þat comeþ in the arme from þe schuldre to þe Elbowe.	p. 223
	¶ Cap. viij off Aposteme þat comyþ on þe sydes.	p. 224
	¶ [Cap.] ix of Aposteme þat comeþ aboute þe Mouth of þe 32 stomak.	p. 226
	¶ Cap. x of apostem that comyþ in þe grynde	p. 226
	¶ Cap. xj of aposteme þat comyþ in þe hanche & þe thyes.	p. 227
	¶ Cap. xij of Aposteme off þe pyntel & þe ballokes	p. 228 36
	¶ Cap. xiii of serofules & glandeles, þat buþ Curnellys þat comyþ in þe flessch	p. 229
	¶ Cap. xiiij of Cancre þat is nouȝt to-broke, & is cure	p. 231
	¶ Cap. xv of bocche þat hongyþ as swynes babbe undire here 40 nekkys	p. 232
	¶ Cap. xvj of Akþe of Ioyntes	p. 233

	¶ The bridde techynge of þe bridde tretys haþ xviij Chapittles	Add. MS.
	¶ Cap. I of seknesse of eyzen, & Anotamy of þe same	p. 240 12.056.
	¶ Cap. ij of seknesse of þe eren	p. 254
4	¶ Cap. iij of seknesse of þe nose	p. 258
	¶ Cap. iiij of seknesse of þe mouth	p. 260
	¶ Cap. v of seknesse of a wommans tetys. to grete, to fatte, 1 opere to lene.	p. 265 [1 fol. 32 b]
8	¶ Cap. vi of ciphac þat is to-broke, opere that is to lose	p. 268
	¶ Cap. vij of brokyn ballok	p. 269
	¶ Cap. viij of stone in þe bleddre	p. 273
	¶ Cap. ix of hermodfrodite, þat is to seye, þat hatþ þe schappe of	
12	Man & womman, & opere of wommen þat haþ seyne withynne here schape / þat sche ne may nouȝt conseywe þe seed of man	
	¶ Cap. x of water of men þat beþ in þe dropsye	p. 281
	¶ Cap. xj of fycus, þat is, a waxynge up on þe hed of þe 3erde	p. 287
16	cancre fleynge, bocche in þe pyntel & olde wounde.	
	¶ Cap. xij of emeroydes, festre & rogadyes, þat beþ slyttes in þe Erse	p. 289
	¶ [Cap.] xiiij of cancrefis & malo mortuo, þat buþ olde sores & 20 olde scabbys on þe schyne.	p. 293
	¶ Cap. xiiij of veynes þat buþ to grete in þe legges, & of þe leggyss þat buþ to grete out off kynde of flessch	p. 295
	¶ Cap. xv of wryncles, & chynes of handes, & kybis on þe ffete,	
24	& wertys, & oper schyn lyke flessch	p. 296
	¶ Cap. xvj of helpynges þat buþ in blod letynge	p. 298
	¶ Cap. xvij of helpys þat buþ in brennyng with yren opere with gold	p. 305
28	¶ Cap. xvij of helpe þat is with brennyng of fyre, hote watyr & oyle	p. 312
	¶ þe iiij tretys is of wrenchyngis of lymes, & haþ tweye tech- ynges, opere tweye summes.	
32	¶ þe firste techynge of þe furþe tretys haþ vij Chapyttles	
	¶ Chap j of broken bonys an vniuersel word	[missing]
	¶ Cap. ij of bonys þat buþ broken of þe face	p. 313
	¶ Cap. iij of bonys þat buþ broken of þe breste	p. 316
36	¶ Cap. iiij of bonys þat buþ brokyn of þe rybbes, & þe rugge bon.	p. 317
	¶ Cap. v of Armys þat buþ broken	p. 318
	¶ Cap. vi of bonys þat buþ bende withouten brekyng	p. 321
40	¶ þe 2 Secunde techynge off þe furþe Tretys haþ v Chapytells	[2 fol. 33 a]
	¶ þe firste chapyttle of þe secunde techynge a comyn word off wrenchynges out of Ioynte	[missing]
	¶ Cap. ij of dislocacioun of þe cheke bon.	p. 314
44	¶ Cap. iij of dislocacioun of þe rugge bon.	p. 322
	¶ Cap. iiij of dislocacioun of þe schuldre & about þe schuldre	
		p. 323
	¶ Cap. v of dislocacioun of þe þyze bon & withynne	p. 326

Add. MS. 12,056.	¶ The ffyþe tretys is Antidotarie, & hath withinne hym vij chapitells	
	¶ Cap. j of castynge abache, & þe manere how þou schalt caste abacch	p. 328 4
	¶ Cap. ij of resolueres & manere of vndoyng & makynge nessche	p. 333
	¶ Cap. iij of Maturatiuis, þat buþ Ripers	p. 336
	¶ Cap. iiij of Mundificatiuis, þat beþ clanseres	p. 339 8
	¶ Cap. v of glutinatiuis & consolidatiuis, þat buþ closeres & consouderes, & þe difference of hem	p. 342
	¶ Cap. vj of hem þat maken nessche hardnesse	p. 353
	¶ Cap. vij of Cauterisinge, that is to sugge brennyng, & 12 opnyng þe extremities	p. 349

Ashmole MS. 1396.

SCIENCE OF CIRURGIE.

¹Now þese chapitles of þis book ben y-ordeyned, I wole fulfille [¹ ff. 2, bk.]
 my purpos pursuyng eche chapitle bi ordre, & confermyng my
 wordis aftir þe auctorite of myn auctouris and wiþ experiment þat
 4 I haue longe tyme vsed wiþ þe help of god. // // //
Al þing þat we wolde knowe, bi oon of .iiij. maners þat we Capm. jm
 moun knowe, eipir bi his name, or by his worchinge, or bi
 his verri beyng schewyng propirte of him-silf / In þis
 8 þre maner we moun knoweurgerie bi expownyng of his name;
 for siurge comþ of siros, þat is a word of gru, & in englich siros
 is an hand, & gyros gru, þat is worchinge in englich / For þe ende
 & þe profite of syurgie is* [of hand-wyrchyng. Of þe Name of
 Surgery is from Greek
 cheir a hand,
 and ergon
 work.
 12 a thyng Galyen seyth: he þat wyl knowe] soþfastnes of a þing,
 bisie him nouzt to knowe þe name of a þing, but þe worchinge & þe
 effete of þe same þing / Therefore he þat wole knowe what siurge is,
 he moot vndirstonde, þat it is a medicinal science, which techiþ us
 16 to worche wiþ handis in mannes bodi, wiþ kuttyng or openyng þe
 It is a medi-
 cal science:

Addit. MS. Brit. Mus. 12,056.

20 **N**OW the Chapitelles of þis bok buþ y-ordeynede, y wyl fulfille
 my purpos, pursuyng every chapyteH by ordere, & conferm-
 yng my wordys after þe Autorite of myn Autores, & wiþ experyment
 þat y haue longe tyme y-vsyde with help of god.
 24 **A**L thyng þat we wolde knowe, by on of þre maneres we mowe
 knowe, opere by hys name ore by hys worchyng, opere by hys
 verrey beyng schewyng propirte of hym selff. In þis þre manere
 we mowe knoweurgerie by expownyng of hys name; ffor syrugie
 cometh of syros, þat ys a word of grew3, & in englyssche syros ys
 28 an hand, & gyros grew3, þat ys worchyng an Englyssche; for þe ende
 & þe prophyte of surgerie ys* of hand wyrchyng. Of þe Name
 of a thyng Galyen seyth: he þat wyl knowe* soþfastnesse of a
 thyng, besye hym nozt to knowe þe name ²of a thyng, bute þe [² fol. 33 b]
 32 worchyng & þe Effecte of þe same thyng; where fore he þat wyl
 knoweurgerie ys, he mote vndirstonde, þat yt is a medycineal
 sciense, whyche techiþ vs to worche with handes in Mannes body, in

cutting, heal-
ing, and
removing
excrescences.

[1 leaf 3]

parties þat ben hole & in helynge þo þat ben broken, or kutt, as þei were tofor, ¹or ellis as ny3 as a man may, & also in doyng away þat is to myche skyn : as wertis or wennys, or þe fleisch to hy3 //

¶ þe secunde chapitle of þe firste tretis is of þe 4
qualitees, maners, and kunnyng of a surgian //

¶ Cap^m iij^m

A surgeon
must be a
temperate
and well
made man.
An ugly man
can't have
good man-
ners.

He must
know Phil-
osophy,
Logic, Gram-
mar, and
Rhetoric.

He must not
be a glutton
or a niggard,
but pleasant
with his
patients,

sign. iij.
[4 ff. 3, bk.]

Nedful it is þat a surgian be of a complexioun weel proporciound, and þat his complexioun be temperat / Races seiþ, who-so is nouzt semelich, is ympossible to haue good maners * [& Aui- 8
cenne : eyle maners] but folowen þe lijknys of an yuele complexioun / A surgian muste haue handis weel schape, longe smale fyngris, and his body not quakyng, & al must ben of sutil witt, for al þing þat longiþ to siurgie may not wiþ lettis ben writen. He muste studie 12
in alle þe parties of filosofie & in logik, þat he mowe vndirstonde scripturis ; in gramer, þat he speke congruliche ; in ² arte, þat techiþ him to proue his proporciouns wiþ good resoun ; in retorik þat techiþ him to speke semelich. Be he no glotoun, ne noon enuyous, ne a 16
negard ; be he trewe, vnbeliche, ³ & plesyngliche bere he him-silf to hise pacientis ; speke he noon ribawdrie in þe sike mannys ⁴ hous /

² Lat. : quod docet dialectica

³ *humbilly* in margin, in smaller hand.

Add. MS.
12,056.

kuttyng ore opnyng þo partyes þat ben hol, & in helynge þo that ben tobroken opere kutte, as þey were to fore, opere ellys as ny3 as 20
a Man may, and al so in doyng awaye þat ys to myche above þe schyn : as wertys, opere wennys, oper flesch to hy3h.

¶ The secunde Chapiteff of þe ffurste Tretys is of þe 24
qualites, maners and cunnyng of a surgien.

Nedfful ys þat a surgien be of a Complexioun wel proporcyonede, & þat is complexioun be temperat. **Rasys** seiþ, whose face ys nouzt semlye, ys inpossible to hauen gode maners ; * & **Auicenne** : eyle maners* beþ folwyng þe lyknesse of an yuele complexioun. 28
A surgien moste han handys wel schape, longe smale fynynges, and hys body nought quakyng, & alle hys lymes able to fulfyllen gode werkynge of hys soule. He most ben of sotyl wytt, ffor alle þyng þat longyth to surgerie may nought wiþ lettres ben wryten. He 32
moste stodyen in alle þe partyes of natureff ffylosophye & in logyk, þat he mowe vndirstonde scriptures ; in gramere, þat he speke congruliche ; in art, þat techyth hym to preven ys propositiounes with gode resoun ; in retoryk, þat techyth hym to speke semlyche ; be he 36
non glotoun, non spowsbrekere, ne Envyous, ne no nygarde ; be he trewe, vmbelyche ⁵ & plesyngliche bere he hym-self to hys pacientis ; speke he non Rybaudyne in þe seke mannys house, ne in þe seke

[5 fol. 34. a]

- 3eue he no counseil, but^t if^t he be axid ; ne speke he wiþ no womman
 in folie in þe sik mannes hous ; ne chide not wiþ þe sike man ne
 wiþ noon of^t hise meyne, but curteisli speke to þe sijk man, and in
 4 almaner sijknes bihote him heele, þowþ þou be of^t him dispeirid ;
 but neuer þe lattere seie to hise freendis þe caas as it stant / Loue
 he noon harde curis, & entermete he nouzt of^t þo þat ben in dispeir.
 Pore men helpe he bi his myzt, and of^t þe riche men axe he good
 8 reward / Preise he nouzt^t him-silf wiþ his owne mouþ, ne blame he
 nouzt scharpliche opere lechis ; loue he alle lechis & clerkis, & bi
 his myzt¹ make he no leche his enemye. So cloþe he him wiþ
 vertues, þat^t of^t him mai arise good fame & name ; & þis techiþ etik.
 12 So lerne he fisik, þat he mowe wiþ good rulis his surgerie defende
 & þat^t techiþ fisik / Neþeles it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe alle
 þe parties and ech sengle partie of^t a medicyn. For if^t a surgian ne
 knewe nouzt þe science of elementis, whiche þat ben firstmoost force
 16 of natural þingis & of dyuers lymes, he mai not² knowe science of^t
 coniunctions, þat^t is to seie, medlyngis & complexiouns þat ben
 nessessarie to his craft / A surgian muste knowe þat^t alle bodies þat
 ben medlid vndir þe sercle of^t þe moone, ben engendrid of^t foure

and must in
desperate
cases even
promise
recovery,
but tell the
truth to the
patient's
friends.

He should
make the rich
pay for the
poor.

He shall not
praise himself
or blame
other
physicians.

He must
know
Physics,
Medicine,

[2 leaf 3*]
and the
science of
mixtures.

¹ myzt in margin.

- 20 Mannes house gif non counseyle bote he be y-askyde, ne speke he with Add. MS.
 non womman in no³ folye in þe seke Mannes howse, ne chyde nought 12,056.
 with þe seke Man ne with none of hys meyne ; but curteslye speke
 to þe syke man, & in alle manere syknesse behote hym hele, þowþ
 24 þou be of hym dyspeyred ; but neuere þe lattere seye to hys frendys,
 þe cas as yt stant. Loue he non harde curys, & entyremete he
 nought of þo þat bep in dyspeyre. Pore men helpe he be hys myght,
 & of ryche men aske he gode rewarde. Preyse he nought hymself
 28 with hys owne mouth, ne blame he nought scharplye opere lechys ;
 loue he alle lechys & Clerkys, & by hys myght make he non leche
 hys enemye. So cloþe he hym with vertues, þat of hym mowe
 a-rysen gode fame & name, & þis techyth Etyk. So lerne he ffysik,
 32 þat he mowe with gode rulys hys Surgerye deffende, & þat techith
 ffysik. Naþeles yt ys necessarye a surgien to knowe alle þe parties
 in eche sengle partye of a medycine, ffor 3if a surgien knowe nozt
 þe sciens of Elementis, whiche þat buþ furst Meverys of naturel
 36 þynges & of^o dyuerse lymes, he may nozt knowe sciense of con-
 iunctiones, þat ys to seye, medlynges & complexiouns þat bep
 necessarye to hys crafte. A surgien most knowe þat alle bodies
 þat ben medlyde, þat ben vndire þe cercle of þe Mone, ben engen-

³ no above the line.

There are
four ele-
ments: fire,
water, earth,
and air.

By mixture
of their
qualities new
forms arise
capable of
being en-
dowed with
life.

The noblest
of all these is
the human
spirit.

sign. iiij.
[2 lf. 3*, bk.]

There are 4
qualities and
complexions,

symple bodies, her lijknese ech in opere medlynge; þat¹ is to seie: fier & watir, erþe & eir: þese¹ elementis for þe vttermeste eende, & þe vttermeste contrariouste of¹ here qualitees were fer drawn from bodilich lijf; but¹ whanne her qualitees, þat¹ is to seie, maner of 4 beynge, comen into medlynge, so þat¹ þe leeste partie of¹ þat¹ oon entre into þe leeste partie of¹ þat¹ oper partie, medlynge brekiþ her contrariouste; & þerof comen a newe foorme, & a newe complexioun of¹ þe medlynge of¹ her substaunce / Also þe medlynge of¹ 8 qualitees & þe quantitees is fer drawn from þe contrariouste of¹ þe same elementis, & so complexioun is nyȝ brouȝt to a mele; & so þat¹ þat is medlid is more able to resceiue þe noble foorme of lijf, þe which nobilite aboue alle bodies I-medlid is founden in mannes 12 spirit. But for þat¹ þe qualitees þat wiþ þo bodies of elementis² comen into medlynge, & it is vnpossible to departe þo qualitees from bodies þat¹ ben foure: hoot, coold, moist & drie, & complexiouns ben bi hem, it is nessessarie to fynde in bodies þat ben 16 medlid foure complexiouns / Complexioun is no þing¹ ellis but a maner qualite medlid in worchinge & suffrynge of¹ contrarious qualitees þat¹ ben founden in elementis, so þat¹ þe leeste partie of ech element entre into þe leeste partie of þe opere. & for þat ilke 20

¹ *ben* above line.

Add. MS.
12 056.

[3 fol. 34 v]

dryd of foure symple bodyes, here lyknesse eche in opere medlyng; þat ys to sugge, fyr & eyre, erþe & water. þese elementys, ffor þe outemast ende & outemast contraryousite of here qualites, weren fer drawn from bodily lyffe; but whanne here³ qualytes, þat is to 24 sugge manere of beyinge, comyn in to medlynge, so þat þe leste partye of þat on entre in to þe leste partye of þat opere partye, medlynge brekyth here contrariosite, & pere of comme a newe forme & a newe complexioun of þe medlynge of here substaunce. Al so 28 þe medlynge of þe qualitees & þe quantites ys fer drawyn from þe contraryousite of þe same elementes, & so complexioun is nyȝh brought to a mene, & so þat þat ys medlyde ys more able to resseyuen þe noble forme of lyff, þe whiche noblete aboiffe alle bodyes y-medlyde 32 ys y-founden in Mannys spiryt. But for þat þe qualites, þat with þo bodyes of Elementes comyth in to Medlynge—& yt ys vnpossible to departe þo qualites from bodyes—ben foure: hot, colde, moyst, & drye, & complexiouns ben by ham, yt ys necessarie to fynden in 36 bodyes þat ben medlyde, foure complexiouns; Complexioun ys nopynge ellys but a manere qualite medlyde in worchyng, & suffrynge of contrariouse qualites þat buþ founden in Elementis, so þat þe leste partye of eche elemente entre in to þe leste partye of þe 40 opere partye. And for þat þilke foure complexiouns: hot, colde,

- .iiij. complexiouns, hoot, moist, coold & drie, sumtyme ben y-com-
poned, þat is to seie, medlid, þer comen in hem .viij. as: hoot &
drie, hoot & moist, & coold & drie, and coold & moist / Foure of
4 þese ben symple, and foure componed; & for þilke .viij. sumtyme
ben wiþ mater, & sumtyme wiþoute mater / þer ben .xvj.; & for þilke
xvj. aftir sum consideracioun moun be naturel to summan, & summan
vnatural / þer moun be .xxxij. Neuereþelatter amonge alle þe com-
8 plexiouns þat man mai fynde, þat is componed of dyuers qualitees, þere
ne is noon so temperat, as is mannes complexioun; & hauynge reward
to mannes complexioun, alle opere þingis *[ys] I-clepid, hoot, coold,
moist, ¹ eiþer drie. / Whanne ² þat a mete or a medicyn haþ suffrid
12 kyndely heete þat is in man, þat heetiþ him nouzt, ne drieþ him
nouzt, ne moistiþ hym nouzt, so þat mannes complexioun may not
conseyue wheþer it coldiþ him, heetiþ or drieþ or moistiþ him: it is
clepid temperat / & þilke þing þat we seie is hoot in þe firste
16 degree, þat is I-heet of kyndely heete þat is in oure bodies, & heetiþ
oure bodies wiþouten greuauuncis / & þilke we seien to be hoot in þe
secunde degree, which þat is het of oure kyndely heete, so heetiþ
oure bodi þat he ne myzte heete us no more wiþoute greuauunce /
A mistranslation from the Latin: *Illam namque rem . . . dicimus esse
temperatam, quæ cum passa fuerit a calore naturali, qui est in nobis, non
calefit, etc.*

hot, moist,
cold, and dry.
By mixing
them we
get 8;

and as these
may be either
with or with-
out matter,
16;

and as they
are either
natural or
unnatural in
some men, 32.

Compared
with men's
complexion,
[leaf 4]

other things
are hot, cold,
moist, or dry.

A medicine
which does
not affect a
man's com-
plexion is
called tem-
perate.

A hot meat
or medicine
may be hot,

in 1 gradu,
in 2 gradu,

- 20 moiste & drye, sumtyme ben y-componyd, þat ys to sugge medlyde, Add. MS.
þere comen of hem VIII, as hote & drye, hote & moist, colde & 12,056.
drye, colde & moiste; ffoure of þese ben symple, & foure ben com-
ponyd. And for þilke VIII sumtyme ben with mater, sumtyme
24 withoute mater, þere ben XVI; & for þilke XVI, after sum con-
sideracioun mowe ben natureh to sum Man, ³ & to sum man vn
natureh, þere mowe ben XXXII. Nevere þe lattere amonge alle
þe complexiouns þat man may fynden, þat is componyd of dyuerse
28 qualites, þere nys non so temperat as ys mannes complexioun;
hauynge rawarde to mannes complexioun, alle opere þynge ys*
clepyde colde, hote, moyste, opere drye. Whanne þat a mete, opere
a medecine, hath y-suffryde kendlye hete þat ys in Man, & hetyth
32 hym nozt & colyth hym nauzt, ne dryeþ hym nozt, ne moyste hym
nozt, so þat mannes complexioun may nozt conseyven wheþer yt
colde hym, ore hete, dryze, opere moyste, yt is clepyde temperat; &
þilke thyng we sigge is hot in þe firste degree, þat ys y-hatte of
36 kendlye hete, þat ys in oure bodyes & hetyth oure bodyes withouten
greuauunce, & þilke we siggen be hote in þe secunde degree, whiche
þat ys y-hette of oure kendlye hete, so hetyth oure body, þat he ne
myzte hete vs namore withouten greuauunce; hot in þe pridde degree:

[3 fol. 35 a]

in ³ gradu, pilke we seie to be hoot in þe þridde degree, which þat is het of
 in ² gradu. ¹kyndely heete bryngiþ to oure bodi sensible greuance. & pilke
 is in þe fourþe degree, þat¹ is hot of ²vnkyndely heete, distroieþ þe
 .Nota. bodi openliche / & in þis same maner 3e moun knowe degrees þat 4
 to knowe complexiouns of bodies, lymes, & of medicyns. Take .ij.
 men þat¹ ben of oon age, & lete hem ben I-woundid wiþ a swerd or
 a knyf³ þwert¹ ouer þe arm in oon hour & in oon place; oon of 8
 [4 ff. 4, bk.] þe men is of an ⁴hoot complexioun & a moist, þat¹ oþer of a cold
 complexioun & a drie. þe comoun seiynge of lewid men is þat þei
 schulden boþe ben helid on o maner; but resonableurgerie I-preued
 techiþ us, þat¹ þei ne schulde not boþe be helid aftir oon maner / For 12
 he þat haþ an hoot complexioun, & a moist, may liztly haue an hoot
 enpostym—þat¹ is an hoot swellynge—& þat may be cause of an
 hoot feure. What¹ schalt þou þanne do? þou must loke, wheþer he
 haþ bled myche blood at his wounde, and þanne it is weel; ellis 16
 lete him blood of þe contrarious arme, or ellis*—of þe oon same side,
 if strenkþe & age acorde; or ventose⁵ him on þe two buttokkis, if
 þat he be feble. & if¹ he may not schite⁶ oones a day, helpe him

¹ vn above line.² vn in different hand.³ ouer above line.⁵ Lat. ventosare. Kersey, *Dict.* Ventose, a Cupping Glass.⁶ Lat. ascellare. Add. MS. translates accurately: go to sege. See below.

Add. MS. 12,056. pilke we sigge to be hot in þe þridde degre, whiche þat ys y-hatte of 20
 kendlye hete, bryngeþ to oure bodye sencyble greuance; **hot in þe
 fourþ degre**: and pilke in þe fourþ gre þat is y-hat of kendly hete,
 dystroyeþ þe body opynlyche; & in þis same manere 3e may knowe
 degrees þat ben colde, & y may preue in þis manere þat yt is 24
 necessarye a surgyne to knowe complexiouns of bodies, lymes, & of
 medycynes. ¶ Take two men þat ben off one age, & lete hem ben
 y-woundyde with a swerd opere a knyffe twarte offere þe arme, in
 [7 fol. 35 b] one oure & in ⁷one place. One of þo men ys of an hote complexioun 28
 & a moyste, þe opere of a colde & a drye; þe comyne siggynge of
 lewyde men ys, þat þey scholde boþe by helyde aftere o manere.
 But resonable surgye wel y-proved, techith vs þat þey ne schulle
 nozt boþe ben y-helyde aftere on manere; for he þat haþ an hot 32
 complexioun & a moyst, may lyztliche haue an hote enposteme, þat
 ys an hote swellynge, & þat may be cause of an⁸ hote ffeyre. What
 schaltou þanne do? þou moste loke wheþer he haue y-bled myche
 blod at hys wounde, & þenne it ys wel, ellys lete hym blod of þe 36
 contraryose arme, opere ellys* on þe fot on þe same syde; 3if strengþe
 & age acorde, opere ventouse hym on þe tweye buttokkys; gif þat he
 be feble, 3if he may nozt go to sege onys a day, helpe hym þereto

⁸ an above the line.

People of
 different
 complexions
 must be
 treated
 differently.
 1. For a
 patient of a
 hot and moist
 complexion,
 use blood-
 letting, cup-
 ping and
 purging.

perto, or *with* clisterie, or wip suppositorie. & brynge þou þe parties of þe wounde togidere þoruȝ sowynge, or wip plumaciols—þat ben smale pelewys—or wip byndynge, if þat sewynge be nouȝt nessesarie, & þanne worche aboute þe wounde, as it is told aftir in þe book. But aboute þe wounde leie a medicyn defensif, of bole armonyac¹, oyle of rosis, & a litil vynegre; so þat ²þe medicyn touche þe brynkis of þe wounde, þat humouris moun not haue her cours to renne to þe wounde; & we forbeden him wiyn, mylk & eiren & fisch þat engendriþ myche blood / But he schal ete for his mete growel maad of otemele, eiþir of barli mele wip almaundis; & generaliche he schal vse a streit dietynge, til þat he be sikir þat he schal haue noon hote enpostym. & if þat we kunne fende him fro a feure & apostym, þe science of his complexioun techiþ us, þat he may of his sijknes soone be hool / þe opere of þe cold complexioun schal not be leten blood ne ventusid, for blood schulde be kept in him, as for tresour / Forbede hem neiþir wiyn ne fleisch, for þe stomak þat is so feble ne myȝte nouȝt engendre nessessarie mater of blood þat longiþ to þe wounde / Ne we drede nouȝt in him þe feure, for his complexioun is nouȝt able to resceyue þe feure / We moun Compare: *a Sege of a Privay*; gumfus. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 328. Compare the French: *aller à la selle*.

¹ *Bole Armoniack*. See N. E. Dict.

Close his wound with compresses or with bandages,

and apply an vnguentum defensivum.

[² leaf 5]

He must keep a strict diet. dieta.

². Keep the blood in a patient of cold complexion; give him wine and meat.

opere wit clysterye, opere *with* suppositorye; & brynge þou þe partyes of þe wounde to-gedire, opere *with* sowynge, opere wip plumaciolus—þat beþ smale pelewys—opere *with* byndynge, ȝif þat sowynge be noȝt necessarie. And þenne worche aboute þe wounde, as it ys tolde aftere in þe boke; but aboute þe wounde leye a Medycine defensiu, of bol Armonyac, oyle of rosys, & a litil vynegre, so þat þe medycine touche þe sydes of þe woundes, þat humouris mowe noȝt hauen here cours to renne to þe wounde. And we forbyde hym wiyn, Milke, & eyren, & fysch, þat engendriþ myche blod; but he schal ete for his Mete grueþ y-made of ote Mele, opere barly mele *with* Almaundes, & generaliche he schal vsen a streyt ³doyng, tyl þou be sykere þat he schal haue non enposteme. And ȝif þat we kunne dyffenden hym from a ffevyre & aposteme, þe science of hys complexioun techyth vs þat he may of hys seknesse sone be hol. ¶ Þe opere of þe colde complexioun ne schal noȝt be leten blod ne ventusyde, ffor blod scholde be kepte in hem as for tresoure; forbyde hym neiþere wiyn ne flesch; for þe stomak þat ys so feble, ne myȝte nouȝt engendre necessarie mater of blod þat longyth to þe wounde; ne we dredyth noȝt in hym þe ffevyre, for his complexioun ys noȝt able to resceyuen þe ffevyre. We mowe

Add. MS. 12,056.

[³ fol. 36 a]

vitriol
has a differ-
ent effect on
different com-
plexions.

[² If. 5, bk.]

Galien

Limbs of
different
complexions
must be
treated
differently.

fynde a medicyn maad in oon maner þat worchþ dyuers effectis, & he be I-leid to dyuers complexiouns / Grene vitriol, & he be do to a man of a drie complexioun engendrith fleisch¹; & if þou leie² him on moist compleccioun, he greueþ nouzt oonliche, but corrodith⁴ it; and nepeles vitriol haþ but oon maner worchinge, þouþ þat he worche dyuersliche in dyuers complexiouns / Rízt as þe worchinge of þe sunne is dyuers, nouzt for þe sunne, but for þe worchinge of dyuers bodies into whom he worchþ / Vitriol drieþ wondirfulliche⁸ myche: in drie bodies he defendiþ³ þe smale lymes myzt⁴ to azenstonde his mizt, wherfore he may nouzt but drie þe superfluytees þat he fyndiþ in þe wounde; & whanne þo ben y-dried, kynde engendriþ fleisch. In moiste bodies, for þat þe smale lymes ben feble¹² & moun not wiþstonde þe strenkþe of þe vitriol, þe fleisch meltiþ vndir it, & so bi vitriol þe fleisch rotiþ. & þat is seid of dyuers complexiouns, is y-seid of dyuers lymes / Galioun seiþ: If þat tweye woundis ben euene I-quytturid, & þe oon be a drie lyme, & 16 þe oþer a moist lyme, þat þat is þe drie lyme nedíþ þe moister medicyn / And if þat .ij. lymes leue⁵ ben I-woundid þat ben lich

¹ *fleisch* in margin.

³ *defendiþ*, mistake for *fyndiþ*; see below.

⁴ *myzt* for *myzty*; see below.

⁵ *leue* for *leche*?

Add. MS.
12,056.

fynden a Medycine made in o manere þat wirchith dyuerse effectis, & he be y-leyde to dyuerse complexiouns. Grene vytreole, & he be 20 done to a Man of dryze complexioun, engendrith flessch; & 3if þou leggen hym on a moyste complexioun, he greuyth nozt onlyche, but corodup yt. And napeles vitreole haþ but one manere wyrchinge, þouþ he wirche dyuerslyche in dyuerse complexiouns, ryzte as þe 24 wirchyng of þe sonne ys dyuerse—nozt for þe sonne, but for þe wyrchyng of dyuerse bodyes in whom he wyrchyth. Vitreole dryeþ wonderlyche muche, & in dryze bodyes he fyndeþ þe smale lymes myghty to ageyne stonden hys strengþe. Wherefore he may 28 nought but drye þe superfluytes þat he fynte in þe⁶ wounde; & whenne þo ben y-dreyede, kynde engendryth flesch. In moyste bodyes, ffor þat þe smale lymes beþ feble, & mowe nozt withstande þe strengthe off þe vytreole, þe flesch meltiþ vndire yt, & so be þe 32 vitreole þe flesch rotyth; & þat þat ys seyde of dyuerse complexiouns, ys y-seyde of dyverse lymes. **Galyen**: 3if þat tweye woundes⁷ ben evyne i quyter, & þe on be in a dryze lyme, & þe oþere in a moyste lyme, þat þat is in þe dryore lyme nedíþ þe dryore 36 medycine. And 3if þat two lymes ben y-wounded þat ben lyche in

[⁷ fol. 36 b]

⁶ *wound*, cancelled because blotted after *in þe* and re-written.

in complexioun, & þe oon haþ myche quytture & þe toþer litil, he þat haþ þe myche quytture, nedip to han þe drier medicyn /

¹ **I**ohannes damascenus seiþ, Medicyns & enplastris schulden ben
 4 acordynge to þe lymes þat þei ben leid on / *Galienus*: a kyndly
 þing^r schal be kept wiþ a þing^r þat is kyndly þerto / And þat is aȝen
 kynde schal be doon awei with þing^r þat is contrarie þerto / If þat
 a surgian knew not complexiouns of lymes & of bodies, he schal
 8 nouȝt conne to schewynge hise medicyns aftir þat kynde askip. *nota*
 A Surgeon must know the genera-
 þe science & þe helynge of apostymes, as it schal be declarid in þe
 tretis of apostymes. He muste knowe þe dyuersitees & þe profitis
 12 & þe officis of lymes, þat he mowe knowe, what lymes han a greet
 worchinge in mannes body, & whiche ben of greet felynge, & whiche
 moun bere a strong^r medicyn / & þe vertues of lymes þou must
 knowe, þat he se, whanne þe worchinge of ony vartu failip in ony
 16 lyme, þat he mowe helpe þe vertu & þe same lyme failynge. & if
 he haue þe science of knowynge of vertues, þe science of spiritis
 schal nouȝt be hid fro him. Alle þese þingis bifore seid ben but
 natureles, & þei ²ben but techinge of medicyns speculatif / *[2 lf. 6, bk.]*

20 Also he muste haue koulechinge of þingis þat ben not natureles,
 þat he kunne chese good eir to him þat is woundid or ellis haþ
He must also know the things which are not

complexioun, & þat on haþ myche quyter and þe opere lyte, he þat
 haþ myche quyter nedith to haven þe dryere medecine. *Iohannes*
12,056.

² **damacenus**: Medecines & enplastres scholde ben acordynge to þe
 lymes þat þey ben y-leyde on. *Galienus*: a kendlye thyng schal
 be kepte with þynge þat ys kendlye þere to; and þat þat is aȝeyne
 kynde schal be done away with þynge þat is contrarye þere to. ȝif
 28 þat a surgien knowith noȝt complexiouns of lymes & of bodies, he
 schal noȝt kunne to chaungen hys medecines aftere þat kynde
 askep. A surgien moste knowe generacioun of humours, ȝif he
 wolde knowen þe sciense & þe helynge of Apostemys, as yt schal ben
 32 declared in þe tretys of apostemes; he moste knowyn þe dyuersite,
 & þe profytes, & þe offices of lymes, þat he mowe knowen what
 lymes han grete wyrchyng in mannys body, & whiche ben of grete
 felynge, & whiche mowe bere a stronge Medecine; & þe vertues of
 36 lymes he moste knowe, þat he se whanne þat þe worchyng of enye
 vertue fayleþ in enye lyme, þat he mowe helpe þe vertue in þe same
 lyme faylinge. And ȝif he haue þe science of knowynge of vertues,
 þe sciense of spiritus ne schuþ noȝt ben y-hud from hym. Alle þese
 40 þynges before seyde beþ natureles, & þey beþ techynge of medecine
 speculatyff. Also he moste han knowynge of thynges þat beþ noȝt
 natureles, þat he kunne chesen gode eyre to hym þat is y-woundyde,

natural, as
the effect of
the air on a
wound.

nota

He must
know how to
prescribe
moving or
rest.

[^s lf. 7]

Nota

He must
regulate the
patient's
sleep,

a boch¹ / Woundis moun not be² dried in a moist eir & a vapouris,
but þei þat ben woundid musten ben chaungid fro þat moist eir to a
swete cleer eyr & a drie / In wyntir he muste kepe him fro cold;
for no þing³ greueþ so myche boones & senewis as cold³ þat ben 4
I-woundid / & in somer he muste haue temperable eir. It is
nessessarie þat he kunne dietyn his pacient, as I schal telle in þe
same chapitle of dietinge / also he muste ordeyne meuyng & reste,⁴
as it nedip to be same sijk man / for if þat he be woundid in þe 8
heed eiper haue ony puncture of ony senewe, it is nessessarie þat he
reste & dwelle in stillenes & haue an esy bed & a soft; lest he suffre
ony traueile of his lymes / But if þat olde woundis wiþout akyng
weren in his armes, it were good to him, þat is sijk, to walke on his 12
feet, & lete his arme be bounde to his necke; & if þat þe wounde
be in hise schynes & in hise feet, it were good þat he lay &
traueilide wiþ hise hondis / Also a ⁵surgian, in al þat he myȝte, he
muste tempere a sijk mannes slepinge; for to myche slepinge 16
engenderiþ superfluyte & febliþ his vertewes, & coldiþ & lesiþ al his
bodi / To myche wakinge dissolueþ & confoormeþ⁶ hise spiritis &

¹ *boch*, Latin *apostema*; M. E. *botch*. See N. E. Dict.

² *heelid* cancelled.

³ *as cold* misplaced; see below.

⁴ *to* cancelled after *reste*.

⁶ *confoormeþ*, erroneously for *consumeþ*, as below. Lat. Orig. : *dissolvunt et consumunt*.

Add. MS. 12,056. opere ellys haþ a bocche. Woundes mowe noȝt ben y-dryȝed in a
[7 fol. 37 a] 7moyste eyre & a vaporose, but þey þat ben y-woundyde most bene 20
y-chaungyde from þat moyste eyre to a swote cler eyre & a dryȝe.
In wyntere he moste kepe hym from colde, ffor noþinge grevyth so
myche bonys & synwes þat buþ y-woundyde as colde. And in
somere he moste han a temperable eyre; hit ys necessarye þat he 24
kunne dyoten hys pacient, as y schal tellen in þe same ChapyteH of
dyotyng. Also he moste ordeyne moffyng & reste, as yt nedep to
be same syke man; ffor ȝif þat he be woundyde in þe hed, opere
haue eny puncture off enye synwe, it ys necessarye þat he reste: 28
dwelle he in styllenesse, & haue an euene bed & a softe, leste he
suffren enye trauaylle of hys lemys; but ȝif þat olde woundes,
wiþouten akyng, weren in hys Armes, hit were gode to hym þat ys
seke to walken on hys fete, & bere hys arme y-bounden to hys 32
nekke; & ȝif þat þe wounde be in hys schynys & in hys ffete, hit
were gode þat he leyȝe & trauelyde with hys handes. Also a
surgien, in alle þat he myȝhte, he moste atempre a syke Mannes
slepyng, ffor to myche slepyng engendreþ superfluyte, & feblyth 36
his vertues, & coldyth & losyth alle hys bodye; to myche wakyng
dyssolfiþ & consumeþ hys spiritis, & makyth sharpe hys humores,

makij scharpe hise humouris ; it bryngij vnkindly drowþe to woundis, & is cause of akyng / Also he muste kunne evacuener him ^{free the patient from evil humours} þat is ful of yuel humouris & fulfille him þat is waastid, þat he
 4 brynge sike men to good temperaunce ; ellis a wounde mai not be heelid / Entempre he þe herte of him þat is sijk, for to greet wrappe. ^{and take care that the heart is temperate.}
 makij þe spiritis renne to myche to þe wounde & þat is caus of swellynge ; to greet drede, oupir vttereste¹ of heelpe of his wounde,
 8 holdij þe spiritis wiþinne his bodi, þat mater mai not come to heele his wounde / þese .vj. þingis ben clepid vnnaturel,² which techij a man speculatif of leche craft.

He muste knowe þe sijknes : as olde wounde, festre, cankre & ^{He must know the different kinds of wounds,}
 12 alle opere soris, þat he traueile not in veyn & brynge þe sike man to his deef / For ech dyuers soor nedij dyuers helpingis. He muste knowe þe cause of þe wounde / ffor a wounde, þat is ³maad wiþ a swerd eijer a knyf, must operewise be heelid, þan he þat is
 16 maad wiþ stoon eijer fallinge / And a wounde þat is biten wiþ an hound schal operewise be heelid, þan he þat is biten with a wood hound ; as þou schalt fynde soone told in þe book hereafter / & he muste knowe þe accidentis þat ben aboute a wounde / for þe wounde
 20 schal neuere heele, til þe accidentis be remeued away / accidentis is ^{and the accidents which befall a wound.}

¹ *uttereste*, only known as an adj. : *extremus*, erroneously for *untryste*. See below.

² Lat. *quæ sunt secundum membrum theoricæ medicinæ*.

& hit bryngeþ vnkyndly drowþe to woundes, & ys cause of akyng ; ^{Add. MS. 12,056.}
 also he moste kunne evacuen hym þat ys ful of euele humores, & fulfille hym þat ys wastyde, þat he brynge seke men to gode
 24 temperaunce ; ellys a wounde may nozt ben helyd ; entempre he þe hert of hym þat ys seke, ffor to gret wratthe makij þe spiritis renne to myche to þe wounde, & þat ys cause of swellynge ; ⁴to grete drede, ^[4 fol. 37 b]
 opere vntryst of helpe of hys wounde holdij spyrites withynne hys
 28 body, þat mater may nouzt come to hele þe wounde. þese sixe thynges ben y-clepyde vnnaturel, whiche techith a Man speculatyff of leche craft. He mot knowen þe seknesse, as olde wounde, festre, cancre, & alle opere sores, þat he traveille nozt in deveyne, & brynge
 32 þe seke man to hys dep : ffor eche dyverse sore nedith dyverse nelpynges. He mote knowe þe cause of þe wounde ; ffor a wounde þat is mad with a swerd opere a knyff mote opere weys ben helyde þen he þat is y-makyde with ston, opere with fallynge, & a wounde
 36 þat is byten with an hounde schal opere weys ben helyde þen he þat ys y-byten with a wod hound, as þou schalt fynde tolke in þe boke hereafter. And he mot knowe þe Accidentes þat buþ aboute a wounde, ffor the wounde schal neuere hele tyl þe Accidentes ben
 40 remeuyde away. Accidentis ys a þynge þat fallij to þe wounde out

He must
know how
to prescribe
appropriate
diet.

.Galien.

a ping¹ þat falliþ to a wounde out¹ of kynde as hoot, cold, drie, eiper to myche moistnes, crampe & opere þinges azens kynde / A surgian muste ordeyne dietyng in dyuers maner, as it is told in þe chapitle of dietyng; & whanne it is nedeful, he muste zeue dyuers drinkis / 4
Galien: Laxatiues & vometis ben nedeful to hem, þat han olde rotid woundis & stynkyng / For whanne þe bodi is purgid fro wickide humouris, þe wickidnes of þe mater renneþ fro þe wounde & so þe wounde is sunner helid / He þat biholdiþ alle þe parties of 8 a medicyn, he may weel se þat it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe phisik, & oper dyuers science, as I haue told tofore in þe book.

¶ þe .iiij c^o of þe firste techinge is of intencioun of a surgian / 12

[1 lf. 8]
¶ Cap^m 3^m
¶ .1.
 .2.
 .3.

¹ A l þe entencioun of a surgian, how diuers þat it be, it is on* [of] pre maners / þe first is vndoynge of þat, þat is hool / þe secunde to hele þat, þat is broke / þe .iiij. is remeuyng of þat, þat is to myche; so þat it be don with hand craft / ffor al entencioun of 16 a surgian is vndir oon of þese .iiij. entenciouns, or ellis vnder oon of hem. A surgian vndoþ þat þat is hool, whanne he letiþ blood, eiper garsiþ,² eiper brenneþ, eiper settiþ on watirlechis, for þis is a
² garsiþ] Lat. scarificat; Fr. gerçer; med. Lat. gersa, garsa. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 150.

A surgeon
1. either
undoes what
is whole,

Add. MS. 12,056. of kynde, as hete, colde, drowþe opere to gret moistnesse, crampe, & 20 opere þynges azeyne kynde. A surgien mot ordeyne dyetyng in dyverse manere, as it is tolde in þe Chapiteþ of dyetyng. Whenne þat it is nedful, he mote 3yve dyverse drynkes. Galien: laxativis & vomytes buþ necessarie to hem þat han olde, rotyde, stynkynde 24 woundes; ffor whanne þat þe body is purgyde from evyle humours, þe wykkesnesse of þe matere renneþ from þe wounde, & so þe wounde is sonnere y-helyde. He þat byholdeþ alle þe parties of a
[3 fol. 33 a] medicine, he may wel se³ that it is necessarie a surgyne to knowen 28 ffysyk and opere dyverse science, as hit is tolde tofore in þis boke.

¶ The pridde Chapitele of þe furste techyng is of Intencioun off a Surgyne.

Alle þe entencioun of surgerye, how dyverse þat it be, yt is on 32 *of pre maneres: þe ffurste ys vndoynge þat þat is hol; secunde ys helpyng of þat þat is tobroke; þe pridde ys remevyng of þat þat is to myche, so þat it be do with hande crafte; ffor alle þe entencioun of a surgien ys vndire one of þis pre entensiouns, opere ellys 36 vndire one of hem. A surgyne vndop þat þat ys hol, whanne he letyþ blod ore garsyþ opere brenneþ, opere setteþ on waterlechys,

- surgiens craft; þouȝ we for oure pride haue left it to barbouris & to wymmen / for Galien & Rasis didnen it with her hondis, as her bookis tellen. And we vndoon þat, þat is hool, whanne þat we
- 4 kutten þe veynes, þat ben in þe templys & þe forheed & maken cauterizaciouns for þe sijknis of þe yȝen / And whanne þat we maken cauteries in þe heed & in dyuers placis of þe bodi, as I schal telle in þe chapitle of cauterisyng / þe secunde entencioun is to
- 8 hele þat, þat is broken as woundis, olde woundis, festriss, cankeris & in bringyng to her placis ioyntis þat ben oute & in helynge boones þat ben to broken / þe .iij. entencioun is to remeue þat, þat is to myche, as ¹scrofulus of þe heed & þe necke & opere parties of þe
- 12 bodie / cataractis²—is a watir þat cometh bitwene þe white of þe iȝen & þe appil; sebel—þat ben veynes þat ben in þe whijt of þe iȝen & beþ ful of blood / vngula—is a þing, þat bigynneþ bi þe nose & goiþ ouer þe iȝe til he keuere al þe iȝe—& knottis, þat ben in þe
- 16 iȝe & opere siknes of þe iȝe; & in doynge away polippis, þat is fleisch þat growiþ wiþinne þe nose; wertis & wennys; ficus, þat is superfluyte þat grown vp on þe skyn of þe pintils hede wiþoute, emeraudis³ & a skyn þat enclosiþ a wommans priuy membre, þe

Nota.
G. R.

as when he bleeds, scarifies or cauterizes;

or 2. he heals wounds, &c.,

or 3. he removes excrescences, sign. 2j
[1 li. 8, bk.]
as cataracts,

polypuses, and wens.

² cataract, sebel and ungula. See Notes.

³ The Latin text has: superfluitatem hermaphroditis.

- 20 ffor þis ys a surgyns craft, þawȝ we for oure pride haue y-lefte yt to laborers & to wommen, for Galien & Rasys dyden it wiþ here handes as here bokys tellyþ. And we vndop þat þat is hol, whenne þat we kutteþ þe veynes þat ben in þe templys & þe forhed, &
- 24 makyth cauterisaciones from þe seknesse of þe eyȝen, & whenne þat we maken Cauteries in þe hed & in dyverse places of þe body as y schal telle in þe chapiteH of Cauterysyng. þe secunde entencioun ys to hele þat þat is tobroke as: woundes, olde woundes, festriss,
- 28 Caneres, and in bringyng to here place ioyntes þat bene oute, & in helynge bonys þat ben tobroke. þe þridde entencioun is to remevyn þat þat ys to myche as scurfyls of þe hed & þe nekke, & opere parties of þe body, & Cataractis þat ys a water þat comyth
- 32 bytwene þe whyte of þe eyȝe & þe Appul. Sebel þat beþ veynes þat buþ in þe whyte of þe eyȝe, & beþ ful of blod. Vngula, þat ys a thyng þat bygynneþ by þe nese & goth ouere þe eyȝe, tyl he kefiere alle þe eyȝe & knottes þat ben in þe eyȝe, & opere seknesse
- 36 of þe eyȝe, & in doynge away polippes þat is fleisch þat growiþ with ynne þe nese, wertys & wennys, ficus þat is a superfluyte þat growiþ vp on þe skyn off þe pyntellys hed withouten, emeraudes & a schyn

Add. MS.
12,056.

[4 fol. 33 v]

sixte fingre of þe hond & manye superfluytees þat beþ nouȝt semelich to a mannys body

¶ þe firste chapitle of þe secunde tretis is an vniuersal word of smale lymes & her helpingis, & of gener- 4
acioun of embrioun, þat is þe child, in þe modir wombe // / /¹

de anotho-
[m]ia.
A Surgeon
must know
Anatomy.

Auicen.
[² lf. 9]

†The Embryo
.G?
is engendered
of the seed of
man and
woman.†

GAlienus seiþ, þat it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe anotamic; ne leewe we nouȝt þat ech brood ligament is a skyn, & ech 8
round ligament to be a senewe, so bi his opinyoun he myȝte falle into errour / þerfore I þenke to ordeyne a chapitle of þe kynde & of the ²foorme & helpinge of alle smale lymes / Auicen seiþ / knowlechinge of a þing, þat haþ cause, mai nouȝt be knowen, but 12
bi his cause. þerfore we moten knowe þe cause, *membrorum consimilium*, þat is to seiȝe, smale lymes. & I wole telle þe generacioun of embrioun: þat is to seiȝe, how a child is I-gete in þe modir wombe / Galien & auicen tellen, þat of boþe þe spermes of man & 16
of womman, worchinge & suffrynge togideris, so þat ech of hem worche in opir & suffre in opir, embrioun is bigete / But the worchinge of mannes kynde is more myȝtiere, & wommans kynde

¹ See *Vicary*, ed. Furnivall, p. 78.

Add. MS. 12,056. þat enclosyþ a wommans priue membre, þe sixte fynger of þe hand, 20
and manye superfluytes þat beþi nought semlye to mannys body.

¶ The ffurste Chapiteþ of þe secunde tretys ys an universel word off smale lymes, & here helpynges of generacioun of enbrion þat is child in þe moder 24
wombe.

GAlien seiþ þat it ys necessarie a Surgien to knowe Anotomye, ne leffe henoȝt þat iche brode ligament þat ys a schyn, & iche rounde ligament to ben a synwe, & so be hys opynioun he myȝte 28
fallen in erreure. þerfore i þynke to ordeyne a Chapiteþ of þe kynde & of þe fforme & þe helpynge of alle smale lymes. Avycene seiþ, knowlechyng of a þynge þat haþ cause may noȝt be knowe but by hys cause, þerfore we mote knowe þe cause *membrorum* 32
consimilium: þat ys to sigge smale lymes. Y wyl telle þe generacioun of embrion, þat ys to sigge, how a childe ys bygete in þe modire wombe. Galien and Avycene tellen þat of boþe þe spermes of Man & womman—wirchyng & sofferynge togedires, so þat iche of hem 36
wirche in opere & suffren in opere—embrion ys bygete. But þe worchyng of Mannes kynde is more myȝtiere, & wommans ³kynde

[³ fol. 39 a]

more febler / For riȝt as þe roundeles¹ of chese haþ bi him-silf wei
 of worchinge & þe mylk bi wey of suffrynge, so to þe generacioun
 of embrion mannes sperme haþ him² bi wei of worchinge & wommans
 4 sperme bi wey of suffrynge / & riȝt as þe rundelis¹ & þe mylk ^{†And as ren-}
 maken a chese, so boþe þe spermes of man & womman maken ^{net curdles}
 generacioun of embrioun. þowȝ þat alle þe smale lymes of a child ^{milk and the}
 ben I-geeten of boþe two spermes, neþeles, to cloþe hem ^{two make}
 8 & wiþ fatnes, comeþ to hem menstrie³ blood / þe maris⁴ of womman ^{cheese,}
 haþ an able complexioun to conseiuen; & of hir kynde he castiþ ^{so does the}
 þe spermes to þe deppest place of hir; & of hir nature he closiþ hir ^{seed of man}
 mouþ, þat þer myȝte not entre the poynt of a nedle / & þanne þe ^{and woman}
 12 foormal vertu which almyȝty god haþ ȝeue to þe maris ordeyneþ & ^{make the}
 diuidid euery partie of þese spermes in her kynde, til þat þe child ^{Embryo.†}
 be born / Vndirstondē þat þe fleisch & þe fatnes is mad of menstrie ^{sign. 2ij}
 blood, þe boones & gristlis, ligamentis & senewis, cordis, arteries, ^[3 lf. 9, bk.]
 16 veynes, panniclis—þat ben smale cloþis—and þe skyn beþ engendrid ^{The flesh}
 of boþe þe spermes, as auicen & opere auctouris tellen / If þat ony of ^{and the fat}
 þe lymes þat ben engendrid of þe spermes ben doon away *[he] moun ^{are formed}
 neuere veriliche be restorid, for þe mater of hem is þe sperme of þe ^{from the}
^{menstrual}
^{blood.}
^{The Matrix}
^{closes itself}
^{after having}
^{conceived.}
^{The whole}
^{body is}
^{developed in}
^{the Matrix}
^{(except the}
^{flesh and fat)}
^{from the seed}
^{of the man}
^{and woman.}
 Auicen

¹ roundeles, rundelis. Add. MS. *rendelys*, coagulum. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 429, *renlys*, or *rendlys*. Comp. O. Du. *rinsel*, *rinsel*.

² mannes sperme haþ him, Lat. *ita sperma viri se habet*. ⁴ maris, matrix.

20 ys more feblere. Ffor ryȝt as þe rendelys of chese haþ hym by Add. MS.
 weye of worchyng, & þe Mylk be weye off suffrynge, so to þe 12,056.
 generacioun of embrion, Mannes sperme⁶ hath hym be weye of
 worchyng, & wommans sperme⁶ be weye of suffryng, & ryȝt as þe
 24 rendles & þe mylk makyth a⁵ chese, so boþe þe spermes⁶ of man &
 womman inakyp þe generacioun of embrion. þowȝ þat alle þe smale
 lymes of a childe be y-geeten of boþe two spermes,⁶ napeles to cloþe
 hem *with flesch* & *with fatnesse* comeþ to hem menstrewed blod. þe
 28 marys of a womman haþ an able complexioun to conseiuen, & of
 here kynde sche castyth þe spermes to þe deppeste place off here,
 and of here nature sche closyth hire mouth þat þere myȝte nouȝt
 entre þe poynt of an nedle. And þenne þe foormal vertu whiche
 32 þat almyghty god haþ ȝeuen to the marys, ordeyneþ & deff[e]ndeþ
 euery party of þese spermes in here kynde, tyl þat þe childe ben
 ybore. Understande þat þe flesch & þe fatnesse ys y-mad of men-
 strewe blod, the bonys & þe gristlis, ligamentes, synwes, cordes,
 36 Arteries, veynes, pannycles, þat buþ smale cloþes & þe schyn buþ
 engendred of boþe þe spermes, as Avicene & opere Autores tellyn.
 ȝif þat enye of þe lymes þat buþ engendrede off the spermes be don
 away, *he may neuere verreyliche ben restorid, ffor þe matere of

⁵ Above line.

⁶ MS. *spernes*.

fadir & of þe modir; but þe fleisch the which mater is blood, þat is
aldai engendrid in us, may weel & verriliche be restorid / þese smale
lymes han dyuers foormes, complexiouns & helpingis aftir þe
dyuersitees of þe proporciouns of þe mater, which þat þei ben maad 4
of / for þouȝ þat alle þe lymes ben maad of oon mater I-medlid,
[1. 17. 10] nepeles in ech of þe smale ly¹mes þer is a dyuers proporcioun of
mater, for þe which mater þei taken dyuers foormes & dyuers
helpingis. Almyȝti god ȝeueþ to ech þing¹ of his foorme after þat 8
his mater is* proporciound disserueþ /

consimile
membris.**

1st Member

The Bone.

Its functions:

to move
limbs,

protect them,

support the
body,

and fill the
hollows of
joints.

þe boon is þe first of þe consimile membris—þat is oon of þe
smale lymes; þe which ben² cold & drie & he haþ dyuers foormes
in mannes bodi: for he helpiþ dyuerslich / þe cause whi þer ben 12
manye dyuers boones in mannes bodi is, for sumtyme it¹ is nede to
meeue oon lyme withouten anoþir & þat were impossible, ifi þat al
þe bodi were but oon boon / Anoþer cause whi þer ben manye
boones: for summe defenden þe principal lymes from harm, as þe 16
brayn scolle from³ þe brayn of þe heed / summe ben fundamentis,
as þe boones of þe rigge & of þe schenes & of þe armes / summe
ben as additamentis þat ben in þe side of þe rigge boon, & summe
to fulfille the holownes of summe ioyntis, as þe handis & þe feet; 20

² ben for is, see below.

³ from, erroneously inserted.

Add. MS. 12,056. hym ys þe sperme of þe fadire & þe modere. But þe flesch whose
matere ys blod þat is al day engendred in vs may wel & vereliche
be restoryde. þese smale lymes han dyverse formes, complexioun,
& helpynges after the dyversite of þe proportiouns of þe mater 24
[4 fol. 39 b] whiche þat þey ben ⁴mad of; ffor þowȝ þat alle the lymes be mad of
on matere y-medlyde, napeles in eche of þe smale lymes þere is a
dyverse proposicioun⁵ of matere, for the whiche matere þey taken
dyverse forme & dyverse helpe. Almyghty god gevyth to effrye 28
þynge of hys forme after þat hys matere *proporcioned deservyt.

þe bon is furst of consimile membris þat is on off smale
lymes, þe whiche ys colde & drye, & he haþ dyverse formes in
mannes bodye, for he helpiþ dyversliche; þe cause why þere ben 32
many dyverse bonys in mannys body is,⁶ ffor sum tyme it ys nede
to meffyn o lyme without an opere, & þat were inpossible, ȝif in alle
þe body were but on hol bon. An opere cause is why þere ys many
bonys; for sum diffenden þe principal lymes from harme, as þe 36
brayn scolle þe brayn of þe hed; somme ben ffundamentys, as þe
bonys of þe rugge, & of þe schynes, & of þe Armes. Some ben as
armure, as additamentys, þat ben in þe syde of þe rugge bon, &
somme fulfyllen þe holwenesse of somme Iunttes, as þe handys & þe 40

⁵ read "proporcioun."

⁶ is above line.

& summe *per* ben *pat* þe roundnes of þe boon myzte entre into þe holownes of *pat* *oper* boon / & non les schulde not lacke his meuyng as þe schuldre boones & þe hiþe boones. þou maist fynde
 4 how manye boones *per* ben in þe .ij. tretis, ¹where schal be told ^[¹ lf. 10, bk.] pleyulier þe anotamie of consimile membris of al þe bodi from þe heed to þe foot.

A gristil is cold & drie, & is neischere þan a boon, & hardere þan
 8 þe fleisch, and in þe fleisch he haþ sixe helpingis / þe firste, *pat* *pat* schulde be a meene bitwene þe vttir ende of þe hard boon & þe neische fleisch / þe .ij. *pat* þe harde schulde not hirte þe neische, nameli in þe tyme of compressioun, & in þe tyme of smytinge / þe
 12 .iiij. *pat* þe eende of þe boones whiche *pat* ben in þe ioyntis schulden haue a softere confutacioun² in her ioyntis / þe fourþe, *pat* he schulde fulfille þe office of þe boon to susteyne a brawne, meuyng a membre
 þat haþ noon boon, as þe ouer lid of þe ize / þe fifþe: for it is
 16 nessessarie a gristil to ben in place, þat is nouzt ful hard as þe þrote bolle; for þe eende of þe þrote bolle is gristeli / þe .vj.: for it is nessessarie summe lymes to han a sustentacioun, and applicacioun,³ þat is foldyng, to be streyned & drawen abrod as þe noseþrillis &
 20 þe gristile of þe eere.

² *confutacioun*, erroneously for *confricacioun*. See below.

³ *applicacioun*. Read a *plicacioun*.

fete, & somme *pere* ben *pat* þe roundnesse of on bon myzte entre in
 to þe holwenesse of þe *opere* bon & napeles scholde nozt lakken hys
 meffynge, as þe schulder bonys, & the heþe bonys. þou maiste fynde
 24 hou many bonys *pere* ben in þe secunde tretys where schal be tolde plenerliche—þe Anotamye of consimile membrys of alle ⁴þe body, ^[⁴ fol. 40 a] from þe hed to þe fot. A grustyH ys cold & drye, & is nesschere þenne a bon, & hardere þanne þe flesch, & in þe flesch hath vi
 28 helpynges. ¶ Helpyng þe grustel. The ffurste *pat* *pere* scholde be a Mene, bytwene þe vttir ende of þe hard bon, & þe nessch flesch. ¶ þe secunde, *pat* þe harde scholde nozt hurt þe nessche, namlyche, in þe tyme of comprission, & in þe tyme of smytinge. ¶ The
 32 bridde, *pat* þe ende of þe bonys, whiche *pat* ben in þe Iunttes scholde han a softere *confricacioun* in here Iunttes. ¶ þe iiij, *pat* he scholde fulfille þe office of þe bon, to susteyne a brawne meffynge, a membre *pat* haþ non bon, as þe overe lyd of þe eyze. ¶ þe
 36 v. for his necessarie a grustyH to be⁵ in a place *pat* ys nozt ful hard, as þe þrote bolle; ffor þe ende of þe þrote bolle ys grustlye. ¶ þe vi. for it is necessarie some lymes to han a sustentacioun & a plicacioun, *pat* is a foldyng, to be streynde & drawen abrod, as þe
 40 nese þrylles & þe grustle of þe ere.

⁵ *nozt* above line.

sign. xij

2nd Member,
The Gristle;
the six uses
of Gristle.

.1.

.2.

.3.

.4.

.5.

.6.

Add. MS.
12,056.

3rd Member,
ligamentis.
[I. 1f. 11]

The four uses
of Ligament.

.1.
It binds the
bones to-
gether,

.2.
It joins with
Sinews to
make Cordes,
i.e. Tendons
and Muscles,

.3.
it is a resting-
place for
Sinews,

.4.
it sustains
the parts
within the
body.
4th Member,
Sinews
(Nerves).
They start
from the
brain or
Spinal Cord.
sign. 2^{inj}
[4 1f. 11, bk.]

Lygament is cold & drie, and goþ out of þe boones & haþ þe
foorme of a senewe. & he may be bowid, but he felip nouzt; &
he ¹haþ foure helpingis / þe firste is, þat he knyttip oon boon wiþ
anoþer / it is nessessarie, þat oon boon be knytt wiþ anoþer, þat ⁴
many boonys myzten make oon bodi as oon boon, & neuereþelatter
ech membre myzte meue bi him-silf, & þerfore þe ligament is as
bowable & incensibile / for if þat it hadde be censibile, þei myzten
nouzt han I-susteyned þe traueile & þe meuyng of þe ioyntis / & ⁸
if þat he hadde be inflexible as a boon, of whom he comeþ of, oon
lyme myzte not han mened wiþouten anoþer / þe secunde help is,
þat he is ioyned wiþ senewis to make cordis & brawnes / þe þridde
help is þat he schulde be a restyng place to summe senewis / þe ¹²
fourþe þat bi him þe membris, þat ben wiþinne þe bodies, schulden
ben y-teied, þe whiche þat neden hangyng.

A corde² is cold & drie, & he comeþ from þe brayne, eiþer from
þe mucha³; þat is þe marie of þe rigge boones // From þe brayn ¹⁶
comen .vij. peire cordes. & þei ben clepid sensible senewis / ffrom
þe nucha þer comen xxx peire cordis & oon bi him silf & þei ben
mouable / And alle þe cordis þat comen of þe ⁴brayn & nucha, haþ

² There is a constant confusion in all the mediæval medical books be-
tween nerves and sinews. See further Notes.

³ *mucha*, an error for *nucha*; med. Lat. *nucha*. Dufr.: postera pars colli.
Fr. nuque. Littré gives references from the 14th cent. for the signification,
marrow. See Notes.

Add. MS.
12,056.

Ligamente is colde & drye, & goþ out of þe bonys, & haþ þe ²⁰
forme of a zenewe, & he may be bowyde, but he felip nozt, & he
haþ iiij helpynges. þe fyrste ys þat he knytte on bon *with* an
opere. It is necessarie þat o bon be knytte *with* an opere, þat
manye bonys myzte make on body as on bon, & nevere þe later eche ²⁴
membre myzte meffyn by hym-selfe, & þere fore þe ligamente was
bowable & insensible; for 3if þat yt had y-be sensible, þey myzte
nouzt have susteynde the travaylle & þe meffynge of þe Iunttys;
and 3if þat he hadde be inflexible as a bon, of whom þat he comyþ ²⁸
of, ⁵on lyme myzte nozt han meffyde *withouten* an opere. þe secunde
help ys, þat he ys joynede *with* zenewys to make cordys & brawne.
þe þridde helpyng ys, þat he scholde ben a restyng place to summe
senewys. þe fourþe, þat be hym þe membris þat ben *withynne* þe ³²
body scholde ben tyede, whiche þat nedyþ hongyng.

A corde ys colde & drye, & he comyþ from þe brayn opere fro
þe nuca, þat ys þe marye of þe rugge bonys. ¶ From þe brayn comeþ
vij peire cordys, & þey buþ y-clepyde sensible zenewys, from þe nuca ³⁶
þere comyþ xxx peire cordys, and on by hym selfen & þey buþ
mevable; & alle þe cordys þat comyþ of þe brayn, & þe nuca

[5 fol. 40 b]

boþe felynge & meuynge. & þe cordis ben white oute, bowable, strong¹ & tow³. & of her kynde þei bryngen meuynge & felynge to lymes. & for þat it is long¹ & dyuydiþ¹ alle þe parties of þe senewis
 4 * [in þe secunde tretys y schal ordeyne Anotamye of 3enewes & here place] as þei ligge; in þe whiche placis þou must be war whanne þou schalt kutte eiþer brenne / whanne þat we schulen ordeyne anotamie of official membris & of her woundis / Official membris
 8 is to seie: a fyngir, a ioynt, an hand, eiþer a foot *[ore] opere lymes of office /

Nerves of Feeling spring from the Brain: those of Motion from the Spinal Cord.

Official membris.

Arteries ben hoote nouzt of her owne kynde, but for þe hoot blood & lijf þat goiþ in hem from þe herte. Of her kynde þei ben
 12 colde & drie & þei han two clopis, outcept oon þat goiþ to þe lungis þe ynnere corde is stronger & grettere, þat he mowe wiþholde a meuable mater & an hoot. & her bigynnyng is in þe lift side of þe herte. & þere bigynnen two arteries; oon goiþ to þe lunge & haþ
 16 but oon coote and sprat in þe same lunge, & þere endiþ & bringiþ blood to þe lunge, bi whom he is norischid, & spirit of lijf, and þat he myzte brynge from þe lunge eir to þe herte for to entempre þe fumosite of hete of þe herte. & þis arterie² is ³y-clepid venales. & it

5th Member, Arteries spring from the heart, and have two coats,

[3 lf. 12]

¹ & dyuydiþ] a mistake for *to dryyde*. Latin: De divisione vero membrorum multum longa est doctrina.

² *Arteria renalis*, Pulmonary vein. It was taken to be an artery, as it carries arterial blood. See *Vicary's Anatomie*, ed. Furnivall, p. 58, note 1.

habbeþ boþe felynge & meffynge. & þe cordys ben whyte, bowable, stronge, & tow³; & of here kynde þey brynge meffynge & felynge to lymes. & for þat hit is longe to devydeþ alle þe partyes of 3enewes; *in þe secunde tretys y schal ordeyne Anotamye of
 24 3enewes & here place,* as þey ligge; in þe whiche place þou moste be ware, whenne þou schalt kutte opere brenne, whenne þat we schulle ordeyne Anotamye of official membris & of here woundes. Official membre ys to sigge: a ffynger, a ioynt, an hand, opere a
 28 fote *ore opire lymes of ofyce.

Add. MS. 12,056.

Arteries beþ hote, nouzt for here owne kynde, but for þe hote blod & lyf þat goþ in ham from þe herte. Of here kynde þey ben colde & drye, & þey han tweye clopes, outsepte on þat goth to þe
 32 longes. þe innore cote⁴ is grettere & strengere, þat he mowe wiþholde a Mevable mater & an hote. & here bygynnyng is of þe lyfte syde of þe herte. & þere bygynneþ tweye Arteries, on goþ to þe longe & haþ bot on cote & sprat in þe same longe, & þere endyth
 36 & bryngeþ blod to þe longe, by whom he ys y-norysschyde, & spirit of lyf, & þat he myzte brynge from þe longe eire⁵ to þe herte, for to entempren þe fumose hete of þe same herte. & þis Arterie ys clepyde

[4 fol. 41 a]

⁵ MS. *eiþere*.

save *Arteria venalis*, and that has but one.

The uses of Arteries:

1. to bring cold air to the heart;

2. to cast out the fumosity;

3. to carry life to the whole body.

is a maner veyne, for as myche as he ne hap but oon coote, and perfore he is þe more obedient to be drawe abroad þoruȝ out alle þe lungis; & also þat þe blood þat norischip þe lungis myȝte liztly swete out of þis arterie / þe toþer arterie þat cometh out of þe lift- 4 side of þe herte hap two cootis, bi cause þat oon myȝt not aȝenstonde þe strenkþe of þe spiritis; & also þat, þat is wipinne þe arterie, is ful derworþe & nedip greet kepinge / þer ben þre helpingis of þe arteries: oon is þat cold air myȝte bi hem be drawe & I-brouȝt to 8 þe herte whanne þe arterie is drawe abroad. þe secunde is, þat þe fumosite myȝte be cast out whanne he is constreyned / þe pridde is, þat þe spirit of lijf myȝte be brouȝt bi hem to al þe bodi / þese arteries ben deuydid many weies; whos dyuysiouns man mai nouȝt 12 conseyue bi his witt, ne þei ben nouȝt dredful to¹ surgiens craft, but whanne þou schalt drede þe arteries I schal telle þee in her placis /

6th Member, veynes.

[2 lf. 12, bk.]

Veins spring from the liver.

Veynes bi cause of her bodies ben deemed cold & drie; for þe 16 blood þat is withynne hem þei ben deemed hoot; & alle þe veynes han her bi²gynnyng at þe lyuere, in þe which lyuere .ij. veynes han pryncipal bigynnyng / oon veyne bigynneþ of þe holow³ side of þe lyuere. & is clepid porta³—þat is a ȝate / & her office is to drawe *[Chilum] 20

¹ a erased.

³ *Vena Porta*. See *Vicary*, p. 22, note 1.

Add. MS. 12,056.

venalis, & yt is a manere veyne, ffor as myche as he may haue but o cote, & perefore he is þe more obedient to be drawn abroad þorwe out alle þe longes & also þat þe blod þat noryschith þe longe myȝte liztlokere swete out of þis arterie. þe opere Artery, þat 24 comyth out of þe lefte syde of þe herte, hap two cotys, because þat on myȝt noȝt ageyne stonde þe strengþe of þe spirites, and also þat þat is wipynne þe Arterye is ful derwarde & nedip gret kepyng. þere ben þre helpynges of þe Arteries: on is þat colde eyre by hem 28 myȝte be drawe & y-brouȝt to þe herte, whenne þe arterye is drawe abroad; þe secunde ys þat þe fumosite myȝt be caste out, whenne sche is constreynede; þe pridde ys þat þe spirite of lyf myȝte be broȝt by hem to alle þe body. þese Arteries beþ deuydyde many 32 weyes, whose divisiones Man may noȝt conseyue by hys wyt, ne þey ne beþ noȝt dredful to surgiens crafte; but whenne þou schalt drede þe arterye i schal tellen þe in here places.

Veynes by cause of here bodies beþ y-demyde colde & drye; but 36 for þe blod þat is withynne hem þey beþ y-demyde hote, & alle þe veynes han here ⁴bygynnyng of þe lyffere, in þe whiche lyffere two veynes han pryncipal begynnyng. On veyne bygynneþ of þe holwe syde of þe lyvere, & ys y-clepyde **Porta**, þat ys a ȝatte, & here ofyce 40 is to drawe **chilum** from þe stomake & þe guttes by mene of þe

[4 fol. 41 b]

fro þe stomak & þe guttis bi mene of þe veynes miseraices¹; & þilke chilum spreadiþ þoru; al þe lyuere bi mene of veynes capillares / Chilum² is þe licour of þe mete, whanne it goiþ out of þe stomak & 4 þe guttes / Veynis miserak¹ ben smale veynes þat comen out of þe veyne þat is clepid porta & cleueþ on þe stomak & þe guttis / Venes capillares, þat ben veynes as it were heers of a mannes heed /

The Mesaraic veins bring

Chilum to the Portal Vein.

7th Member, panikelles. the fleshy membrane. The uses of the Pannicle.

.1.

.2.

.3.

[⁴ 1f. 13]

After hem comeþ panniclis—þat is to seie smal clooþ, þat is maad 8 of subtil predys of senewis, veynes & arteries / wherfore þei ben colde & drie & sensible / & þei han pre helpingis / þe firste is: þat þei moun bynde manye þingis in oon foorme, as þe panicle of þe heed byndiþ seuene boones / þe secunde Iuament is: þat þei hangen & 12 bynden summe membris wiþ opere as þe reynes to þe rigge & þe maris to þe maris³ to þe rigge / þe þridde helpinge is: þat þe mem-⁴bris þat ben incensible bi her kynde, bi þe panniclis þat wriep hem velen bi accident: as þe lungis, þe lyuere, & þe splene, & þe reynes. 16 þes lymes bi her kynde han no felynge, but what þei felen it is bi accidens of þe pannicle þat wriep hem.

þe⁵ fleisch is not hoot, but it is moist & haþ pre maner lijnes: oon is a symple fleisch, & his helpinge is to fulfille þe voide placis

8th Member Flesh. 3 Maner of fleisch.**

¹ Veynis miserak. See Vicary, p. 66, note 7.

² Chilum. See Vicary, p. 68, note 2.

³ MS. þe maris to þe maris to þe rigge. The second *maris* is cancelled.

⁵ Latin: Caro vero calida est et humida.

20 veynes miscraykus; þilke chylum spreadeþ þorwe al þe lyffere by mene of veynes Capillares. Chilum ys þe licoure of mete & of þe drynke, whenne yt goþ out of þe stomake & þe guttes. Veynes miserayke beþ smale veynes, þat comyþ out of þe veyne þat is 24 y-clepyde porta, & clevyþ on þe stomake & þe gottys. Veynes capillarys þat beþ veynes, as yt were herys of a Mannes hed.

Add. MS. 12,056.

¶ After hem comyþ pannyceles, þat ys to sigge, a smal cloþ, þat ys mad of sotyþ predys of synwis veynes & arteries, where 28 fore þey ben colde & dryȝe & sensible, & þey han pre helpynges. þe firste is þat they mowe bynden manye þynges in on forme, as þe pannicle of þe hed bynde vii bonys; þe secunde Iuament is þat þey hongen & bynden somme membrys wiþ opere, as þe reyns to þe 32 rugge & þe marys to þe rugge bon; þe þrydde helpinge ys þat some membrys þat beþ insensible by here kynde, by þe pannycles þat wreyeþ hem ffeþ by accydent, as þe longes, þe lyffere, & þe splene, & þe reynes; þese lymes by here kynde haþ non felynge, but what 36 þat þey felyn it ys by Accident of þe pannycle þat wreyeþ hem.

þe flesch is noȝt hot, but yt is moist, & haþ pre manere lyknesse; on ys symple flesch, & hys helpynge ys to fulfille þe voyde placys

1. Simple flesh fills up hollows.

2. Glandulous flesh turns

blood into milk, and makes sperm into spittle.

3. Brawny or muscular flesh.

[4 fr. 13, bk.]

9th Member, Skin. It is temperate.

of smale lymes to brynge hem to a good schap, & þat ech hard lyme schulde nouȝt hirte oper wiþ confucacioun¹ togidere / Anoþer maner fleisch þer is þat is glandelose, þat is as it were accornis,² & his Iuament is þat he turne³ humedites, þat is to seie moistnes to her 4 heete; as þe glandelose fleisch of wommans brestis þe which þat turneþ þe blood þat is drawen from þe maris into mylk; & þe glandelose fleisch of þe ballockis, þat turneþ þe blood into sperme / & þe glandelose fleisch of þe chekis þat engendriþ spotil / þe þridde 8 maner fleisch is a fleisch þat is in brawnys, þat is clepid a brawn fleisch, for he is medlid wiþ sutil þedis of cordis, as I schal telle after þe whiche helpingis schal be told in þe 4 anotamie of þe brawn.

At þe laste is þe skyn þat is temperat in al her qualitees; & it 12 is maad of smale þedis of veynes, senewis, & arteries, þat makip him sensible, & zeueþ him lif & worching, þat ben governouris of al þe bodi. & þe skyn is maad temperat, for he schulde knowe hoot, coold, moist, & drie, soft, hard, sharp, & smoþe / & if þat þe skyn 16 were as sensible as a senewe, þanne a man myȝte not dwelle in erþe ne in hoot eir; ne þe skyn of þe fyngris endis þe whiche þat is more temperat þan any oþir skyn of þe bodi ne schulde nouȝt be a

¹ *confucacioun*. Addit. *confricacioun*. See page 23, note 2.

² *accornis*, glandes.

³ Latin: *eius iuvamentum est, ut convertat humiditates ad eius colorem*. The English translator read: *calorem*.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[3 fol. 42 a]

of smale lymes, to bryngen hem to a gode schappe, & þat iche harde 20 lyme 5ne scholde nouȝt hurten opere with *confucacioun* togidere. An opere manere flesch ys þat is glandelose, þat ys as hyt were achcharnes, & hys Iuamente is þat he turnyȝth vmydites to here hete: as þe glandelose flesch of wommans brestys, whyche þat 24 turnyȝth þe blod þat ys drawe from þe marys into þe mylk, þe glandelose flesch of þe ballokes, þat turnyȝth þe blod into sperme, & þe glandelose flesch of the chekys þat engendreþ spotel. þe þridde manere of flesch ys a flesch þat is in brawnys, þat ys y-clepede a 28 brawny flesch, ffor he ys medlyde wiþ sotyl þedys of cordys, as y schal tellyn aftre, whose helpynge schal be tolde in þe Anotamye of þe brawne.

At þe laste is þe schyn, þat is temperat in al here qualite, & is 32 y-mad of smale þedys of veynes, synwes, & Arteries, þat makeþ hym sensible, and geveþ hym lyf and norisschyng, þat he be governoure of alle þe body. & þe skyn ys y-mad temperat, for he scholde knowe hot, colde, moyste & drye, softe & hard, scharpe & smeþe; & ȝif þe 36 skyn were as sensible as a ȝenewe, a man myȝte noȝt dwellen in colde eyre, ne in hote eyre; ne þe skyn of þe fynGRES endys, whiche þat ys more temperat þenne eny opere skyn of þe lody, ne scholde

good demere in knowynge hoot, cold, hard, scharp, soft, eiper neische.

Brawnnes þouȝ þat þei be maad of mater medlid, neþeles þei ben 9th Member, Muscles are instruments of moving. Cords are made from Sinews and Ligaments,
 4 rekened among membris consimiles, for þei comen to þe making of membris officials / Brawn is maad of fleisch, senewe, & ligamentis, & þei ben instrumente voluntarie meuyng. þe senewe þat comeþ fro þe brayn, & þe nucha & goþ forþ to meue þe lymes is medlid
 8 wiþ a ligament / & whanne þe senewe & þe ligament ben medlid togidere, it is clepid a corda / & þe corde is maad for þre skilis. [2 lf. 14]
 þe firste¹ for a symple sinewe is to cen²sible; þe senewe bi him-silf the Sinew alone being too sensible,
 12 ligament þat is incensibile lettīþ þe felynge of þe senewe, & bringīþ him to a profitable temperaunce / þe senewe haþ .ij. opere defaultis: neischenesse and liznesse. But þo .ij. defaultis þe medlynge of þe ligament fulfillīþ³; for þe neischenes is temperid & strenkpid, & þe too soft,
 16 litilnes is maad more. þe neischnes comeþ of þe brayn for it is myche, & þe litilnes comeþ of þe nucha, for it is litil. þat þat is maad of þis nerf & þis ligament is clepid a corde; þe which þat and too small. cordis.
 meueþ þe lymes to þe wille of þe soule, whanne þat it is schortid

¹ þe firste in margin.

³ fulfillīþ, supplet. See *Cath. Angl.*, p. 145, to *Fulfyllē*, supplere vicem Alterius.

20 noȝt ben a gode demere in knowynge hot, cold, hard opere scharpe, Add. MS. 12,056.
 softe opere nessche.

¶ Brawnys þowȝ þey ben mad of matere y-medlyde, nevere þe latere þey beþ y-reknyde amonge membrys consimiles, for þey comen
 24 to þe makyng of Membrys-officiales. Brawne ys y-mad of flesch, [4 fol. 42 b]
 3 zenewe, & ligamente, & þey ben Instrument off voluntarie mevyng. þe zenewe þat comyþ from þe brayn & þe nuca, & goþ forþ to meue the lymes, ys y-medlyde with a ligamente, & whenne þe zenewe & þe
 28 ligamente beþ medlyde togedyre, yt ys clepyde a corde, & the corde ys y-made for þre skylles: þe ffurste for a symple senewe ys to sensible, & þe zenewe by hym-self ne myȝte noȝt suffren to grete travaylle & mevyng, but þe felawschipe of þe ligamente, þat ys
 32 insensible, lutīþ þe felynge of þe synwe, and bryngēþ hym to a profitable temperaunce. þe zenewe hadde tweyne opere defaultes: nesschenesse & litylnesse, but þo tweyne defaultes, þe medlynge of þe ligament ffulfilleþ; for the neschenesse ys entempred & y-strength-
 36 yde, and þe lytelnesse ys y-made more. The nesschenesse comyþ of þe brayn, ffor it ys nessche; and þe lytelnesse comeþ of þe Nuca, for it ys lytel. þat þat is mad of þis nerff & þis ligamente ys clepyde a corde, whiche þat meviþ þe lymes to wyl of þe soule,

Muscles are
made from
cords and
flesh.

.1.

ouper drawn after þat þe lyme bouwip. To þis¹ corde, þer is asocied a symple *[flesch] for to make a brawn for þre profitis / þe firste profizt^t þat is in drawyng & wipdrawyng of þe corde, þe fleisch schulde be as a pelewe vpon þe which he myzt reste / þe secunde, 4

.2.

þat þe fleisch þat is neische & moist schulde kepe þe corde, þat^t he drie nouzt in her meuyng / þe þridde, þat þe makyng of lymes

.3.

were þe more schaploker. / þe brawn is maad bowyng as a bowe

[² If 14, bk.]

When the
Cords enter
the Muscles,
they are
divided into
many
threads.

þat is bent; & for þe kynde wolde kepe þis complexioun, he clopide⁸ 8
²þe brawn wip a pannicle / þe corde whanne he entrip into þe brawn
is departid into many smale predys, & þei ben clepid villes³—þat is
to seie wrappingis. & þese villes ben of .iiij. maner: in lenkþe bi
þe which vertu, þat^t drawip hap myzt, in brede, bi þe which vertu 12
þat castide out hap myzt / in þwert ouer bi þe which vertu *[þat] with
halt hap myzt / & at þe eendis of þe brawn þilke predys ben gaderid
togidere to make a corde, aftir þat it is nessessarie / many cordis
eiper brawnes to ben engendrid. & official membrs ben maad of 16
þese consimile membrs, þe whiche þat ben instrumentes to resonable
soule. And in þe ij. tretis I wole telle þe anotamie of lymes
of office.

¹ Lat. : Huic autem chordæ—associatur caro simplex. Comp. Add. MS.

³ villes. Lat. fila.

Add. MS.
12,056.

whenne þat it is schortid opere y-drawe, aftere þat þe lyme bowyth 20
to þis corde. ffor þere ys Asosyed a symple *flesch forto maken a
brawne for þre proffytes: þe furste profyt, þat bope in drawyng &
wipdrawyng of þe corde, the flesch scholde be as a pylwe, vp on
whom he myzte reste; þe secunde cause, þat þe flesch þat is nessche 24

[⁴ fol. 43 a]

& moyst schulde kepen þe corde, þat^t ⁴sche dreyzede nozt in here
mevyng; þe þridde, þat þe makyng of lymes were þe more schap-
lokore. þe brawne is made bowyng, as a bowe þat ys y-bent; &
for þat kynde wolde kepe þys compositioun, he clothyde þe brawne 28
wip a pannycle. þe corde whenne he entriþ in to þat brawne, ys
departyde in to many smale predys, & þey ben clepyde vylls, þat
ys to sugge, wrabbynges. & þese villes bene of þre maners, in
lengþe—by whom vertue þat drawep hap myzt, in brede—by whom 32
vertu þat castyth out hap myzt, in twart ofere—by whom vertu
*þat wiphalt hap myzt; & at þe ende of þe brawne þilke predys bep
gadride to gedre to maken a corde, after þat it is necessarie, many
cordys opere brawnys to ben engendride. & official membrys ben 36
y-mad of þese consimile membrys, whiche þat bep instrument to
resonable soule. And in þe secunde tretys y wyl tellen þe anotamye
of lymes of office.

The firste chapitle //

¶ Capm. jm

¶ þe .iiij. techinge is of difference of woundis & of general de vulneribus
 curis / We schulen undrestonde þat wounde, & old wounde, festre
 4 & cankre woundid, & boon out of loynte, & a boon to-broken, &
 apostyme, alle þese ben clepid vndoyng of þat þat is hool. & alle
 þese sijknessis, & many oon opir as weel, moun falle to *consimile*
membris as to official *membris* / *vunnus* is a newe wounde / *vlcus* is
 8 an old rotid wounde. ¹I schal tellen in her placis þe difference of ^[1 leaf 15]
 festre & cankre & apostyme; plage comounly is taken for an oold
 wounde, & ofte tymes we fynde þat an old wounde is clepid *vlnus*,
 as *ypocras seip* / *vulnera annua necesse est in eis os taliefieri*² & *cica- ypocras*
 12 *trices concavas fieri*: þat is to seie, it is nedful³ þat þe boon in an
 oold wounde to be rotid & þe *cicatrices* to be holow³ / *Cicatrice* is þe
 place of þe schynboon⁴ þe wounde, whanne þat it is hool / Summe
 woundis ben symple, & summe compound / in two maner he is
 16 clepid a symple wounde / oon maner, for he haþ not lost of fleisch /
 anoper maner for he haþ noon opir sijknesse wip him, ne is nouzt
 distemperid / A wounde compound is clepid contrarie to him þat is
 symple / but boþe symple & compoundis sumtyme is in þe fleisch or
 Wounds are
 either
 woundis
 sempell
 or compound,

² Read *tabefieri*.³ it is nedful in margin.⁴ *schynboon*, read *schyn* above. See below.

20 The ffurste Chapitle of þe þridde techyng is of differ- Add. MS.
 ence of woundes & olde woundes & off generall 12,056.
 cures.

¶ We schulle vndirstonde þat wounde, olde wounde, ffestre, cancre
 24 y-wondyde, a bon out of loynt, a bon tobroken, Aposteme, alle þese
 ben y-clepyde vndoyng of þat þat ys hol, & alle þese seknesse &
 manye opere as wel mowe fallen to *consimile membrys*. as to oficial
membris. *Vlnus* is a newe wounde. *Vlcus* ys an olde rotyde
 28 wounde. I schal ⁵tellen in here place þe dyfference of festre & ^[5 fol. 43 b]
 cancre & apostemys. Plage comynliche ys y-taken of an olde wonde;
 and ofte tyme we fynden, þat an olde wounde ys y-clepyde *Vlnus*,
 as *Ipcres seip*: *Vulnera Annua necesse est in eis os tabefieri* &
 32 *cicatrices concavas fieri*. ¶ That is to sugge, it ys ned, þat þe bon
 in an olde wounde to be rotyd, & þe *Cicatrices* to be holwe. *Cica-*
trice ys þe place of þe skyn above the wounde, whenne þat yt is
 hol. Some wounde huþ symple & some ben *componyde*. In tweye
 36 manere he ys clepyde a symple wounde. On manere, for he haþ
 nouzt leste of flesch; an opere maner, for he haþ non opere seknesse
 with hym, ne is nouzt distempride. A wounde componed ys y-clepyde
 contrarye to hym þat is symple. But boþe symple & also com-

and have
different
causes, both
internal

[1 lf. 15, bk.]

and external.

The object of
healing is to
close a
wound, and
to restore
what has
been lost.

Nota

Bones, liga-
ments, and
similar parts
cannot be
restored;

in þe senewe, or in þe boon, or in þe veynes, or in þe arterie / also þese woundis han dyuers cause. Summe comen fro wipinne of þe malice, eiper of to gret multitude of humouris. *[forto gret multitude of humores] opirwhile tobrekiþ þe membre & wipholdiþ & woundiþ 4 him / Cold matere streyneþ, drie mater kuttiþ, moisture wipoute mater mak iþ no wounde, but selden with ¹mater, but he drawe þe lyme to brode. & also þe cause wipoute² mai be dyuers opirwhile wip a swerd eiper wip a þing¹ þat¹ kuttiþ along, operwhile wip a knyf 8 or wip a spere or an arowe þat prickiþ, & summe ben maad wip a staf or wip a stoon eiper wip fallynge, & summe ben maad wip bytynge of an hound oupir a wood hound; & alle þese ben diuers aftir þe dyuersite of her causis; & also þe maner of helynge is dyuers / Al þe intencioun 12 of helynge of woundis is for to sowden or to helen & to restoren þat, þat is departid, þe which þat mai not oueral be doon / for if þat membris of office ben kutt of, þei moun neuere be restorid, ne noon of þe consimile membris mai be restorid, if he be doon away: 16 as boonis, pelliculis, gristlis, ligamentis & skyn / For þe cause of her generacioun is þe sperme of þe fadir & of þe modir, as I tolde tofore / but in place of þing¹ þat is I-lore, kynde restoriþ þat, þat is moost¹ conuenient¹ to þe place; but fleisch mai be restorid bi cause 20

² *The cause wipoute, causa exterior.*

Add. MS.
12,056.

[2 fol. 44 a]

ponyd some tyme is in þe flesch opere in þe synwe oper in bon, opere in veyne, opere in arterie. Also þese wondes han dyverse causes. Some comen from wipynne of þe malice, opere of to gret multytude of humores; *forto gret multytude of humores opere while 24 tobrekyth þe membre, þat wipholdiþ & woundiþ hym cold matere streyneþ, drye matere kutteþ, moistnesse withouten matere makeþ no wounde, but selden with matere, but he drawiþ þe lyme to brode. And also þe cause wipout may be dyverse, operwhyle with a swerd, 28 ore with a þynge þat kutteþ alonge, operwhile with a knyff, opere a spere, opere an arwe þat ³prykeþ, & somme ben made wip a stafe, opere with a ston, opere with fallynge, & somme ben mad with bytynge of an hound, opere of a wod hounde; & alle þese ben dyverse, 32 after þe dyverste of here cause; & also þe manere of helynge ys dyverse. Alle þe entensioun of helynge of woundes, ys forto sowdyn & to helyn, & to restoren þat þat is departyde, whiche þat may nozt overe al be don. Ffor ȝif þat membres of offyce ben kutte of, þey 36 mowe neuere ben restoryd; ne non of þe consimile membres may be restoryde, & he be don away: as bonys, pellicules, grustles, ligamentis & schyn. Ffor þe cause of here generacioun is þe sperme of þe ffadire & þe modere, as y tolde tofore; but in place of thyng 40 þat is lore, kynde restoryth þat þat is most convenient to þat place; but the flesch may be restoryd, by cause þat þe blod ys engendred

þat þe blood is engendrid al day in us, & þe blood is þe mater of þe flesh, veins, and arteries can be.
 fleisch / & summe seien þat veynes, arteries, & senewis myȝt not be
 restorid as þei weren tofore; but þei moun ¹ be restorid as boonys [1 leaf 16]
 4 ben / But Galien and Auicen & I þat am expert here seiynge,² G. A.
 we³ seie þat þei moun be restorid wiþ veri consolidacioun, whanne
 þat her kuttinge is lital, & whanne þat þe senewis þat ben newe
 kutt⁴ & ⁴ soude aȝen; but þei moun not be consoudid, whanne þat
 8 her kuttinge is myche & greet; & resoun grauntip it / Senewis bi
 kynde ben neische & viscouse; & þefore þei moun⁵ ben consoudid,
 & þe veynes & þe arteries moun be consoudid bi resoun of þe blood vaynes & arteries may be consouded but not senewis.
 þat is in hem. I þenke to ordeyne ech chapitle bi him-silf after
 12 þe dyuersite of lymes & of placis, þe whiche þat þei ben maad
 ynne / & I wole bigynne at a symple wounde maad in fleisch /

þe secunde chapitle of þe þridde techinge /

ijo. co.

16 **N**ow we wolen trete of a wounde maad in fleisch. We wolen Of wounde maad in fleisch.
 bigynne at a symple wounde maad wiþ knyff or wiþ
 swerd, or spere or arowe, or wiþ ony opir þing semblablele to hem.

² I þat am expert here seiynge. Lat.: ego qui sum expertus eorum dicta.

³ we, added above line.

⁴ þ, mistake for ben.

⁵ not, erroneously added above line.

al day in vs, & þe blod ys þe matere of flesch; & somme suggen þat Add. MS. 12,056.
 veynes, synwes, & arteries myȝte nouȝt be restoryde as þey were
 20 tofore; but þey mowe be restoryd as bonys buþ. But Galien &
 Avycene, & I þat am expert here suggynge, suggen þat þey mowe be
 restoryde with verrey consolidacioun, whanne þat here kuttinge ys
 lyteH, & whenne þat þe synwys þat buþ newe kutte beþ so wyde
 24 aȝeyne; but þey mowe nouȝt be consouded, whanne þat here kutt-
 ynge ys gret & myche; & resoun grauntyth yt. Synwys by kynde
 buþ nessche and viscose; & þefore þey mowe ben consouded. þe
 veynes & þe arteries mowe be consouded by resoun of þe blod þat ys
 28 in hem. I þynke to ordeynen eche Chapitell ⁶ be hym selven, aftere [6 fol. 44 v]
 þe dyversite of lymes & of placys, whyche þat þey buþ y-made yn;
 & y wyl begynne at a symple wounde y-mad in flesch.

¶ þe secunde Chapitell off þe thridde techynge off the
 32 ffurst tretis is of cure of a wounde y-mad in
 flesch.

Now we willen treten of a wounde y-makyd in flesch. We
 wylle begynne at a symple wounde, y-mad wiþ knyff opere wiþ
 36 swerd ore spere, opere with arwe, opere with enye opere thyng
 SURGERY.

Simple
wounds, if
painless, will
close if only
bandaged,

[1 lf. 16, bk.]

Naracio.

Ego curauy
homo.
as has been
shown in the
case of an old
man.

Treat slight
wounds with
pulis conso-
lidativus



Bynde togideris pilke wounde with a boond þat closiþ þe wounde togideris, & kepe pilke wounde from swellynge wiþ þe whizt of an ey leid aboute þe wounde, & lete þe wounde be in reste; & þer nedip noon oper cure, namely, ¹ whanne þe wounde is wiþoute akyng; but, & þer 4 be in þe wounde greet akyng, þanne it is a tokene, þat þer is a senewe prickid vndir þe wounde, eiper a pannicle þat is bitwene þe fleisch and þe boon; & þanne þer is anoþer cure, as I schal telle in þe chapitle of puncture of a senewe þat I haue heeled a man þat² was *[sefenty 8 zere olde þat was] smyte wiþ a spere þoruþ þe fleisch of þe buttoke, bi þe lenkþe of a fote, * [& more] but pilke wounde touchide no senewe, & þat I wiste sikirliche, for he hadde noon akyng / I heeled þe wounde open aldai wiþ a litil smal tent & a schort, þat I myzte 12 wite, if þat he schulde aken on þe morowe, & I comaundide him to reste / & on þe morowe I foond noon inflacioun ne akyng; & þanne I took away þe tent & lete þe wounde closen, & so comaundide I him to reste þe secunde dai / In þe þridde day he was hool. & if a 16 wounde were maad wiþ a swerd or wiþ ony þing þat bitip in lenkþe, anoon þou must loke if þe wounde be so litil þat he nede no sowynge, & þanne bryng þe parties of þe wounde togideris, þat it may be weel ioyned, & leie aboute þe wounde a poundir maad oon partie 20

² þat, scribal insertion.

Add. MS.
12,056.

semblable to hem. Bynde togedyre pilke wounde with a band þat close þe wounde to gedire, & kepe þe wounde from swellynge, with þe whyte of an eyze y-leyde aboute þe wounde, & lete þat wounde ben in reste, & þere nedyth none opere cure, namlye, whanne þe wounde 24 ys withouten akyng; but and þere be in wounde gret akyng, þanne þere is a tokne þat þere ys a synwe prikyde vndire þe wounde, opere a pannicle þat ys betwene þe flesch & þe bon, & þanne þere ys al an opere cure, as y schal telle in þe chapiteil of the puncture of a synwe. 28 And y haue helyd a man þat was *sefenty zere olde, þat was y-smyten wiþ a spere þorwe þe flesch of þe buttoke by þe lengþe of a fote * & more, but pilke wonde touchyde non synwe; & þat y wiste sykerliche, for he had non akyng; y helde the wounde opyn al a day, 32 with a lyte smal tente & a schert þat y myzte wyte, 3if þat he scholde ake on þe morwe & I comaundyde hym to reste, and on þe morwe y fonde non inflacion ne akyng, & þenne y caste awaye þe tente & lete þe wounde closen, & so y comaundide hym to reste, & wiþynne 36 þe þridde day he was al hol. And 3if þat a wounde were mad wiþ a swerd, opere wiþ eny þyng þat ³kutteþ in lengþe, a man most loke 3if þe wounde be so litel þat he nede non sowynge, & þenne bryng þe parties of þe wounde togedyre, þat it may wel ben y-joynede, & 40 leye above þe wounde a poudere y-mad of on partye of franke-En-

[3 fol. 45 a]

of frankencense, & of two parties¹ of sandragoun,² & of þre parties of quyk lym, & lete nouȝt þe poudre entre bitwene in þe wounde butt above, for þer schal no þing³ entre in þe wounde, & kepe þe parties of þe wounde þat ben brouȝt togidere wiþ a plumaciol³ .iiij. cornered maad of herdis or of towe in þis maner:  oon bi þe sidis of þe wounde, so þat boþe þilke plumaciols holde þe wounde þus iclosed⁴:  & ioyned togidere as it⁵ was ioyned arst, or it were kutt / & bynde þe wounde togidere aboue þe plumaciols wiþ a rolle þat goiþ ouerþwert aftir þis lettre .X. & take a lynnene cloþ & wete him in two parties of þe white of an ey, in oon partie of oyle of rosis, þei ben togidere medlid, undir þe plumaciols, leid aboue þe wounde þat is brouȝt togidere, for to kepe þe⁵ poudre; & do nouȝt away þi medicyn til .iiij. daies ben goon, butt if þat þe wounde ake or be to-swollen. & þanne bynde þe wounde as it was biforn wiþ þe white of an ey; oyle, poudre, & plumaciols. Butt if þe wounde were so myche, þat byndynge wolde nouȝt suffice, or were kutt ouerþwert⁶ ouer þe lyme, so þat þe parties of þe lyme myȝt nouȝt wel be⁶ brouȝt togideris, þanne sowe þe wounde on þis maner / Ioynne þe lippis of þe wounde, & be war þat noon oyle *[ne dust] ne no þing⁷ ellis, þat lettib consolidacioun, falle bitwene þe lippis of þe

[leaf 17]
Way of dressing a wound with compresses.

Nota



Large wounds and those which run athwart the limb are to be stitched
[6 ff. 17, bk.]

² *Sandragoun*. Sanguis draconis: the gum of the Dragon-tree. Kersey. 1706. See Notes.

³ *Plumaceoli*: Bolsters used by Surgeons. Kersey. 1706.

⁴ *iclosed*, inserted in margin.

⁵ MS. *wounde*, cancelled.

sence, & of two parties of sandragoun & of þre parties of quyke lyme, & lete nouȝt þe poudre entre wiþynne þe wounde butt above, for þere schal nobynge entre withynne þe wounde, & kepe þe parties of þe wounde þat buþ brouȝt togidere wiþ a plumacyole þre corneled y-made of hurdes opere towȝ in þis manere  on be þe sydes of þe wounde, so þat boþe þilke plumacioles holde þe wounde þus y-closyde  & joynde togidere, as yt was joynde ere þenne yt was ykutte; & bynde þe wounde togidere abouen þe plumacioles, with a rolle þat goth twartoffere after þis lettere XX, & take a lynnene cloth & wete hym in two parties of whyte of an eyȝe, & in on partie of oyle of roses i-bete togidere, vndire þe plumacioles aboue þe wounde, þat ys y-browȝt togedyre, forto kepe þe poudre, & do nouȝt away þe medycine tyl foure dayes ben ago, butt ȝif þat þe wounde ake, opere ellys be to-swollyn; & þenne bynde þe wounde as yt was toforne, with þe whyte of þe eyȝe, oyle, poudre, & plumacioles. Butt ȝif þe wounde were so myche, þat þe byndynge wolde nouȝt suffice, opere were kutte twart offere þe lyme, so þat þe parties of þe lyme myȝt nouȝt wel be browȝt togidere, þanne sowe þe wounde on þis manere: joyne þe lippes of þe wounde togidere, & ware þat non oyle *ne dust, ne nobynge ellys þat lattyd consolidacioun, falle bytwene

Add. MS.
12,056.

with an
acus trian-
gulum.

Way of stitch-
ing a wound.

Number of
the stitches
and their
distance from
each other.

[1 leaf 18]

The stitches
must be deep
enough

wounde, & haue a nedle pre cornerid, whos iȝe schal be holid on
boȝe sidis, so þat þe þred þat is in þe nedle may lie in þe holowȝ
place, & pilke þred schal be twyned, & wiȝoute knotte, & I-wexid,
& þe lippis of þe wounde schal be sowid togideris; & þe þred schal 4
be knytt wiȝ two knottis in þe firste place, & in þe secunde place
wiȝ oon knotte; & so make as manye poyntis, as it is nessessarie,
& ech poynt schal be from oȝir bi þe brede of a litil fyngir, &
streyn þe wounde with knottyng & þe sewynge of þe lippis of þe 8
wounde togidere þat he ake sumwhat, but nouȝt to myche. & if þat
þer nede mo poyntis to be þere þan two, euermore þer schal be odde
poyntis. as .iiij. v. or .vij. & þe oon poynt schal be first from þe oon
eende of þe wounde, bi þe space of a litil fyngir, & þe toȝir poynt 12
schal be at þe oȝir ende of þe wounde, & þe þridde poynt schal be
in þe myddil of þe wounde / & if it be nede to haue mo poyntis,
þanne schalt þou ¹bigynne at þe myddil poynt, & make as manye
poyntis on boȝe sidis as it is nede, til þou come to boȝe eendis / For 16
bi þis maner of sowynge neiȝir partie schal be crokid, & so þe place
mai faire be restorid, & euermore take kepe þat *^[3if] þe wounde be
not depe, þi sowynge schal be nouȝt deep / & if þi wounde be deep,
þi sowynge schal be deep, þat alle þe parties of þe wounde moun 20

Add. MS.
12,056.

[2 fol. 45 b]

þe lippes of þe wounde, & haue an nedle ²þre kornerde, whose eyȝe
scholde be holyde on boȝe sydes, so þat þe ³þrede þat is in þe nedle
may ligge in þe holwe place, & pilke schal be twynede, & withoute
knotte & ywaxide, & þe lippes of þe wounde schulle ben sowyde 24
togedyre, & þe þrede schal be knette with two knottes in þe firste
place; in þe secunde place with on knotte, & so make as manye
punctis as yt is necessarie, & eche puncte schal be from oȝere by þe
brede of a lytel ffyngere, & streyn þe wounde wiȝ knettyng, & þe 28
sowynge of þe lippes of þe wounde togidere þat he ake sumwhat,
but nouȝt to myche, & ȝif þat þere nede mo punctis to be þere þen
two, eȝere more þere schal be odde punctys, as þre, fyfe, oȝere seuene;
& þe on puncte schal be fyrst from þe on ende of þe wonde by þe 32
⁴brede of a litel fyngire, & þe oȝere puncte schal be at þe oȝere ende
of þe wounde, & þe þridde puncte schal be in þe myddil of þe
wounde; & ȝif it be nede to haue mo punctis, þou schalt begynnen
at þe myddel puncte, & make as manye punctes on boȝe þe sydes, as 36
yt ys nede, tyl þou come to boȝe endys; ffor by þis manere of
sowynge neiȝere partye schal be crokyde, & so þe place may faire
ben restoryde. And euermore take hede, *ȝif þe wounde be nouȝt
depe, þy sowynge schal be nouȝt depe. And ȝif þy wounde be depe 40
þy sowynge schal be depe, þat alle þe parties of þe wounde mowe

³ þridde cancelled before þrede.

⁴ sp. cancelled before brede.

be ioyned / For if þe wounde were deep, & þi sowynge not deep, to leave no hollows in the wound.
 nede þer muste be in þe deppe of þe wounde a greet holownes, to
 þe which holownes blood & quytere schulde be cast; & pilke
 4 quytere & blood schulde lette þe helynge of þe wounde. & þe
 poudre þat is seid in þe same chapitle, schal be leid aboue on þe
 same wounde; & þou schalt kepe þe sewynge & þe parties of þe
 wounde þat I brouzte togidere wip plumaciols þre cornerid, & wip
 8 alle þe opere þingis þat ben in þis chapitle tofore seid / And if þat
 a wounde haþ be to longe in þe eir open, which þat is þe cause of
 quytere þat lettþ consolidacioun, þanne we musten clense þe wounde
 wip þis mundificatif þat is maad of flour of wheete & hony & water a mundi-
 12 & mel roset, ¹I-colat, þat is to seie, clensid from þe rosis, and of ¹ If, 18, bk.]
 barly mele / Of þese mundificatyues þou schalt haue a ful techinge
 in þe laste tretis /

But if þe wounde be compound, a leche muste haue as manye
 16 intenciouns as þer ben accidentis to þe wounde / I sette an ensauple. *Nota*
 I suppose þat a wounde be compound wip holownes & lesynge of
 fleisch & of skyn, & þere be myche quyter, & also þat þer be
 apostyme, & þer be a greet akyng; al þis is clepid a wounde com-
 20 pound / þanne schulen we nouzt onliche take hede to consolidacioun
 of þat wounde: þat is to seie, helynge; but first we schulen aswage
 If pus and pain come on,

be joyned togedire. Ffor ȝif þe wounde were depe, & þy sowynge
 were nozt depe, nedys þere moste ben in þe deppe of þe wounde a
 24 gret holwenesse, to þe whiche holwenesse blod & quyter scholde be
 cast; & pilke quyter & blod scholde lette þe ² helynge of þe wounde. ² fol. 46 a]
 And þe poudre þat ys seyde in þe same chapytell schal be leyde
 aboue þe same sowynge, & þou schalt kepen þe sowynge & þe parties
 28 of þe wounde, þat buþ brouzt togedyre, with plumacioles þre cornelyd
 & with alle opere þynges þat bep in þis chapytel forseyde. And ȝif
 þat a wounde haue be to longe in þe eyre opyne, whiche þat ys
 cause of quyter þat latteþ consolidacioun, þenne we moste clense þe
 32 wounde with ³ þis mundificatyff, þat is mad of floure, of whete & hony
 & watyre opere mel rosate, & colat þat ys y-clansed from þe roses, &
 of barly mele. Of þese mundyficatyfes þou schalt han a ful tech-
 ynge in þe laste tretys. But ȝif þe wounde be y-componed, a leche
 36 moste han as manye intensiones as þere ben accidentys to þe wonde.
 Y sette ensauple: y suppose þat a wounde be componed with hol-
 wenesse & lesynge of flesch & of skyn, & þere be myche quyter &
 al so þere be a posteme & þere be grete akyng, al this ys clepyde a
 40 wounde componyde. þanne þe schulle nozt only take hede to con-
 solidacioun of pilke wounde, þat is to sigge helynge, but firste we

³ MS. þat.

deal with the
symptoms
separately,

and *first*
relieve pain.
nota.

Auicē
[² leaf 19]

G. & .A.

A purulent
wound must
be cleansed,
before closing
it or putting
on a "rege-
neratif."

akþe & apostymes, as it schal be teld in þe chapitle of an eupostyme & of akyngē / Aftirward we schulen clense þe quytture, & aftir þat regēnere fleisch, & at þe laste bryngē ouer cicatrice. In alle þe worchingis of medicyns, where þat akþe is, first we schulen aswage akþe, 4 for aboue al opir þing strong akyngē ouercomeþ myzt of vertu & strenkþe / & also resoun telliþ; membris¹ þat han akþe, þilke akþe is cause of drawyngē from þe opere placis to þe membre þat akiþ þe worste ²þing of þe humouris / Auicē seiþ: humouris ben drawn 8 to lymes þat aken for .ij. causis: o cause, for kynde * [& Spiritus and humourer rennyth þedyre; þe secunde cause, for akþe feblyth þe lyme, & humours] & spiritis rennen to þe feble lyme / þe swellyngē schal eer be heelid þan þe wounde / Galien & Auicē tellen: þat al 12 þing þat consowdiþ þe wounde greueþ þe wounde, if þat þer be apostyme wiþ þe wounde / & þe quytture schal be clensid or þou leie ony regeneratijf to holow; woundis. Auicē telliþ þe cause, whi þat yuel fleisch growiþ in a wounde / If þat a leche wolde bisie him 16 wiþ a medicyn regeneratijf to regendre fleisch in a wounde, & er þan þe quytture were clensid / & whanne þat þe wounde is clensid, þanne we schulen fulfille þilke holownes wiþ fleisch or þat þe wounde be

¹ Lat., *Membra quoque dolorem habentia, dolor ipse est causa attrahendi aliunde humorum pessimatatem.*

Add. MS.
12,056.

[⁴ fol. 46 b]

schul aswagen akþe & aposteme, as yt schal be tolde in þe chapitle 20 of aposteme & of akyngē; aftirwarde we schullen clanse þe quyter, & aftere þat regenere flesch, & at þe laste bryngē ouere a Cicatrice. In alle þe werkynges of medicine, where þat akþe ys, ffirste we schulle aswagen akyngē; ffor abouen alle opere þyngē stronge 24 akyngē, ouere comeþ myzte of vertu & strengþe, & also resoun tellyth; membrys þat han akþe, þilke akþe ys cause of drawyngē from opere places to þe membre þat akeþ³ þe worste þyngē of þe humoures. Avicēne seyth humours beþ drawn to ⁴lymes þat aken 28 for two causes: On cause, for kynde * & Spiritus and humoures rennyth þedyre; þe secunde cause, for akþe feblyth þe lyme, & humours * & spiritis renne to þe feble lymme. þe swellyngē schal ere ben y-helyde þen þe wounde. Galien & Avycēne tellen þat alle 32 þyngē þat consoudeþ þe wounde, grefyþ þe wounde, zif þat þere be aposteme with þe wounde, & þe quyter schal ben y-clansyde, ere þenne þou legge enye generatyff to holwe woundys. Avicēne tellyth a cause, why þat yuele flesch growith in a wounde, zif þat a leche 36 wolde besy hym with a medycin regeneratyff to engendre flesch in a wounde, ere þanne þe quytere were clansede. And whenne þat þe wounde ys clensyde, þenne we schulle fulfyllen þilke holwnesse with

³ MS. *akþe*.

heelid, lest *peraventure*¹ þat þer dwelle an holownesse vndir þe wounde, whanne þat he is helid, in whom þat quytture schulde be engendrid, þerwith² ech dai schulde augmente þilke holownesse, & so we moten be constreyned to opene anopir tyme þat, þat was heelid tofore / þou maist fynde in þe chapitle of woundis of senewis, how þou schalt aswage akþe, & in þe .vj. chapitle of þis techinge þou schalt fynde þe cure³ of a wounde þat hap a swellynge, & is out of kynde distemperid; & þou schalt haue in þe chapitle of olde woundis, how þou schalt clense quytture & regendre fleisch /

[3 lf. 19, bk.]
in þe co. of
olde woundis
in þe ante-
dotorie.

The bridde techinge of þe firste tretis is of heelynge of a wounde maad in senewe /

[7 3o. co
De vulnerē
incarne.

Almyȝti god hath ȝeue to senewe greet felyng⁴, & if þat he be hirt, he suffriþ greet akyng / Galien seiþ: a senewe þat is more felynge þan anopir *[lyme]; it is nessessarie þat he haue grettere akþe / Vndirstonde þat a wounde þat is maad in a senewe, mai not be wiþoute akyng. Ne⁴ woundis þat ben maad in senewis, ouþer þat ben in lenkþe or in brede / þe woundis þat ben maad in lenkþe of þe² senewe, ben lesse perilous þan⁵ þo þat ben maad in brede of þe

A wound cutting the nerve lengthwise, a *fissura*, is less dangerous than one crossing it, a *sisura*.

¹ *peraventure*. See N. E. Dict., adventure, 1. b.

² *þerwiþ*, scribal error for *þe which*.

⁴ *no*, scribal error for *þe*.

⁵ *þan* erroneously inserted.

flesch, ere þanne þat wounde ben y-helyde; leste þat þere dwellen an holwnesse vndire þe wounde whenne þat he ys helyde, in whom þat quyter scholde be engendryde, þe whiche eche day scholde augmente þilke holwnesse, & so we moste ben constreynede to opyne an opere tyme þat, þat was helyde tofore. þou mayste fynden aftere in þe chapyteH of woundys of synwes how þou schalt aswagen akþe, and in the sixte ChapiteH of þis techyng þou schalt fynde þe cure of a wounde, þat hath a swellynge, and ys out of kynde dystempryde, and þou schalt haue in þe chapitle of olde woundys; how thou schalt clense, quytyre, and regendre flessch //

Add. MS.
12,056.

⁶Cap. iii. of the bridde techyng of the ffurst tretis is of helyng of a wounde y-makyde in synwe.

[6 fol. 47 a]

Almȝtie god hath ȝife to synwe gret felyng, & ȝif þat he be hurt he suffrede grete akyng. Galien: a synwe that is more felyng þen anopere *lyme; yt is nessessarie þat he haue gretter akyng. Vndirstonde þat a wounde þat is y-makyde in a synwe, may nouȝt ben wiþouten akyng. The woundes þat beþ y-makyde in synwe, opir þey ben in lengthe opir þey beþ in brede. þo woundes þat beþ y-mad in lengthe of þe synwe beþ lasse perylous,

If the nerve is cut through, the limb becomes insensible;

if the nerve is pricked by a punctura, then there is danger of cramp.

Spasmos.
[¹ leaf 20]

Loss of feeling and cramp happen when a sinew or muscle is cut or pricked.

**Senewe,
corde &
Brawne.**

When the nerve is pricked, but the skin whole,

senewe ben moost perilous / Operwhile a senewe is kutt al atwo / & panne pilke lyme, to whom þat senewe serueþ, lesiþ his meuyng & þe felynge, þat pilke senewe brouzte to him from þe brain. & pilke senewe opirwhile is not kutt al atwo, but he is I-preickid, & panne 4 it is perilous lest þe crampe come for to greet akþe / For akþe entriþ into þe part of þe senewe þat is kutt or prickid; & bi þe 1partie of þe senewe þat is hool, akþe is brouzt to þe brayn. & so þe crampe mai come to þe wounde bi oon of þre weies: þat is to greet 8 akþe, cold, or rotynge. Of þese þre or of oon bi him-silf mai come a drawinge togidere of a senewe þat is cause of a crampe / & þat þat is seid of a wounde of a symple senewe may fallen ofte-tymes in a wounde of a corde & a brawn, & nameliche of a corde þat is in 12 bigynnyng of a brawn. þo woundis þat ben in þese þre consimile membris, þat is *[to] seie senewe, corde, & brawn han o. drede in cours of þe crampe, & also o. drede of felynge, lesyng & meuyng / & 2 perfore be-war in þe cure of a wounde maad in senewe, wheþer 16 þat it be a prickynge or þat it be kutt ouerþwert, or ellis be kutt oonly bi his lenkþe. If oonly he be prickid þe wounde of þe skyn is hool, & panne it is clepid a blynde puncture; eiþer þe wounde is open, & it is clepid an open puncture / In a blind puncture it is 20

² &, above line.

Add. MS. 12,056. & þo þat beþ in brede of þe synwe beþ more perilous. Opere whyle a synwe ys y-kut al atwo, & þenne pilke lyme to whom pilke synwe serfede, lesiþ þe menyng & þe felynge þat pilke synwe brouzt to hym from þe brayn. Opere while þulke synwe is nouzt y- 24 kut a two, but he is y prikyde, and þenne it is perel lest þe crampe come for to gret akþe. For akþe entriti in to þe part of þe synwe þat is y-kut oper priked, & by þe party of þe synwe þat is hol akþe is brouzt to þe brayn, & so crampe may comen to þe wounde 28 by on of þre weyes, þat is to gret akþe colde oper rotyng. Of þese þre opere ellys of on by hym self, may come a drawyng togedre of a synwe þat is a cause of a crampe; & þat þat is seyde of wounde of a symple synwe, oft-tymes may fallyn in a wounde of a 32 corde & a brawn, & namlyche of a corde þat is in þe bygynnyng of a brawn. þe woundes þat ben in þese þre consimel membris, þat is *to sigge, synwe, corde, & brawn, habben on drede in course of þe crampe, & also on drede of lesyng, felyng, & menyng, & perfor 36 be war in þe cure of a wounde i-makyde in synwe, wheþer þat þere be a prikyng, opere þat þe synwe be y-kut twartofere, oper ellys be y-kut only by his lengthe. 3if only he be y-prikyde þe wonde of þe skyn is hol, & þenne it is clepyde a blynde puncture, oper þe 40 wounde is opene & it is clepide an opene prikyng. In a blynde

- nessessarie to opene þe skyn, & aftirward heelde into þe hoole as
 hoot as he mai suffre, hoot oile of rosis swete smellynge, þat is
 maad of oile de oliue þat is nouzt ripe, til al þe wounde be ful. &
 4 aboute þe wounde leie whiȝt tere¹bentine² I-drawe abroad bitwene
 two clowtis, & anynte alle þe membris aboute þe wounde wiþ hoot
 oile of rosis maad picke with bool armoniak. & aftir þat leie a
 lynnene cloof I-het¹ aboute, & aftir þat a good quantite of tow I-tosid,
 8 & bynde þe lyme softliche wiþoute streynynge; & if þe akþe wiþ
 þis medicyn wole not ceessen, remeue & chaunge þis medicyn ofte
 tymes in þe dai & in þe nyȝt / & if þe prickynge be in þe foot,
 anynte þe grynde³ wiþ hoot comoun oile; & vndir þe arme holis
 12 & in þe necke pitt, if þat þe prickynge be in þe hand, for þis
 enoynture rarefiþ & eueneþ þe placis bi whom akþe goiþ to þe
 brain, & it lettþ drawynge togidere of þe senewe / & þouȝ þat þou
 seest¹ nouzt þe akþe ceesse in summen as hastiliche as þou woldist,
 16 neuer-þe-lattere chaunge not þi medicyn, for þer may be no bettere
 medicyn. But if þat akþe dure ouer longe, it is not yuel to putte a
 litil opium to þe oile of þe rosis & þe bole armoniak, þat þou leidist¹
 aboute þe wounde. þe sike man muste reste & bi no wey he

open the skin
and apply
hot oil.
R
and dress the
wound.
[If 20, bk.]

N

If the pain
endures re-
new the
dressing
frequently,
N

and add
opium to the
ointment.
N
R

² *terebentine*, from *Pistacia Terebinthus*, L. The *Alah* of the Old Testa-
ment, and the *ρίπωνος* of Theophrast. : now almost obsolete.

³ *þe grynde*, inguina. W. W., p. 589. 39, 15th cent. : inguen, the grynde.

- 20 prikyne hit is necessarie to opyn þe skyn, & afterwarde held in to
 þe hole, as ⁴hot as he may suffren, oyle of roses swote smyllynge,
 þat is y-made of oyle de olyffe, þat is nouzt rype tyl þe wounde be
 al ful. & aboute þe wounde leye whyte terbentyne y-drawe abrod
 24 betwene tweye cloutes, & anynt al þe membris about þe wounde
 wiþ hote oyle of rosys, y-made pikke wiþ bol Armonyak, & after þat
 leye a lynne cloth y-hat aboute, & after þat a gode quantyte of towȝ
 y-tosyd, & bynde þe lyme⁵ softliche wiþout streynynge; & ȝif þe
 28 akþe wiþ þis medycine wolde nouzt cese, remeffe & chaunge þis
 same medycine oft tymes in þe day & in þe nyȝt, & ȝif þe prikyng
 be in þe fot, anynte þe grynde wiþ hote comyn oyle, & vndire þe
 Arme holys & in þe nekputte, ȝif þat þe prikyng be in þe hande.
 32 For þys vuncture rarefiþ & efenyþ þe placys by whom akþe goth to
 þe brayn, & it lattþ drawynge togedre of þe synwe, & þowȝ þat
 þou sest nouzt akþe, sese in some men, as hastily as þou woldyst,
 nevere þe later chaunge nouzt þy medycine, for þere may be no
 36 bettere medycine. But ȝif þat akþe dure ouere longe yt is nouzt
 efel to putte a lutyl opin to þe oyle of rosys and þe bol armoniak,
 þat þou leydest aboute þe wounde. þe seke man most reste, & by

Add. MS.
12,056.

[⁴ fol. 47 b]

schulde nouzt be wroþ; his bed muste be maad soft, euene, &
 [1 ff. 21] smope, & þat he ¹myzte haue reste / Whanne þat þe akþe aswagip
 & þe wounde zeueþ sum quytture, þanne þe sike man is saaf from al
 Ypocras. maner perel, but if he do ony newe errour / Of þis wounde Ypocras 4
 spekþ: *in vulneribus malis & fortibus sanie non apparante*—þat
 It is a bad sign if no pus is discharged.
 N is to seie: in yuel woundis and strong¹ woundis, if no quytture
 appere it is yuel / Strong¹ woundis ben clepid woundis þat sore
 aken / Yuel woundis ben þo, to whom scharpe humouris rennen 8
 & ben nouzt obedient to kyndeli heete, to be turned into quit-
 Ypocras. ture / And þerfore Ypocras seide: þat whanne akyng & quytture
 appereþ it is a tokene of heele / þe þridde signe a man muste
 knowe in þis place, þat lewde men, seyinge akyng & swellynge 12
 Laymen frequently apply a wrong ointment, which causes cramp, or put the injured limb in hot water.
 Galien. in a lyme þat is woundid, leie þerto a potage in maner maad of
 erbis & swynes greece & water & wheete flour, corruptyn þe
 lyme, & þilke corupecioun is cause of þe crampe / For Galien seiþ:
 þat a senewe is maad of moist¹ mater & a cold, & þerfore he 16
 rotip of heete and moistnes / Also summen, for to aswage akþe as²
 nota. a senewe þat is prickid, puttip þe lyme in hoot watir * [oper ellys
 [4 ff. 21, bk.] caste it on þe lyme] þe which mater³ is þe moost greunaunce ⁴to
 Galien. þe senewe / Galien seiþ / Hoot watir, þowz it aswage akþe to þe 20
² as, error for of; see below. ³ mater, error for watir.

Add. MS. 12,056. no weye he scholde nouzt be wroþ, hys bed most be made softe
 euene & smeþe þat he myzte haue rest. Whanne þat þe akþe
 aswagyth & þe wounde gyueþ sum qyter, þan þe syke man ys saf
 from al manere peryle, but 3if he do enye newe error. Of þis 24
 wounde ypocras spekþ: *In vulneribus malis & fortibus sanie non*
 aparente malum, þat is to seye: in evyle woundys & stronge
 woundes, 3if no quyter apere, hit is yuele. Stronge woundes ben
 y-clepyde woundys þat sore aken. Iuel woundes bep þo, to whom 28
 scharpe humores rennyth & bep nouzt obedyent to kyndlie hete to
 ben turnyde into quyter & þerfore ypocras seyde, þat whanne þat
 akyng sesyþ & quyter aperith, yt is a tokne of hele. þe þridde
 [5 fol. 48 a] signe a man moste ⁵knowe in þis place, þat lewyde men seyne 32
 akyng & swellynge in a lyme y-woundyde, leggen þerto a maner
 potage y-mad of erbys & swynes grese, water, & floure of whete,
 corrupyn þe lyme, & þilke corupecioun is cause of þe crampe; for
 Galyen seiþ þat a synwe is mad of a moiste matere & a cold, & he 36
 rotyth of hete & moistnesse. Also sum men forto aswage þe akþe
 of a synwe þat is y-prikyde, putteþ þe lyme in to hote water,* oper
 ellys caste it on þe lyme hot water,⁶ þe whiche water is most grefes
 to þe synwe. Galyen: hote water þowz it aswage akþe, to the 40

⁶ hot water, insertion.

- prickyng of a senewe is most greunaunce / Cold also greueþ sore þe senewe as wel in somer as in wyntir / And Ypocras seiþ in þe .v. Ypocras. part of his aforismus: cold is bitynge & greuou to senewis & 4 woundis, & also in þe chapitle next folowyng, but it be in a crampe wipoute wounde / Galien seiþ in þe eende of his coment: and the heat is as dangerous as great cold. Galien. coold is moost greuou to a senewy lyme þat is woundid & is sore swollen; namely, & he haue þe crampe. It schewiþ¹ þanne þat an 8 hoot medicyne & a drie is moost acordynge to senewis þat ben woundid; but nouȝt to hoot a medicyn, lest perauntre þat he make þe lyme to swelle; & if it be drie nouȝt wip stipecte, an auntre if þat he closiþ þe poris of þe skyn / Galien seiþ: þat it is yuele to 12 close þe poris of a lyme þat is prickid. þe medicyn þanne muste be hoot & drie with subtiliate as terabentine to moiste bodies; & to drie bodies he muste be medlid wip a litil enforbium, azafetida² is best medicyn if þou make of him enplastre, serapinum,³ & þe fecis⁴ 16 of a litil wax, & þe filþe of þe vessels of been, alle þei ben gode to a senewe þat is prickid, þouȝ þat þou putt ech of hem bi him-silf or ellis compound / & þow schalt fynde a ful techinge of þese medicyns in þe antidotarie of þis book / þou schalt nouȝt close a

Galien 1

N.

The pores of a wounded limb must be kept open.

R

[3 lf. 22]

¹ *schewiþ* for *sewiþ*; see below.² *Asa fetida*, a sort of gum pressed out of a certain plant, which grows in Persia.³ *Serapinum* = *Sagapenum* . . . A gum resin obtained from the *Ferula Persica*. See *Notes*.⁴ *fecis*, Lat. *fæces*, dregs.

- 20 prikyng of a synwe ys most greuest; colde also gefyth sore þe synwes as wel in somere as in wynter. Ypocras in þe ferthe 12,056. partye of his Amphorismes: colde is bytinge and grefes to woundys; and also in þe chapitell nexte folwyng, bot it be in a crampe wip 24 out wounde. Galyen seiþ in þe ende of his comente: colde is most grefest, to a synwe lyme þat is y-woundyde & ys toswolle, namly, & he haue þe crampe. Hit sewiþ þenne þat an hote medycine & a drye is most accordynge to synwes þat beþ y-woundyde; bot nouȝt 28 to hot a medycine, leste þat he make þe lyme toswellyn; & drye nouȝt wip stipecte, lest he close þe pores of þe schyn. Galyen seiþ: it is yuel to close þe pores of a lyme þat is y-prikyde. þe medycine þenne most ben hote & drye, wip subtilite as terbentyne to moiste 32 bodyes; & to drye bodyes, he most be medlyde wip a lytel euforbium. *Asa fetida* is best medycine, ȝif þou make of hym emplaster, serapinum, & þe feces of wax, & þe fylthes of vesselis of been, alle þey ben gode to a synwe, þat is prikyde, wheþer þou put iche be 36 hymself oper opyn hem; & þou schalt fynden a ful techyng of þese medycines in þe Antidotarie of þis boke. þou schalt nouȝt closen

The nerve must be cleansed and healed before the wound is closed.

.Galion.

relates, how a physician, by not so doing, caused the death of his patient.

wounde where þat þe prickynge of a senewe is, til þat þe senewe be perfiztly clensid & heeled, & til þat þou be sikir þat þe place schal not swelle / Galien telliþ of a man þat was prickid with a poyntel in þe pawme of þe hand, to whom came oon of tisilies¹ 4 clerkis þe which took hede to heele alle woundis generaliche; & he leide to þilke prickynge a consowdyngne oynement þat was more acordynge to a wounde maad in fleisch; & he leide þerto a plastre maturatijf, wherfore al þe hand rotide & he fel into a crampe, & 8 so he diede, or þat þe .vij. daies weren passid / & if þat ilke leche hadde maad þat wounde broddere, & þanne þat he hadde helt into þe wounde hoot oile of rosis, & þanne þat he hadde do² comen out quytture wiþ hote medicyns sotil & drynge, & nouzt wiþ moist 12 medicyns, þat man schulde not haue be deed /

Tederik.

[4 lf. 22, bk.]

The ends of the nerve ought to be sewn at the same time as the skin, and a medicine applied,

If þat a senewe hadde ben I-kutt ouerþwert ouer al atwo þanne, þouȝ þat Tedericus³ & summe opere seien þe contrarie, it is good þat þow⁴ sowe togidere þe eendis of þe senewis þat ben kutt wiþ þe 16 sowinge of þe skyn. & aboue þilke maner of sowinge, þe firste dai leie oile of rosis, in þe which oile, maddockis⁵—þat ben wormes

¹ Lat., unus de secta Thessali. Thessalus lived in Rome at the time of Nero, and enjoys the reputation of being the first great quack.

² Lat., Si . . saniem . . subtiliter desiccantibus expectasset. Add. MS. translates literally, abyde. The use of *do* (= faire) is further illustrated by Mätzner. See *don* .6.

³ Theodoricus, an Italian (?) monk of the 13th century, was the author of a *Surgery*.

⁵ maddock, O.E. maðek, Dan. maddik. See Skeat, *Etym. Dict.*, under maggot and mawkish.

Add. MS.
12,056.

[6 fol. 48 b.]

a wounde, where þat þe prikyng of a synwe is, ere þan þe synwe be perfiltye clansyde & helyd, & ere þou be sykere þat þe place 20 schal nouzt swelle. Galyen tellyth of a man wiþ a poyntel in þe pawme of þe hand, to whom come one of ⁶Tesilies clerkys, þe whiche toke hede to helyn alle woundis generalyche, & he leyde to þilke prikyng a consoudynge oynement þat was more acordynge 24 to a wounde y-makede in flesch, & he leyde þereto a maturatyf plastre, where fore al þe hand rotyd, & he fel into a crampe, & so he dyede ere þe vii dayes were passyde; & ȝif þat þilke leche hadde y-made þilke wounde braddere, & þenne & hadde y-helde in þe 28 wounde hote oyle of rosys, and þenne hadde abyde quyter wiþ hote medycines sotyl & dreyng, & nozt wiþ moiste medycines, þilke man ne scholde nouzt haue ben ded. ȝif þat a synwe hadde ben kut twart ouer al atwo þenne, þawȝ þat tedericus & summe opere sigge 32 þe contrarye, hit is good þat þou sewe togedre þe hedys of þe synwys þat beþ y-kutte, wiþ þe sowynge of þe skyn & abouen þilke maner of sewynge, þe first day leye oyle of roses, in þe whiche oyle

of þe erþe—han be boilid, & caste aboute þe wounde þe poudre þat
 kepþ þe sowynge .o. day or two aftirward, & kepe þe sowynge wiþ
 plumaciols .iij. cornerid, & wiþ byndynge, & kepe þe lyme from
 4 swellynge, for bi sich a maner sowynge of a senewe þou maist con-
 sowde þe senewe aȝen; for þe lyme schulde han be lost in partie or
 in al, þe meuyng þat was brouzt vnto him fro þe braun, for bi þat
 senewe þe lyme mai rekeuere his felynge, & so þe restoringe of þe
 8 braun may be fastere & schapliker. þou schalt nouȝt drede of þe
 akyng þat schulde be maad of prickynge¹ of þe senewe, for þe
 akþe schal be doon awei wiþ oo leynge to eȝer tweyne of pilke
 oile / Ne sich maner akþe may nouȝt make þe crampe, for þe senewe
 12 is al kutt atwo ne no man *[make an] obieccioun wiþ Galion .Galion.
 wordis, þat we schulden be war in ioynynge parties of a wounde
 togidere *[þat non here ne oyle ne scholde noȝt entre wiþynne þe
 lippes of a wounde, þat beþ y-brought togedre] To pilke abiec-
 16 cioun we answeren: þat þe stipticite² of þe rosis & þe oile þat was
 nouȝt ripe, & þe glutinosite of þe wormes of þe erþe remeuen þe akþe
 of þe senewis & al þe harm þat schulde come of þe ilke sowynge.

then the limb
 may regain
 its motor
 powers.

Nothing
 should enter
 into the
 wound.

[2 ff. 23]

If þat a senewe were woundid in lenkþe, he mai wel & lyȝtliche

¹ prickynge of þe senewe. The Latin, *acus punctura*, is correctly translated in Add. MS. See below.

20 Maddokys, þat beþ wormys of þe erthe, haue ben boyllede; and
 caste aboute þe wounde þe poudre þat kepyth þe sowynge a day
 oþer two afterward, & kepe þe sowynge wiþ plumacioles þre kernel-
 lyde & wiþ³ byndynge, & kepe þe lyme from swellynge, ffor by
 24 swyche a manere sowynge of þe synwe þou maiste consoude þe
 synwe ageyn, for þe lym scholde haue lost in party oþer in al the
 meuyng, þat was y-browzt to hym from þe brayn, for by pilke
 synwe þat lyme may rekeueren hys felynge, & so þe restoringe of
 28 þe brayn may be more schaplokere & fastere. Ne þou ne schalt
 noȝt drede of þe akyng þat scholde be made of þe prekyng of þe
 nelde, for þe akþe schal be don away by one leggyng to oþere
 tweyne of pilke oyle; ne swyche manere akþe may noȝt make þe
 32 crampe, for þe synwe ys al kutte atwo. Ne no man *make an
 obieccioun wiþ galyens wordys, þat we scholde be ware in ioynynge
 þe parties of a wounde togedre, *þat non here ne oyle ne scholde
 noȝt entre wiþynne þe lippes⁴ of a wounde, þat beþ y-brouzt to-
 36 gedre.* To pilke obieccioun we answeren, þat þe stipticite of þe
 roses & þe oyle þat was nouȝt ripe, & þe glutinosyte of þe wormys
 of þe erthe remywen þe akþe of þe synwes, & al þe harme þat
 scholde comen of pilke sewynge. Ȝif þat a synwe were woundede
 40 in lengþe he may be wel & lyȝtliche y-soudyde togedire, wiþ

Add. MS.
 12,056.

[4 fol. 49 a]

³ wiþ above line.

The wounded
limb must be
kept from
swelling.

Nota.

If there is
swelling, and
if the wound
is purulent,
apply a mun-
dificative,
and keep the
wound
tented.

[4 lf. 23, bk.]

a mundifica-
tif medicyne

be sowdid togidere wiþ ioynynge of lippis, & wiþ þe sowynge & wiþ þe kepyng of þe lyme þat he swelle nouzt / Vndirstonde here in þis place : þat þer is no þing more worschipful to a leche ne more profitable to a sijk man þan to kepe a lyme woundid fro swellynge, 4 & nepeles it is hard to kepe senewis þat ben woundid from swellynge / Nepeles a leche here schal take heed aftir þe techinge þat schal be zeue him in þe chapitle of þe cure of a wounde, whanne þat þer is wiþ him a swellynge. If þat a wounde were chaungid 8 of þe eyr and made quytture, þat þe sowynge were to-broke and þe puncture were vndir,¹ þanne make a medicyne mundificatif & leie him abroad on a lymnen cloþ & leie it aboute þe wounde, & putte a litil smal tent in þe eende of þe wounde þat is moost lynynge,² & 12 pilke tent schal touche no senewe ne make noon akþe vndir³ þat, þat ilke wounde be ⁴weel dried. A mundificatif medicyn of senewis woundid is maad in þis maner : Take mel roset colat 3 .iij. smal flour of barly & medle hem togidere & boile hem sili þat þei 16 brenne nouzt, & remeue hem fro þe fier & bete hem "longe" togidere wiþ a spatore ;⁵ & þanne putte þerto 3 j. of whitt terebentyne ; & if þou mowe finde noon whitt terebentyne, þanne waische opere

¹ undir, mistake for undo. See below. ² lynynge, for deelynynge.

³ undir þat, donec. ⁵ spatour, spatula.

Add. MS. 12,056. ioynynge of þe lippys & wiþ sowynge & wiþ kepyng of þe lym, þat 20 he scholde⁶ nouzt. Understande here in þis place, þat þere is no þynge more worschipful to a leche ne more profytable to a seke man, þenne to kepe a lyme y-woundyde from swellynge, & napeles it is hard to kepe synwys þat beþ woundyde from swellynge. 24 Napeles a leche here schal take hede aftere þe techynge þat schal be geuen to hym in hys chapyteff of þe cure of a wounde, whanne þat þere ys wiþ hym a swellynge. 3if a wounde were chaungyd of þe eyre and mad quyter, þat þe sowynge were tobroke, & þe 28 punctis weren vndo, þenne make a medycine mundyficatyff, & leye hym abroad on a lynne cloth, & leye it aboute þe wounde, & put a lytel smal tent in þe one ende of þe wounde þat is most deelynynge ; & pilke tent schal touche non synwe, ne make non 32 akþe, vndire þat þat pilke wounde be wel dryede. A mundificatyff medycine of synwes y-woundyde ys y-made in þis manere : R. mel rosat colat 3 iii smal floure of barly 3, & medle hem togedre & boyle hem slyzly þat þey brenne nouzt, & remywe hem from þe 36 fyre & bete hem togedre longe wiþ a spator, & þenne put þere to 3. of whyte terbentyne, & 3if þou maiste fynde no whyte terbentyne

⁶ scholde, error for swelle, or it belongs to : scalle, scalde, scalled, scab. See W. Wright, and *Cathol. Angl.*

terebentyne with cold watir til it be whizt, & whanne þat be þis
 medicyn þis wounde is almoost drie, þanne putte in þe same medi-
 cyn a litil poudre of frankencense mastik & saundragoun, medle
 4 hem togidere & leie aboue þe wounde til it be hool / & whanne þat
 it is hool manye daies aftir, leie flex in good strong wiyn het hoot
 til it be perfiztli al hool, & if þat þer leue ony hardnes in meuyng, Any remain-
 after þat it is hool, þanne þou schalt vse þe techinge þat schal be ing stiffness
 8 zouen to þee in þe laste tretis þat schal be antidotarie in þe chapitle of the limb
 of medicyns mollificatyues; þere þou schalt fynde þe maner how þou may be re-
 schalt helpe best lymes þat ben heelid and moun not riȝt weel meuen / moved by a
 mollificative
 medicine.

þe firste¹ techinge of þe firste tretis is of heelynge of
 12 a wounde maad in boon /

Cm. 4m.
 Off woundes
 made yn the
 bonis

Whanne þat woundis ben so depe þat² only fleisch is not
 woundid but þe boon þat is vndir þe fleisch & þe senewe / þanne a
 man muste biholde, wher þat þe boon be kutt al atwo, as ofte-tyme
 16 it may happe in þe boon of þe thie & schene boonys & þe boonys
 of þe armes. And þanne þilke wounde is ful perilous; & nameli if
 þe boonys of þe thie ouþir þe boon of þe arme from þe schuldre to
 þe elbowe be kutt al atwo, so þat þe marie go out. But ofte-tymes

It is danger-
 ous if the
 thigh bone or
 the bone of
 the upper arm
 has been cut
 in two.

¹ firste, mistake for furpe.

20 wassche it wyth colde watyre, tyl it be whyt; & whenne þat by þis
 medycine þe wounde is almost drye, þenne put in þe same medycine
 a lite smal poudre of franke ensence, mastike, & sank dragoun, &
 medle hem to gedre, & leye aboue þe wounde tyl it be al hol; &
 24 whanne þat it is hol manye dayes aftere, leye flax in gode stronge
 hot wyn, tyl yt be al hol perfitlyche. & ȝif þat þere leue enye
 hardnesse³ in mevyng, aftere þat it is hol, þenne þou schalt vse
 the techyng þat schal be geuen to þe in þe laste tretys, þat schal
 28 be antidotarie in þe chapitle of medycine, molyficatyffes; þere þou
 schalt fynde þe manere how þou schalt helpyn beste lymes, þat beþ
 y-helyde & mowe noȝt ryȝt wel meffen.

Add. MS.
 12,056.

[³ fol. 49 c]

The furpe techyng of þe firste tretys is of helyng of
 32 a wounde y-makyde in bon.

Whenne þat woundes beþ so depe þat only þe flesch is nouȝt
 y-woundyde, but þe bon þat is vndire þe flesch & þe synwe, þenne a
 man most byholde wheþere þat þe bon be kut al atwo, as ofte tymes
 36 yt may happen in þe bon of þe thyȝ & þe schynebonys, & þe bonys
 of þe Arme, & þenne þylke wounde is ful perylouse; and namlye,
 ȝif þe bon of þe thyȝ ore þe bon of þe arme, from þe schuldre to þe
 elbowe, be y-kutte al atwo, so þat þe marie gon out. But ofte tymes

The wound ought not to be closed before the bone has been repaired.

Nota

In the place of the missing bone, there grows either a hard substance

[4 lf. 24, bk.]

poris sarcoides.

or a soft one: *caro poroides.*

oon boon of þe schene or o. boon of þe armes is kutt al atwo ouertwert ouer & neþeles afterward may be restorid; ouþer a boon is not kutt al atwo but sum of his substaunce is don away, & þilke substaunce, ouþer he is doon away or ellis he hangip togidere / A 4 general rule is in cure of woundis in whom boonys ben woundid: þat neuere bi a leche fleisch schal ben I-sowdid aboue þe boon, but first pleynerliche bi repeire¹; for þe boon may neuere be² wiþ verri consolidacion be consowdid, for his mater was þe sperme of þe fadir 8 & of þe modir; but in summe children, for þe age³ is toward ofte tyme þat þei were sperme / but þer schal be maad a maner of restorynge in place of þe boon þat was broken eiþer lost, þat men clepen ⁴poris sarcoides or ellis caro poroydes, & a⁵ maner þing þat is 12 restorid is hardere þan þe fleisch & neischere þan þe boon / & if þat ilk mater þat is restorid be nyȝ as hard as is þe boon, it is clepid porus sarcoides / & if þat ilke mater be not hard but sumwhat porus sarcoides, it is clepid caro poroydes / & if þat a neische fleisch were 16 & a moist nouȝt regenerated vpon boonys þat ben sett togidere, a man schulde not haue his purpos to heele & consowde þe wounde. Loke þanne wheþer þe boon be kutt altwo altogidere ouerþwert ouer, þat

¹ *repeire*, erroneously for *repeired*.

² *be* has to be cancelled.

³ *for þe age is toward ofte tyme*, for, *for þe nyȝte of tyme*. See below.

⁵ *a*, above line.

Add. MS. 12,056. on bon of þe schyne, opere in bon of þe Arme, ys ykutt al atwo 20 twartofere, & napeles afterward may be restoryde; oper a bon ys nouȝt ykut al atwo, but sum of his substaunce ys done aweye, and þilke substaunce opere he ys don al aweye, opere he hongyth to gedre. A general rule ys in cure of woundes in whom bonys ben 24 woundyde, þat neuere by a leche flesch schal be y-sowdyd aboue þe bon, but first þe bon plenerlyche be repeyrede; ffor þe bon may neuere with verrey consolidacyoun ben consouded, for his matere was þe sperme of þe fadire & þe modire, but in somme children for 28 þe nyȝte of tyme þat þey were sperme (*sic*); but þere schal be mad a manere restorynge in plas of þe bon þat was broken opere lost. þat men clepen porrus sarcoides opere ellys caro poroydes, & þat manere thyng þat is restoryd is hardere þe flesch & nesschere þen 32 þe bon; & ȝif þat þilke mater þat is restoryde by neye⁶ as hard as yt were a bon, yt is clept porus sarcoides; & ȝif þat þilke mater be [7 fol. 50 a] nouȝt harde, but sum⁷what nessche, yt is clepyde caro poroydes; ȝif þat a nesch flesch & a moist were nouȝt regenerated vpon bonys 36 þat ben set togidere, a man scholde nouȝt han his purpos to helyn & to consoude þe wounde. Loke þenne wheþere þe bon be kutte a-

⁶ MS. *neþe*.

- pou bryngist togidere & bindist þe parties of þe wounde, as it schal be told in þe .viiij. chapitle folowyng, where pou schalt haue how a wounde schal be heeled þat is out of ioynte I-kutt atwo & to-broken / & if a wounde¹ be not kutt atwo al togidere ouerþwert ouer, loke if any pece of þe boon dwelle sadliche with þe opere partie of þe hool boon / & þanne if pou myzt brynge þilke pece to þe place þat he was yn tofore wiþ þristyng down þilke pece wiþ sum instrument acordyng þerto, & sowde þilke pece wiþ þe hool boon wiþ þe poudre þat I shal telle aftirward; for so the² schap of þe lyme mai dwelle³ faire & strengere / & if þat ilke pece haue no fastnes to þe hool boon, do þat pece away & regenerere in þe place of
- 12 þe boon þat þat⁴ was lost a repeirement / For þou3 þat ypocras & Galion tellen þat it is nessessarie after quantite of þe boon þat is lost, an holow3 cicatrise to be alwey, neþeles wiþ þis poudre þe generacioun of þese poris may be mendid, not a litil, but riȝt
- 16 myche / þis is þe poudre: take frank-encense, mastik, mirre, dragagantum, gumme arabik, ana. ʒ ij. flour of fenegrek, ʒ. s' caste þis poudre vpon þe defaute of þe boon þat is lost, til þat pou holde a pleynere repeirement * [& a restauracioun. þenne & noȝt ere
- 20 brynge ouere flesch ouere þe reþeyrment wiþ] regeneratiuis, mun-
- ¹ wounde, erroneously for boon. ³ hool, cancelled after dwelle.
⁴ The second þat has to be cancelled. ⁵ incarnatyff in a later hand.

A portion of the bone can either be refastened,

[2 lf. 25]

or it must be removed.

ypocras & Galion.

poudur incarnatyff⁵

two al togedre twartofere, þat pou brynge togedre, & bynde the parties of þe wounde as yt schal be tolde in þe eyzte chapyteH folwyng, where pou schalt han hou a wonde schal ben helyde þat is out of joynt, y-kutte atwo & tobroke. & ȝif þat a bon be noȝt kutte atwo al togedre twartofere, loke ȝif enye pece of þe bon dwelle sadlyche to þe on partye of þe hole bon, & þenne ȝif pou myzte brynge þilke pece to þe place þat he was yn tofore with þristyng don þilke pece with sum Instrumentis acordyng þereto, & sowde þilke pece wiþ þe hole bon with þe poudre, þat y schal tellyn afterwarde; for so þe schap of the lyme may dwelle fairere & strengere. & ȝif þat þilke pece haue no fastnesse to þe hole bon, do þat pece away, & þenne regenerere in þe place of þe bon þat was lost a repairment. Efor þow3 þat ypocras & Galyen tellyn þat it ys necessarie aftere þe quantite of a bon þat is lost, an holwe cicatrice to be alwey, napeles wiþ þis poudre þe generacioun of þese pores may be mendyde noȝt a lytel, but ryȝt myche. þis is þe poudre: Take ffrank ensence, Mastyke, Mirre, dragagantum gu. arabyke ana. ʒ. ij., flour of ffenngreke, ʒ, ʒ, cast þis poudre a gode quantite vpon þe defaute of the bon þat was lost, tyl þat pou haue a plenere reþeyrment * & a restauracioun. þenne & noȝt ere brynge ouere flesch ouere þe reþeyrment with * generatyffes, mun-

ADD. MS. 12,056.

SURGERY. E

dificatiuis & consolidatiuis aftir þe techinge þat þou haddist biforn / Undirstonde þat al þing þat is seid of boonys in þis chapitle is of alle þe boonis of þe bodi saf þe heed / I schal make a chapitle by hym-silf //

4

[Capm. vñ
Wondis
made with
conteschoun
l. h.]

THe fifþe chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste tretis of woundis þat ben maad wiþ smytinge of staf or stoon, or fallynge or smytinge of an hors, or wiþ ony oþir þing semblable.

8

[1 lf. 25, bk.]
must be at-
tended to in a
different
manner to
incised
wounds.

All the soft
parts are
bruised

with or
without the
skin being
divided.

To hem happen greet difference ¹fro woundis þat ben maad wiþ kuttinge, as wiþ swerd, knyf, eiþir arowe prickynge; & in oþere maner þei schulen ben I-heelid / For þou þat verry consolidacioun be þe firste & principal entencioun of heelynge of a wounde, to þis 12 chapitle it acordþ nouȝt, for in smytinge, þe fleisch & þe veynes, & senewis, & arteries ben brusid, for in þe ynnere part of þe lyme þe boon azenstondiþ, & on þe ouer part ²of þe þing þat is smyten knyttiþ nouȝt / Wherefore it is nessessarie, if þer schulde be a 16 wounde, þat alle þe smale lymes þat ben bitwene þe boon & þe þing

² The passage is corrupt; the correct version is given by Add. MS.: þe þynge þat smyted & kutteþ nouȝt.

Add. MS. 12,056. dificytes, & consolidatytes, aftere þe techynge that þou haddyst toforñ. Undirstonde þat alle þynge þat ys seyde of bonys in þis chapitle, ys of alle þe bonys of þe body saff þe hed; & of þe 20 bonys off the hed y schal make a chapitle by hym-self.

þe fyfe Chapitle of þe þridde techynge of þe furst tretis is of woundis ³that beth y-mad with smytinge.

[3 fol. 50 b]

24

The woundys þat bep mad wiþ brosynge, as wiþ smytinge of a staf, oþere ston, oþer fallynge, oþere wiþ smytinge of an hors, oþer wiþ enye thyng semblable to hem, habbiþ gret differens from woundis þat bep y-mad wiþ kuttinge: as wiþ swerde, knyf, ore 28 arwe prikyng, & in oþere manere þey schulle ben helyde. For þow þat verreye consolidacioun be þe first & þe princypal Intencioun of helynge of a wounde, to þis chapitle it acordyth nouȝt, for in smytinge, þe flesch & þe veynes, synwes & arteries ben y-brusyde; 32 for in þe ynnere part of þe lyme þe bon azeyne stonde, & on þe vter part þe þynge þat smyteth & kutteþ nouȝt, wherefore it is necessarie, ȝif þat þere scholde ben a wounde, þat alle þe smale lymes þat bep bytwene þe bon & þe þynge þat smyteth, scholde be brusyde; & 36

þat¹ smytiþ, schulde be brusid, & oþerwhile þe fleisch & þe oþere
consimile membris ben brusid wiþoute wounde / Wherefore þe curis of

Such wounds,
when joined
too soon,
will slough.

boþe I wole ordeyne in þis chapitle. If þat² a leche wolde enforce
4 him to ioynen togidere wiþ consolidatiunis þe wounde þat³ is maad wiþ
smytynge, nedis quytture & corrupcioun bi þilke consolidatif⁴ muste
be vnder þe wounde; þe which quytture schulde corrupte þilke lyme
& brynge him to putrifaccioun, but⁵ if þat kynde were so myzty,
8 þat⁶ he myzte eftsoone opene þilke wounde, þat was consowdid bi a
sori leche¹; or wiþ² a good leche come & knowe þilke dispo³sicioun

[³ 1f. 26]

& knowe helpe, wiþ propre eir⁴ to rectifien þe corrupcioun of þilke
lyme / What⁵ schalt þou þanne do? þou muste loke wheþer þat þe
12 bodi be ful of wickide humouris, eiþer be clene; if þat he be ful
late him blood, if alle particuler þingis acorden, as vertu, age, con-
plexioun & consuetudē; & þese þingis moten alwey⁵ taken in
mynde, þou alwey þei be not I-nempned & namely vertu; & he be
16 not strong⁶ & alle oþere þingis acorden, þou schalt not lete blood, but⁷
þou maist ventosen, if þat it be nessessarie, or ellis [lose] *þe wombe
if þat he be costif⁸; & if þat he be feble, & þe brosure were in þe
ouer parti of þe bodi, voide þe fecis of his wombe bi clisterie. &

If the patient
is plethoric
use blood-
letting;

if he is feeble,
cupping and
purgings.

Nota

Clisterie

¹ *bi a sori leche*, a malo medico. See Halliwell, *Dict.*, sorry Latē.

² *wiþ*, mistake for þat.

⁴ *eir*, read *cur*.

⁵ *be* wanted after *alwey*.

⁶ *costif*, costive, subject to be bound in body.—Kersey.

20 oþerwhile þe flesch & þe oþere consimile membris beþ brusyde
witout wounde, wherefore þe cures of boþe y wyl ordeyne in this
chapytle. 3if þat a leche wolde enforce hym to Iune to gedire
with consolidatyfes þe wounde þat is maad wiþ smytinge, nedys⁷
24 quyter & corrupcioun by þilke consolidatyff⁸, most be vndire þe
wounde; þe whiche quyter scholde corruppe þilke lyme & brynge
hym to putrefaccioun, but 3if þe kynde were so myztye, þat he myzte
eftesonys opyne þilke wounde, þat was consouded by a sorye leche,
28 oþere þat a gode leche come & knewe þilke dispocisioun, & coupe
helpe wiþ propre cure to retiefien þe corrupcioun off⁹ þilke lyme.
What schaltou þanne do? þou most loke wheþere that þe body be
ful of yueþ humores, oþer be clene; 3if þat he be ful, lete hym
32 blod, 3if alle partikelere þynges acorden: as vertu, Age, complexioun
& consuetude; & þese þynges þou most alweye taken in þy mynde,
þow alweye þey ben nouzt y-nempnyde, & namlye vertue; & he
be nouzt stronge & alle oþere þynges acorden, þou schalt nouzt leten
36 blod, bot þou⁸ maiste ventosen, 3if þat it be necessarie, oþer ellis
lose *þe wombe 3if þat he be costyff⁸; & 3if þat he be feble, & the
brosure were in þe ouere party of þe body, voyde þe feces of hys

Add. MS.
12,056.

[⁸ fol. 11 a]

⁷ MS. nedyth.

concussio
membri ner-
uosi cura
l. h.
oile *Roses*

[1 lf. 26, bk.]
An antiseptic
powder.

Treatment
of a contu-
sion, if the
wound is
open.

if¹ þou wolt¹ lete blood, þou schalt¹ lete blood on þe contrarie partie
of þe veyne, bryngyng¹ norischinge to þe lyme þat¹ was hirt¹; & pilke
veyne þou schalt¹ knowe, if¹ þat þou knowist pleynerliche anotamie,
þat I haue tauzt¹ þee in þis same book / & whanne þat þe bodi is 4
clensid, if¹ þat¹ þe brosour be wipoute þe wounde, anynte þe membre
þat is brosid, which bigynneþ to haue an enpostym, with hoot oile
of rosis, & caste aboue a poudre maad of þe seed of¹ mirtilles, &
bynde it¹ softly; ¹for ofte-tymes it nedip noon oper eir² / For þis 8
medicyn fastneþ þe place, & defendip him fro putrefaccioun. &
þouþ þat¹ þis medicyn mowe not¹ letten al þe mater from rotynge,
neþeles it¹ defendip myche of þe same mater fro rotynge / & if¹ al þe
mater mai not¹ be defendid from putrifaccioun, but¹ sum partie þerof¹ 12
putrifieþ, opene þe place & exclude þe quytture, & clense al þe place.
& his cure schal be seid in þe chapitle of¹ apostymes³ & of exitours /
But¹ if¹ þat¹ a brusour were wip a wounde, anynte aboute þe
wounde or eills þe place þat is brusid wip þe forseid oile of¹ rosis, & 16
caste aboue þe forseid poudre of¹ mirtilles, for it¹ fastneþ þe place,
ne it¹ lettip nouzt¹ þe corrupcioun to spreden eiþer to be drawen
abrood; & it¹ castip to þe wounde þe corrupt mater þat is in þe

² eir, read cur.

³ Latin, *de apostematibus exituris*, apostems which discharge pus.

⁴ if, above line.

Add. MS. wombe by clisterye. & zif þou wilt lete blod, þou shalt lete blod 20
12,056. on þe contrarye party of þe veyne, bryngyng¹ norysschyng¹ to þe
lyme þat was hurt; & pilke veyne þou schalt y-knowe, zif þat þou
knowist plenerlyche Anotamye, þat y haue tauzte þe in þis same
boke. & whenne þat þe body ys y-clansyde, zif þat þe brosure be 24
wipout þe wounde, anynt þe membre þat is y-brusyde, whiche þat
begynneþ to han a postum, wip hote oyle of roses, & cast aboue a
poudre y-mad of þe sed of mirtylles & bynde it softlye, for ofte
tymes it nedyth non oper cure. For þis medycyne fastnyth þe 28
place, & defendyth hym from putrefacioun, & þowþ þis medycine
mowe nozt letten alle þe mater from rotyng¹, napeles yt deffendyth
myche of þe same matere fro rotyng¹; & zif þat al þe matere may
nouzt be defendyde fro putrefaccioun, but sum partye þereof 32
putrefieþ, opene þe place & exclude þe quyter, & clanse al þe place.
& his cure schal be seyde in þe tretys of apostomes & of exitures.
But zif þat þe brosure were wip a wounde, anynte about þe wonde
opere ellys þe place þat is y-brusyde, wip þe forseyd oyle of roses, 36
& caste aboue þe forseide poudre of mirtillyes, for þis medycine
fastnyth þe place, ne yt ne lettēþ nozt corrupcioun to spredyn, opere
to be drawe abrod, & it castith to þe wounde þe corrupt mater, þat

- place þat is brusid / Wipinne þe wounde leie þe 3elke of an ey, wiþ
oile of rosis, with stupis, or ellis wiþ lint.¹ Leid² aboue þe N
wounde a potage maad of .iiij parties of watir & oon partie of
4 oile de olyue, & flour of wheete þat sufficiþ to þe medicyn, & leie R
þis medicyn to þe wounde, til þat þe akþe be aswagid, & til þat þe
quytture be engendrid; aftirward clense ³þe wounde, aftir þe [3 1f. 27]
clensynge regenerer, & at þe laste cicatrice. & þou schalt haue a
8 ful techinge in þe antidotarie of mundificatiuis & cicatizatiuis /
But if þe membre þat was brusid be ful of senewis, as þe hand
ouþer þe foot, þou schalt not chaunge þi cure if þat þer be no
wounde; but þou þer be a brusour in senewy membre I-woundid,
12 leie not þere þe potage tofore seid, but oonly hoot oile of rosis, &
aboue þe oile poudre of mirtillis, & aboue þe wounde leie terebentine
I-waischen & drawen abrood bitwene two lynnen cloopis. & make
a plastre of pich & hony & bene flour, & leie aboute þe lyme þat N plaster
16 is ful of senewis, as þe hand, þe foot, & speciali whanne þe flux of
humouris ceessen not / & þou þat þi cure be drawe along, ne go
not awei from þis cure / & whanne þat al þe akþe is ceessid and þe
swellynge is aswagid, for to clense þe wounde, vse þe medicyn of
20 mel roset colath with barly mele, seid in þe wounde of senewis / R

¹ lint. *Prompt. Parr.*, schauynge of lynnen clothe.² leid, mistake for leie.

- is in þe place þat is brusyde. Wipynne þe wounde leye þe 3elke of Add. MS.
an eye with oyle of roses, with stupes opere ellys wiþ lynte; & leye 12,056.
aboue þe wounde a potage y-made off foure parties of water & o
24 partye of oyle d'Olyve & floure off Whete þat suffyseþ to þe
medycine, & leye þis medycine to þe wounde, tyl þat þe akþe be
aswagyde & tyl þat þe quyter be engendryde; afterwarde clanse þe
wounde, aftere þe clensynge regenerere, & at þe laste cicatryce, & þou
28 schalt haue a ful techynge in þe Antiodarie of mundificatyfes,
maturatyfes, & zicatrisatifes. ⁴But 3if þat þe membre þat was [4 fol. 51 b]
y-brusyde ys ful of synwes, as þe honde oper þe fot, þou schalt nozt
chaunge þy cure 3if þat þere be no wounde; but þaw 3 þat þere be a
32 brusure in a synwy membre y-woundyde, ne leye nozt þere þe
potage forseyd, but only hote oyle of roses, & aboue þe oyle poudre
of mirtilles, & aboue þe wounde leye terbentyne iwassche & drawe
abrod betwene tweye cloþes lynnen. & make enplastre of pych,
36 hony & bene flour, & leye aboute a lym ful of synwes: as þe fot
opere þe hand, & specialyche whenne þat þe flux of humours sesep.
& þaw 3 þat þi cure be drawe along, ne go nozt away fro þis cure;
& whenne þat al þe akþe ys y-sesyd, & alle þe swellynge ys aswagyde,
40 forto clanse þe wounde, vse þe medycine of mel rosat colat with

Treatment of
a contusion,
if the injured
limb is full of
nerves, *e. g.*
hand or foot.
olium
Rosarum

Galien þis cure is apreued bi galien, & I haue preued þis medicyn ofte tymes /

¶ Þe sixte chapitle of þe þridde techinge is of woundis
þat han enpostymes & be distempered //

[¹ lf. 27, bk.]

Off woundes Impostemedē.

¶ *Capm. vjm*
If the wound
is tumorous
or distem-
pered,
the tumour
and the
"dyscrasia"
must be re-
moved first.

¹ **A** Wounde þat hap enpostym or an yuel discrasiam—þat is to
seie out of kynde distemperid, eiper to cold eiper to hoot—
he mai not be heelid, ne he schal not ben heelid, but first he² be 8
aswagid in þe yuel discurciour be amendid / & as I haue seid in
anoþer place, it is profitable to þe sijk man, & worschipe to þe leche,
if þat he mowe defende þe lymes þat ben woundid from enpostyme
& from an yuel discrasie. For þanne a leche schal kepe þe canoun 12
Galien. o³ galien, þat is oon of þe .iiij. canouns; oon is to kepe lymes in
her owne kyndely complexioun. For woundis moun not ellis be
heelid, but if þei be brouzt first into her owne kynde / & a wounde
mai be kept from apostyme & an yuel discrasie if þat þe leche be 16
kunnyng & do his deuer, & þe sike man be obedient to þe leche /
þe leche muste loke if þat þer go blood y-now³ out at þe wounde;
If necessary & if þat þe wounde haue not bled blood y-now³, þe pacient muste

² The correct version is given by Add. MS.

³ o, mistake for of.

Add. MS. barly mele, y-sayd in the wounde of synwes. þis cure ys aprefyde 20
12,056. by galyen, & y haue preffyde þis medecine ofte tymes.

¶ The sixte Chapitle of þe þridde techynge is of
Woundes þat han enpostemes, & beþ dystempryde.

A wounde þat hath aposteme oper an yuel discrasie—þat is to 24
sigge, out of kynde distempride, opere to hote opere to cold, he may
nozt ben helyd, ne schal nouzt ben heled, but first þe posteme be
aswagyde, & þe yuele discrasie be amendide. & as y haue seyde, in
an opere place, yt is profitable to þe syke man, & worschiful to þe 28
leche, 3if þat he mowe dyffende þe lymes þat beþ woundyde fro eny
postemys, & fro an eygh discrasie. For þenne a leche schal kepe
þe canon of galyen, þat is on of foure canones; on is to kepyn
lymes in here owne kendlye complexioun. For woundys mowe 32
nozt ellys ben y-helyd, but 3if þey ben brouzt first to here owne
kynde, & þe wounde may be kepte from aposteme & an yuegh
discrasie, 3if þat þe leche be kunnyng & do hys deffere, & þe syke
man be obedyent to þe leche. þe leche mot loke 3if þat þere haue 36
go blod ynow³ out of þe wounde; & 3if þat the wounde haue nozt
bled blod ynow³, þe pacyent most ben lete blod, opere ellys ben

[⁴ fol. 52 a]

- be lete blood or ellis ventusid, takynge reward to alle particuler
 pingis tofore seid / & ordeyne him a couenable dietyng, as schal be
 told in þe chapitle of dietyng; & leie a defensif aboute þe wounde,
 4 3 j. of bole armoniak distemperid wip oile of ¹rosis, & a litil vinegre :
 as picke as hony tempere it / & if þat þe tyme of þe 3eer were
 hoot, putte to þis medicyn þe ius of sum cold erbe : as morel,²
 penywort,³ virge pastoris. Late not þe lyme hange; but if it be
 8 the arm, hange it aboute þe necke / & if it be þe foot eiper þe
 schene, lete him ligge / & if þat þe lyme ake, aswage þe akþe wip
 an oynement of hoot oile of rosis / For as Galion seip : þer is no
 þing more noious to a wounde þan is akþe & declinacioun of a
 12 lyme, for þese .ij. maken soone an hoot swellynge, þe which is to þe
 feure as a welle, & to þe bodi as an ouene / þe woundid man
 muste absteine him after þe chapitle of dietyng techip, & boþe þe
 sike man & þe leche, & alle þat ben aboute þe sike, moten absteine
 16 hem fro fleischly knowynge of a womman, [ne a womman] *in tyme
 of menstrew,⁴ ne loke not on þe sike man / & oonys in þe dai þe sike
 man schal go to priuy;⁵ & if he mai not schite "oonys" kyndeli in

use blood-
 letting or
 cupping,
 prescribe a
 proper diet
 and a
 deffensium.
 [1 lf. 28]

Put the
 injured limb
 in a proper
 position.

Galion.

The patient
 and the
 physician
 must live
 chastely.

Regulate
 the patient's
 stool.

² morel, Lat. Solathrum. See Notes.

³ penywort, Lat. umbilicus Veneris.

⁴ See Notes.

⁵ priuy. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 414, Pryvy or gonge (or Kocay), Latrina, cloaca, ypodromium; p. 202, Goo to pryvy, or to shytyng, Acello. *Pryvy* still used in Yorkshire.

- ventusyde, takynge rewarde to alle partikelere þynges tofore seyde, Add. MS.
 20 & ordeyne hym a couenable dyotyng, as schal be tolde in þe 12,056.
 ChapiteH of dyotyng; & leye a defens aboute þe wounde : 3 j of
 bol Armonyake, distemperid wip oyle of rosys & a lytel vynegre, to
 þe piknesse of hony; & 3if þat þe tyme of þe 3ere were hot, put to
 24 þis medycine þe jus of sum colde erbe : as morel, nyztchode, peny-
 wort, virge pastoris, oþere sum oþer colde erbe; & bynde nozt þe
 lyme to harde, ne lete nozt þe lyme hongyn; but 3if it be þe arme,
 honge him aboute þe nekke; & 3if it be þe fot oþer þe schyne, lete
 28 hym ligge; & 3if þat þe lyme akþe, aswage þe akþe wip anyntyng
 of hote oyle of roses. Ffor as Galyen seyth : þere is nobynge more
 grefes, þan ys akyng & declynacioun of a lyme, for þese two makip
 sone an hote swellynge, the whiche is to þe ffeuyre as a welle, & to
 32 þe body as an Oryn. þe woundyde man most absteinen hym,
 after þat þe chapiteH of dyetyng techith; & boþe þe syke man &
 þe leche, & alle þat ben aboute þe syke, mote absteinen hem from
 fleschlye knowlachynge of a womman, ne a womman *in tyme of
 36 menstrew, ne loke nozt on þe syke man; & onys in þe day þe syke
 man schal schyte, & 3if he may nozt schyte kendly onys in þe day,

a clisterie þe dai after þe quantite of mete þat he takip, make him a clisterie
 If a tumour ouper a suppositorie oonyes ech day. & if þou myzt not wip alle
 develops, þese þingis defende þe lyme from apostyme, it is an yuel signe, for
 [1 lf. 28, bk.] þe lyme is ¹feble, & þe humouris arn wickide; þanne bigynnen² to 4
 use a materen þe swellynge wip potage maad of flour, oile & watir, or
 maturatif, ellis wip þis maturatif / Take malowe leues & leues of violet, & þe
 R rote of holihocke; seþe hem weel in water, & staumpe hem, & take
 a pound of water, þat þei ben soden ynne, & comoun oile; 3 .iiij.; of 8
 wheete flour 3 .iiij.; of flour of lynseed 3 j.; of flour of fenegrek
 dj.³ 3.; of erbis I-staumpid half a pound. & boile alle þese togidere
 in a panne ouer þe fier, & stire it weel wip a spatire; & þis
 maturatif leie on a lynnen cloof, & leie it on þe postyme til þat it 12
 and remove be maturid / & whanne þat þe postyme is maturid, make þe quytture,
 the pus. if þou maist, be cast to þe wounde; & if it mai not be cast to þe
 wounde, opene þe place þat is moost lowist þere, as þe quytture mai
 best goon out; & þanne hele þe wounde, as I schal telle in þe 16
 bridde chapitle of apostymes / Take hede alwey to þis techinge;
 If the tumour & if þe postyme were for þe prickynge of a senewe, ne leie not
 is caused by þerto þis potage maturatijf, but wip þe oynement of oile of rosis, &
 the pricking of opere þingis, as it is seid in þe woundis of senewis / 20
 use a nerve
 use an oint-
 ment.
 ² bigynnen, mistake for bigynne. ³ dimidium.

Add. MS. after þe quantyte of mete þat he hap takyn, make hym a clistry, oper
 12,056. a suppositorie onys iche day. & 3if þou maiste nozt with alle þese
 þynges defendyn þe lyme from aposteme, yt is an yuele signe, for þe
 lyme ys feble, & þe humores ben wykkede; þen begynne to maturen 24
 þe swellynge, with potage y-made off flour, oyle & water, oper ellys
 maturatyff with þis maturatyff: R malwe leuys, leffys of vyolett, & þe rote
 [4 fol. 52 b] of holy hokke; seþe hem ⁴wel in water, & þanne stampe hem, &
 take a pounce off þe water þat þey be sodyn yn, & of comyn oyle 28
 3 .iiij, of whete flour 3 .iiij, of flour of lynsed .3. j, of flore vynegreke
 3 f, of erbys i-stamped lb.⁵ f; & boille alle þese togedire, in a pan
 ouere þe fyre, & stire yt wel wip a spator; & þis maturatyff leye
 on a lynne cloth, & leye on þe posteme, tyl þat yt be maturdy; & 32
 whanne þat þe posteme is matured, make þe quytter, 3if þou maist,
 ben y-cast to þe wounde; & 3if it may nozt ben y-cast to þe wounde,
 opyne þe place þat ys most lowest þere, as þe quytter may best gone
 out; & þan helyn þe wounde, as y schal tellyn, in þe bridde 36
 chapyteff of Apostemys. Take hede alweye to þis techynge, þat
 3if a posteme were for þe prikyng of a synwe, ne leye nozt þereto
 þis potage maturatyff, but wyt þe vneture of oyle of roses & of
 oper þynge, as yt is seyde in þe woundys of synwys. þou schalt 40

⁵ MS. lj

pou schalt knowe þe yuel discrasie of a wounde, ¹ if þat pou seest þe skyn þat is aboute þe wounde to reed & to hoot in felynge, þanne þe wounde is discrasie in hete; namely, if þat þer come out of þe wounde ² a sotil quytture, reed; pilke discrasie pou schalt helpe wiþ coldyng þe lyme aboute þe wounde with oile of rosis & vnguentum album, Rasis of ceruse, which pou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie, & with þe ius of þe opere eerbis colde.

8 & pou schalt knowe a cold discrasie bi þe whiztnes eiper þe wannesse of þe place / & whanne þe place is cold in towching, & whanne þat þe quytture is picke; þe which discrasie pou schalt remeue bi þe enoynture of hote oiles, as oile of coste, ³ oile of laurine, oile of enforbium, & so opere hote oisil /

[1 lf. 29]

1. A hot dyscrasia,

Nota

2. a cold dyscrasia, & discrasies
1. h.

A moist discracie pou schalt knowe bi þe neischenes of þe place, & bi aboundaunce of whizt liquide rotenes, þe which pou schalt helpe wiþ desiccatiuis: as wiþ waisching of wyn & hony togidere, in þe whiche ben soden balaustie, ⁴ gallis & þe ryndis of some garnadis, or alle or summe bi hem-silf /

3. a moist dyscrasia,

R

þe drie discrasie pou schalt knowe bi þe smalnes of þe lyme, & þe smalnes of þe lippis of þe wounde, & litil quytture, if þat þe quytture be pinne; þe which discrasie pou schalt helpe: with

4. a dry dyscrasia.

[5 lf. 29, bk.]

² MS. erroneously inserts *quytture* after *wounde*.

³ *oile of coste*, Lat. cum oleo de castoreo.

⁴ *balaustie*. Balaustum, the floure of the wyld Pomgranate. Halle. Table, p. 16.—1565. Turner, *Herbal*, II., fol. 49 b., calls it Balaustum.

y-knowe þe euyh dyscrasie of a wounde, 3if þat pou sest the schyn þat is aboute þe wounde to reed, & to hot in felynge, þenne þe wounde is discrasyede in hete, namly 3if þat þere come out of þe wounde a sotyH qyter & a red; & pilke discrasye pou schalt helpen with coldyng þe lyme aboute þe wounde, with oyle of roses, & with vnguentum album—rasis of ceruse—whyche pou schalt fynde in þe Antodarie, & wiþ ius of opere colde erbys. & pou schalt knowe a colde discrasye by þe whitenesse oper þe wannesse of þe place, & whanne þe place ys colde in touchyng, & whanne þat þe quyter is thykke; the whiche discrasye pou schalt remeffen, by þe vnture of hote oyles, as oyle of cost, oyle lauryne, oyle of enforbium, & so opere hote oyles. A moiste discrasie pou schalt knowe by þe nesschenesse of þe place, & by þe Aboundaunce of whit lyquyde rotnesse, þe whiche pou schalt helpyn with defficatyffes: as with wasschyng of wyn & honye togedres, in ⁶ þe whiche buþ y-sode balaustye, gallys, & þe ryndes off poume garnettys, oper alle oper some by hem-selffen. þe drye discrasye pou schalt knowe by þe smalnesse of þe lyme, & þe smalnesse of þe lippes of þe woundes & litel quyter, 3if þat the quyter be þenne; þe whiche discrasye pou

Add. MS.
12,056.

[6 fol. 53 a]

As soon as
the dyscrasia
is removed,

try to heal
the wound
itself.

Auicenn

castyng on of hoot water til þat þe lyme wexe reed, & wip an
oynement þou muste¹ grece, as hennes, goos, & dokis, þe marie boon
of a calf, & wip plenteuousnes of good mete þat norischip: as þe
broþis of fleisch, & temperate wyn, & rere eyren, & smale fischis, 4
& wip reste, & softnes of al þe bodi, & of þe lyme þat is hirt; &
alwey to þis techinge take hede þat as soone as a membre is brouzt
to his kyndeli disposicioun, anon azenstondip² wip contrarious
medicyns, & turne azen to þe principal cure of þe wounde. But 8
þenke nouzt to heele þe wounde as longe as it is enpostemed, or
ellis haue an yuel discrasie; but first remeue pilke discrasie, or þat
þou heele þe wounde / For whanne two þingis þat schulden ben
heelid ben togidere, & þe oon of hem mowe not be helid wipoute 12
helynge of þat opere, first we schulen heelen him, þat mai nouzt
be heelid wipoute þat oper helyng, as þe apostyme eiper þe dis-
crasie / þus Auicenne techip in þe laste chapitle of þe firste book.
Neuer-þe-lattere forþete nouzt þe principal cure, þat whanne þe 16
accidentis ben asesid turne azen to þe principal cure //

¹ þou muste, mistake for of moiste.

² azenstondip, mistake for azenstonde.

Add. MS. schalt helpen wip castyng on of hote water, tyl þat þe lyme wexe
12,056. rede, & with an oyntyng of moiste grecys, as hennys, gosys &
dokys, & þe marye bon of a Calff, & with plentefoste of gode mete, 20
þat norysschyth, as þe brothys of flesch, & temperat wyn, & rere
eyren, & smale fyssches, & opere gode þynges, & with reste and with
softnesse of alle þe body & of þe lyme þat is y-hurte; & alwey to
þis techyng take hede, þat as sone as a membre ys y-brozt to his
kendlye dysposicioun, anon azeyne stonde with contraryouse medy- 24
cine, & turne azeyne to þe pryncipal cure of þe wounde. But þynke
nozt to helyn þe wounde, as longe as þe wounde ys apostomyde,
opere ellys hap an yuele discrasye, but first remywe pilke discrasye
ere þan þou hele þe wounde. For wheanne þat tweye þynges þat 28
scholde ben y-helyde, buþ togedres, & þe on of hem mowe nozt ben
y-helyde withouten helynge of þe oper, first we schulle helyn hym,
þat may nozt be helyde withouten helynge of þe opere, as þe
posteme oper þe dyscrasye; & þus Avycene techith in þe last 32
chapiteH of þe first bokys. Ne nevere þe latere ne forþete nozt þy
pryncipal cure, þat whanne the accidentes ben asesyde, turne azeyne
to þe princypale cure.

¶ Þe .vij. chapitle of þe .iiij. techinge is a wounde maad
with a wood hound, eiper of ony oper venemous
beest /

- 4 ¹ **B** Vt whanne an hound hap biten a man, loke first if þat þe
hound be wood; & if þat þe hound be not wood, heele þe
wounde as þou doist opere comoun woundis; & if þat þe hound
were wood, þou schalt knowe it bi certeyn cause & disposiciouns /
- 8 For a wood hound fleep mete & water; & he rennep hidirward &
pidirward as a drunken man, wiþ open mouþ & his tail bitwene hise
leggis; his tunge hangip out, but he wolde biten alle men; ne he
knowip not þo men þat ben in houshold. He berkip not / & if
- 12 þat he opirwhile berke, his vois is ful hors, & opere houndis fleen
fro him & berken vpon him. Also þou schalt knowe bi disposicioun
of þe same wounde. For if þat þou wetist a crumme of breed in
þe blood of þe wounde, & zeuest it to anoþer hound to ete, he
- 16 wole not ete it; & if þat he ete it, he wole die / Or ellis take an
ote, & staumpe it, & leie it on þe wounde al nyzt, & on þe morowe
zeue it to an hen; & þe hen wole not ete it / & if þe hen ete it, þe
hen schal die /

[1 lf. 30]²
¶ Capm vijm
Bite of a dog.
Ascertain
whether the
dog was
rabid.

Food satu-
rated with
blood of the
wound
kills other
animals.

² Heading to leaf 30, in a later hand, *Off woundes betten with doges.*

- 20 ¶ The vij Chapitelle of þe þridde techynge is off a
wounde y-made of a wod hounde, opere of eny
opere venymouse bestys.

- Whenne þat an hounde hath byten a man, firste loke 3if þat þe
24 hounde be wod; & 3if þat þe hounde be nozt wood, hele þe wounde
as þou dost opere comyn woundys; & 3if þat þe hounde were wood,
þou schalt y-knowe yt by certeyne causes, & by dispo³siciouns. Ffor
a wod hounde fleyth mete, & fleyth watere, & operwhyle he dyeth
- 28 whenne þat he seþ water; & he rennyth hydirwarde & pedirwarde,
as a dronken man, wiþ opyn mouþ & hys taylle bytwene his leggis,
hys tunge hongyth out, he wolde byte alle men, ne he ne knowyth
nouzt þo men þat ben his housholde, he berkyth nozt; & 3if þat
- 32 he operewhyle berke, hys voys ys ful hors, & opere houndys fien
from hym & berkyn vpon hym. Also þou schalt y-knowe by
dysposicioun of þe same wounde, for 3if þat þou wetyst a crumme
bred in þe blod of þe wounde & geuyste yt to an oper hounde to
- 36 etyn, he wyl nozt etyn yt, & 3if þe hounde etyþ yt he wyth deyen;
opere ellys take a note & stampe yt, & leye on þe wounde al nyzt,
& on þe morwe 3if yt to an herne, sche wyl nozt etyn hyt; & 3if
sche etyth yt sche wyl deyen. & anone as þou wost þe hounde ys

Add. MS.
12,056.

[3 fol. 53 b.]

If the dog
was rabid,
withdraw the
blood from
the wound by
cupping,
cauterization,
[1 lf. 30, bk.]
and attrahent
remedies.

Simple
remedies.
Haue it [?]

Compound
remedies.

Another
treatment:

And anon as þou woost^t þat þe hound was wood, sette a greet
ventuse aboue vpon þe wounde, & drawe out^t þe myche blood out^t
of^t þe wounde, & aftirward drawe abroad þe wounde; & aboue al
opere þing^t, brennyng of hoot^t yren to þe ground ¹of^t þe wounde is 4
moost^t profitable. & leie aboue þe wounde atractiuis, to drawe out^t
þe venym / Summe of þese atractiuis ben symple, & summe com-
pound / Symple beþ: þe lyuere of þe same wood hound þat^t boot^t
þe man, garlik stampid, salt^t fisch, aischis of^t wiyn lies, appoponak 8
þat^t is wondirful, þe leeuës of^t a gourde,² & þe rote of fenegrek, þe
gile³ of^t fisch, & amptyn I-stampid / þese medicyns ben compound:
vreyne of^t a 3ong^t man wiþ nitre; ouper mintis stampid⁴ wiþ salt, &
distemperid wiþ vynegre, & maad an enplaster. Anoper medicyn 12
compound: take floris eris & salt^t, of^t ech .x. parties, & þe fatte of^t
a calf, & of^t a wolf^t þat^t sufficiþ, & make a plastre / Anoper: take
schepis talow & buttere, & make a plaster / þis wounde schal be
holden open at þe leeste fourty daies, & þis schal be do aboute þe 16
place. In anoper maner regimen / Vndirstonde þat^t þe man þat^t is
biten, schal not^t be lete blood in þe bigynnyng, lest^t þe venym be
drawe abroad bi opere lymes; ne þou schalt^t 3eue him no laxatif,
lest^t it^t drawe þe venym to þe entrailis wipinne; but^t þou schalt^t sette 20

² gourde, cucumer. See *Prompt. Parv.*, 203, *Goord*, Cucumer, cucurbita, colloquintida.

³ gile, ne. gill. See Mätzner, *Dict.*, p. 268. The Latin has, *gluten*, glue.

⁴ stampid, in margin.

Add. MS.
12,056.

wod, sette a gret ventuse aboue þe wounde & drawe out myche blod
out of þe wounde, & afterwarde drawe abrod þe wounde; & abouen
alle opere thyng brennyng of hote eyren to þe depþe of þe wounde
ys most proflytable, & aftere leye aboue þe wounde attractyfes, to 24
drawe out þe venym. Some of þese attractyfes beþ symple, & some
beþ compond. Symple ben: þe lyffere of þe same wod hounde
þat bote þe man, garlyke y-stampyde, salt fyssch, asschys of vyne,
Opopanac ys wondirful, þe leuys of a Gourde, & þe rote of flyne- 28
greke, þe gele of fyssches, & amptes y-stampyde. þese medecynes
ben compond: vryne of a 3onge man, with nytre oper myntes,
i-stampyde with salt & distempred with vynegre, & y-mad in em-
plastre. An opere medicyne compond: R floris eris & salt ana 32
ten parties, & þe fat of a calff twelf^t partyes, & make a plastre.
An opere: take schepys talw³ & buttre, & make emplastre. þis
wounde schal ben y-holde opyne at þe leste fourty dayes; al þis
[? fol. 54 a] schal be do about þe place. ⁵In an opere manere regimen vndir- 36
stande, þat þe man þat is y-bete ne schal nouzt be lete blod in the
bygynnyng, lest þe venym be drawe abrod by opere lymes. Ne
þou ne schalt 3if hym non laxatyff^t, lest yt drawe þe venym to þe
entraylles withynne; but þou schalt setten on þe place a stronge 40

- vpon þe place a strong^t ventuse, as it is seid tofore, ¹þat it mowe drawe miche of þe blood. And whanne þat .iiij. daies ben passid, it is not^t yuele to lete blood & to purge with a litil purgacioun, þat purgip þe malencolie, as with decoccioun epithimum,² wip gotis whey; & norischip him with dieting^t, þat fattip & makip him glad & blipe; & waische his heed with decoccioun of water, þat þe feet & þe heed of a weper were soden ynne. Ne late him not^t pirsten ne hungren, suffren, ne traueilen; & so if þat god wole, þou maist him kepe from perile / & ech dai to a monþis eende he schal take opere symple medycyns or compounned / * — — Take þe ayschis of crabbis I-brent in an ouene .iiij. parties, of frankencense vij. parties, & make hem into a poudre / þe pacient schal take ech dai of þis poudre .ij. .3. / Anoper medycyn: take þe powder of crabbis brent^t vj. parties, gencian .iiij. parties, terre sigillate oon partie, make poudre / If þat þou were not^t at þe bigynnyng, & it bigynne to haue yuel accidentis: as yuel þouztis, soruful metyng in his sleep, & þat he be wroþ & grucche, & woot not^t whi; & if men aske him ony ping^t, & 3eueþ no good answer perto, & fley lith,³ & he haþ alle opere signes of malencolie, þanne 3eue to him a

use first
cupping,
[1 lf. 31]
then blood-
letting and a
purgative.

Keep the
patient in
good spirits.

During a
month he
must take
every day
a simple or
a compound
medicine.

If the patient
seems melan-
choly,

[4 lf. 31, bk.]

² *Epithimum*. See Notes.

³ *fley lith*, altered to *fleyntlith* with different ink. Read: *fleyth lizt*.

- ventuse, as yt is seyde tofore, þat he mowe drawe myche of þe blode. & whenne þat þre dayes ben passyde, yt is nouzt yuele to leten blod, & to purge with a lyzt purgacioun, þat purgith þe malyncolye, as with decoccioun of Epytemum, with gotys whey; & norissche hym with dyetyng, þat fattyth hym & make glad & blipe; & wassche hys hed with decoccioun of water, þat þe fet & þe hed of a wepire ben y-sodyn yn. Ne lete hym nouzt þrustyn, ne suffren hungryre ne traueil, & so 3if þat god wyl, þou maiste kepen hym from peryle. & euery day to a moneþ ende, he schal taken opere symple medycynes, oper componed. * Symple buþ: Asa ffetida. Asa dulsis, poþm,⁵ terra sigillata, Wermot, Kockull,⁶ mirre & gencyane. Medycynes componed gode: * R þe assches of crabbys y-brent in an Offyn .iiij. partyes, of frankensens vij. partyes, make a poudre; þe pacient schal take iche day of þis poudre 3 .ij. wip wyn. An oper: R þe poudre of crabbys y-brende vj. partyes, of gencyane .iiij. parties, terre sigillate oon partie, make poudre. 3if þat þou were not^t at þe bygynnyng, & he bygynneth to haue yuele Accidentes, as yuele þouztis, schrewyde metyng in his slepe, & þat he be wroth & grucche & wot not^t why, & 3if men aske hym enye pyng he 3euyth no gode answer pere to, & fleyþ lyzt, & he haþ alle opere signes of malencolye, þanne 3if to hym a medycine y-made

Add. MS.
12,056.

⁵ *polium*, Paley.

⁶ *Kockull*, Nigella. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 86.

give him
troches com-
posed of
cantarides
and spices,

R
N

untill he
micturates
blood.

Treat bites
from venom-
ous beasts
similarly.

medicyn maad of cantarides / Take old grete cantarides, & do
awei þe heed & þe wyngis, .ij dragmis; lentis¹ I-clensid, .ṡ j.;
safron, spikenard, clowis, canel, .ana .ṡ s'; bete hem weel, & make
of hem smale ballis, þat ech bal weiȝe a dragme. & ȝeue o. bal at 4
þre tymes, at ech tyme þe weiȝte of þre cornys of wheete, til þat
he pisse blood; þanne he schal be saaf / For whanne þou art sikir,
heele þe woundis after þat fourti daies ben passid, in þe same
maner. If þat þe wounde were maad of bitinge of an eddre or of 8
ony oþer venemous beest, þe leche schal take heede to drawe abrod
þe wounde, & sette aboue a uentuse, & drawe out miche blood; &
it is miche worþ to enuyrounne þe place aboute þat is biten wiþ
brome I-stampid / For if þat þe prickynge be in þe foot or in þe 12
hand, if þou enuyrounne þe arme with brome, it lettij þe venym to
go vpward; & ȝeue him þe medicyns writen aboue, & also lete þe
wounde be open, til þe venym be excludid /

¶ Cap^m viij^m

THe .viij chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste 16
tretis of a wounde maad in a ioynt, & is dislocate /

Whanne þat a wounde is in a lyme, & þe boon of þe same lyme
[² lf. 32]³ is to-broke atwo & dislocate—þat is to seie out of ioynt, þanne

¹ does not above *lentis*; meaning?

³ Heading to leaf 32 in a later hand: *Off woundes in Jintes.*

Add. MS.
12,066.

of cantarydes. Take *olde* grete kantarydes & do aweye þe hed & 20
þe wynges ȝ. ij., lentys I-clansed ȝ. j., saferen, spikenard, clowys,
caneſt ana ȝ. ſi.—in opere bokys—ipone hem wel & make of hem
smale ballis þat weyȝen j. penyȝe wyȝt; & ȝif a baſt at þre tymes,
at iche tyme þe wyȝt of vij cornys of whete, tyl þat he pyſſe blod, 24
for þenne he schal be saff. Efor whenne þou art sykere, hele þe
[⁴ fol. 54 b] ⁴wounde after þat fourty dayes ben passyde, in þe same maner.
ȝif þat a wounde were mad of þe bytinge of an eddre, opere of eny
opere venymouse beste, þe leche schal take hede to drawe abrode þe 28
wounde & setten abouen a ventuse & drawe out myche blod, & yt
is myche worþ to enviroun þe place abouten þat is y-betyn wiþ
brome y-stampyde. Efor ȝif þat þe prikyngȝe be in þe fot opere in
þe hande, ȝif þou enviroun þe arme opere þe legge with brome, yt 32
latteþ þe venym to gone vpwarde; & ȝif hym þe medecines y-wryten
aboue, & also tryacle, & lete þe wounde be opyne, tyl al þe venym
be escludyde.

The viij. Chapytelle of þe þridde techynge of the ffirſte 36
tretys is of a wounde y-made in a joynt & is dislocat.

defensiffe

Whenne þat a wounde is in a lyme & þe bon of þe same lyme
ys tobroken atwo & is dislocat—þat is to sigge, out of joynt,

it is good þat þou putte in þe wounde whanne þe blood is staunchid, & also aboue þe wounde þe 3olke of an ey wip oile of rosis, & anointe al þe lyme aboute þe wounde with two parties of oile of rosis, & half oon partie of vynegre maad pikke wip bole armoniak, til þe quytture be engendrid, & þat þou be sikir þat no postyme schal come. Ne take noon hede to brynge togidere þe parties of þe boon þat is to-broken or dislocate, til viij. daies ben goon in þe wyntir, & v. in þe somer; for þanne it schal make quytture, and be sikir from swellynge; & þanne brynge togidere þe brynkis eiper þe disiuncture after þe techynge þat schal be seid in þe chapitle of algebra. & if þat þe prickynge eiper þe dislocacioun nedip splentis, make þat þe splentis & byndynge faile aboue þe wounde. þat þou may do if þat þou kutte þe splentis & þe bindynge aboue þe wounde with a knyft or a rasour, & in drawynge abroad þe hoole of þe wounde¹ aboue þe wounde wip a nedle, so þat þou maist bi þat hole ech day chaunge þi medicyn of þe wounde wipoute choudynge² of þe boond þat þou madist first aboute þe boonys þat weren broken ouper dislocate; þe which boond þou schalt nouzt remeuen til tyme schal be teld in his place, but þou schalt bynde aboue pilke

If the wound is accompanied by fracture or dislocation of a bone,

R
dress the wound,

and do not join the bone before some time elapsed.

Cut a hole in the splints or bandages,

through which the wound can be dressed.
[³ ff. 32, bk. J]

¹ *wounde*, error for *bonde*.

² *choudynge*, error for *chongynge*.

þanne it is gode þat þou putte in þe wounde, whanne þe blod is y-staunchyde, & also aboue þe wounde, þe 3olke of an eyze, with oyle of roses, & anoynt alle þe lyme aboute þe wounde, wip two parties of oyle of rosys, & wip half on party of vynegre, y-made pikke with bol Armonyake, tyl þat þe quytture be engendered,⁴ & þou be sykere þat none Aposteme schalt come. Ne take none hede to brynge togidere þe parties of þe bon þat is tobroken opere dislocat, tyl viij daies ben go in þe wyntire, & fyff in the somere; for þenne yt schal make quyttere, & be sykere from swellynge; & þenne brynge togidere þe brekyngge opere þe dysynncture aftere þe techynge þat schal be seyde in þe Chapytell of **Algebra**. & 3if þat þe brekyngge opere þe dyslocacioun nedip splyntes, make þat þe splyntes & þe byndynge faylen aboue þe wounde; & þat þou maiste do, 3if þat þou kytttest þe splyntes & þe byndinge aboue þe wounde with a knyft opere a rasoure, & in drawynge abroad þe hole of þe bonde aboue þe wounde⁵ wip a nedle, so þat þou maiste bi pilke hole euery day chaungen þe medycine of þe wounde withouten chaungynge of þe bonde, þat þou madest firste aboute þe bonys þat were broke opere dislocat. þe whiche bonde þou schalt nouzt remessen, tyl þe tyme þat schal be tolde in hys place; bote you schalt bynde aboue pilke

Add. MS.
12,056.

[⁵ fol. 55 a]

⁴ MS. engenderes.

boon a newe boond, which þou schalt remeue as ofte as þou chaungist þi wounde. & whanne þat þou art sikir fro þe enpostemyng, & whanne þat þou hast sett togidere þe boonys þat were sett togidere & dissolate, þanne leie vpon þe wounde bi þe hole 4
 R þat þou madist in þe boond, a mundificatif of mel roset colat, & of barli mele til þe wounde be clensid; & leie on þat a¹ mundificatif, þedis of oolde whiȝt lynnen cloþ, til þat þe wounde be ful clensid; aftirward regendre fleisch, & aftirward consowde with 8 regeneratiuis & consolidatiuis, whiche þat schulen be seid in þe ende of þe book /

¶ Cap^m ix^m

THE nynþe chapitle of þe .iiij. techinge of þe firste tretis is of fluxblood of a wounde / 12

Hæmorrhage arises from an injury, corrosion, or weakness of the veins and arteries—

þer ben ij. maner of causis þat makip blood to blede out of a mannys body; þe oon cause is clepid—cause coniuncte; & þe toþer—cause antecedent / þe enchesoun of cause coniuncte is compounned of þe moupis of þe veynes and arteries, or ellis whanne 16 þat þe veynes ben kut atwo, or ellis corrosion of þe bodies of þe 2 same veynes & arteries, or ellis to greet febilnes or to greet losenes / And þer ben manie enchesouns of cause antecedentis: as to

¹ a, erroneously inserted.

³ Heading to leaf 33, *Off flux off blode in rounde*s.

Add. MS.
12,056.

bonde a newe bonde, þe whyche þou schalt remeffe, as often as þou 20 chaungiste thy wounde. & whanne þou art sykere from empostomyng & þou haue sette togidere þe bonys þat were sette togidere & dislocat, þerme leye vpon þe wonde by þe hole þat þou madyst in þe band a mundifycatyff of mel rosat colat, & of barlye mele, tyl 24 þe wonde be clansyde; & leye on pilke mundyficatyff þedis of olde clene whyte lynne cloþ, tyl þat þe wounde be ful clansyde; afterward regenere flesch, & aftereward consoude wiþ regeneratyfes & consolidatyfes, whiche þat schullen ben seyde in þe ende of 28 þe boke.

The ix Chapitle of þe þridde techyng is of flux blod off a wounde.

þere beþ two manere causes þat makyth blod to bleden out of 32 mannys body; þat on cause is clepyde cause conjuncte, & þat oþer cause antecedent. þe encheson of cause conjuncte ys openyng of þe moupes of þe veynes & þe Arteries, oþer ellys whanne þat the veynes beþ kut atwo, oþer ellys corosion of þe bodies of þe same 36 veynes & arteries, oþer ellys to gret feblennesse, oþere to gret losnesse. & þere beþ manye enchesouns & causes antecedente: as to myche

myche frelenes¹ of blood, or ellis to myche acute of blood, & also manye opere causis per ben pat^t ben clepid cause of² primitif: as smytynge pat^t woundith, to greet lepinge, cryng; wrape, chidyng, & so manye opere; & ech of pese causis tofore seid hap his maner heelyng by him-silf in fisik medicinal. But it is not pe entencioun of his book to treten³ of blood pat^t bledip of wounde, pat^t is maad with wounde, pe which may be restreyned with craft of ciurgie. In flux of blood pat^t comeþ of a wounde, pe leche muste loke pe disposicioun, pe abitude, age, vertu, & complexioun of him pat^t is woundid; if pat^t pese acorden, & he be myzty in vertu, he schal blede myche blood at pe wounde, þouþ pat^t pe leche be clepid 12 at pe bigynnyng, but if it be so pat^t he be⁴ feble ouer greetliche. & if pat^t nede constreyne pe leche to staunche blood, he muste loke if pat^t pe blood go out at pe veynes capillares, pat^t ben smale veynes as heeris of a mannys heed / & þanne oonly pe whizt⁵ of an ey leid 16 aboute with towþe of flex suffisip / whanne pat^t pe parties of pe wounde ben brouzt togidere; & if þou caste aboute poudre of lym aforeseid in pe chapitle of sowynge of woundes, it schal be pe bettere; for pat^t poudre wipstreyneþ pe blood & consoudip þerparties

¹ *frelenes*, mistake for *fulnesse*. ² *of*, erroneous insertion. See below.
³ *but*, omitted. Latin: Non est huius libri intentio tractare nisi de fluxu sanguinis. . . ⁴ *be*, added in margin in same hand.

from fullness of blood—
causæ antecedentes;
from an accident—causæ primitiva.

If the patient is strong, let him bleed freely;
if he is weak use a mild styptic when the blood is lost from the capillaries;
[⁵ l. 33, bk.]

20 fulnesse of blod, oper ellys to myche Acuyte of blod & also manye opere causes; and pere beþ opere causes pat beþ clepyd causes prymytiff; as smytyng pat wondip, to gret lepyng, cryng, wrappe, chyding, & so many⁶ oper & iche of pese causes tofore 24 seyde hap hys manere helyng by hym-selfen in fesyke medecynal. Bot it ys nozt pe entencyoun of þis boke, to tretyn but of blod, pat bledip of wounde, pat is y-mad wip wounde, the⁷ whiche may be restreynde by crafte of surgerye. In flux of blod, that comyth of 28 a wounde, pe leche most loke pe disposicioun, pe Abitude, Age, vertu & complexioun of hym pat is y-woundyde; & 3if pat pese acorden, & he be myztye in vertue, he schal blede myche blod at hys wounde, þowþ pat pe leche be clepyde at pe bygynnyng, bot 3if 32 it so be pat he feble ouere gretlyche. & 3if nede constreyne pe leche to staunche pe blode, he most loke 3if pat pe blod go out of pe Veynes capyllares, pat beþ smale veynes as herys of mannys hed; & þanne only pe whyte of an eyze, y-leyde aboute wip towþ of flex 36 suffisip, whenne pat pe parties of pe wounde beþ brouzt togidere; & 3if þou cast aboute pe poudre of lyme, tofore seyde in the chapytelt of sowynge of woundes, yt schal be pe betyre; for pe poudre wipstreyneþ pe blod & consoudeþ pe partyes of pe wounde, togidere.

Add. MS.
12,056.

[7 fol. 55 b]

⁶ MS. may.

when it is
lost from a
larger vein
use a stronger
styptic;

when it is
lost from an
artery press
the artery
until a clot is
formed,

and apply a
styptic

R

[² 1f. 34]

Renew the
remedy care-
fully.

of þe wounde togidere. & if þe blood come fro grete veynes he
mai nouzt^t so sumtyme be constreyned, but^t it^t nedip a stronger
medicyn & also a more cautele / & if þat^t þe blood go out of
arterie, þou schalt knowe it^t bi construccion & dilatacion of^t þe 4
same arterie—þat^t is to seie, þat^t þe blood go out wip lepinge &
operwhile wip wipdrawinge¹; & þanne sette þi fyngir vpon þe moup
of þe grete veyne or ellis on þe arterie, & holde þi fyngir þeron bi
a greet^t hour; for þanne by grace sum greet^t drope of blood may be 8
congelid togidere & þere-bi vertu may be myche comfortid; aftir-
ward leie plenteuousliche of þis medicyn vpon þe veyne eiper þe
arterie þat^t is kutt^t atwo / Take frankencense, whizt^t gummis, &
fatt^t. ij. 3., aloes .3. j., make poudre & distempere with þe white of 12
an ey as picke as hony / after take heeris of an hare smal kutt^t,
²medle alle þese togidere, & þer is no medicyn so good as þis medi-
cyn is in streynynge of blood & consowdyng of þe veyne / But^t
whanne þat^t þou comest^t to chaunge þat^t medicyn of þe wounde, do 16
nouzt^t þe medicyn away wip strenkþe, but^t leie aboue of þe same
medicyn³ moist^t, to neische þe firste medicyn, þat^t it^t myzte
falle away bi him-silf^t / Nepeles it^t is possible þat^t a medicyn
caustik, þat^t is to seie, a medicyn þat^t brenneþ, sunner staunchip 20

¹ Lat. : quod sanguis exit cum saltu secundum constrictionem et dilata-
tionem ipsius arteriæ.

³ MS. *medicyn*, repeated.

Add. MS.
12,056.

& 3if þe blod come from gret Veynes, he may nozt so sumtyme be
constreynde, but it nedip a strengere medecyne & also a more
cautele; & 3if þat þe blod go out of an arterye, þou schalt y-knowe yt
be constructioun & dilatacioun, of þe same arterye—þat is to sigge, 24
þat þe blod goþ out with lepyng, & oper whyle with wipdrawyng,
& þenne sette þy fyngere vpon þe moup of þe gret veyne, opere ellys
þe Artarye, & holde þy fyngere þere on by a grete oure; for þenne
by hap sum grete drope of blod may be congelyde togedre, & þereby 28
vertu may be myche y-comfortyde. Afterwarde leye plentyfullyche
of þis medycine vpon þe ⁴Veyne opere þe arterye þat is kut atwo.
R ffrancencens, whyzt gommous & fat 3. ii., Aloes 3. i., make
poudre & distempre with þe whyzt of an eyze as þykke as hony; 32
after take herys of an hare smale & kutte, medle al þis þynge to-
gedire, & þere ys no medycine so gode as þis medycine is, in streyn-
inge of blod & consoudyng þe Veyne. Bot whanne þat þou comyst
to chaunge þe medycine of þy wonde, do nozt away þe medycine 36
wip strengþe, but ⁵leye aboue of þe same medycine moist, to nessche
þe firste medycine, þat yt myzte fallyne away by yt-self^t. Napeles
yt is possible, þat a medycine caustyke, þat ys to sigge a medycine

[⁵ fol. 56 a]

⁴ wounde, cancelled before *veyne*.

blood þan þis medicyn of frank encense ; & þou schalt haue greet
 plente of medecyne caustik in þe antidotarie, but we ben nouȝt
 sikir þat þe blood of þe veyne eȝer arterie anopir tyme wole goon
 4 out, whanne þat þe schorft of þilke caustik Medicine¹ is remeued
 away / but þis medicyn of encense with þe heeris of an hare not
 oonliche staunchiþ þe blood, but also sowdiþ² þe veyne & þe
 arterie, as I haue preued it ofte tymes / And for to ȝeue autorite I
 8 sette a saumple þat come sumtyme to myn hondis : A child of þre
 ȝeer old hadde a litil knyf in his hond, & he fel on þat knyf in þe
 former partie of þe prote persched þe veyne organise ; þer cowde no
 man it staunche, & þanne I was clepid, & I cam to þe child in
 12³ greet haaste, & he hadde almost lost his ȝit ; for hise ȝen in his
 heed weren turned vp so down ;⁴ & þe blood come out at þe wounde
 whiȝt as whey, vnnep̃ he hadde no pouste⁵ / & þanne I leide my
 fyngir on þe heed of þe veyne, & I heeld it faste þat þer myȝte no
 16 þing go out ; & so I heeld þe veyne a greet hour, & þanne vertu of
 his bodi þat was almost lost quykenede aȝen, & þe pouse bigan to
 appere febiliche as it were a smal pred / þanne I sente to þe spiceris

The styptic
is a surer
remedy than
a caustic.

Nota bene

1st Example.
A child hav-
ing cut its
throat with
a knife,

[3 lf. 34, bk.]
the loss of
blood caused
collapse.

The vein was
pressed,

¹ medicine, added in margin.

² MS. sowdyng.

⁴ up so down. See Mätzner, *Dict.*, s. v. "down." Latin: oculos habebat in capite revolutos.

⁵ unneþe he hadde no pouste. This passage is corrupt ; for the correct version see below.

þat brennyth, sennore staunchyth blod, þenne þis medicine of encense ; Add. MS.
 20 & þou schalt haue gret plente of medecyne caustyke in þe antido- 12,056.
 darye, but we beþ nouȝt sykere þat þe blod of þe Veyne, oþere þe
 arterye an oþer tyme wyl gon out, whanne þat þe serche of þylke
 caustyke medecyne ys remywed away. But þy medecyne of ensence,
 24 with þe herys of an hare, nouȝt only staunchiþ þe blod, but also con-
 soudeþ þe Veyne, & þe Arterye, as y haue preuyde yt ofte tymes.
 And forto ȝif Autorite, I sette an saumple, þat come sum tyme to
 myn handys : A childe of þre ȝere olde, hadde a lyte knyf in hys
 28 hande, & he fel on þat knyf, & þe poynt of þe knyf, in þe fore
 partye of þe prote, persyde þe Veyne organys ; ne þere ne coupe no
 man yt staunche, & þanne y was y-clepyde & y come to þe child in
 gret haste, & he hadde almoste loste hys syght ; for hys eyzen in
 32 hys hed were turnyde vp so down, & þe blode come out of þe
 wounde, whyte as wheyze, ne he ne hadde no pous, & þenne y
 leyde my fyngere on þe hed of þe veyne, & y helde faste þat
 nopynge myȝte go out, & so y helde þe veyne by a grete houre, &
 36 þe vertue of hys body þat was almost lost quyknede aȝeyne, & þe
 pous bygan to apere ffeblyche as yt were a smal preed. þanne y

schoppe þat^t was a greet weye fro me / ne I remeuede not^t away my
fyingir fro þe place, til þat^t þe messenger cam aȝen, and þe child
bigan þanne to opene hise iȝen; & þanne I ordeynede þis medicyn
to be maad, & plenteuousliche I leide it aboue þe wounde, & I 4
boond þe wounde wiþ plumaciols & with stupis¹ I-leid in whit^t of
an ey, & with a boond I boonde it^t streitly, and comaundide hem to
ȝeue him crummys of breed leid in water; & on þe morowe I come
aȝen, & þanne I foond þe child comfortid / & neuere þe lattere I 8
nolde nouȝt^t vndo þe medicyn / þe fader preiede me wiþ greet^t in-
staunce to vndo þe medicyn, ² but I wolde not^t; & so I lete it lie
stille, til .iiij. daies weren passid withouten remeuyng^e / & neþeles
I visitide him ech day; & þe .iiij. day I vndide þe wounde, & þe 12
medicyn was drie aboue þe wounde, so þat^t I myȝte not^t han re-
meued it^t wiþoute greet^t violence. & þanne I leide aboue þe whiȝt^t
of an ey wiþ a litil oile of rosis, & so I lefte it lie oon day til on þe
morowe I turnede aȝen; & þanne I remeuede away þe medicyn 16
wiþouten violence, & I foond þanne þe wounde & þe veyne al hool.
& of þis heelyng^t his fadir & alle hise neȝeboris hadden greet^t
wondir / And if^t þat^t wiþ þis medicyn þou maist^t not^t sowde þe
arterie ne þe veyne, ne þow maist^t not^t constreyne þe blood for sum 20

¹ "Stupes (in Surgery), Pledgets of Tow, Cotton, etc., dipt in scalding hot Liquors and apply'd to the diseased Part."—Phillips.

Add. MS. 12,056. sente to þe spysers schoppe, þat was a grete weye from me, ne y ne
remywed^e nouȝt away my fyngere from þe place tyl þat þe messagere
come aȝeyne, & þe childe þenne bygan to opene hys eyȝen; and
þanne y ordeynede pilke medycine to be maad, & plentyffuliche y 24
leyde it abouen þe wounde, and y bonde þe wounde with plumaceoles
& with stupes y-leyde in whyȝt of an eyȝe, & with a bande y bonde
yt streytlye, & y comaundede hem to gyuen hym crommys of brede,
y-leyde in water; and on þe morwene y come aȝeyne, & þenne y 28
fonde þe childe y-cunffortede & neuere þe latere y wolde nouȝt vndo
þe medycine; þe ffadire ³preyde me wiþ grete instaunce to se þe
wounde, but y wolde nouȝt; & so y lete yt be, tyl foure dayes were
passyd, withouten remeffyng^e & naþeles y vysitide hym every day; 32
in þe fourþe day y vndyde þe bande, & þe medycine was drye aboue
þe wounde, so þat y myȝte nouȝt haue remywed^e hyt withouten grete
Vyolence. & þenne y leyde aboue þe whyte of an eyȝe, with a lytel
oyle of roses, & so y lasfe yt by on day. On þe morwen y turnyde 36
aȝeyne, & þenne y remeffyde away þe medycine withouten Vyolence,
& þenne y fonde þe wounde & þe Veyne al hol. And of þis helyng^e
þe fadire & alle his neȝhboures hadden gret wondire. And ȝif þat
with þis medicyne þou maiste nouȝt soude þe Arterye, ne þe Veyne, ne 40
þou ne maiste nouȝt constreyne þe blod for sum opere Impedement,

a styptic ap-
plied, the

wound band-
aged

[² lf. 35]
and left un-
disturbed for
four days.

The child re-
covered on
the fifth day.

If necessary

[³ fol. 56 b]

- oper impediment: þanne þou must ouþer bynde þe veyne, or drawe
 hir out of hir place, & bynde þe heed of þe veyne or arterie, ouþer
 þou must brenne hir wiþ hoot iren, & make on hir heed a greet
 4 cruste & a depe. ¶ Anoper ensauple: þer was a child of .xv.
 3eer oold þat smoot him-silf with a smal knyf, & pilke knyff per-
 side o. senewe of þe arm & prickide a ueyne þat lay vnder pilke
 senewe. & for þe prickynge of þat senewe ¹he hadde greet
 8 akynge, & blood drewe down to þe wounde & nouzt azenstood ²for
 alle þe staunchis of medicyns þat me myzte do þerto, it wolde not
 staunche, þe blood ran out at þe wounde. & colde medicyns ben
 greuous to senewis þat is prickid, for þei stoppen þat lyme, & þat
 12 is contrarious azen senewis; & þanne I demede nessessarie to
 drawe out al þe veyne out of her place & to bynde hir & to helpe
 pilke senewis wiþ oile of rosis / But þe modir of þat child sente for
 a lewde leche which þat repreuede foule my doom, & he bihiȝte to
 16 heele safly þe child. He dwellide on þe cure, & I wente my wey /
 þe which leche took hede to him .x. daies, þat neiþir þe akynge
 ceesside ne þe blood was not staunchid, & so þe sijk man was nyȝ
 deed / & at þe laste I was clepid, & I wolde not come to þe pacient /
 20 þanne a fisician þat was frend to þe freendis of þe pacient blamede
 þe modir & hir freendis þat þei hadden lefþ counseil for pilke idiotis
² azenstood, for azenstondyng.

use a ligature
or torsion or
cauterization
of the bleed-
ing artery or
vein.

Nota

2nd Example
Case of a
child which
had pricked
a nerve and a
vein in its
arm.

[1f. 35, bk.]

Lanfranc
suggested ty-
ing the vein
and applying
oil of roses to
the nerve.

A lay phy-
sician at-
tempted an-
other treat-
ment,

but for ten
days the child
suffered acute
agony and
bleeding;

- þan þou moste opere bynde þe Veyne, opere drawyne here out of
 here place, & wynde þe hed of þe Veyne oper Arterye, oper þou most
 24 brenne here wiþ hote yren, & maken on here hed a grete croste & a
 depe. An opere exauple: þere was a childe of xv ȝere olde, þat
 smot hym-self with a smal knyff, & pilke knyff persyde on Veyn of
 þe Arme, & prikyde a Veyne þat lay vndire pilke synwe. & for þe
 28 prikynge of pilke synwe he hadde grete akynge, & blod ran to þe
 wounde & noȝt azeynestondyng medycines þe blod ran out at þe
 wounde. Kolde medycines weren profitable to bledynge of wounde,
 and colde medycines bep greffes to prikynge of synwes; for þey
 32 stoppyn þat lyme & þat ys contraryus azeyns þe synwys; and
 þenne y demyde necessarye to drawe out alle þe Veyne out of here
 place & to bynde here & to helpen pilke synwe with oyle of roses.
 But þe modire of pilke childe sende for a lewyde leche, whyche þat
 36 reprevyde foulliche my doom, & he behyȝte to helyn saflyche þe
 childe. He dwellyde on þe cure, & y went my weye. þe whyche
 leche toke hede to hym be ten dayes, þat neiþere þe akynge sesyde
 ne þe blod was noȝt y-staunchyde, & so þe syke man was ³nyȝh ded.
 40 And at þe laste y was clepyde & y wolde noȝt come to þe pacient.
 But þenne a ffysisyen þat was frende to þe man of þe pacyent,
 blamyde þe modire & here frendys, þat þey hadde lefte my consaylle

Add. MS.
12,056.

[³ fol. 57 a]

biheeste; & pilke fisician purposide, after *pat* he hadde herd my counseil, *pat* *per* was noon *oper* wey *pat* myzte saue *pe* sike man from deef, & he axide of *pe* sirurgian wheþer he coude do as I hadde seid bifore. & ¹ he seide, *pat* he coude so doon, & so he 4
 [1. 11. 36] dide / He kutte *pe* skyn aboue *pe* veyne & twynede *pe* veyne in
 finally a sur- geon tied the vein and saved the child.
 hise handis, & boond *pe* eende of *pe* veyne *with* a *pred*; & after he helde on *pe* senewe hoot oile of rosis, & so bi *pis* counseil he was restorid aȝen to heelpen / But who so wolde aske how *pat* he 8
 myzte so manye daies be kept from *pe* crampe for *pat* he suffride so greet akþe / I answer & seie: *pat* *pe* cause was, for *pat* he bledde at *pe* wounde ech day, so *pat* *pe* senewe ² mizt not be to myche replete eiper ful of blood / Alle þese pingis I haue told, *pat* he *pat* 12
 redip hem mai *pe* visiloker in semblable causis worchen. & if bi *pis* medicyn he myzte nouȝt sikirliche be restorid or restreyned *pat* fallip riȝt seelde whane ³ / þanne we moten brenne *pe* heed of *pe* veyne eiper of senewe ⁴ wiþ hoot iren, & pilke hoot iren myzte 16
 make an hard cruste. & be war *pat* þou touche not *pe* lippis of *pe* wounde ne *pe* senewe, ne noon *oper* þing but oonly *pe* veyne wiþ hoot iren. & if al *pis* craft wole not helpen, we musten drawe

Nota

² *senewe*, error for *wounde*. Add MS. has the same mistake.

³ *riȝt seelde whane*. *Polychron*, i. 133, wel silde whanne. *Stratm.*, seldhwonne.

⁴ *senewe*, error for *arterie*. The same mistake in Add. MS.

Add. MS. 12,056. for *pe* byhestys of *pylke* ydyote; & *pilke* flysisyens propoſyde, 20
 aftere *pat* he had herde my counseylle, *pat* *pere* was non *opere* wey *pat* myzte saue *pe* syke man from *pe* deþ, & þenne he askyde a surgyne, wheþere he couþe don as y hadde seyde byfore; & he seyde *pat* he couþe so don, & so he dyde. He kutte *pe* skyn aboue 24
pe Veyne, & twynede *pe* veyne in his handys, & bonde *pe* ende of *pe* Veyne wiþ a þrede, & afterwarde he hyld on *pe* synwe hote oyle of rosys, & so by *pis* counseyle he was restoryde aȝeyne to hele. But ho so *pat* wolde aske how *pat* he myzte so manye dayes be 28
 kepyde from *pe* crampe, for *pat* he suffryde so grete akþe, I answer & sigge: *pat* *pe* cause was, for he bledde at *pe* wounde eche day, so *pat* *pe* synwe ne myzte noȝt be to myche replet *opere* fulfyllde of blode. Alle þese thynges y haue tolde, *pat* he *pat* redyȝh hem may 32
pe wyslocor in semblable causes wyrchen. And ȝif be *pis* medyceyne he myzte noȝt sykerliche be restreynede, *pat* fallyȝh ryȝte selden, þenne me moste brenne *pe* hed of *pe* Veyne *opere* of *pe* synwe wiþ hote yren, *pat* *pilke* hote yren myzte maken an harde croste. And 36
 be war *pat* þou touche noȝt *pe* lippes of *pe* wounde, ne *pe* synwe, ne non *opere* thyng, bot only *pe* veyn *with* hote yren. And ȝif al *pis* crafte wolde noȝt helpyn me, men most drawn out *pe* Veyne, &

out þe veyne & fle þe fleisch aboue here, & wynde þe veyne sadliche
 & bynde hir heed wiþ þin han^ddis.—Bi² my witt I³ trowe amene
 þat a bodi schulde make þeron a knotte I-knytt of him-silf or ellis
 4 knytt wiþ a þred. I woot neuere wheþer he meneþ; for he seiþ in
 anoper place tofore þat I schulde knytte it wiþ a þred, & þerfore I
 suppose bi my witt þat I schulde make a knotte þeron of his owne
 silf bi my witt.—& sumtyme it happiþ þat an arterie is broken
 8 ouper kutt & þe fleisch þat is aboue is hool & nouȝt to-broke neiþir
 I-kutt, or ellis þe fleisch þat is aboue þe arterie is helid tofore & not
 þe arterie; & vndir þe fleisch þer is a swellynge of blood þat is
 clepid aperisma⁴ ouper mater sanguinis, & þerof þe pacient hap
 12 greet drede, lest þat þe skyn to-broke & þe blood go out, þe which
 blood is hard to restreyne / for of þis maner sijknese spekiþ galien
 & seiþ þat a seruauⁿt of sich a disposicioun was helid of a lewde
 man þat tauȝte him þat he schulde leie snow on his siknes. Wher-
 16 fore a man may vndirstonde þat to sicke enpostymes colde medicyns
 & drie ben nessessarie. // // // // // //

and if this
 fails, torsion
 and a liga-
 ture.

[1 f. 36, bk.]

In the case of
 rupture of an
 artery an
 aporisma is
 formed.

.Galien.

² An insertion of the scribe.

³ I trowe a mene, "I believe to mean."

⁴ *aperisma*, Lat. *ophorisma seu mater sanguinis*. Dufr. Gloss. med. Lat.:
*Aporisma—collectio sanguinis in aliquo membro extra venas non putrefacti
 maxime sanguinis arterialis.*

flene þe flesch aboue here & wynde þe Veyne sadlyche & bynde here
 hed with þyn handys. And sum tyme yt happyth, þat an Arterye
 20 is y-broke opere y-kutte, & þe flesch þat is abouen ys hol & noȝt to-
 broke ne y-kutte, opere ellys þe flessch þat is aboue þe Arterye ys
 y-helyde & noȝt þe Arterye, & vndire pilke flessch þere is a swellynge
 of blode⁵ that is y-clepyde **Aporisma** opere matere **Sanguis** &
 24 þere of þe pacient hath grete drede, lest þat þe skyn tobreke & þe
 blod gone out, þe whiche blod is hard to restreyne. Of þis manere
 seknesse spekyth **Galyen**, & seiþ þat a seruauⁿt of swyche a dys-
 posicioun was y-helyde of a lewyde man, þat tauȝte hym þat he
 28 scholde legge snow vpon þat seknesse, wherfore a man may vndir-
 stande, þat to swyche empostemys colde medicynes & drye beþi
 necessarye.

Add. MS.
 12,056.

[⁵ fol. 57 b]

¶ Cap^m x^m

The .x. chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste tretis ¹is of gouernaunce & diete ¹of men þat ben woun²did /

[² lf. 37]

off dietyng
for woundes.
Some physicians
give nourishing
food and
wine,

pretending
that water is
harmful;

others allow
only bread
and water
and sodden
apples.

Both are
dogmatic.

þer ben manye men þat discorden of dietyng of men þat ben ⁴woundid, for sum men zeuen to alle men þat ben woundid, whepir þat it be in þe heed or in ony opere place, good wryn & strong fleisch of capouns & of hennys; & þei affermen þat bi sich a maner wey sike woundid men ben sunnere heelid / for þei seien þat ⁸water putrifith lymes þat ben woundid & engendriþ enpostymes & corrupiþ & febliþ complexiouns & makip manye harmys / & summe opere men gouernen alle maner of sike men þat ben woundid wiþ breed & watir & applis soden til ten daies ben goon / And ¹²if god wole eende þis book, it schal be remeunye errouris & declarynge & openyng doutis / I seie þat þese boþe sectis erren in her opynyouns, for þei taken hede oonly to her experimentis not considerynge resoun of complexioun of him þat is woundid / þe firste ¹⁶secte of þese two * [seyth] þat summen oonly eten breed & watir in so myche þei ben feblid þat blood & mater in her bodies may nouzt be restorid; þe ³which were sufficient to hele with her woundis,

1-1 added in margin.

³ þe cancelled in MS.

Add. MS.
12,056.

¶ The x Chapitle of þe þridde techyng of þe firste ²⁰tretys is of men that beth y-woundyde.

Many men discorden of dietyng of men þat ben woundyde, for sum men zeuen to alle men þat ben woundyde, wheper þat it be in þe hed oper in enye opere place, gode wryn & stronge flesch of ²⁴capouns & of hennys; and þey affermen þat by swyche a manere weye seke woundyde men sonnere ben y-helyde, ffor þey siggen þat watyre putrefyþ lymes, þat beþ woundyde, & engendriþ Apostemys & corumpyth & feblyth complexiouns, & makyth many harmys. ²⁸Sum opere men gouernen alle manere of syke men þat beþ woundyde with brede & water & Applys y-sodyn, tyl x dayes ben passyde, & ȝif þat god wyl ende þis bok, yt schal be remeffyng away Errores, & declarynge & opnyng Downtous. Y sigge, þat boþe þese ³²sectes erryn in here opynyouns, ffor þey taken hede onlyche to here experimentys, nozt considerynge resoun of þe complexioun of hym þat is y-woundyde. The firste secte of þese *seyth þat some men, only etyng bred & watere, in so myche ben y-feblyde, þat blode & ³⁶matere in here bodies may nozt be restoryde; þe whiche were suffi-

- but^t þei ben so feble þat^t þei ¹dien, or ellis þei languren ²longe [¹ lf. 37, bk.]
 tyme; ne þe lymes may not^t receyue resonable vertu as þei schulde;
 & þese maner men ben of cold complexioun & drie & her bodies
 4 weren feble or þei weren woundid, & her stomak & her entrailis
 wipinne weren feble / þe secunde secte seiþ: þat^t summe þat^t
 drinken wiyn & eten fleisch hadde in þe membre þat^t was woundid
 a greet enpostyme & a febre—& þo ben zonge men þat^t ben of an
 8 hoot complexioun & a moist—wherfore þei comaundide to alle
 maner opere of complexioun þat^t þei schulden drynke no wiyn ne
 ete no fleisch / 3e schulen vndirstonde þat^t boþe þese sectis ben
 nouȝt; & þerfore I folowyng þe doctryne of rasis, auicen, & galion
 12 & of opere doctouris, & also experimentis þat^t I haue longe preued,
 I seiþ þat^t it is nedeful þat^t a woundid man in þe bigynnyng ab-
 steyne him fro wiyn, & namely if þat^t þe wounde be in þe heed
 eipir in ony partie of a senewe. for þer is no ping^t þat^t so soone
 16 smytþ greuaunce in þe heed or þe senewis as wiyn; for he is soone
 conuertid of kyndely heete & for he is so sotil, he persiþ swiþe into
 þe senewis, & he assendiþ soone into þe heed, bryngyng wip him
 humouris & spiritis. It³ troublþ a mannys witt, & wiyn greueþ
 20 alle men þat^t han a feble heed / & þerfore in alle maner woundis of

The patient
ought, ac-
cording to
Rasis, & A.
Galion.

to abstain
from wine at
the begin-
ning.

Nota

if he is
wounded in
his head or
in a nerve,

[³ lf. 38]

² languren, languent. See *Prompt. Parn.*, p. 286, *Languryrn yn sekenesse* languet. And *ibid.* note 5.

- saunt to hele with here woundys, bot þey ben so feble þat þey dyzen, Add. MS.
 opere ellys þey langoren longe tyme; ne þe lyme may noȝt resseyuen 12,056.
 resonable vertue, as he scholde; & þese manere of men ben of a
 24 colde complexioun & a drye, & here bodies weryn feble.—*The
 secunde secte seyth þat some þat dronken ⁴wyn & etyn flesch hadde [⁴ fol. 58 a]
 in þe membre þat was y-woundyde a gret enposteme & a fleuyre—
 and þo þeȝ zonge men þat þeȝ of an hot complexioun & a moyst—
 28 wherfore þey comaundyde to alle opere manere complexiouns, þat
 þey scholde noȝt drynken no wyn, ne eten non flesch. þe vnder-
 standyng of boþe þese sectes nys noȝt comendable and þerfore y
 folwyng þe doctryne of rasis, Avence, galien, & of opere doctoris,
 32 & also experymentis, þat y haue longe y-preuyde, sigge þat it is
 nedeful in þe bygynnyng þat a woundyde man Absteyne hym
 from wyn & namlye ȝif þat þe wounde be in þe hed, opere in eny
 partye of a synwe. For þere nys noþyng þat so sone smyteþ with
 36 greuaunce þe hed opere þe synwe as wyn; for he ys sone conuertide
 of kendlye hete, and for he ys so sotyl, he persyth swiþe into þe
 synwes & he assendyth sone into þe hed, bryngyng with hym
 humores and spiritis. Yt trublyth a mannys wyt, & wyn greuyff
 40 alle men that haþ a feble hed; & þere fore in alle manere woundys

if his complexion is hot and moist;

if he has a cold complexion he may have a little wine, but in general a specially prepared beverage.

R

þe heed & of senewis he schal be forbode in þe bigynnyng namely to þo pingis¹ þat han hoot complexiouns & moist into þe tyme þat þe cure be ful endid / & to þo þat ben of a cold complexioun, whanne .iiij. daies ben passid, þou maist zeue to drynke smal temperat wiyn, & afterward a litil strengere, aftir þat þou art sikir þat þer schal nouȝt come to þe membre noon enpostyme. But þis² drinke schal be watir of barlich, eijer water of crummes of breed bene soden in whit³ wyn,⁴ or ellis lete þe breed lie in cold watir 8 rapere þan þou faile þat he schal drynke / but he may tende weel to heete it, & nameliche in somer / & to þat ben woundid⁵ to drynke watir, or ellis with þe x. partie of wiyn of pome garnates or ellis with þe sixte partie of wiyn agrestis þat is smal brusk⁶ 12 wiyn, or ellis þis is a perfiȝt drinke to woundis of þe heed & to senewis : / Take a potel of water & of barly clensid .iiij. ȝ., juiube,⁷ sebesten⁸ ana. 3. ȝ., of drie prunis of damascenes ȝ j, sugre of rosis ȝ ij., seþe hem⁹ to .iiij parties ben consumed, & þanne lete him 16
[11 ff. 38, bk.] drynke. To asaye it softly¹⁰ / ¹¹ þis drinke is alteratijf: þat is to seie, chaunginge, ne it swelliþ not, & it lettij fumosite to arise

¹ pingis, inserted. ² þis, error for *his*. ³ whit, error for *with*.

⁴ wyn, inserted. ⁵ woundid, error for *wonid*. Lat. homini assueto.

⁶ brusk, Roman brusco (Lat. rusticus?), harsh. See later reference in *N. E. Dict.*

⁷ *Jujube*, a kind of prune growing in Italy. Kersey—1721.

⁸ *Sebesten*, Arab. sebesten. Name for *Cordia mysa* vel *sebastena*.

⁹ Corrupt passage. Lat.: donec consumetur tertia pars.

¹⁰ softly, error for *soply*.

Add. MS. 12,056. of þe hed & off synwes, he schal be forebode in þe bygynnyng, & namlye to þo þat han hot complexiouns & moiste, into þe tyme þat 20 þe cure be ful endyde; & to þo þat beþ of colde complexioun, whenne þre dayes ben passyde, þou maiste zeuen to drynke a smal temperat wyn, & afterwarde a lyte strengore; aftere þat þou art sykere, þat þere schal nouȝt comen to þe membre non Aposteme. But 24 his drinke schal be watyre of barlyche opere watire þat crommes of brede ben sodyn yn, wiþ opere colde watyr & namlye in sommere, & to þo þat beþ woundyde drynke watyre, opere ellys wiþ tenþe partye of wyn of pome garnettys, opere ellys wyth sixte partye of 28 wyn agreste þat is smal broske wyn, opere ellys þis is a perfyte drinke to wondys of þe hed & of synwys: Take a potell of watyr & of barlyche y-meynde ȝ. iij, juiube, sebesten, ana. 3 ȝ, of drye prunes of damacynes ȝ .j., sucre of rosis ȝ ij, sethe hem to þre 32 parties ben consumed, & þenne lete hym drynken yt. Sothlye þis drinke ys alteratyff: þat ys to sigge chaungyng, ne hyt ne swel-
[12 fol. 58 b] lyth nouȝt. & yt latteþ fumosites to arysene to þe brayn. ¹² Of mete

- to þe brayn. Of mete I seie: to him þat is of a moist com-
 plexicioun & hoot / bi no maner wey schulde not be ȝouen fleisch,
 fisch, mylk, eiren, ne no comfortable mete, but if þei weren ouer-
 4 comen wip to greet febilnes; but he muste holde him content wip
 ius of barli or ellis of ootis wip almaunde mylk; outake¹ wounde
 of þe heed, were² I ne apreue nouȝt almaundis ne noon oper
 vaperous fruyt: as notis eipir walnotis eiper avellanes; for þei han
 8 a maner fumose properte greuyng þe heed / he may eten amidoun,
 betis, letuse, & breed I-waische wip sugre if þat he were feble. &
 if þat he myȝte not absteine him fro fleisch, ȝeue him fleisch of
 smale chikenes & of smale briddis & kidis & lambis & calues
 12 I-sauered with agresta eiper wip wyn of pome garnatis; & pilke
 dietyng he schal vse til he be sikir fro swellynge & þat þou schalt
 knowe whanne þat akyng swellynge & extencioun of þe lyme ben
 ceessid & þe wounde almoost consowdid. If þat it was a wounde
 16 ³ þat was sowid eiper brouȝt togidere with byndinge, in whom
 quytture was nouȝt engendrid, & if þat it was a wounde maad
 wip smytyng or ellis chaungid wip þe eyr, in whom it is nedeful
 engendryng of quytture, þanne it is siker þat it schal not enpos-

A patient of
 a hot and
 moist com-
 plexion
 should eat
 vegetables
 only;

Nota

if he cannot
 abstain from
 meat,
 chickens or
 veal may be
 given him.

[3 17. 39]

¹ outake, except. See *Catholicon Angl.*, p. 264, Oute take, note.

² were, error for where.

- 20 y sigge: þat to hym þat is of an hot & moiste complexioun, be
 non manere weye ne scholde nouȝt be ȝeffen flesch, ffysch, Mylke,
 eyren, ne no manere conuertyble mete, bot ȝif þey weryn ouere come
 with to gret febylness; but he mos'e holde hym content with Iuse
 24 of barlyche, opere ellys of otys wip almaunde mylke; out take
 wounde of þe hed, where y ne Apreue nouȝt Almaundys, ne non opere
 vaporose frutys, as notys oper walnottys oper Avelanes, for þey
 hauen a manere fumose proprete greuyng þe hed; he may etyn
 28 Amidun, betes, letuse & bred y-wassche wip succre, ȝif þat he were
 feble. And ȝif þat myȝte nouȝt Abstynen hym from flesch, ȝif hym
 flesch of smale chyknes, & of smale briddys: as larkys & opere
 sengle briddys, & kyddes & lambres, & kalffes I-saveryde with
 32 agresta, oper with wyn of pom garnett; & pis dyetyng he schalt
 vse, tyl he be sykere from swellynge, & þat þou schalt y-knowe,
 whenne þat Akyng, swellynge & extencioun of þe lyme ben seeyde
 & þe wounde is almost consouded. ȝif þat it was a wounde þat
 36 was sowyde opere brouȝt togedyre with byndyng, in whom quyter
 was nouȝt engendryde, and ȝif þat it was a wounde y-mad wyth
 smytyng—opere ellys y-chaungyde with þe eyre, in whom yt is ned-
 ful engendryng of quyter, þenne yt is sykere þat yt schal nouȝt

Add. MS.
 12,056.

Improve this diet when he gets better.

If he has a cold and dry complexion,

he should take meat from the beginning.

tyme, whanne þat he makij quytture plenteuousliche; & whanne þat þe lyme is weel disposid & not to swolle ne drawe abroad & is wipoute akyng; þanne chaunge a litil & a litil his dietyng til þat þou come to his dietyng þat he was wont to vse tofore / & if þat þe pacient were of a cold complexioun & a drie & þat he hadde bi nature eijer bi custum a feble stomak, þanne it were nessessarie to 3eue him at þe bigynnyng fleisch a litil sauerid with swete spicerie: as canel, gynger & opere semblable to hem, & to 3eue him in þe bigynnyng Julep¹—þat is a sirup maad oonly of water & of sugre —& aftir iij. daies ben passid, wyn, & boþe in þe oon complexioun & in þe opere complexioun. If þat a boon were broke wip a wounde or wipoute a wounde aboute þe eende of þe cure, þat is to seye, whanne þou art siker from apostyme & swellinge, it is good to 3eue norischaunt metis þat it² myzte make a good & a strong re-
peirement of þe boon þat was to-broke: as furmente soden in,³ potage of flour weel soden & wip þe extremytees of beestis feet & swyne groynes & oxen wombe weel soden & bi siche opere þingis bi whom a good ligament & a strong may weel be engendrid / Wherefore it is nessessarie to a surgian to knowe his dietyng, vertues of coplexciouns, agis, regiouns, consuetudes & þe tymes of þe 3eer þat

¹ Julep, med. Lat. julapium, Fr. julep, Pers. goulāb. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*

³ in, erroneously inserted.

Add. MS.
12,056.

enposteme, whenne þat he makyþ quyter plentyouslyche; & whenne þat þe lyme ys wel dysposyde & nozt toswolle, ne y-drawn abroad. & ys wipouten akyng, & þanne chaunge a lytel & a lytel hys dyetyng, tyl þat þou come to hys dyetyng, þat he was wont to vse tofore. And 3if þat þe pacient were of a colde complexioun & a drye & þat he hadde by nature opere by costeme a feble stomak, þanne yt were necessarye to 3euen hym at þe bygynnyng flesch a lytel y-saueryde with swote spysorye: as kanett gyngeffre & opere semblable to hem & to 3euen hym in þe bygynninge Julep—þat is a syripe y-mad only of watyre & of sucre—& aftere þre dayes ben passyde, wyn, and boþe in þe on complexioun & in þe opere complexioun. 3if þat a bon were y-broke, wip a wonde ore wipouten a wounde, aboute þe ende of þe cure, þat is to sigge, whenne þou art sykere from a posteme & swellynge, yt is gode to 3if norysschande mete, þat it myzte make a gode & a stronge repayment of þe bone þat was to-broke: as with ffurmente y-sode, & potage of floure wel y-sode, & with þe extremetes of bestys, as fette & swynes groynes & oxen wombys wel y-soden, & with swiche opere þynges by whom a gode ligamente & a stronge may wel be engendrede. Where fore yt is necessarye to a surgyne to knowe in hys dyetyng, vertues of complexiouns, Ages, regeouns consuetudes & þe tymes of þe 3ere, þat

[⁴ fol. 59 a.]

he mowe chaunge his dietynge aftir þat dyuerse condicioun. Ne he schal not aftir o maner of counseil procede in his dietynge.

The .xj. chapitle of þe bridde techinge of þe firste ¶ Capm. xjm.
4 tretis.

is of olde woundis þat ben maad of kutyngge or of open- off olde vere-
yngge of a postyme, or ellis of a wounde þat is not heelid in lent woundes
his tyme, or ellis of sum maner fleinge, or of brennyngge, or Various
8 of to greet heete, or of to greet drouthe, or of to greet cold causes of
constreynyngge, or of to greet aboundaunce of mater corruppyngge / ulcers.
For euery olde wounde hauyngge rotnes or wire¹ þat is pinne
venymous quyttir or ony opir þing þan good quytture is not clepid
12 a wounde, but it is clepid vlcus / Rowland & Rogerine & þe Roulond &
moste² partie of men þat ben now, clepen it a festre³ or a cankre, Rogeryn
but it is neipir festre ne cankre, but festre & cankre han difference [2 lf. 40]
fro þis / þis vlcus as a propre þing hap difference from a þing þat
16 is comoun / for ech festre & ech cankre þat is woundid, is clepid Ulcer is a
vlcus, but it ne schewiþ not þat ech vlcus is clepid cankre or festre more general
term than
fistula or
cancer.

¹ wire, Lat. virus.

³ festre, fester in Mätzner Dict.; O.Fr. flestre, festre; Lat. fistula.
Comp. N. E. fester vb.

he mowe chaungen his dyetyngge, aftere þat dyverse condycioun Add. MS.
askyth. Ne he ne schal noȝt aftere on manere of counseyle proceden 12,056.
20 in hys dyetyngge.

¶ The xi. Chapitle of þe bridde techyngge of þe firste
tretys is of olde woundes.

¶ Olde woundes ben mad of kutyngge oper of openyngge of a
24 posteme, opere ellys of a wounde þat is noȝt helyde in his tyme, oper
ellys of sum manere fleynge oper of brennyngge, oper of to grete hete,
oper of to grete drovpe, oper to gret colde constreynyngge, opere of to
grete Abundaunce of moist mater corruppyngge. For euery olde
28 wounde, hauyngge rotnesse opere virus þat is þenne venemy quyter,
oper eny oper þynge þenne gode quyter nys noȝt y-clepyde wounde,
but is y-clepyde vlcus þat is an olde wounde. And of þis Vlcus,
Roulond & Rogerine, & þe most partye of men þat ben now, clepyde
32 it festre, oper cancre. But it is neipere festre ne cancre, but festre &
cankre hadde dyfference from þis. ⁴ Vlcus, as a propre þynge hath [4 fol. 59 b]
dyfference, from a þynge, þat is comyn; for euerye festre & euerye
cankere, þat is y-woundyde, ys y-clepyde Vlcus, but yt ne syweth
36 noȝt þat euerye Vlcus, ys clepyde cankre opere festre, as y schal

Auicen
distinguishes
six kinds of
ulcers.

as I schal telle openliche in ech chapitle bi him-silf / Auicen seiþ,
þat þer ben .vj. maner of þis vlcus : summe þat ben venemous,
summe hore, summe depe, summe cauernose eiþer hid, summe
corosif, summe rotin, summe ambulatif þat is spredynge abrood, & 4
summe harde to consowde / Of þese maners tofore seid, summe¹
han acordynge with festrin in tokenes & in foormes as venemous &
holow & summe han acordynge with cankrin as spredynge abrood
& fretynge him-silf & nepeles þei han difference, as it is conteyned 8
in þe chapitle of cankrin I-woundid & of festre. & alle þese tofore
seid han difference fro wounde / for in a wounde þer is whiȝt
quytture & euene in alle hise parties & hole and nouȝt departid &
wipoute stenche. þis maner of quytture is engendrid of goodnes 12
& kyndely heete, & is perfiztly defied / But venym rotynes² & a
cruste, & al opere superfluyte of olde woundis ben engendrid of a
strong vnkynndly heete.

[² If. 40, bk.]

*vlcus viru-
lentum*

A venym vlcus is in whom aboundiþ venym sutil & liquid. If 16
þat it be reed or ȝelu, or oon partie redisch and scharp bitynge þe
lyme, it signifiþ lordschipe of a strong heete.

*vlcus
sordidum*

An hori elde wounde þat haþ summe greete crustis, or ellis a
wroting, sum gret proud fleisch to hize.³ 20

¹ MS. *summen*.

³ *proud fleisch to hize*. Lat.: *carnem superfluum grossam*. Proud flesh,
Fungosity. Dungalson.

Add. MS. 12,056. tellen opynlyche in euerye chapyteþ be hym-self. Auesene seyth
þat þere ben sixe manere of þese Vlcus, for sum ben Venemy, sum
hory, some depe, some cauernouse opere y-hud, sum corosyff, sum
rotyne, some Ambulatoryff—þat is spredynge abrode, & some hard 24
to consouden. Of þese manerys tofore seyde, some haþ acordynge
with festres in toknes & in fourmes : as Venemy & holwy, & sum
han acordynge with cancre : as spredynge abrode & fretynge hym
self. And naþeles þey habbe difference as yt is conteynede in þe 28
chapytelles of cancre y-woundyde & of festre. & alle þese tofore
seyde habbiþ difference from a wounde, for in a wounde þere ys
whyte quytter & euene in al his partyes & hol & noȝt departyde,
—& withouten styneke. þis manere of quytter is engendrede, of 32
godnesse of kendlye hete & is perfitlye deffiede. But vemyn,
rottenesse, & croste, & alle opere superfluyte of olde woundes ben
engendred of a straunge vnkendlye hete. A venemy Vlcus is, in
whom habundeþ venym sotyl & liquydy. Ȝif þat yt be red opere 36
ȝolwe, opere a partye redysche, & scharpe bytynge þe lyme, hit
synifiþ lordschipe of straunge hete. An hory olde wounde ys
y-clepyd, þat haþ sum grete crostes, opere ellys sum grete awrotynge

A deep vlcus is *pat*, *pat* haþ a greet depnes & an holow³ & *vlcus profundum*
 peraunture crokinge.

A wroting^t vlcus is *pat* of his malice fretiþ bi cause *pat* þe *vlcus corosium Galien.*
 4 blood is sent to him so scharpe / Galien seiþ: *pat* scharp blood not
 oonli corrodip [nozt]*—fleisch in woundis, but also hool fleisch /

A rotid vlcus is stynkyng, hauynge a strong^t heete in his *vlcus putridum*
 ground, & out of him passiþ a stynkyng smel, eiper smoke, as
 8 doiþ out of fleisch *pat* is rotid / pilke¹ word 'stynk' I vndirstonde
 it bi my maner witt: sich breeþ *pat* comeþ out of a bodies ende,
 whanne a bodi breeþ wiþ þe mouþ in frosty wedir, *pat* men taken
 a saumple, bifor to sle her lac dre / þanne whanne þou myzt se þe
 12 breeþ of þin owne ende comynge out at þi mouþ in þe eir.

A walkynge / vlcus is *pat* walkiþ hidirward & pidirward, & *vlcus ambulativum*
 neþeles he profoundiþ nouzt depe ²into þe ground. [2 lf. 41]

An vlcus *pat* is hard to helin is he *pat* for his yuel propirte *pat* *ulcus difficilis.*
 16 is sent to him fro þe bodi lettiþ him to heele.

& for to heelen ech maner of þese vlcus, þer ben manye dyuers *Cura vlcieris*
 rulis / þe firste rule is *pat* þei moun not be heeled, but þe super- .1.
 fluytees *pat* ben in hem ben I-dried / þe secunde rule / but if *pat* .2.
 20 bodi ouþer þe membre be oute of his naturel complexioun, or þan
 þou þenke to heele pilke vlcus þou muste brynge azen to his diete

¹ This curious explanation of the word *stynk* is an insertion of the scribe.
 Read: *ste her laddre*. One letter half erased in *laddre*. *Ste*, see *Stratm. Dict.*, O.E. *stigan*.

proud flesch to hyze. A depe Vlcus is *pat* *pat* haþ a gret depnesse Add. MS.
 & an holwe, & peraunter crokyng. A wrotyng vlcus is *pat* of 12,056.
 24 hys malyce wroteþ, bycause *pat* þe blod *pat* is sent to hym, is to
 scharpe. **Galien**: scharpe blod nozt onyche cordyth nozt *flesch in
 woundes, but also hol flesch. A rotyde vlcus is stynkyng, hab-
 bynge a straunge hete in his grounde, & out of hym passith out a
 28 stynkyng smel oþere smoke, as þere dop ³out of flesch *pat* is [3 fol. 60 a]
 y-rotyde. A walkynge Vlcus is *pat* walkeþ hyderwarde & þedir-
 warde & napeles he profundeþ nozt depe into þe grounde. An
 Vlcus *pat* is hard to helyn, is he *pat* for his yuele proprete, *pat* is
 32 sende to hym fro al þe body, latteþ hym to hele. & forto helyn
 euery manere of þese hulkes, þere ben manye dyverse rulis. þe
 firste rule ys *pat* þey mowe nozt ben helyde, but þe superfluytes
pat ben in hem ben dried. þe secunde rule ys *pat* 3if *pat* þe body
 36 oþere membre be out of hys naturell complexioun, ere þan þou
 þynke to hele pilke Vlcus, þou moste bryngen azeyne to hys due

- 3.** complexioun distemprid pilke bodi oupir membre. þe bridde rule is : þat' if' þe lyuere eipir þe splene ben I-greued, as it' happiþ ofte tymes in olde woundis, þou muste rectifien hem / þe .iiij rule is : þat' þe qualitees & þe quantitees of' humouris schulden be temperid 4 wip blood-letynge & purgaciouns & with good gouernaile / & if' þat' þe eir be yuel, þe sike man schal be chaungid into good eyr / & whanne þat' þe leche haþ tofore seen alle þese þingis, þanne he may go to his cure / 8

If the ulcer is virulent, wash the wound with a waschinge,

Nota¹

[³ lf. 41, bk.]

& if' þe vlcus be virulent, þat' is to seie venemi, loke if' þat' þe venym þat' goiþ out' be redisch or zelowisch, & if' þat' þe lyme haue ony maner heete ; þanne waische it' wip water of' rosis & barlich. alim² & balaustia & lentiles with hony³ symple eipir compouned 12 ben soden yn, & lete þis watir peersen to þe deppe of' þe wounde ; & if' þe virus be wipoute heete & þe membre haue noon heete, waische it' wip watir or with wyen þat' mirre wormode,⁴ horhone,⁵ sauge,⁶ pimpernelle⁷ hony symple or compouned ben soden yn / Clense þe 16 wounde perfiztliche & engendre fleisch & afterward consowde it' wip þis propre oynement' þat' þi⁸ olde foule venym woundis, eipir

and apply an vnguentum

¹ MS. *Nona*.

² *alim*, Latin : aluminis.

⁴ *wormode*, absinthium. O.E. wormôd, M.E. wormwood.

⁵ *horhone*, Marrubium vulgare. See Britten, *Dict*. ⁶ *sauge*, salvia.

⁷ *pimpernella*, Pimpinella.

⁸ *þi*, error for *in*.

Add. MS. 12,056. complexioun distempride⁹ pilke body oper membre. þe bridde rule ys, þat' 3if þat' þe lyfere opere splene ben y-greuyde, as yt happyth 20 ofte tymes in olde woundes, þou most retytien hem. The fourth rule ys : þat' þe qualites & quantytes of' humours scholde be tempride with blodletynge, & purgatiouns & with gode governaylle ; and 24 3if þat' þe eyre be yuel, þe syke man schal be chaungyde into gode eire. And whanne þat' þe leche haþ tofore seye alle þese þynges, þenne he may go to hys cure. & 3if þat' þe Vlcus be Virulente, þat' is to sigge Venemy, loke 3if þat' þe Venym þat' goþ out be redyssch 28 opere 3olwe, & 3if þat' the lyme haue enye manere hete ; & þenne wassche it wip water þat' rosys & barlyche Alum & balaustia & lentilis with honye symple opere componed ben sodyn In. And lete þis watere percen to þe depthe of þe wounde. And 3if þe Virus be 32 withouten hete & þe membre haue non hete, wassche it with water opere wyþ wyen, þat' Mirre, wermot, horhowne, sauge, pypmirnel, honye symple oper componed ben sodyn In. Clanse þe wounde perfitlye & engendre flesch & afterwarde consoud it with þis propre oynement, þat' in olde foule venemy woundys oper Vlcus engend- 36

⁹ At the margin.

vlcus, engendriþ fleisch, clensiþ & heeliþ as auicen & rasis witnessen / **Auicen & Rasis**
 recipe litargium¹ as myche as þou wolt & stampe it in a morter² &
 putte wiþ him good oile of rosis & vynegre now on & now þe opere,

4 alwey stiring, til it be perfiztly an oynement & come into þe foorme
 of an oynement. & þis oynement is clepid litargirum nutritum, **litargirum nutritum**
 þat is to sai litarge nurschid, þat is profitable in manye causis /
 afterward take of pilke litarge norischid .vij. parties & of alim,

8 & of balaustie or ellis in þe stide of balaustie wormes of þe erþe
 brent, bras brent, leed, gallis, sandragoun chathinie³ argenti .ana.

as myche as is xij parties of al þe oynement; medle alle togidere
 and ^[4 lf. 42] make an oynement / þis oynement schal be leid wipinne þe **vnguentum nutritum.**

12 wounde & al aboue þe wounde; for it driep þe wounde & engendriþ
 good fleisch & consowdiþ / Take hede to þis rule, þat in heelynge

of alle olde woundis after þat þei ben clensyd, aboue þe oynement
 it is good to leie a linnen cloþ, to distende abroad on of þe
 16 mundificatiuis of ony which þat schal be told in þe antidotarie, &

leie aboue aboute pilke vlcus specialy from þe ouer partie fro whens
 humouris fleen, a defensif of bole armonyak & terra sigillata; þat
 and add a
 T⁵
 defensif
 dressing.

¹ "*Lithangyros*, Litharge or Silver-glet, the frothy Dross, or Scum that
 arises in the purifying of Silver with Lead."—Phillips.

² MS. & putte it in a morter, scribal insertion.

³ "*Cathima* est minera de qua elicitor aurum vel argentum."—Sinonoma
 Barth. p. 14. *Cathimia*: argenti spuma, Cartelli *Dict.* ⁵ a sign like *Nota*.

reth flesch, clansyth & helyth as **Auecene & Rases** wytnessith, **Add. MS.**
 20 **litargium nutritum.** R litarge as myche as þou wylt & stampe it 12,056.

& put it in a mortere & ^[6 fol. 60 b] putte wiþ hym gode oyle of roses &
 vynegre, now þe on now þe opere, alweye sterynge, tyl it be perfit-

4 lyche augmentyd & come to þe fourme of an oynement. & þis
 oynement—litargirum nutritum—þat is to sigge litarge y-noryssched,

þat is profitable in many casis. Afterwarde take of pilke litarge
 viij partyes, & of alym, & of balaustie opere ellys, in þe stede of

8 sanke dragoun, cathimie, Argenti ana as mychel as ys .xij partyes
 of alle þe oynement, and medle al togedre, & make an Oygne-

ment. þis oynement schal be leyde withynne þe woundes & aboue
 þe wounde, for yt dryeth þe wounde, & engendriþ gode flesch &

32 consoud. Take hede to þis rule, þat in helynge of alle olde
 woundes, aftere þat þey ben clansyde, aboue þe oynement yt is

gode of one a linnen cloþ, forto dystende abroad on of þe mundryfi-

36 cates of hony whiche þat schulle be tolde in þe antidotarye. And
 leye aboue aboute pilke vlcus, & specialiche from þe ouere partye,
 fro whom humores flotyn, a⁷ defensif of bol Armonyake & terra

⁷ MS. &.

T
R

Nota.

is maad on þis maner / take bole armoniak .ḡ j. terra sigillata. 3 ß oile of rosis & vynegre þat^t suffisiþ, I-now³ do in þe oon now in þe oþer til þe oynement^t be ful maad & liquide I-nou³ / so þat^t of þe oile of rosis be double as myche as of vynegre / þis defensip a 4 membre fro corrupcioun & also vlcus þat^t he sprede nouȝt abroad /

In a (2) sordid
ulcer remove
the scurf.

An hory wounde shal be heelid, in remeuynge away þe crust^t eiþere filþe þat^t is in him wiþ poudre of affodill, þat^t schal be said in þe eende of þis book, ouþer wiþ sum oþer mundificatiuis; aftir 8 consowde it^t wiþ consolidaciouns /

[1 lf. 42, bk.]
In a (3) deep
ulcer cleanse
the wound,

A deep wounde is heelid ¹wiþ castynge into þe depþe of þe wounde with an instrument^t maad to þe lijkenesse of a clisterie, ony of þe waischingis þat^t ben seid in þe venemy wounde aboue, aftir 12 þat^t þe disposicioun of þe membre askip of heete or of cold. & aftir þat^t, he is clensid in castynge in watre ouþir wyñ þat^t mastik or frank encense is soden ynne & in leggyng^t wiþouten oon of þe mundificatiuis of hony þat^t schal be seid aftir. & also it^t is good to 16

and make the
pus discharge
itself freely.

ordeyne þe lyme so þat^t þe moup of þe wounde hange downward, & streyne þi ligature at þe ground of þi wounde, & bynde it^t losely at þe moup of þe wounde; also it^t were good, if þat^t it^t myȝte be, þat^t þer were maad a newe wounde in þe place þat^t is moost^t hangynge, 20 þat^t þe rotynes & þe quytture myȝte þe bettere goon out^t; for so þilke vlcus myȝte þe sunnere be heelid /

Add. MS.
12,056.

sigillata þat is mad on þys manere: R bol armoneake 3 j terre sigillate 3 ß., oyle of rosis & vynegre, þat suffyseþ, now do in þe on, 24 now þe oþer, tyl þe oynement be ful mad & lyquyde ynow³; so þat of þe oyle of roses be duple as myche as of þe vynegre. þis diffensiff defendip a membre fro corrupcioun, & also Vlcus þat he sprede nouȝt abroad. An hory wonde ys y-helyde, in remeffynge 28 away þe croste oþere þe fylthe þat is in hym with poudre of affodylles schal be sayde in þe ende, oþere with sum oþere mundificatyfes; afterwarde consoude yt with consolydatyfes. A depe wounde ys

[2 fol. 61 a]

y-helyde in castynge in to þe ²depþe of þe wounde with an instrument 32 y-mad to þe lyknesse of a clisteyre, any of þe wasschynges þat beþ seyde in þe Venemy wounde aboue, after þat þe disposicioun of þe membre askep of hete oþer of cold. And aftre þat he is y-clansyde, in castynge in water oþere in wyñ þat mastyke oþere frankensence 36 ys y-soden yn, & in leggyng without, on of þe mundificatyfes of hony, þat schal be sayde aftere. & also it is gode to ordeyne þe lyme, so þat þe mouth of þe wounde honge dunwarde, & streyne þi ligature at þe grounde of þy wounde & bynde it looslye at þe moup 40 of þe wounde. And also yt were gode, ȝif þat it myȝte be, þat þere were made a newe wounde in þe place þat is most hongynge þat þe

A wroting¹ vlcus is heelid in leggyng specialiche aboute him (4) In a corroding ulcer, use an obtundens, colde þingis whiche þat ben² obtunden or casten bach þe scharpnnes of þe same vlcus; & also with amendinge, as with metis & drynkis, an appropriate diet, purging, 4 þe scharpnnes of þe same blood, & in purgyng þe reed colere; & wiþ anoyntyng wiþ colde oynementis & consolidatiuis. & þerto and the vnguentum album rasis³ is miche worþ vnguentum album rasis þat schal be told in þe albuginis [3 lf. 43] antidotarie /

8 A stynkyng wounde is heelid in remeyng away þe stinche & þe rotenes; & þerto is myche worþ a waischinge of ydromel: þat is (5) In a stinking ulcer use a lotion of ydromel, hony & watir soden togidere wiþ mirre, & a mundificatif maad wiþ ius of wormod & barly mele & hony & mirre, þat is maad on þis mundificatif. 12 maner / take ius of wormod. 3 iij. of hony. 3 iij. barli mele 3 ij. R of mirre ana. 3 j. & compounne hem togidere & fille þe wounde wiþinneforþ with lynnet of linnen clop. & if þat wormes ben engendrid in þe wounde, sle hem wiþ þe ius of calamante ouþer wiþ 16 þe ius of þe leues of pechis, or ellis persicarie,³ eiper wiþ decoccioun of elebre. & whanne þat a perfizt mundificatif is maad, engendre fleisch & consowde as it is seil tofore /

A walkyng vlcus is heelid wiþ flebotomie & formacie⁴ þat is (6) In a walking ulcer use phlebotomy and purging,

¹ wrotyng, error for fretyng.

² ben, erroneously inserted. ³ persicarie glossed colorag. See Notes.

⁴ O.Fr. farmacie = purgation. See Littré, *Diet.*

20 rotnesse & þe quytere myzte þe betyre gone out, for so pilke Vlcus myzte suzner be helyde. A ffretyng vlcus ys y-helyde, in leggyng specialiche aboute hym colde þynges, whiche þat obtunden oþer castyn bach þe scharpnnes of þe same Vlcus, & also in amendinge 24 with metys & with drynkes the scharpnnes of þe same blod, & in purgyng þe rede colere & with anoyntyng wiþ colde oynementes & consolidatifes, & þerto is myche worþ vnguentum album Rasis, þat schal be told in þe antidotarie. A stynkyng wounde ys 28 y-helyde in remeyng away þe stenche & þe rottenesse, & þerto ys myche worth a wasschyng of ydromel þat is hony & water y-sode togidere wiþ mirre, & a mundificatif y-mad with ius of wermot & barly mele & hony & mirre, þat is made on þis manere: take jus of 32 wermot .3. iij, of hony 3 iij, of barly mele .3. ij, off mirre 3 .j., compone hem togidere, & fulle þe wounde, wiþynne forth wiþ lynete of linnen clop. & zif þat wormys ben engendride in þe wounde, sle hem wiþ jus of calamante, oþere with þe juse of þe leuys 36 of pechys, oþere ellys persicarie, oþer with decoccion of elebre. And whanne þat a perfyte mundificacioun is mad engendre flesch & consowde, as yt is seyde tofore. A walkyng Vlcus ys y-helyde with flebotomye & ffarmasye þat is laxatyfes purgyng þe colere &

Add. MS. 12,056.

[3 fol. 61 b]

laxatiuis purgyngē þe colere & brent^t humouris, & in leggyngē aboute a defensif^t of^t bole & terra sigillata þat^t is seid tofore in þis chapitle; & with oon of^t þe cold mundificatiuis, & sumtyme þou muste cauterise þe vlcus aboute with an instrument^t of gold. For þilke maner of^t 4 brennyngē rectifieþ weel þe membre /

[¹ lf. 43, bk.]

(7) In a malignant ulcer remove any special cause of the ulcer.

The healing is delayed if

Nota. the patient suffers from dropsy, the liver,

the spleen,

the blood,

or the glands,

or an inappropriate diet or medicine,

þe cause whi þat^t summe vlcus¹ is hard to consowde is, for an yuel disposicioun þat^t is hid in þe bodi, & þerfore it nedip to rectifien þe membre & þe bodi as I haue seid tofore. & if þe cause be vpon,² 8 oon oper manye, do awei þilke cause or ellis þe manye causis, or þat^t þou go to þis principal cure / þese ben þe causis þat^t letten consowdyngē of^t olde woundis: an yuel disposicioun of^t al þe bodi as ydropisie; or ellis an yuel disposicioun of^t þe lyuere as if þat^t he be 12 to feble, as to hoot^t or to cold, to moist^t or to drie, wiþ mater or wiþoute mater, as wiþ to greet^t hardenes; or ellis þe splene is to feble to purge þe malancolient^t blood; or ellis to myche blood or ellis to litil blood; or ellis þe veynes ben to fulle of^t blood þat^t goon 16 down to þe vlcus; or elles þat^t glandeles þat^t ben kirmelis þat^t ben in þe ground³ þat^t senden down mater to the vlcus þat^t is in þe þies & in þe leggis; or ellis þe lippis of^t þe vlcus ben to grete; or ellis myche fleisch; or ellis mys-ordynaunce of^t dietyngē or ellis an 20

² vpon, error for open.

³ ground. See grynd, page 41, note 3.

Add. MS. 12,056. brende humoures, & in leggyngē aboute a defensif^t of bol & terra sigillata þat is seide tofore in þe same Chapytte, & with on of þe colde mundrycatyfes & sum tyme men most cauterise þe Vlcs aboute with an instrument of gold. for þilke manere of brennyngē 24 rectefieþ wel þe membre. þe cause why þat sum Vlcs is hard to consowde is, for an yuel disposicion ys y-hydde in þe bodye, & þerfore it nedyth to retyfien þe membre & þe body as y haue seide tofore. And ȝif þe cause be opene, on opere manye, do aweye þilke 28 causes oper ellys þo manye causes, ere þanne þou go to þe princypal cure. þese ben þe causes þat lettyn consowdyngē of olde woundes, an yuele disposisioun of alle þe body: as dropsye, opere ellys an iuele disposisioun of þe lyuere: as ȝif þat he be to feble, as to hot opere 32 to colde, to moiste opere to drye, with mater ore withouten matere, as wiþ to grete hardnesse; opere ellys þe spleen is to feble to purge þe malancolyent blod; opere ellys to myche blod, opere ellys to acute blod; opere ellys þe veynes bep to ful of blod, þat goþ down 36 to þe Vlcs; opere ellys curnellys þat glandeles, þat bep kurnellys þat bep in þe grynde, þat sendip down matere to þe Vlcs þat is in þe thyȝes & þe legges, opere ellys þe lippes of þe Vlcs bep to grete & hard, opere ellys to myche flesch, opere ellys mysordeyninge of 40

- inconuenient^t medicyn to þat^t membre or ellis þe lyme þat^t is hirt
 haþ an yuel discrasie; or ellis pilke vlcus is in an yuel place as in
 þe eende of þe ¹elbowþe; or ellis þe vlcus is al round; or ellis þe ^[1 lf. 44]
- 4 boon þat^t is vndir þe vlcus is corrupt / Alle þese tofore seid letten
 vlcus to be heelid / wherfore it^t nedip þe, to take kepe to alle þese
 þingis tofore seid, to amende al þe bodi & namely þo lymes þat^t han
 principalte in mannes body, & kepen alle þe lymes þat^t ben in her
 8 naturel disposicioun with þingis þat^t ben acordinge to her naturel
 disposicioun, þo / & if þei ben discrasid, remeue pilke discrasie wiþ
 þat^t, þat^t is contrarie to þe discrasie / also tempre þe qualite & þe
 quantite of þe blood & streyne þe veyne if þat^t þou brynge þidir
 12 blood, or ellis if þat^t it^t be possible latt^t þe blood away; vndo þe
 glandeles þat^t ben kirkels þat^t sendin þider mater, & remeue deed
 fleesch, smale þe lippis of woundis þat^t ben greete & kutte hem
 away if þat^t þou myzt^t do noon oþirwise; amende his dietynge; &
 16 brynge azen þe rondnes of pilke vlcus into a long forme aftir þe
 lenkþe of þe membre with a knyft^t hoot^t brennynge / but^t if a veyne
 or a senewe lette. & þou schalt^t remoue þe boon þat^t is corrupt^t on
 þis maner: in kutyng away al þe fleisch & þe boon þat^t is corrupt^t
 20 with an hoot^t ²iren, or wiþ a medicyn þat^t schal be seid in þe laste
 eende of þis booke, or ellis it^t is bettere to don it^t away wiþ hoot^t
 dyetynge, oþer ellys an vncouenable medycine to pilke membre, Add. MS.
 oþer ellis þe lyme þat^t ys y-hurt haþ an yuele discrasie, oþere ellys 12,056.
 24 pilke Vlcus is an yuele place—as in þe ende of þe elbowe, oþere ellys ^[3 fol. 62 a]
 þe Vlcus ys al rounde, oþere ellys þe bon þat^t is vndire ³þe vlcus is
 corrupte. Alle þese tofore seide letteþ Vlcus to by helyde, where-
 fore yt nedip þe, to take kepe to alle þese thynges tofore seyde, &
 28 to amendyn alle þe body, & namlye þe lymes þat^t habbiþ principalte
 in mannes body, & kepe alle þe lymes þat^t beþ in here natureþ
 disposisioun wiþ þynges þat^t beþ acordynge to here naturel disposi-
 sioun, & 3if þey ben discrasyede, remywe pilke discrasie with þat^t,
 32 þat^t is contrarye to pilke discrasie. Also tempre þe qualyte & þe
 quantyte of þe blod, & streyne þe veynes 3if þat^t þey brynge þedire
 blod. Oþer ellys 3if it is possible, lete þe blod awaye. Vndo
 glandeles, þat^t beþ kurneþ þat^t sendeþ þedire mater, & remywe ded
 36 flesch, smale lippes of þe woundes þat^t beþ grete, & kytte hem away,
 3if þou maiste do non oþere weys; amende his dietynge, & brynge
 azeyne þe roundnesse of pilke Vlcus in to a longe fourme, aftre þe
 lengþe of þe membre, wiþ a knyft^t hot brennynge, but 3if þat^t a
 40 synwe oþere a Veyne latte. And þou schalt^t remywe þe bon, þat^t is
 corupe on þis manere: unwrey al þe bon, in kutyng away al þe
 fleisch,*—þe bon þat^t is corrupte with an yren, oþer wiþ a medycine
 þat^t schal be seyde in þe laste ende of þis boke. Oþer ellys it is

or if the con-
 dition of the
 wound is bad.

Remedial
 measures—

remove the
 dyscrasia,
 regulate the
 patient's
 blood,

give an ob-
 long shape to
 a round ulcer,

remove any
 rotten bone
 by means of
 a hot iron—
^[2 lf. 44, bk.]

Nota. iren. & whanne þat þe boon þat is corrupt¹ is vnkeuerid, schauē it not² as manye men doon, but touche harde þat boon with hoot iren; & aftirward heelde on pilke boon hoot oile of rosis, & leie on oon of þe mundificatiuis þat ben in þe antidotarie whiche þat wolen remoue þe rotid boon wipoute violence / For vndirstonde weel þou þat þou clense þe rotid boon wip schauyngē or wip flyngē with violence, neuere þe lattere kynde wole afterward don away a schelle of pilke same boon, nouzt³ azenstondyngē þi schauyngē & þi rasyngē / 8 wherfore in remeuyngē pilke boon þou multipliēst⁴ þi traueile & makist² newe² mundificaciō to þe fulle³ & þerof may come ofte tymes an yuel festre. An inconuenient⁴ medicyn is amendid in consideryngē þe complexioun of al þe body & þe complexioun of þe lyme & þe gre of þe medicyn; for if þat þe membre be drie as þe eeris & al bony & gristly lymes, & þei han greet putride & rotschipe, þanne þou nedist⁴ a ful drie medicyn / & if þat þe bodi or þe lymes⁴ þen mene bitwene fatnes & lenenes þat is neiþer to fatt⁴ ne to leene, þanne þou nedist⁴ a medicyn þat is in kynde mesurabiliche driyngē / & if þat þe bodi or þe membre be natureliche moist, & if þat he haue a litil putrede or rotschipe, þanne þou nedist⁴ a medicyn

If the medicine was not
[⁴ lf. 45]

¹ MS. *corrrupt*.

² *newe*, error for *no*.

³ *to þe fulle*. Lat.: ad plenum. See *Polychr.*, iii. 443, he forgaf him the trespass *at the fulle*.

Add. MS. 12,056. bettere to don it away with hot yren & whanne þat þe bon þat is corrupte is vnkeueryde, schauē yt nozt as many men don, but touche harde pilke bon with hot yren & afterwarde helde on pilke bon hot oyle of rosys, & leye on one of þe mundyficatyfes þat beþ in þe antidotarye, whiche þat wylle remywe þe rotyde bon withoute violence. Ffor vndirstond wel, þawz þat þou clanse þe rotyde bon with schavyngē opere wip vylyngē with vyolence, neuere þe latere kynde wyl afterwarde don aweye a schelle of pilke same bon, nozt azenstondyngē þy schauyngē & þy raspyngē; wherfore in remefyngē pilke bon, þou multiplyest þy traueit, & þou makyste no mundificacioun to þe folle; & þerof may come ofte tymes, an yuele festre. And inconuenient medicine ys amendydē, in consyderyngē þe complexioun⁴ of alle þe bodye, & þe complexioun of þe lyme, & þe gree of þe medycine; for 3if þat þe membre be drye as þe erys, noseþrylles & alle bony & grestly lemes, & þey han grete putrede & roteschippe, þenne þou nedyste a ful drye medycyne; & 3if þat þe body opere þe membre be naturellyche moist, 3if þat he haue a lyte putrede opere roteschippe, þanne thou nedyste a medycine þat ys lyte dryyngē. And 3if þat the body opere þe lymes ben mene betwene fatnesse and lenesse—þat nys neiþere to fatte ne to leue, þenne þou nedyst a medycine þat is in kynde, mesurablyche dryyngē.

[³ fol. 62 v]

pat^t is litil drynge / & if pat^t .ij. membrs ben in complexioun appropriate,
 I-liche euene, & þe toon haue myche quytture, & þe toþer litil change it
 quytture, he þat^t haþ þe more quytture nedip þe driere medicyn / & according to
 the patient's
 complexion.

4 *he þat^t haþ but litil quytture, him nedip his medicyn I-maad nouȝt^t
 fulliche so drie / þerfore it nedip bi mesure þat^t þou kepe naturel
 þing^t wiþ þing^t þat^t is acordinge to þe same naturel þing^t / & also
 remeue with mesurable contrariouste þing^t þat^t is azens kynde / But
 8 þe quantite of medicyns þat^t schulden be leid to þe soor as galien
 witnessip mai not wiþ lettris be writen / neþeles it sufficiþ þat^t a
 man diuise þe medicyn after¹ þe complexioun mai bere / For kynde
 þat^t is wondirful, fullillip þing^t þat^t is absent, & þat^t þat^t is to myche,
 12 castip away, but if þat^t it be to myche azen kynde ; & þanne kynde
 muste nede faile in his kyndely worchinge / A medicyn mundificatif^t

Galien.

2 & exiccatif^t þat^t is nessessarie in ech old holowe wounde,——³ [2 lf. 45, bk.]

& þat^t may be knowe bi þis maner / if þat^t þe medicyn make
 16 þinne quytture & blodi & make þe wounde holower, þanne he
 schulde be, þanne is medicyn to scharpe / & if þe quytture be picke
 & towz, þanne is þe medicyn to liþe / & also anoþer signe þat^t þe
 A thin pus, a
 discoloured
 skin, a burn-
 ing sensation
 show that the
 medicine was
 too dry.

¹ N. E. Diet. s. v., "after C. 2. c" gives later references for the use of
 after conj. = according as, without relative particle.

³ Both MSS. omit the end of the passage. Lat. "Medicina vero mundi-
 ficatiua & exiccatiua — aut est fortior, quam conuenit, aut debilior com-
 petenti." Then, as a heading to the next passage: "Significatio si medicina
 est magis sicca quam oportet." The þat in & þat may be knowe, refers to this
 omitted heading.

And zif þat two membrys ben in complexioun i-lyche euene, & þe Add. MS.
 20 on haue myche quyter & þe opere lyte quyter, he þat haþ þe more 12,046.

quyter nedyth þe dreiere medycine,*——afterwarde it nedip by
 mesure þat þou kepe naturel þynge, with þynge þat is acordynge to
 þe same nature, and also to remeffe with mesurable contraryouste

24 þynge þat is azeys kynde. But þe quantite of medicynes þat
 scholde⁴ be leyde to þe sore, as Galien witnesseth, ne may noȝt with
 lettres ben wryten. Neuer þe latere it suffisith, þat a man defye þe

medycine, aftre þe complexioun may bere; ffor kynde þat is
 28 wondirfuþ fulfyllep þynge þat is absent & þat þat is to myche
 castyþ aweye, but zif þat it be to myche azeys kynde ; & þanne
 kynde most nedys faylen in his kendlye wirchyng. A medycine
 mundyficatyff & exsiccatif þat is necessarie in eche olde holwe,

32 vlcere,*——may be knowe by þis manere : zif þat þe medycine make
 þenne quyter & bloody & make þe wounde holwere þan he scholde
 be, þenne ys þe medycine to acute ; & zif þe quyter be pikke &
 towz, þenne ys þe medycine to lythe ; and also an opere⁵ signe þat

⁴ MS. þat scholde, twice.

⁵ medycine, cancelled before signe.

medicyn is to scharp, þat þe place aboute þe wounde is to grene, blak, reed, eȝer ȝelow; & þanne þe sike man schal fele to greet heete & brennynge, also þe venym of þe wounde multipliþ / and whanne þe vnkunnyng leche seþ þese accidentis tofore seid, he 4 ordeyneþ a drie medicyn; & so ech day þe wounde apeirip.¹

A livid pus, or paleness and coldness of the limb, show that the medicine was not sufficiently dry.

& þe signe þat þe medicyn is of feble dryng is, þat þe quitture & þe rotynes þat goiþ out þerof is greet in substaunce, ponderous & vneue, wan ouþir pale & þe membre is cold & is whȝt ouþir 8 wan, ouþir cleer in colour ouþer soft; & þe sike man felip cold in his membre / & whanne þat þou knowist þese þingis in þe firste cause make not þi medicyn so drie, & in þe secunde cause make þi medicyn more drie, & also chaunge þi worching as condicioun of 12 kynde askith ²boþe of bodi & membre as weel symple as compound medicyns / He þat knowiþ not þes canones. wel yuele schal he heele woundis / wherfore manye lechis bryngen lȝtliche woundis with her yuel worching into þe worste olde woundis þe whiche moun not 16 aftir ben I-heelid bi a good leche / þese ben lȝt medicyns whiche þat drien olde woundis þat neden a litil dryng: mastik, frank encense, barli mele. & þese medicyns ben sumwhat more driere: yrios,³ aristologie rotunda, orabum⁴ þat is wilde tare, lupines, 20

[² 1f. 46]
An ignorant physician may make a dangerous wound out of a slight one.
A mild siccatif.

A stronger siccatif.

¹ *apeirip* intr. See Prompt. Parv. *Appeyryn*, or make wors. Pejoro, deterioro.

³ *yrios*. Lat. *Iris*. See Prior, *Dict.*, p. 123.

⁴ "*Orobus*, gall. uesche, anglice thare uel mousespese."—Alphita, p. 131.

Add. MS. 12,056. þy medycine is to scharpe, þat þe place about þe wounde ys to grene, blake, red opere to ȝelwe & þe syke man felyþ to grete hete ⁵& brennynge, & also þe Venym of þe wounde multiplyeth, and whanne þe vnkunnyng leche seþ þese Accidentes tofore seyde, he ordeyneþ 24 a dryere medycine; & so eche day þe wounde apeirith. And þe signe þat þe medycine is of feble dreyinge is þat þe quyter & þe rotnesse, þat goþ out þere of, ys gret in substaunce, ponderose & vneue, wan oper pale; þe membre is colde whyte oper wan, oper 28 clere in coloure, oper softe, & þe syke man felyth colde in his membre, & whenne þat þou knowist þese þynges in þe firste cas, make noȝt þy medycine so drye. In þe secunde cas make þy medycine more drye, & so chaunge þy wirkyng, as condyciouns of kynde 32 askyth, boþe of body & of membre, as wel symple as componede medycines. He þat knowiþ noȝt þese kanones wel*—schal helen olde woundes; wherfore manye lechys brynge lȝt woundes wiþ here iuele wirchyng, into þe worste olde woundes, þe whiche mowe 36 noȝt aftere be helyde by a gode leche. þese ben lȝt medycines, whiche þat drye olde wondys þat neden a lytel dryzyng; mastyke, ffrankensence, barlymele. þese medycynes beþ sumwhat dreiere: yreos. Aristologia. Orobum þat is wilde Tare, lupines, þe rotnesse 40

[⁵ fol. 63 a]

þe rotynes eiper þe drie poudre of trees; & þese medicyns ben strongere: balaustie, psidie,¹ rose, notts of cipris *et cetera* / & þese ben list mundificatiuis: sugre, hony, water of barlich, gotis whay, 4 watir of þe see, watir of brimston þat clensip & hetep, water of alym þat clensip & coldip. & þou schalt haue greet plente of enplastris, mundificatiuis, oyntmentis compouned in þe antidotarie of þis book /

A mild mundificatif.

8 **T**he .xij. chapitle of þe iij. techinge of þe firste tretis ¶ Cap^m. xij^m.
is of festre /

Festre is a deep old wounde, & þe mouþ of him is streyt, & þe ground is brood, & he hap² wipinne him a calose³ hardnesse al aboute as it were a goos penne or ellis a kane / & a festre hap 12 difference from a deep vlcus & a cauernose / for a deep vlcus & cauernose of whom it is toold in þe chapitle tofore seid, þou þat þei acorden togidere in depnes & in streitnesse of þe mouþ, þe vlcus hap not wipinne him a calose hardnes / Wherefore a festre mai not 16 be clensid wip waischinge with which a cauernose vlcus mai be clensid / but it is nessessarie aftir þat þou hast waischen it to

A fistula

[² lf. 46, bk.]

is distinguishable from a deep ulcer by its hardness,

which must be removed by cauterization.

¹ "*Psidia cortex est mali granati.*"—*Synonoma Barthol.*, p. 35.

³ O. Fr. calus, (Godefroy). See later references in *N. E. Diet.*

oper þe dryze poudre of trees. þese medycines ben strengere: Add. MS. balaustie, prosidye, rose, notys of Cipresse et. cet. And þese⁴ ben 12,056. 20 lyzte mundificatyfes in cure,⁵ hony, watire of barlye, gotyswehyz, water of þe see, water of brymston þat clansith & hetyþ, water of Alym þat clansyth & coldyth. þou schalt haue grete plente of enplastres, mundificatyfes, and oygnementys componede in þe 24 antitodarye of þis ilke booke.

¶ Cap. xii of þe pridde techynge of þe firste tretis is of a⁶ festre.

ffestre⁷ is a depe olde wounde and⁸ þe mouth is streyt of hym & 28 þe grounde is brod, & he hap wip ynne hym a callose hardnesse alle aboute, as yt were a gose penne oper ellys a kane, & a ffestre hap⁹ diffence from a depe Vlcus & a cauernose; for a depe Vlcus & a 32 þat þey acorden togedire in depnesse & in streytnesse of þe mouþ, þe Vlcus hap nozt wipyn hym a callose hardnesse, wherefore a festre may nozt be clensyde with wasschynges, with þe whiche a¹⁰ cavernose Vlcus may be clansyde, but it is necessarye, aftere þat

⁴ MS. *þese*, twice. ⁵ *in cure*, a scribal mistake from *sugre*.

⁶ of a, above line. ⁷ MS. *ffirste*.

⁸ *in*, cancelled; *and*, above line. ¹⁰ a, above line.

remeue pilke calose hardnesse wip a cauterie eіper *with* a medicyn cauterizinge *pat* is brennyngе, *pe* which cauterie ouрir brennyngе schulde make *pe* deppe of *pe* vlcus holowere *pan* he was / Wherefore it is nessessarie to a surgian to knowe *pe* difference of *his* science, 4 *pat* he mowe knowe to heele bope *pe* vlcus & *pe* festre wip medicyns different *pat* longen to hem bope /

Nota.

If the fistula is in fleshy parts, use cleansing medicines.

[1 ff. 47]

R

& if *pat* a festre be in *pe* fleisch or ellis bitwene senewe & senewe, so *pat* *pe* substaunce of *pe* senewe be not corrupt ne *pe* 8 boon, it is no nede to take noon opere medicyn but egrimoynе & staumpe it *with* salt as *pou* woldist make sause, & drawe out *pe* ius of pilke egrymoynе, & do it into *pe* ¹hole of *pe* festre wip a penne & leie *pe* substaunce of *pe* same eerbe *pere-vpon* til he haue 12 slayn pilke festre & clensid it; & *pou* schalt knowe bi reednes & sadnesse of fleisch *pat* is wipinne *pe* festre al aboute; & aftirward haue *his* sirup of hony wip *pe* whiche *pou* schalt waische *pe* festre *pat* is now vlcus I-compounned in *his* maner / Take a pound water, 16 vynegre half a pound, of hony dispunned 3 .iiij., of leeuеs of olyue-tre bounden togidere wip a pred / 3 j., of galingale² 3 j, boile alle pese to *pe* perfiztnesse of a sirup, & lete it colden, & do away *pe*

² galingale, ne. galangale, for sagitelle.

Add. MS.
12,056.

pou hast y-wasschyde yt, to remeffyn pilke callose hardnesse *with* a 20 cauterye, opere wip a medycine cauterysyngе *pat* ys brennyngе, *pe* whiche cauterye oper brennyngе scholde make *pe* deppe of *pe* Vlcus holwere *panne* he was. Wherefore it is necessarie to a surgiene to knowe *pe* difference of *his* scyence, *pat* he mowe conne hele bope *pe* 24 Vlcus & *pe* festre *with* medycines different *pat* longyth to hem bope. And 3if *pat* a festre be in *pe* flesch, oper ellys bytwene synwe & synwe, so *pat* *pe* Substaunce of *pe* synwe be nozt corrupte ne *pe* bon, yt nys non nede to take non opere medycine but egremoyne, & 28 stampe hym wip salt, as *pou* woldest maken sause, & drawe out *pe* jus of pilke egremoyne, & do yt into *pe* hole of *pe* festre *with* a penne, & leye *pe* substaunce of *pe* same erbe *pere-vpon*, tyl he haue slaw³ alle pilke festre & y-clansyde yt; & *pat* *pou* schalt knowen 32 by *pe* rednesse & sadnesse of flesch *pat* is *withynne* *pe* festre al aboute, & aftirwarde haue *his* surype off honye, *with* *pe* whiche *pou* schalt wassche *pe* festre, *pat* ys now Vlcus componed, in *his* manere: ⁴ R water ii. j., of vynegre ii. ff, of hony despumed 3 iiij, 36 off leuys of olyue-tre, y-bounde togedre *with* a prede, 3 j., of

[5 fol. 64 a]

⁵ sagytelle 3 j., boylle al *his* to *pe* perfytnesse of a sirupe, & let yt

³ At the end of the line. One letter wanting.

⁴ Confection of syrup mellyne, in margin.

leues of þe olyue, & kepe al þe remenaunt of þe sirup with þe
 leues of sagittel & waische þe vlcus þat was festred tofore wiþ þis
 licour twies on þe day þat þe licour may go to þe ground, & affir-
 4 ward drie it weel & fille it ful of drie leues of sagittelle & leie a
 sagittel-leef aboue; & þis medicyn þou schalt contynuen til it be
 hool / Euery festre þat is in fleisch is heelid wiþ þis medicyn
 I-preued, but if þat substaunce of þe senewe & of þe boon be
 8 apeirid in þe ground, & specialiche if þat þe festre be not old, & if
 þat þe calosite be nouȝt to hard. In þese two causis þe medicyn
 of egrimoyne ¹ne suffisþ nouȝt, but it is nessessarie to haue ^[1 lf. 47, bk.]
 a cauterie of fier eiper a medicyn caustik / & of þese medicyns þou
 12 schalt haue a ful techinge folowyng in þe book / & if þat þe boone
 were corrupt in þe deppe of þe festre, do it awei aftir þe techinge
 tauȝt in þe chapitle tofore / & herof take hede, if þat a festre
 perse bi þe weyes of þe vryne so þat þe vryne go out bi þilke weie,
 16 as we han seen ofte tymes, or ellis þat it go bi crokid placis & hid
 placis of þe face² persinge into deppe, it is³ an vnperfȝt cure, but
 þou maist pale⁴ it, & do it away þe stinche with hony waischinge,
 enplastre, & hony mundificatiuis, & with defensiuus aboute þe place

² Lat. per tortuosas aut occultas partes faciei. ³ it is, above line.

⁴ pale, Lat. palliare. Dufr., Gloss. : 1. tegere; 2. simulare.

20 coldyn & do aweye þe leffys of þe olyfe, & kepe alle þe remnaunt of
 þe surype with þe leffys of sagytelle, & wassche þe Vlcus þat was
 festre tofore with þis licoure twyes a day, þat þe lycoure may go to
 þe grounde, & afterwarde dreye it wel & fyl yt ful of drye leffys of
 24 sagytelle, & leye a sagittelle leff aboue, and þis medycine þou schalt
 conteynen tyl þat it be hol. Every festre þat is in flesch ys helyde
 with þis medycine y-prefed, but ȝif þe substaunce of þe synwe & of
 þe bon be apeyred in þe grounde, & specialyche ȝif þe festre be
 28 nouȝt old & ȝif þat þe callosite be nouȝt to hard. In þese tweye
 cases þe medycyne of egremoyne ne suffisþ nouȝt, but it ys neces-
 sarye a kauterye of fyre oper a medycine caustyke; & of þese medy-
 cins þou schalt han a ful techyng, folwyng in þe boke. And ȝif
 32 þat þe bon were corrupte in þe deppe of þe festre, do yt aweye after
 þe techyng, þat y haue tauȝte þe in þe chapitel tofore. And
 hereof take hede: ȝif þat a festere perse be þe weyces of þe vryne,
 so þat þe Vryne go out by þilke weye, as we haue seyne ofte tymes,
 36 oper ellys þat he go by crokyde placys and hudel⁴ places of þe face,
 persyng into þe depnesse of þe hed whose grounde þou maiste nouȝt
 perseyue, hit ys bettyre nouȝt for to cure with a perfyte cure, but þou
 maiste pale it & don away þe stynke, with hony & wasschynges of
 40 enplastre in mundificatyfes & with defensifus aboute þe place, þat

Add. MS.
12,056.

⁴ hudel, adj. See Mätzner, Dict., hudels, sb. O.E. *hýdels*, hiding-place.

cauteriza-
cioun of þe
senew þat
is hirt.

[² 1f. 48]

þat his malice mowe¹ þen lasse greue. For a festre þat is in ioynturis as þe feet eiper þe knee, eiper þe hand, eiper þe elbowe, is hard for to heele, & sumtyme impossible / & if þat he be in anoper place, & he haue corrodid eiper rotid sumwhat of þe senewe, þow þat it⁴ be greuous for to cure it, þer is noon oper wey, but a lizt cauterizacioun of þe senewe þat is hurt / For cauterizacioun wiþ hoot iren eiper wiþ gold, þat is bettere, it clensiþ & drieþ þe senewe þat is corrupt & rectifieþ þe complexioun of al þe membre & ²a medecyn 8 caustik worchþ þe contrarie / Brennynge medicyns, boþe þe symple & þe compound þou schalt haue to þe fulle³ in⁴ antidotarie of þis book, & þou schalt fynde þe maner of cauterisyng to þe fulle in þe þridde tretis folowyng. & whanne þou hast maad a perfizt mundi- 12 ficacioun of pilke colose fleisch, regendre fleisch & consowde with medicyns regeneratiuis & consolidatiuis þe whiche þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie //

¶ Capm
xiiijm
canser
vleirat

The xiiij chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste 16 tretis is of a cankre /

Cankre I-woundid comeþ of openyng, eiper of kuttinge, eiper of brekyng of a cankre not I-woundid, whos techinge þou schalt

¹ MS. moore.

³ See page 86, note 3.

⁴ þe þridde tretis folowyng / & whanne þou hast maad a perfizt mundificacioun struck through in red. after to þe fulle in.

Add. MS. his malyce mowe þe lasse greff. A festre þat is in juncturys as 20 12,056. þe fote oper þe kne, oper þe hand, opere þe elbowe, is hard for to hele & sumtyme vnpossible. And ȝif þat he be in an opere place

& he haue coroded oper rotyd sumwhat of þe synwe, þow þat it be greffes for to cure it, þere nys none opere weye bote a lyzt cauterys- 24 acioun of þe synwe, þat is y-hurt: ffor cauterysacioun wiþ hote yren, oper wiþ gold þat is betyre clansyth & dryeþ ⁵þe synwe þat ys corrupte, & rectefyeth þe complexioun of al þe membre, and a medecine caustyke worcheþ þe contrarye. Brennynge medecines, 28 boþe symple & componed, þou schalt han to þe fulle in þe antidotarye of þis boke, & þou schalt fynde þe manere of cauterysinge to þe fulle in þe þridde tretys folwyng; & whanne þou hast made a perfyte mundificacioun of pilke callose flesch, regenerere flesch & con- 32 soude with medecines regeneratyfes & consolidatyfes, þe whyche þou schalte fynde in þe antitodarye.

¶ Cap. xiii off þe þridde techyng off þe ffirste tretys is Off a Canker. 36

¶ Cankyre y-woundyde comyth of opnyng, opere of kuttyng, opere of brekyng of a cancre noȝt y-woundyde, whose techyng þou

haue in þe chapitle of þe apostymes in þe þridde techinge / & he
 comeþ of a wounde yuel heelid, to whom comeþ a malancolient^r
 mater rotid; or for þe mater þat comeþ to þe wounde is þere cor-
 4 rumpid & chaungip þe vlcus into a cankre /

arises from a
 badly healed
 or purulent
 wound.

& þese ben þe tokenes of þe cankre / þe vlcus is foul & stynk-
 ynge, þe lippis ben grete, wan, or blak, hard, & wipinne kirkely,
 & ouer al aboute arerid and ¹holowe / & þis is þe difference bitwene
 8 a cankre & a foul vlcus & an hori of whom I haue maad mencion
 aboue, þat if þat þou waische hem boþe wip lize, þe cankre schal
 be palere & foulere þan he was bifore, & þere schal falle out of him
 pecis gobetmele.² & þe vlcus is clensid wip pilke lize, & þe fleisch
 12 is maad fairer þan it was tofore, ne þe vlcus stynkip not bi þe same
 stinche as þe cankre doip; for þe cankre haþ a propre sauour, þe
 which mai not be write wip lettre; but pilke sauour is best knowe
 of men whiche þat best han seie cankreis.³

Its signs are:
 the peculiar
 condition of
 the wound,
 [1 ff. 48, bk. J]

Nota
 the effect of a
 lye lotion,

and the smell
 of the cancer.

16 A general rule in þe cure of a cankre is, þat a cankre mai not
 be heelid, but if þat he be do away wip alle hise rotis / þe secunde
 rule is, þat he schal not be touchid wip hoot iren ne with hoot
 medicyn caustik, þat is to seie brennyng, but he be in place

A cancer
 must either
 be left un-
 touched or
 entirely re-
 moved.

² gobetmele, piecemeal. *Polychron.*, iv. 103: membratim. See further,
 Mätzner, *Dict.* ³ MS. cankre is.

20 schalt habbyn in þe Chapitle of enpostemes in þe þridde techynge Add. MS.
 & he comyth of a wounde yuele y-helyde, to whom comyth a maly- 12,056.
 colient rotyde matere, oper for þat þe matere comeþ to þe wounde is
 þere coruppyd, & chaungyth þe Ulcus into a Cankere. And þese beþ
 24 þe toknys of þe cankere: þe Ulcus ys foule & stynkyng, þe lippes
 beþ grete, waune, opere blake, harde, and wipinne kernelly, & ouere
 alle aboute areryde & holwy, & þis is þe dyfference bytwene cancre
 & a foule Ulcus & an hory, of whom y haue made mensioun aboue,
 28 þat if þat þou wassche hem boþe⁴ wip leyze, þe cancre schal ben
 pale & foulere þenne he was tofore, & þere schal fallen out of hym
 pecys, gobetmele. And þe Ulcus ys y-clansede with pilke leyze, &
 þe flesch ys made fayrere þenne yt was tofore, ne þe Ulcus stynkep
 32 noȝt by þe same stenche as þe cancre doþ; for þe cankre hath a
 propre saffoure, þe which may noȝt be wryten wip lettres, but pilke
 saffoure ys best knowyn to of men, whiche þat beste han seye
 cankrys. A ⁵generaȝ rule in þe cure of cankre ys, þat a cankyre
 36 may noȝt ben helyde bot if þat he be done away wip alle hys
 rotys. The secunde rule ys, þat he schal noȝt ben touchyde with
 hot yren ne wip hot medycyne caustyk—þat is to sigge, brennyng

[⁵ fol. 65 a]

⁴ MS. opere.

Nota where he may al be doon away / for þe more þat þou touchist him
wip a violent þing eiper medicyn, þe more his malice is encreessid /
If possible, cut away and Take þanne good heede if he be in a fleischi place, where þat he
may be don al wey, & þanne kutte him al away wip alle hise rotis / 4
[I. ii. 49] & þanne priste out al þe malancolient¹ blood þat is wipinne þe
veynes þat ben aboute þe cankre. & aftirward brenne al aboute in
þe place þere as þe cankre was with hoot iren / aftirward leie on þis
confeccioun maad of flour of wheete & hony & ius of smalache,² til 8
þat he be perfiztliche clensid. After regendre fleisch & cicatrice.

Nota To þis rule / take hedē as ofte as þou wilt wip sirurgie heelen a
cancere: first euacue þe malancolient mater, for þat is ypocras
the counsel off ypocras: techinge; & if þat he be growen in sich a place þere as he may not 12
if the cancer cannot be removed, try no cure at all. be doon al away, as in þe necke or in þe tetis, or in þe face, or in þe
arshole, or in þe mareis; & also for schortere conclusioun, & he be
entrid in ony place þere as ony senewis, arteries, veynes, ben—as
ypocras. ypocras seiþ—it is bettere nouzt to cure þe cankre þan to cure. For 16
& he be curid, þat is to seiē kutt or I-brent, þei perischen þe
sunnere; & if þei ben not curid, þei lyuen þe lengere tyme—libro
vj^o. *afforismorum*: *Canceri absconditi multum tempus perficiunt*

² *smallage*, Halle Table, p. 12. "Smalache, Marche, or Marshe Persley."
See Prior, *Dict.*, p. 217.

Add. MS. —but he be in place, þere he may al be don away; ffor þe more 20
12,056. þat þou touchiste hym with a vyolent thyngē oper medycine, þe
more hys malys is encreessyde. Take þenne gode hede zif he be in
a fleschlye place, where þat he may be don al aweye, & þenne kutte
hym al aweye wip alle hys rotys, & pruste out þe malencolyent blod 24
þat ys withynne þe Veynes, þat beþ aboute þe cancre, & afterwarde
brenne alle aboute in þe place, þere as þe cankre was, wip hote
yren. Afterward leye on þis *confeccioun* y-mad of floure of whete
hony, jus of smallache, tyl þat he be perfittly y-clansyde. After 28
regenerē flesch & cycatrice. To þis rule take hede as ofte as þou
wylt wip surgye helyn a cancre: first evacue þe malencolyent
materē, ffor þat is ypocras techyngē, & zif he be growen in swyche
a place, þere as he may nozt be done alle aweye, as in þe nekke ore 32
in þe tetys, opere in þe face, ore in þe ers hole, oper in þe marys,
and also for the schortere conclusioun, & he be entrede in enye
place, þere as enye Veynes, synwes, & arteryes buþ, as ypocras
seiþ, yt ys betyre nozt to cure þe cancre, þen to cure; ffor he be 36
curyde, þat is to sigge, y-kutte opere y-brent, þey perysschen
sonnere; & zif þey be nozt curyde þey lyuen longe tyme—libro
sexto afforismorum *Canceri absconditi multum tempus per ficiunt*

Regula, in margin.

curati vero cicius pereunt' / Butt defende þe lyme þat' is hool aboute
 with defensif of bole þat' I haue ofte tymes seid & waische þe Use a lotion
 wounde of þe cankre wip gotis whey, & drie it' softly, ¹ & anoynte R
 4 þe wounde wipinne & wipoute with þis oynement' of rasis & ² tutie³ / [1 lf. 49, bk.]
 take ceruse,⁴ tutie I-waische & medle hem wip oile of rosis & wip and
 ius of purcelane⁵ or of sum opere cold eerbe, putte yune sum of þe vnguentum
 toon, & now sum of þat' oper, til þe oynement' be weel I-maad / tute
 8 þis oynement' is myche worþ for to defende þat' þe malice of þe
 cancre schal not wexen, & also þat' þe pacient' vse a good gouern-
 aile: as drinke good wyne & cleer & lithe, & he muste leue reed the diet for
 wyne & troublid & picke wyne, & he may ete good fleisch, as þe canker:
 12 motoun⁶ of a weþer, kide fleisch sowkyng, capouns, hennys, the patient
 chickenes, partrichis,⁷ fesauntis, & smale briddis, & he muste leue: shall only
 beecus fleisch⁸ & gotis fleisch, hertis fleisch & haris fleisch, goos, take white
 dokis, & alle greete briddis þat' lyuen in watri placis, & al salt wine and
 16 þing' & acute þing': as garleek, oynonys & vynegre *et cetera* [þat']* digestible
food.

² *ſ*; erroneously for *of*.

³ *tutie*, Matth. Sylvat. "Tuchia . . Lat. Cadimia & pomfolix." Arab. tūtiā. Fr. tutie. See Wr. Wü., p. 559, 13. "Tucia, i. tutie" (xiiith cent.). It is: Oxidum Zinci impurum.

⁴ *ceruse*, white lead. See *N. E. Dict.* s. v. Ceruse.

⁵ *purcelane*, Lat. portulaca. Halle Table, p. 90. "Another herbe there is also called Portulaca marina, only of the likenes that the leaves therof haue with porcelaine." See "Purslane," Prior, *Popular Names*, p. 193.

⁶ *moton*, carnes ovine, Wr. Wü., 741, 39, xvth cent.

⁷ *partrichis*, *Cathol. Ang.*, p. 270, a Partryke, perdrix. See further Skeat, *Et. Dict.* ⁸ *bef*, added above line, in different hand.

curati vero cicius pereunt. ¶ But diffende þe lyme þat is hol Add. MS.
 aboute with defensiff of bol, þat y haue ofte tymes seyde, & wassche 12,056.
 þe wounde of þe cancre with gotys whey³, & drye yt softlyche &
 20 anoynt þe wounde withinne & without, with þis oynement of rasy
 of tutye, R ceruse, tuthye, y-wasschyn and medle hem wip oyle of
 roses & wip jus of poslane, ⁹ opere of sum opere colde erbe, now [9 fol. 65 b]
 puttyng in sum of þe on & now sum of þe opere, tyl þe oynement
 24 be ful mad. þis oynement ys myche worth forto diffende; þat þe
 malys of þe cancre þat is y-woundyde schal noȝt waxen, and also
 þat þe pacient vse a gode gouernaylle: as drynkinge gode wyne &
 clere & lyzt, & he mote leuen red wyne and troblyde & þykke wyne;
 28 & he may eten gode flesch, as motoun of a weþire, kyde flesch
 sokkyng, Capouns, hennys, Chykenys, partryches, fesauntis, &
 smale briddes, & he moste leuyn beffys flesch, gotys flesch, hertys
 flesch, harys flesch, goes, dokys, & alle grete briddys. þat lyuen
 32 in watrye places, & alle salt þyng & acute þyng: as garlyke,
 Oynouns, vynegre, &c., þat* þe syke men mowe lyuen þe lengere vpon

þe sike man may lyue þe lengere vpon erþe / Neþeles if vlcus be riȝt
 foul & haue nouȝt so greet malice as a cankre, of þe which vlcus I
 haue told tofore may be curid wiþ poudre of affadillis, and aftirward
 weel be clensid ; & for þat þis vlcus ¹þat was so foul may be heelid / 4
 Rogeryn and Rowlond & manye opere settide in her bokis þe cure
 of a cankre, þouȝ þat he be in a senewey place, & þei seien þat þei
 han heelid him / But vndirstonde weel for certeyn, þat an olde
 cankre mai not be heelid bi noon oper wey, but bi þe same wey þat 8
 I haue seid in þe bigynnyng of þis chapitle / & if þat þou dredist
 wheþer þat it be a symple vlcus or a cankre & a foul, for þe signes
 & þe tokenes tofore seid beþ doutis, bigynne to mortifie it wiþ sum
 maner of poudre : as wiþ poudre of affadillis, & bi my witt poudre 12
 of erbe robert² / & loke aftirward þe prosis of þi worchinge seiþ
 þis boke³ / For if þat he be a uerry cankre, þou schalt se þe more
 þou woldist clense him, þe more his malice schal wexen / & if he
 be not a cankre, he schal be clensid riȝt as an vlcus / Whanne þat 16
 þou seest þe wexyng of a cankre & his malice agmenten, ceesse
 from þe verry cure & turne aȝen to þe forseid cure of þe oynement
 of tutie, þe which þat palip þe cankre. For & þou bisie þee to

² erbe robert, insertion of the scribe. Geranium Robertianum. See Prior, p. 113. Cronenburg. De Compositione Medicamentorum, a. 1555, fol. 106, A. Ruprechtskraut : Roberti herba (Geranii species).

³ seiþ þis book, erroneously inserted.

Add. MS. 12,056. erthe. Napeles ȝif vlcus be ryȝt foul & hath nouȝt so gret malys as 20
 a cancre, off þe whyche Vlcus y haue tolde tofore, may ben y-curyde
 wiþ poudre of affedylle, and afterwarde wel be clansyde, & for þat
 þis Vlcus þat was so foul may be helyde. Rogeryne & Rouland
 & manye opere settyde in here bokys þe cure of þe cancre, þouȝ 24
 þat he be in a synwy place, & þey siggen þat þey haue helyde hym.
 But vndirstande wel for certeyne, þat an olde cancre may noȝt ben
 helyde by none opere wey, bote by þe same wey, whiche þat y haue
 seyde in þe bygynnyng of þys chapyteH. & ȝif þat þou dredyst, 28
 wheþere þat yt be a cancre opere a symple Vlcus & a foul, for þe
 signes & þe toknys tofore seyde beþ doutes, begynne to mortefye
 yt wiþ sum maner poudre as wiþ poudre of affodylles, & loke after-
 warde þe processe of þy worchyng; ffor ȝif þat he be a verrey 32
 cancre þou schalt se, þe more þou woldyste clansen hym þe more
 hys malys schal waxen, and ȝif he be noȝt a cancre, he schal be
 clansyde ryȝt as an Vlcus. Whanne þat þou seste þe waxyng⁴ of
 þe cancre & hys malys augmenten, sese fro þe verreye cure & turne 36
 ageyne to þe forseide cure of þe oynement of tuetye, whiche þat
 palyth þe cancre. ffor & þou bysy þe to cure þe cancre, & þou pro-

[⁴ fol. 66 a]

cure þe cankre, & þou procede in þi cure, þou schortist þe pacientis lijf / & if þou palist, þou lenkþist his lijf /

4 **T**he .xiiij chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste tretis is for to remeue causis þat letten þe cure of olde woundis /

[lf. 50, bk.]

¶ Cap^m
xiiij^m

I tolde þee aboue in þe general chapitle of olde woundis cause whiche þat letten olde woundis to be heelid / & also I tolde þe techinge plenerliche þat ben nessessarie to remeue ech sengle cause þat is nessessarie, how þat alle maner causis þat letten mai be don away bi a good surgien & a wijs ; so þat þou ioynest þis chapitle wiþ þe opere chapitle tofore seid, þou schalt han a pleyner techinge.

12 If þat þe bodi be ful of olde humouris eþer in þe idropisie, loke þat he may be heelid of þilke disposicioun, & þanne heele him if þat þou canst / &¹ if þat he be not ful of olde humouris whiche þat neden no curyng of olde disposicioun. Ne traueile not in deueyn²

If a patient is hydroptic or cachectic, his condition must first be improved,

16 þe sike man neiþir wiþ medicyns corosiuis, ne wiþ kuttynge, ne with puttynge into þe woundis greete tentis ; but do aboue þe vlcus lyt

¹ The translator, perhaps intentionally, altered his original : si non (scis), pete physicum qui curationem illius dispositionis faciat.

² in deueyn = in veyn.

cede in thy cure, þou schortest þe pacientes lyff. And 3if þou palest þou lengthiste hys lyff.

Add. MS.
12,056.

20 ¶ Cap. xiiij of þe þridde techyng of þe furste tretys, is forto remefe causes þat latten þe cure of olde woundys.

¶ I tolde þe aboue in þe general Chapytile of olde Woundes, causes whiche þat latteþ olde woundys to by helyde. And also y telde þe techynges plenerlyche þat beþ necessarye to remywe eche sengle cause, þat is necessarye to be done away. And now y schal in þis specyal chapytile teche, how þat alle manere cause þat lettyth may be done away by a gode surgyne & a wyse, so þat 3if þou joynest þis chapitele with þe opere chapytel to fore seyde, þou schalt han a plener techyng. 3if þat þe body be ful of elde humores, opere in þe dropsye ; loke 3if þat he may be helyde of þilke disposicioun, & þenne hele hym 3if þat þou canst, and 3if þat he be nozt ful of elde humorys ; whiche þat nedyth to curyng of olde disposicioun. Ne traueyle nozt in deveyne þe syke man, nowþere with medycines corosifes, ne with kuttynges, ne with puttynges into þe wounde grete tentys ; but do aboffe þe Vlcus lyzte mundryficatyfes & swote

and in the
mean time
only mild
mundificatiō
applied.

[1 lf. 51^a]

The same
must be done
if the liver or
the spleen is
bad.

If the patient
has too much
blood,

use phlebot-
omy.

mundificatiuis & swete smellynge, þat kepib þe membre lyztliche
clene þat it stynke not / & whanne þat he is keuerid from an yuel
disposicioun, thanne turne aȝen to þe principal cure / & þis same
ping¹ I saye of yuel disposicioun of þe lyuere of what maner cause 4
þat he be enfeblid; þe same I saye of þe splene / But if þese
tweyne ben in her kyndely disposicionn, olde woundis moun not be
heelid. If² þat greet multitude of blood lettib, þat may be knownen
bi ful replecioun of þe veines of al þe bodi, bi reednesse & exten- 8
cioun of þe face, bi swetnes of þe mouþ, bi flating³ / Whanne þat a
man is fastyng, bi heuynes of þe browis, & bi ȝonge age, & his
complexioun is hoot & moist, & þat he haþ vsid in his dietyng
wyn and fleisch; & make him þanne be lete blood of þe veyne þe 12
which þat bryngib norischinge to þe lyme, & aftirward of þe veyne
þat mai best voiden þe membre þat is hurt / & if þat þe blood
trespace oonly in qualite, amende him as if þat he be to hoot, voide
him a litil & diete him with colde metis & stiptik. & aftirward 16
procede forþ in alle maner opir causis as it is told in þe general
chapitle, takyng hede þat þer ben summe maner medicyns whiche
þat ben dryng & clensyng, & han a priuy⁴ propirte to consowde

² if above line.

³ flating, Add. MS. *wlattyng*. See Wright Wü. O.E. *wlatung*.

⁴ priuy. See *Cathol. Angl.*, *pryuy*, *occultus*.

^a Heading to this page: *Causes þat lettes þe cure off old woundes.*

Add. MS. 12,056. smellyng þat kepyth the membre lyztliche clene, þat he stynke 20
noȝt. And whanne þat he is curyde from an yuele disposicioun,
turne aȝeyne to þe princypal cure; & þis same þyng y sugge of
yuele disposicioun of þe lyfere, of what manere cause þat þe
enfebyde; þe same y sigge of the spleen, ffor but ȝif þese tweyne 24
ben in here kendlye dysposicionn, olde woundes mowe noȝt ben
helyde. Ȝif þat grete multitude off blode lette þe, þat may be
knowe by ful replecioun of þe veynes of alle þe body, by rednesse
& extension of þe face, be swetnesse of þe mouth, be wlattyng, 28
[⁵ fol. 66 b] whezne þat a man ys fastyng, by ⁵heuynesse of þe browys, & by
ȝonge age, & þat hys complexoun ys hot & moyst, and þat he hath
y-vsyde in hys dyotyng wyn & flesch, and þenne make hym be
lete blode on þe veyne, whiche þat bryngeth norysschyng to þe 32
lyme, & afterwarde of the Veyne þat may beste voyden þe membre
þat ys y-hurt. And ȝif þat þe blode trepasse onlye in qualyte,
amende hym as ȝif þat he be to hot, voyde hym a lytel & dyote
hym wiþ colde metys & styptyke. And afterwarde procede forþ in 36
alle opere manere cases as it ys tolde in þe general chapytel, takyng
hede þat þere ben sum manere medycines, whiche þat beþ dryzyng
& clansyng, & haue a prefe proprete to consoude olde woundys,

olde woundis whiche þat ben difficult to be consowdid; of þe whiche medicyns summe ben symple & summe ¹ben compouned / [1 lf. 51, bk.]
 Symple ben: limature of iren, flour of bras brent, vitriol leed Simple consolidateds.
 4 brent, & alle sharpe corosiuus if þat þei ben brent; for þat þei han vertu more to consowden, & also her corisoun is lessid / þis is a medicyn compouned: take floris² eris, limature of bras ana. 3 j. a compound consoledatiff
 litarge of gold, litarge of siluir, 3 .viij. gumme of cipresse, 3 .iiij.
 8 sal gemme,³ 3 .ij. aristologia I-brent smal to poudre of frankencense, ana. 3 .v. wex & oile of mirtill þat suffisþ // //

The .xv. chapitle of þe pridde techinge of þe firste tretis is of a crampe þat cometh to a wounde / ¶ Capm. xvm.

12 Nessessarie þing is to a surgian to knowe þe causis of a crampe, þe which þat cometh to a wounde þat schulde be heeled, & also þat he knowe þe disposicioun of him þat hath þe crampe, & also what þing þat þe crampe is, þat he mowe resonabliche hele þe crampe /
 16 þe crampe is a sijknese cordous eijer neruous, in þe which sijknese cordis & þe senewis weren drawn to her bigynnyng; of þe whiche drawyng þat ben .ij. causis coniunct: þe toon is repleccioun of þe Cramp is a contraction of the tendons or nerves arising from

² Lat. flor. æris.

³ sal gemme. A Salt so named, from its Transparent and Crystalline Brightness.—Kersey.

whiche þat beþ deffykel to be consoudyde, of þe whyche medycines Add. MS. 12,056.
 20 some beþ symple & some beþ componed. Symple beþ: lymature of bras, lymature of Iren, floure of bras brent; vytreol rede y-brent, and alle sharpe corosifes, 3if þat þey ben y-brent. ffor þat þey han þe more vertue to consouden, and al so here corosion ys y-lassyde.
 24 þis ys a medycine componyde: R. floris eris, lymature of bras ana .3. j., litarge of gold, litarge of syluere ana. 3. viij., gumme of cypresse .3. iiij, sal gemme .3. ij, Aristologie I-brende, smal poudre of frank Ensence ana. 3. v., wax & oyle of myrtyne þat suffyseþ.

28 ¶ Cap. XV. off the pridde techyng of þe ffirste tretys is off a Crawmpe, that comyth to a Wounde.

Necessarie thyng ys a surgyne, to knowe þe causys of þe crampe whiche þat comyth to a wounde þat scholde ben y-helyde,
 32 and also þat he knowe þe dysposicioun of hym þat hath þe crampe. And also what þyng þe crampe ys, þat he mowe resonabliche hele þe crampe. The crampe ys a seknesse cordouse, opere ellys nerveuse, in the whiche syknesse þe cordes & þe synwes were drawyne to
 36 here bygynnyng; of þe whiche drawyng þere beþ tweye causes

repletion or
inanition.

[² lf. 52]

Repletion oc-
curs after

- .1.
great pain,
- .2.
cold,
- .3.
putrefaction.

Cramp must
be prevented
in three
ways :

- .1.
- .2.
- .3.

[⁴ lf. 52, bk.]

as it is diffi-
cult to heal.

senewe, þe opere of þe corde, þe oper is inanisioun.¹ He þat is of in-anisioun,² ofte tymes he haþ a cause goynge tofore as to myche euacuacioun of blood eiper of sum oper þing, as to longe affliccioun for long akþe, or ellis for þe appetite of þe sike man haþ ben longe tyme enfeblid; & þis cometh litil & litil, & þe crampe þat cometh of boþe þese causis may not be heelid. & he þat cometh of replecioun haþ oon of þe .iij. causis goynge tofore / þe firste cause is to greet akþe / þe .ij. cause is cold / & þe .iij. cause is putrifaccioun eiper 8 rotynge / & þow þat oon sengl cause sumtyme suffice to make a crampe, ofte tymes alle þese causis happen to come togidres / And þis crampe may be heelid or þat he be confermed, & aftir þat he is confermed seelden or neuere / A surgian muste þanne be bisy in al 12 þat he myzte, þat a crampe ne wexe not in þe wounde þat schulde be heelid, wiþ obuacioun³ defendinge þe lyme, þat noon of þe .iij. causis tofore seid ne come nouzt into þe wounde: þe oon is in defendynge þe lyme from putrifaccioun / þe toþere is for kepinge þe 16 lyme fro rotynge / þe þridde is to gouerne him from a greet akynge / for it is more sikir to defende þat a crampe⁴ ne come not, þanne aftir þat he is come with medicyns þat is douteful or dredeful to

¹ *inanisioun*, Lat. *inanitio*. Vigo. Interpretation. "*Inanition*, emptyng."

³ *obuacioun*, Lat. *cum obuiatione defensiurorum*.

Add. MS. 12,056. *conjuncte*: þe on ys repletion of þe synwe, opere of þe corde, þe opere 20 is Inanyision. He þat ys in⁵ a vision ofte tymes haþ a cause goynge to fore, ⁶as to myche euacuacioun of blod, opere of sum othire thyng; as to longe affliction for longe akþe, opere ellys, for þe 24 Apetite of the syke man hath be longe tyme enfeblyde; & þis comyth lytel & lytel, and þe crampe þat comyth of boþe þese causys may nozt ben helyde. And he þat comyth of repletion hath on of þre causys goynge tofore: þe firste cause ys to grete akþe, þe 28 secunde cause ys colde, þe þridde ys putrefaccioun oper rotynge; and þow þat one sengl cause sumtyme suffiseth to maken a crampe, ofte tymes alle þese causes happe to come togedres. And þis crampe may ben y-helyde ere þat he be comfermyde, & after þat he ys con- 32 fermyde selden opere neffere. A surgyne moste þenne be busye; in alle þat he myzte, þat a crampe no wexe nozt in þe wounde þat scholde be helyde, wiþ obuacion dyffendynge þat none of þe þre causes tofore seyde ne come nozte to þe wounde; þe one ys in def- 36 fendynge þe lyme from putrefaccioun, þe opere is in kepyng þe lyme from rotnesse, þe þridde is to gouerne hym from gret akynge; for it is more sykere to dyffende, þat a crampe ne come nozt, þenne aftre þat he ys come with medycine þat is doutes opere dredful to

⁵ Scribal mistake.

do away / For if a feuere come to an heed or to a senewe þat is woundid, & if þe crampe folowe, euermore it is deedliche.

- Take hede þanne to aswage þe akþe wiþ anyntyng of oile of
 4 rosis, in doynge as I haue seid afore in þe chapitle of senewis þat
 ben woundid; for ofte tymes þe crampe cometh fro woundis þat
 ben *maad* in þe heed or ellis in þe senewe / & if þat akþe were so
 greet, þat makith þe crampe for þe prickynge of a senewe or ellis of
 8 a corde / & if þat þou myztist nouzt defende þe crampe neiþir wiþ
 blood letynge, neiþer wiþ ventusyng, ne wiþ clisterie, ne wiþ sup-
 positorie, ne wiþ defensif in anyntyng þe necke, ne þe grynde,
 ne þe arm hoolis, þanne it is nessessarie þat þou kutte al atwo þilke
 12 senewe or þilke corde þat is prickid, þouþ þat þe felynge or þe
 meuyng of þe lyme to whom þilke senewe or þilke corde serueþ in
 parti or in al be lost / For it is bettere þat a man lese þe felynge &
 þe meuyng of a lyme, þan for to deie. But it is bettere, if þat
 16 þou coudist, to kepe a man þer-fro with opere¹ medicyns þan þat þe
 senewe or þe corde be kutt al atwo. & if² þat þou were not at
 þe bigynnyng, & þou fyndist a man hauynge þe crampe for a
 wounde, do þou as I dide at melain. þer was a scoler of myn þat
 20 was a surgian þat was clepid Olyuer, which þat curide a scheþere

Treatment of
cramp.

Alay the suf-
fering with
an ointment,

if necessary,
cut the in-
jured nerve
or tendon.

[1 lf. 53]

Nota.

² *if*, above line.

- don awaye, Ffor 3if þat a ffeyre come to an hed opere to a synwe
 þat ys y-woundyde, & þe crampe folwe euyre more, yt ys dedlyche.
 Take hede þenne to aswage þe akþe with anyngtyng of oyle of
 24 rosys, and in doynge as y haue seyde tofore in þe chapitle of synwes
 þat beþ y-woundyde; ffor ofte tymes þe crampe comyth for woundys,
 þat beþ made in þe hed opere ellis³ in þe synwe: And 3if þat akþe
 were so grete, þat makyth a crampe for þe prikyng of a synwe opere
 28 ellys of a corde, and 3if þou myztest nozt deffende þe crampe, newhere
 wiþ blode letynge, ne wiþ ventosynge, ne wiþ clysterye, ne wiþ sup-
 positorye, ne with defensif in anyntyng þe nekke, ne þe grynde, ne þe
 arme holys, þenne yt is necessarie þat þou kytte alle atwo þilke synwe
 32 opere corde þat is y-prikyde, þowþ þat þe ffelynge opere þe meffynge
 of þe lyme, to whom þilke synwe opere corde servyde, in party oper
 in al be loste. Ffor yt is bettyre⁴ þat a man lese þe felynge & þe
 meffynge of a lyme þenne þawþ þat he deyze. But yt is bettyre 3if
 36 þat þou coudest kepen a man with opere manere medycines, þenne
 þat þe synwe opere corde be y-kutte al atwo. And 3if þat þou were
 nozt at þe bygynninge, and þou fyndest a man hauynge a crampe
 for a wounde, do þou as y dyde at Melan. þere was a Scolere of
 40 myne þat was a Surgyne þat was y-clepyde Olyfere, whyche þat

Add. MS.
12,056.

[4 fol. 67 v]

³ *ellis*, above line.

Case of a shepherd who had hurt his head.

The wound was closed too soon, and cramp ensued.

Lanfranco found the patient dying.

[4 lf. 53, bk.]

He reopened the wound,

anointed

of a wounde þat he hadde in þe heed; & bi þilke wounde þe pannicle
oupir þe skyn þat keueriþ þe brayn panne þat is vnder þe fleisch
was hurt, & neuer-þe-lattere þe brayn panne was not hurt. &
þilke leche, or panne he hadde perfiztlich purified þilke pannicle, 4
sowdide þe wounde wiþoutforþ¹; & whanne þilke wounde was
sowdid, þe pannicle þat was not weel heelid hadde a dedein² &
was cause of gendrynge of a crampe in þilke wounde. & at þe
laste I was clepid to þe sike man, & I foond him hauynge þe 8
crampe, & wiþ þe crampe he hadde manye smale enpostymes aboute
his face—& þat is an yuele tokene in þe woundis of þe heed—&
þanne I demede him for deed / Neþeles at þe instance of hise
freendis I wolde asaie þe worchinge of kynde vpon resoun; I made 12
his heed to be schaue,³ & I kutte azen þe wounde þat was 4 con-
sowdid wiþ a rasour to þe deppe of þe same wounde, & aftirward I
fulfillide þe wounde with hoot oile of rosis, & I anoyntide al þe
heed with þe same oile of rosis & a litil vynegre medlid togidere, & 16
I anoyntide þe nolle & þe necke oonly wiþ oile of rosis, & I dide
on þe wounde þe 3elke of an ey wiþ oile of rosis, and I boond al

¹ *wiþoutforþ*, extrinsecus, from without.

² *dedein*, Lat. *panniculus indignatus* causa fuit spasmi. The translator misunderstood *indignatus*, and gives us an "indignant pannicle." *indignatus*, Med. Lat. damaged, hurt. See Tommas. s. v. indegnare 3.—Compare þe *ludych lorde*—*hade dedayn of þat dede*.—Allit. Poems, B. 74.

³ *I made his hed to be schaue*, *abradi caput feci*.

Add. MS. 12,056. curyde a schepere of a wounde þat he hadde in the hed; & by þilke
wounde þe pannycle opere þe skyn þat keueryth þe breyne panne, 20
þat is vndire þe flesch, was y-hurt, & nere þe latere þe breyn panne
was nozt y-hurt. & þilke leche, ere þanne he hadde perfytyliche
y-purifiede þylke pannycle, soudyde þe wounde withouten forth; &
whanne þat þilke wounde was y-sowdyde, þe pannycle þat was nozt 24
wel helyde hadde a dedeyne, & was cause of engendrynge of a
crampe in þilke wounde. And at þe laste y was clepyde to þilke
syke man, & y fonde hym habbynge þe crampe, & with þe crampe
he hadde manye smale enpostemes aboute hys face, & þat ys an 28
yuele tokne in þe woundys of þe hed, and þenne y demyde hym for
ded. Napeles at þe instance of hys frendys y þat wolde assaye þe
worchinge of kynde vpon resoun, I made hys hed ben y-schaue, and
y kutte azeyne þe wounde, þat was consowdid, with a rasoure to þe 32
deppe of þe same wounde, & afterwarde y fulfylde þilke wounde
with hote oyle of rosys, & y anoyntede alle þe hed with þe same
oyle of rosos & a lyteH vynegre y-medlyde togedre, & y anoyntede þe
nolle & þe nekke onlye wiþ oyle of rosys, and y dyde on þe wounde 36
þe 3olke of an eye with oyle of rosys, and y bonde alle þe hed wiþ a

- pe heed wiþ a boond leiyng per vndir herdis¹ or tow3 smal I-tosid, and band-
 and I openede his mouþ & putte into his mouþ þe broþ maad of a head,
 cliken, wiþ comyn & also wiþ cleer wyn medlid wiþ myche water; on gave
 4 þe morowe I turnede aȝen & I foond þe sike of bettere disposicioun, strengthen-
 & I openede bettere his mouþ, & he spak bettere; neþeles I foond nourish-
 þe wounde drie, & þanne I dide ofte tymes þe same medicyn & þe
 8 moist, þe which was bifore as drie as þe skyn hadde be rostid at þe
 fier, & in so miche² þe skyn was maad þinne, þat þer was no þing
 bitwene þe skyn & þe brayn þanne. & at þe laste þe wounde quyt-
 turide wiþ contynuaunce of þe same cure tofore seid, & in þis³ maner [3 lf. 54]
 12 þe ȝonge man was heelid boþe of þe crampe & also of þe wounde / and so cured
 But þilke crampe was wiþoute feure; for I may not þenke þat I the patient.
 haue seen a feure in þe woundes of þe heed, or ellis of þe senewis If fever occurs
 prickid a crampe, þat nouȝt aȝenstondynge remedie eiþer medicyns death ensues.
 16 þe pacient þat hadde þe crampe diede / My beste counseil is to lete Bleed the
 him blood in þe bigynnyng þat hæþ þe crampe, namely, & he be patient,
 strong & replete, & if þat he haue not bled ynouȝ at his woundis;
 & anoynte his nolle & his necke wiþ hote oynementis as wiþ oile use oint-
 ments,

¹ herdis. See Wright Wü. 614. 2. "Stupa, herdes," ² þat, inserted.

- 20 bonde leggyng þere undyre hurdys opere tow3 smal tosyde, and Add. MS.
 y opnyde hys mouth & put into hys mouth þe broth of a chyken 12,056.
 y-made with comyn, and also clere wyn y-medlyde with myche
 watyre. On þe morwe y turnyde aȝeyne & y fonde þe syke of
 24 bettyre dysposicioun, & he opnyde bettyre hys mouth, & he spak
 bettyre; & napeles⁴ y fonde þe wounde drye, & þenne y dede ofte [4 fol. 63 a]
 sonys þe same medycine & þe same vncture. In þe þridde day þe
 skyn of þe hed was y-mad moyst, whyche þat was to forne as drye
 28 as a skyn hadde be rostyde to þe fyre, and in so myche þe skyn was
 y-made þinne, þat þere was noþyng betwene þe skyn & þe breyne
 þanne. & at þe laste þe wounde quyturyde wiþ contynewaunce of þe
 same cure tofore seyde, & in þis manere þe ȝonge man was helyde
 32 boþe of þe crampe & eke of þe wounde. But þilke crampe was with-
 outen ffeyre; ffor y ne may noȝt þynke þat y haue seyn⁵ a ffeyre
 in þe woundes of synwes, opere ellys of þe hed precede a crampe, þat
 noȝt aȝeyne stondynge medycine / opere medycyns þe pacient þat
 36 hadde þe crampe ne deyede. My beste conseyle is to letyn hym blod
 in the bygyminge þat hæþ þe crampe, namly, & he be stronge &
 replete, and ȝif þat he haue nouȝt bled ynouȝ at hys wounde; and
 anoynte hys nolle & hys nekke wiþ hote oynementys, as with oyle of

⁵ a wounde struck through after seyn.

Nota. of nardine, euforbine, oile of rue,¹ lilijs *et cetera* / & also to make
small cauteries, smale cauteries punctale, þat is to seie as smal as þe eende of a
 pricke, bitwene ech whirlebon of þe necke, so neuere-þe-lattere þat
bandages. þe cauterie go not ouer depe / Aftirward bynde long¹ wolle to his 4
 heed bihynde & to his necke & to hise schuldris, & do þeron hoot
 oile, & leie him in a soft bed & lete him be in reste & in pees /
 But þer ben summe þat setten in her bookis medicyns þat pro-
ypocras. uoken þe feueris; for þat ypocras techiþ in .iiij^{to} afforismoris: a 8
 [3 lf. 54, bk.] **spasmo² vel tetano habito febre⁴ superueniente soluit egritudi-**
says that fever takes away the cramp or tetanus; **nem** / þat is to seie: if þat a man haue a crampe or ellis a tetane
 þat is a sijknese þat halt þe membre lich streit on boþe sidis as a
 crampe halt þe oon side of þe membre & þe feuere come on pilke 12
 crampe eipir pilke tetane, he distriep þe crampe eipir þe sijknese; &
 also þei anynte wiþ to hoot an oynement to prouoke þe feueres, þe
 which ping I ne apreue not in þe crampe of a wounde þowþ þat
he is wrong, if the cramp comes from a wound. pilke oynement myȝte be profitable in a crampe wiþoute wounde, & 16
 where þat humouris abounde, namely, if it be fleume.

Signs (symptoms) of cramp. General signs. Summe ben general tokenes & summe ben special of schewynge
 of þe crampe / General tokenes ben þese: to greet akþe, crokidnes⁵

¹ *rue, ruta.* Turner, *Herbal*, ii. 122 b. Ruta is named in Greke Pegamon, in English Rue or herbe grace, in French rue de gardin, in Dutch Weinraut.

² Cramp and Tetanus. See *Notes*.

⁴ *febre superueniente*, error for *febris superueniens*.

⁵ *crokidness*, Lat. *obliquitas*.

Add. MS. nardyne, enforbine, Oyle rewe, lyllys &c., and also to make smale 20
 12,056. cauteryes punctales, þat is to sigge as smale as þe ende of a prykke,
 bytwene euery whirlebone of þe nekke, so neuere þe latere þat þe
 cauterye go nouȝt ouere depe. Afterwarde bynde longe wolle to
 hys hed be hynde, & to his nekke, & to his schuldres, & do þere 24
 on hote oyle, & leye hym in a softe bed, & lete hym ben in reste &
 in pees. But þere be summe þat setten in here bokys medycines,
 þat provocen þe ffueyrys; ffor þat ypocras techyth in quarto afforis-
 morum: a **spasmo vel detano habito febre superueniente soluit 28**
egritudinem þat ys to sigge; ȝif þat a man haff þe crampe, opere
 ellys a tetane, þat is a syknesse þat halt the membre y-lyche streyt
 on boþe þe sydes, as a crampe halte þe on syde of þe membre, & þe
 ffuere come on pilke crampe opere pilke tetane, he distroyeth þe 32
 crampe opere þe seknesse, and also þey anynte with to hote oynement
 to prouoke þe ffueyrys, þe whyche þynge y ne apreff nouȝt in
 þe crampe of a wounde, þowþ þat pilke oynement myȝte be profitable
 [6 fol. 68 b] in a crampe withouten⁶ wounde, & where þat humores habounde, 36
 namlye, ȝif yt be fflewme. Somme ben general toknys, & some be
 speciaff of schewynge of a crampe. General toknys ben þese: to

of iȝen, & crokidnes of schewynge, & crokidnes of eeris, of þe nose
 prillis, & of þe lippis, & whanne þat a man may not speke, & þe
 cheke be constreyned & difficulte of meuyng, and namely, of
 4 þe necke, & ofte constreynynge togidere, & a sodeyn schakyng
 togidere. Special signes maken oon of þre maner of crampis: þe
 toon is clepid amprostonos¹, þe toþer empistenos², þe .iiij. tetanus /
 In þis maner of crampe þat is clepid ampros³tonos, þe senewis tofore
 8 ben drawe togidere / þe fore partie of þe heed is crokid, þe sike
 man may not heuen it vp, he berith his chyn as it lijþ on his brest,
 & his mouþ is streit & he may not opene it, & þe fyngris of his
 hand ben folden into his fist / & in empistonies þe necke is crokid,
 12 his mouþ is open, hise chekis ben open, & þe fyngris of his hand
 ben streyned backward / & þe tetane halt þe boþe parties of þe
 body, so þat he may not turne his necke to no partie but al þe
 bodi is stif & streyned, as a staf were putt yn at his necke & out
 16 at his ers / Alle þese tokenes or ellis summe of hem schewiþ þe
 disposicioun of him þat haþ þe crampe / And whanne þat þese
 tokenes fallen in þe wounde of þe heed, or ellis of a senewe þei
 techen bettere þe leche to fle from þe sike man þan on him to abide
 20 & cure /

¹ Latin, *Emprothotonos*.² Latin, *Opisthotonos*.

Special signs.

.1.

.2.

.3.

[³ if. 55]
amprostonos

Empistonos.

Tetanus.

gret akþe, crokydnesse of eyȝen, & crokydnesse of erys of nose þreth
 & of lyppes, & whenne þat a man may noȝt speke, & þe chekys ben
 constreyned, & dyficulte of swolwyng, & diffyculte of mevyng,
 24 namlye of þe nekke, & ofte constreynynge togedre, & sodeyne
 schakyng togedire. Special signes maken one of þre manere of
 crampes: þe on ys y-clepyde **Emprostonos**, þe oþere **Empistonos**, þe
 þridde **tetanus**. In þese manere of crampe þat is clepyde Empros-
 28 tonos þe synwes tofore be drawen togedire, þe fore party of þe hed
 ys crokyde, ne þe syke man ne may noȝt heffyn it vp, he berith hys
 chyn as yt leye on hys brest; hys mouþ is streyte, ne he ne may
 noȝt opyne yt, and þe ffyngres of hys hande ben foldyde into hys
 32 fust. And in Empistonos þe nekke ys crokyde, his mouþ is opyne,
 his chekes bep opyne, & þe ffyngres of hys handys ben streyned
 bakwarde, and þe tetane halt boþe þe partye of þe body, so þat he
 may nouȝt turne hys nekke to non partie, but alle þe body is styffe
 36 & streyned, as a staf were put in at hys hed & out at his ers. Alle
 þese toknys oþere ellys sum of hem schewith þe disposicioun of hym
 þat haþ þe crampe. And whanne þat þese toknys fallyn in þe
 wounde of an hed oþere ellys of⁴ a synwe, þey teche bettire þe leche
 40 to fle from þe syke man, þenne on hym to abyde & cure. The firste

Add. MS.
12,056.⁴ of, above line.

¶ The firste tretis is eendid wip þe help of almyȝty god. Now with þe help of þe same, go to þe secunde /

¶ Cap.^m. j.^m **N**OW bigynneþ þe secunde tretis of. particuler 4 woundis of membris of office from þe heed to þe foot / and first bigynne at anotamie of þe heed /

[1 ff. 55, bk.]^a Al þing¹ bresly ordeyned aftir my symple wiþ diuisynge, which þat¹ longiþ to þe firste tretis of þis booke which þat¹ holdiþ certeyn 8 rulis & techinge of surgerie vnder general chapitlis as we han bihiȝt¹ / now we wolen bigynne to treten of curis aftir þat¹ þe lymes ben in mannes bodi. & first¹ I wole bigynne at þe heed & at his anotamie, & so procede forþ to ech membre dyuysynge þe anotamie of ech 12 membre, & in ordeynynge þe curis of woundis þat¹ ben maad in ech sengle membre. I seie þat¹ þe heed is maad of þre parties: of a fleischi partie, of a bony partie, & a brawni partie. þe fleischi partie is aboue þe brayn panne, þe which þat¹ is maad of an hery 16 skyn; & þilke skyn is fulfillid wip braynes in euery partie /

The head consists of three parts.

² Heading to this page: *Anotomy off þe hed & woundes off the same.* / Compare Vicary's *Anatomie*, ch. iii. p. 24.

Add. MS. 12,056. tretys ys y-edyde wip helpe of almyȝtie god, now with þe helpe of³ þe same y go to þe secunde.

¶ Now begynneþ þe secunde tretys off particuler 20 woundes of membris of office from þe hede to þe ffoot, and firste y begynne at the Anotamye off the hed.

[⁴ fol. 69 a] Al thyng breffliche y-ordeynde, aftere þe devysynge of my 24 Symple wytt, whiche þat longith to þe firste tretys of this ⁴ boke whiche þat holdyth certeyne rulyz & techynges off surgerie vndire general chapitelis, as we han byheyȝt. Now we wylle begynne to tretyn of certeyne cures, aftere þat þe lymes ben in mannys body. 28 & firste y wyl begynne at þe hed & at hys anotamye, & so þe processe forþ to eueryche membre devysynge þe Anotamye of euery membre, & in ordeynynge þe cures of woundys þat beþ made in eche sengle membre, I sigge þat þe hed ys made of þre partyes: of a 32 fleschy partye, a bony partye, and a braynie partye. þe flesch partye is aboue þe brayn panne, whiche þat is made of an herye skyn; & þilke skyn ys fulfylde with brawnys in euery place. þe

³ MS. of twice.

þe heeris of þe heed weren for greet profite ordeyned þat neiþer The hair protects the brain,
cold ne hoot, ne schulde not sodeynli entre þe poris of the skyn,
& neuer-þe-lattere þat þe fumosite of þe heed myzte go out bi þe and adorns the head.
4 poris þere as þe heer growiþ; & þe heed myzte be þe more semeloker,
& þat þe colouris of þe heeris of dyuers men myzte schewen þe complecciouns of þe heedis //

[1 lf. 56]

þe skyn þat is¹ aboue þe brayn panne is lacertose, & ful of picke skyn.
8 fleisch, þat he myzte wrie þe brayn panne, þat he schulde not fele is muscular,
sodeynliche to greet heete ne to greet cold. þe which skyn is maad is made of
of sutil þedis of senewis þat comen fro þe brayn, & of veynes & fibrous cords
of arteries sotilliche I-maad; & so þe skyn of þe heed is sotilliche and veins,
12 ioyned wiþ þe skyn of al þe bodi / & also þe skyn of þe heed is more is thick and
pickere þan þe brain sculle, þat it schulde ben more rare² & more porous.
porose, þat is to seie, more ful of hoolis / þe lacertis of þe skyn proceden
aftir þat þe goynge procediþ of þe heeris /

16 þe brayn panne is maad of manye boonys / þe firste summe,³ þe The skull consists of
whiche þat holdiþ þe prouitis þat longen to þe brayn panne, haþ .ij. many bones
helpingis; oon helpinge is: þouþ þat an hurtynge come to oon boon, for different
neuer-þe-lattere he schulde not falle to alle þe boonys / þe secunde reasons, as
20 help is, oon boon þat is to hard in oon partie ne schulde not be so touching the
skull itself.

² rare. Lat. rarus.³ Lat. Prima nanque summa . .

herys off þe hed were for grete proffyte y-ordeynde, þat neiþere Add. MS.
colde ne hete ne scholde noȝt sodeynliche entre þe pores of þe skyn, 12,056.
& neuere þe lattere þat þe fumosite of þe hed myzte go out be þe
24 pores þere as þe here growyþ, and þat þe hed myzte be þe more
semlykere, and þat þe coloure of þe herys myzte schewe þe complexioun
of þe hed. þe skyn þat is abouen þe breyne panne ys lacertos & ful
of þykke flesch, þat he myzte wreyen þe breyn panne,
28 þat he scholde noȝt fele to sodeynliche neiþere to grete hete ne to
cold. þe whiche skyn ys made of sotyþ þedis of synwes þat comeþ
from þe brayn & of veynis & of arteryes sotylliche y-mad;
and so þe skyn of þe hed ys sotylliche y-ioyned wiþ þe skyn off
32 alle þe bodye, and also þe skyn of þe hed ys more þykkere þenne þe
brayne scolle, þat it scholde be more rare & more porose þat is to
sigge more ful of holys. þe lacertes of þe skyn proceden after þat
þe goynge procedyþ of þe herys, þe brayn panne ys mad of manye
36 bonys. þe fyrste summe, whiche þat wiþholdyþ þe profites þat
longyþ to þe brayn panne, haþ tweye helpinges; on helpynge ys,
þowþ þat an hurtynge come to on bon, neuere þe latere he scholde
noȝt fallen to alle þe bonys; þe secunde helpe is þat on bon þat is
40 to harde in on partye, ne scholde noȝt be so⁴ hard in an opere [4 fol. 69 b]

.2.
the organs
under the
skull.

[1 fr. 56, bk.]

The sutures
of the skull

a.
form the
ways for the
veins,

b.
let the nerves
go out

c.
and the
fumosity,

d.
support the
dura mater
and pia
mater.
The brain

pan is formed
of two tables,

hard in anopir partie. / þe secunde summe, þe which þat wiphalt þe helpingis þat ben vndir þe brayn panne, haþ wipinne him. iiij. helpingis; þe whiche helpingis ben ful maad by þe ¹semis þat ben of þe brayn panne; ne þe helpingis myzte not be maad, but if þat ⁴þer were manye boonys / þe first help is, þat þe veynes myzten go doun bi þe semis of þe brayn panne berynge² norischinge to þe same brayn³ / þe secunde help is, þat þe senewis þat comen out of þe brayn myzte haue wey in goyng out / þe þridde help is, þat þe fumes of þe brayn myzten haue wey of smokyng out / þe fourþe is, þat neiþer dura mater, ne pia mater, þat as þei ben hangid, ne myzte not greue þe brayn.

So þat þe brayn panne is maad of ij. smeþe lizt tablis, þat oon ¹²is aboue, þe toþir is byneþe / & þei ben sumwhat spongiouse in þe myddis, & rare þat þe smoke of þe heete myzte bettere passe out & þei ben smeþe þat þei myzten not greue þe brayn / Dyuers men þat maken dyuers anotamie dyuyden þe brayn panne diuerslych / sum- ¹⁶men noumbren mo boonys þan summe opir speken of / but soþenes is, þat þer ben .vj. & oon which þat susteyneþ þe sixte. þe firste boon is clepid, þe boon of þe forheed or ellis coronale, & he higynneþ from þe browis & lastiþ to þe seem þat departiþ þe heed quarter. ²⁰

has seven
bones.

I. Coronal.

² MS. inserts &.


³ panne after brayn cancelled.

Add. MS. partye. Secunde summe, whiche þat withhalt helpynges, þat beþ vnder þe brayn panne, haþ with hym iiij helpynges; þe whiche helpynges beþ ful mad be þe semys þat beþ of þe breyn panne. Ne þo helpynges ne myzte nozt be mad, but zif þat þere were manye ²⁴bonys. þe firste helpe ys, þat þe veynes myzte go doun by the semys of⁴ þe brayn panne, berynge norosschyng to þe same brayn.

Secunde helpe ys þat þe synwes, þat comyth out of þe brayn, myzte habbe wey in goyng out. þe þridde helpe ys, þat þe fumes ²⁸of þe brayn myzte habbe wey of smokyng out. þe flourþe ys, þat neiþere dura mater ne pia mater, þere as þey ben y-hongyde, ne myzte nozt greue þe brayn. Sytthe þat þe breyne panne ys made of two smeþe lyzte tablys, þat one ys aboue & þe opere byneþe, & ³²þey be sumwhat spongyouse in þe myddel & rare, þat þe smokys of þe hed myzte þe bettyre passen out, & þey be smeþe þat þey myzte nozt greue þe brayn. Dyuerse men þat makyth dyuerse Anotamye deuydeþ þe breyn panne dyuerslyche. Somme nowmbryth mo ³⁶bonys, þenne summe opere spekyn of; but soþenesse ys that þere ben sixe; & one whyche þat susteyneþ þo sixe. þe fyfste bon ys clepyde þe bon of þe⁵ fforhed opere ellys coronale, & he bygynneþ from þe browys, & lastyth vnto þe seme þat departyth þe hed ⁴⁰

⁴ of above line.

⁵ þe above line.

- ¹ & pilke is clepid coronale / þis boon hap in sum maner of men a [1 l. 57]
 smal seem in foldynge of þe forheed, & þefore sum men seyn
 þat þer ben .ij. boonis. ij opir boonys ben ioyned with pilke boon
 coronable in þe myddis of þe heed ouerþwert ouer; þat² þei ben
 4 bounde togidere bi oon ioynture, þe which þat¹ strecchiþ from bifore
 to bihynde to þe lenkþe of þe heed, þe which is clepid sagittales,
 by as myche as he is schape lik an arowe / & þese .ij. boonys ben
 clepid nerualia bi-cause þat þe figure of þe seem þat is with þe
 8 coronable is þe figure of a senewe eiper of a corde / þese boonys ben
 in þe hizeste coppe of þe heed & byhynde in þe nolle þer is a boon
 þe which is clepid alauda.³ & it is maad in þe symilitude of þis : Λ :
 which þat is ioyned wiþ þe boones nerualibus tofore seid bi þe mene
 12 of oon þan I-made to þe liknes of þe boon tofore seid. & þese þre
 semes whiche þat ioynen togidere þe .iiij. boonys tofore seid, ben
 maad as it were two sawis, þe whiche teep ben ioyned, ech of hem
 in opir in þis maner  / & þis ioynynge togidere of oon
 16 boon wiþ anopir was maad bi-cause of iuvamentis þat I haue told
 to⁵forn; þer is no boon ioyned with anoper as þese boonys ben. [5 l. 57, bk.]

² þat insertion.


³ Latin: "Quartum os est ex parte posteriori in puppi; et conjungitur cum prædictis nervalibus mediante una commissura ad modum literæ laudæ grecæ." The word *lauda* is a corruption of *lambda*.

⁴ *augrim*. See *N. E. Dict.*, s.v. *algorithm*.

The sagittal suture unites the nerval bones (side bones), II, III.

IV. Occipital bone with the lambdoidal suture.

figure in *augrim*⁴

- twarte offere. And þylke bon is y-clepyde **coronale**: þis bon hath
 in some manere of men a smal seme in þe ffoldynge of þe fforhed,
 20 & þere fore sum men siggeþ þat þere beþ tweye bonys. Tweye
 opere bonys beþ y-Ioyned wiþ þylke bon **coronale** in þe myden of
 þe hed twarte offere, & þey ben y-bounde togedyre by one Iucture,
 þe whiche þat strecchiþ from tofore to byhynde, by the lengthe
 24 of þe hed, þe whiche ys y-clepyde **sagyttalis** by as myche as he
 ys schapyde lyke an arwe. And þese tweye bonys beþ y-clepyde
Nerualia, by cause of þe ffigure of the seme þat ys wiþ þe coronale,
 6 ys þe ffigure of a synwe opere of a corde. And þese bonys ben in
 28 þe heyest coppe of the hed, and behynde in þe nolle þere ys a bon
 whyche þat is y-clepyde **Alauda**, & ys y-made to þe Symilitude of
 þis cyffre of Augrym Λ, whiche þat ys Ioynede with þe bonys
 nerualibus tofore seyde, by þe mene of on 3em y-mad to þe lyknesse
 32 of þe bon tofore seyde. & þese þre 3emes whiche þat Ioynep to-
 gedyre þe foure bonys to fore seyde, ben y-made as yt were tweye⁷
 zawes, whos teth joyned eche of hem in opere in thys manere /
 & þis ioynynge togedire of on bon with an oper was y-made
 36 by-cause Iuvamentes þat y haue tolde befor; þere nys no bon
 y-ioynede with an opere as þese bonys ben. Undire þe bon þat ys

Add. MS.
12,056.

[6 fol. 70 a]

⁷ MS. *tweye* twice.

V. Tassillus
(Basilar bone)
supports all
the other
bones.

Vndir þe boon þat^t is clepid alauda, þer is a ful hard boon & holid in þe myddil, þe which boon susteyneþ alle þe boonys of þe heed. þe which boon is clepid passillus, & he is ioyned byneþe wiþ þe firste boon of þe nake. þe schap of þe coniunccioun of þe .v. boonis of 4 þe heed is in þis maner **ERM**. Boþe on þe riȝt side & on þe lift side of þe forseid boonys, whiche þat^t ben clepid nerualia * [whiche þat beþ in lengthe in þe heyest place of þe hed, þere ben twey bonys on eiþere syde.] & þo boonys þat vndir setten ben clepid ossa mendosa. & þese 8 boonys in oon partie ben ful hard þere as þe hole of þe eere passip þoruȝ, & þei ben clepid petrosa; & summen seien þat^t þer ben .iiij. boonys ij. on eiþir side / & whanne þat^t alle þe boonys of þe heed ben ioyned togidere, þou schalt fynde in soþfastnes þat^t þer ben but vj. boonys, 12 whanne þat^t þou rekenest os¹ coronale for oon boon, & .ij. boonys þat^t ben clepid mendose, ij. & oon þat^t ben iij, & o boon þat^t is clepid alauda. & ij. boonys þat^t ben clepid nerualia þat^t ben .vj.; & þe .vij. boon is clepid passillare, þe which is not of þe boones of þe 16 heed, but he susteyneþ alle þe opere boonys of þe heed.² & iij. maner of semes³ makip coniunccioun of alle þe boonys in þis maner

VI, VII.
Temporal
bones (men-
dosa); one
portion is
called os
petrosuin.

The skull has
seven bones,

three true
sutures,
[3 lf. 58]



¹ MS. as.

² Add. MS. 10,440, fol. 2: "þ he is vnterberyng in þe hynder partie al be bones of þe heued, & þerfore he is clepid þe berere vp, or pawillus."

Add. MS. y-clepyde Alauda, þere ys a ful harde bon & y-holyde in þe myddle, 12,056. þe whyche bone susteyneth alle þe bonys of þe hed. þe whiche 20 bon ys y-clepyde **Passilus**, & he ys ioynede byneþe wiþ þe fyrste bon of þe nekke. þe schappe of þe coniunccioun of þe fife bonys of þe hed ys in þis manere **EWEN**. Bothe on þe ryȝte syde & on þe lefte syde of þe forseide bonys whiche þat beþ y-clepyde **nerualia**,* 24 whiche þat beþ in lengthe in þe heyest place of þe hed, þere ben twey bonys on eiþere syde*; þe whiche þat beþ vndiresetterys to þo bonys þat beþ y-clepyde **nerualia**; & þo bonys þat vndire setten, ben y-clept ossa mendosa. And þese bonys in one partye ben ful 28 harde, þere as þe hole of þe ere passyþ þoruȝ, & þey ben y-clepede⁴ petrosa & sum men siggen þat þere ben foure bonys, two on eythere syde. & whanne þat alle bonys of þe hed be ioynede togidere þou schalt fynde in sofastnesse, þat þere ben but sixe bonys whanne 32 þat þou reknyste os⁵ coronale ffor on bon, & tweye bonys þat beþ y-clepyde mendose tweyne þat beþ þre, and o bon þat ys y-clepyde Alanda, & tweye bonys þat is y-clepyde nerualia—þat beþ sixe, and þe vij bon ys y-clepyde passillare, þe whiche ys nought of þe 36 bonys of þe hed, but he susteyneth alle þe opere bonys of þe hed. And þre maner of semys makyth coniunccioun of alle þe bonys on þis

⁴ MS. petotra.

⁵ MS. as.

- & wip .ij. semes mendose in þis maner 220. & whanne þat þe croune of þe heed is *perfiȝt*, þe heed is *maad* in þis maner  / þis is þe foorme of an heed weel propossiond, round  þat he
- 4 myȝte more wipholde, & þat he myȝte lasse be hurt, & þat he be longe warpid¹, hauynge tofore & bihynde eminence: þat is to seie apeiryng, þat þe senewis þat comen out of þe brayn myȝten haue a porose place of goynge out. & nepeles as ypocras & galion, whiche
- 8 þat expowneþ ypocras, telliþ², it is possible to fynde opir in maner of makynge of heedis. Oon maner is, if eminence be not in partie of þe heed tofore, for if þat he be pleyn in partie tofore, bi þat pleyne þe seem is lost, þat is clepid coronalis / þe secunde is, if
- 12 þat þe heed haue noon eminence bihynde, but þat þe hyndere partie be pleyn, & bi þat pleyne þe seeme is lost þat is clepid alauda / þe þridde is, if þat þe be noon eminence bifore ne bihinde in þe heed, but al þe heed is round as a sercle, & þanne þe is but oon
- 16 seem in þe myddil of þe brayn þanne: for it is vnpossible þe heed to haue ony opere³ schap wipoute lesynge of sum partie of þe brayn, & were contrarious azens þe lijf / Bi þe myddil seem which þat is in þe heed, þere discendiþ a ueyne comynge fro þe lyuere bi þe
- ¹ *longe warpid*, Lat. oblongus. Comp. Langwyrpe bôc, *Indices Monast.* 12, ed. Kluge.
- ² *telliþ*, error for *tellen*.
- ³ *Nota.*

two false
sutures
(mendosæ).

A well-pro-
portioned
head is
oblong with
openings for
the nerves,

ypocras. &
Galion
enumerate
peculiar
forms:




.1.
front part
flat,

.2.
back part flat,

.3.
without any
prominence.

[³ 1f. 58, bk.]

A vein and
artery come
through the
basilar bone,

- 20 manere , & with tweye semys mendose in þis manere . Add. MS. 12,056.
- And whanne þat þe corone of þe hed ys *perfyȝt*, þe hed ys *mad* in þis manere . þis ys þe forme of an hed wel proporcionede, þat he be ronde because þat he myȝhte þe more wipholde, & þat he
- 24 myȝte þe lasse be y-hurt, and þat he be longewarped hauynge tofore & behynde eminence þat is to sigge aperyng, þat þe synwes þat comyȝth out of þe brayn, myȝhte haue a porose place of goynge out. And napelese as ypocras & galyen, whiche þat exponeþ ypocras,
- 28 tellyn: it is possible to fynden þe opere manere makynge of hedys. On manere is, ȝif eminence be noȝt in þe partye of þe hed tofore; for ȝif þat he be pleyn in þe partye tofore, by þat pleyennesse þe seme is y-lost þat is y-clepyde coronalis. Secunde ys ȝif þe hed
- 32 haffi non eminence behynde, but þat þe hyndore party be playn, and by þat playennesse þe seme ys y-lost þat ys y-clepyde Alauda.⁵ þe þridde ys ȝif þere be non eminence tofore ne behynde in þe hed, but alle þe hed ys rounde as a cercle. And þenne þere nys
- 36 but on sem in þe myddel of þe breyn þanne, ffor it is vnpossible þe hed to habben enye opere schappe wipouten lesyng of some party of þe brayn; & þat were contrariouse aȝeyne lyf. By þe myddele seme, whiche þat is in þe hed, þere dissendlyȝh a veyne comynge

⁵ MS. *Abauda*.

and make the
dura mater.

The blood
flows up-
wards in the
artery,

downwards
in the vein.

The veins
from the
pia mater

[1 ff. 59]
bring the
vital spirit to
the brain,
and turn it
into under-
standing.

iiij. cellis of
þe brayn

brayn panne of a boon which þat is holid þat is clepid passillarus. & bi þe same weye þer risiþ an arterie comynge from þe herte, & þei ben ioyned togidere, & of þe weuingge of þe tweyne þer is maad an hard pannicle þat is to seie a cloop þat is vndir þe brayn 4 panne; & he is hangid with summe smale ligamentis to þe brayn panne in summe of þe semes. þe which pannicle byndiþ þe boonys togidere, & it is clepid dura mater. & it is riȝtful þat an arterie schulde arise vpward from byneþe, for þe blood þat is in him is 8 sutil, & his meuyng is pulsatif; & he hadde discendid from aboue douward, he schulde haue discendid wiþ to greet an hastynes, but þilke ascendynge temperiþ þilke flux. & it is couenable þat þe veyne discende bicause þat þe blood þat is in þe veynes is more pickere, 12 & þe blood þat is in þe veynes goiþ down sotilli. & boþe þese veynes þat ben pulsatif & not pulsatif ben ioyned wiþ dura mater / Also þe 1 veyne strecchiþ more lower, & of hem is engendrid pia mater / Aftir þei discenden down to þe brayn, & þei bryngen lijf & dewe 16 norischinge & cordialle² spiritis, þe which is in þe brayn & þere is defied, & þere resseyueþ naturel foorme of vnderstondynge. Pia mater enuyrouneþ al þe brayn, & departiþ him into iiij. celoles þat

² MS. inserts þe.

Add. MS. 12,056. from þe lyffere, by þe breyn ponne, of a bon whiche þat is y-holyde. 20 þat is y-clepyde pasillaris. And by þe same weye þere arysith an Arterye comynge fro þe herte, and þey ben Ioyned togedire, & of þe weffynge of þo tweyne þere is y-mad an hard pannycle þat is to sigge a cloth þat is vndir þe brayn panne, and he is hongyde wiþ 24 sum smale ligamentys to þe brayn panne in some of þe semys, þe whych pannycle byndeþ þe bonys togedire, & it is clepyde dura mater. And yt is ryȝtful þat an Arterye scholde arysen vpwarde from byneþyne, for þe blod þat ys in hym þat is sotyff, & hys 28 meffynge þat ys pulsatyff³; and he hadde discendyde from aboue dunwarde, he scholde han discendyde wiþ to gret 4 an hastynesse, but þe ascendynge temprith pulke flux. And yt is couenable þat þe veyne discende, bycause þat þe blod þat ys in þe veynes ys more 32 þykkore, & þe blod þat is in þe veyne geþ down softliche. & boþe þese veynes þat buþ⁵ pulsatyf & nouȝt pulsatyf beþ y-Ioynede wiþ dura matre. And also þowþ þe veyne strecche more lowere, & of hem ys engendryde pia mater. Afterward þey descenden down to 36 þe brayn. & þey bryngen lyf & dywe noryschyng & cordyal spiritis, þe whiche is in þe brayn and þere is diffyede, & þere resseyueþ naturel forme of vnderstondynge. Pia mater envroneþ al þe brayn, & departyth hym into þe þre celoles⁶ þat beþ chaumbres: 40

[4 fol. 71 a]

³ MS. *prilsatyff*.

⁵ *buþ*, above line.

⁶ MS. *cololes*.

ben chaumbris : þe firste, þe myddile, & þe laste. & þou; þat alle þese ben dyuydid syngulerly bi hem-siluen, it semeþ þat þe celole¹ þat is tofore in þe brayn is departid in two parties ; & bi þat cause
 4 summen seien þat þer ben .iiij. ventriclis of þe brayn. þe forþere partie of þe brayn is greet & brood, bicause þat he schulde resceyue manye spiritis þat ben sent to him ; for þat place is propre instrument of ymagynacioun þe which resceyueþ þingis þat comprehendþ of
 8 fantasie ;² & þo þingis kunnen vndirstonde resceyueþ³ bi propre instrumentis þat longiþ. & þou; þat al þe brayn, in comparisoun of þe herte & of alle opere membris of þe body, be deemed cold & moist, þis celule hauynge comparisoun to opere celules is deemed
 12 hoot & drie. & þe myddil part of þe brayn is lasse⁴ þan ony opere of þe opere two parties, & her foorme is punat⁵ brood twoward þe forþere side of þe heed, & scharpere twoward þe hyndere syde, þat he myȝte be þe more able to resceyue ymagynatif þingis, & þo
 16 þingis to ȝeue to þe ynnere partie, & þo þingis þat ben ȝeue to wiþholde / þis ventricle is sett bitwene two addiamentis of þe brayn ; þe whiche addiamentis ben lijk to tweie buttokkis of a man þat ben
 ioyned togidere, & þei ben [to]* þis ventricle as it were a sittynge

The foremost cell or Ventricle is the largest one, and contains Imagination.

Nota

[⁴ lf. 59, bk.]

The middle Ventricle has a pineal form,

lies between two addiamentis of the brain (optical lobes),

¹ MS. *celose*.

² Lat. : res a phantasia comprehensas.

³ Read, þo þingis comyn vndirstondynge resceyueþ. Lat. : quas(res) communis sensus recipit.

⁵ punat. Lat. : pineatus.

20 þe firste, þe myddle, & þe laste. And þow; þat alle þese ben diffyede senglerlyche by hem selffyn, yt semeþ þat þe celele þat is tofore in þe brayn ys departyde in two parties, & by þat cause
 24 sum men siggen, þat þere ben foure ventricles of þe brayn. þe furþere part of þe brayn ys gret & brod, by cause þat he scholde resceyue manye spiritis þat ben y-sende to hym for þat place is propre instrement of y-maginacion, þe whiche resceyueþ þynges þat buþ comprehendide of fantasie ; and þo þynges comen vndirstond-
 28 ynge resceyueþ by propre Instrementys þat longyȝ to hym, and þaw; þat al þe brayn, in comparson of þe herte & of alle opere membres of þe body, be y-demyde colde & moist, þis celule hauynge comparson to opere celules ys y-demyde hot & dryȝe. þe myddel
 32 part of þe brayn ys lasse þen eny of þe opere two parties, & here foorme ys pyneat, brod towarde þe furþere syde of þe hed and scharpere towarde þe hyndor syde, þat he myȝte be þe more able to resceyue y-maginatyf þynges & þo þynges to ȝefe to þe ynnere
 36 partye & þo þynges þat beþ y-ȝefe to wiȝholde. þis ventricle ys y-sette bytwene tweyne additamentes of þe brayn, þe whiche additamentes ben y-liche þe two buttokkes of a man þat beþ y-ioynode togedre, and þey beþ to * þis ventricle as yt were a syttinge place
 SURGERY.

Add. MS. 12,056.

stretches and contracts during perception,

is smaller than the other Ventricks.

[2 lf. 60]

The third Ventricle is the largest,

from it starts the Spinal Marrow:

The brain is cold and moist,

place eipir a couche vpon þe which he is drawn abroad, whanne þat¹ he resseyueþ ymagynatif¹ þingis; aftirward he is drawe togidere as a worm, whanne þat¹ he resseyueþ ymagynatif¹ þingis; & whanne þat¹ þe sentence of þilke ymagynacioun is brougt¹ forþ, þanne þilke 4 ventricle is drawe along¹, & also þe smallere eende of þe ventricle entrip into þe ventricle þat¹ is bihynde in þe heed. & þis ventricle is myche lasse þan þe opere tweyne, bicause þat¹ no senewis proceden¹ not out of him, & þat¹ manye þingis myzte be comprehendid [in 8 litel]* place þat¹ vertu of witt¹ myzte þe sunnere be gaderid togidere to take his 2 counseil; & þis ventricle to comparisoun of opere ventriclis is deemed hoot¹ & drie. & aftir þat¹ þe hyndere ventricle, þe which is grettere & hardere þan þis; þe which [in]* comparisoun to 12 þe opere tweyne is demed cold & drie, þe which is brood twoward þe fore partie of þe heed & scharp bakward, þe which resceyueþ sentence þat¹ ben schewid & kepip hem priuyliche as a cheste kepip tresour. & out of him goip out nucha þoruþ þe hole of þe boon, 16 þat¹ is clepid passillaris, & þilke nucha is clopid wip two pannicles þat¹ goon out of þe brayn.

& al þe brayn is deemed cold & moist, bicause þat¹ he schulde

¹ MS. *procende*.

Add. MS. 12,056. opere a couche, vpon þe whyche he ys drawyne abroad, whenne 20 þat he resseyueþ 3 y-magynatyff¹ þynges. And afterwarde he ys

[3 fol. 71 b] y-drawe togedire as a worme, whenne þat he resceyueth y-magynatyff¹ þynges; and whenne þat þe sentence of þilke y-magynacioun ys y-brought forth, þenne þilke ventricle ys y-drawe alonge. And 24 also þe smallere ende of þis ventricle entriþ into þe ventricle þat ys behynde in þe hed, and þis ventricle ys myche lasse þenne þe opere tweyne bycause þat non synwes procedent not out of hym, and þat manye þynges myghte be endyde in litel* place, þat vertue 28 of wytt¹ myghte þe sonnere be y-gedyrde togedre to taken hys counseyll. And thys ventrycle to comparson of opere ventricles ys y-demyde hot & drye. After þat ys þe hyndere ventricle, whiche ys grattere & hardere þenne thys; þe whiche in *comparson of þe 32 opere tweyne ys y-demyde colde & drye, þe whiche is brod towarde þe fore partye of þe hed & scharpe bachwarde, þe whyche resceyuyth sentence þat beþ schewyde & kepyth hem priuyliche as a chest kepyth tresore. And out of hym goth out⁴ nucha⁵ þrowe þe 36 hole of þe bon þat ys y-clepyde passillarys. And þilke nucha ys y-clothyde⁶ wip tweye pannycles þat goth out of þe brayn. And alle þe brayn ys y-demyde colde & moyst¹. bycause þat he scholde

⁴ in þe a, struck through after goth out.

⁵ nucha on margin.

⁶ MS. ys y-clothyde twice.

- atempren spiritual fumosite þat comen of þe herte, & þat he schulde not ben dried for to myche meuyng þat he haþ in worching of vertues; & þe brayn is whijt, bicause þat he schulde þe bettere
 4 resseyue resoun & vnderstandyng / For if peyntouris whanne þey schulen peynte a table, first þei maken it whijt, for þer wole no colour lasten but þoruþ him; & it is neische þat þe meuyng of vertues myzte þe bettere han place; & þe brayn is towz þat þe
 8 senewis þat goon out of hym¹ myzte be þe more towz, & þe more þei ben enlongid from her bigynnyng & þe more hardere þei schulen be, & also þat þei schulden be bowable ynowz & nouzt azenstondyng her hardnesse. & it is nessessarie þat þe brayn be clopid wip
 12 .ij. panniclis: þat is to seie .ij. clopis, þat in his meuyng, [as]* I haue seid tofore, þat it schulde not be hurt of þe brayn panne. Al þe brayn is departid into .iiij. colules² with addiamētis of þe panniclis of pie matris, þat þe spiritis myzten þe lengere dwelle in þe ventricle
 16 to resseyuen bi ordure of digestioun, foorme & perfeccioun more þan þei hadden first of þe herte; & þat euery vertu myzte fulfille his accidens³ in his ventricle, or þan þe vois⁴ þat is comprehendid

white like a painter's table,

soft and tough.

[1. 16. bk.]

The brain is protected by two Pannicles (Membranes);

which divide it into three cells,

where thought is formed.

² *cellis*, written above line.

³ *accidens* for *accioun*.

⁴ *vois*, Lat.: "antequam res comprehensa posset ad sequentem ventriculum pertransire."

- atempren spirituel ffumosites þat comyth of þe herte, and þat he
 20 scholde nozte ben y-dreyzede fforto myche meffynge þat he haþ in worchyng of vertues. And þe brayn is whit bycause þat scholde resseyue þe bettere resoun & vnderstandyng. Ffor þese peyntores, whenne þey schulle peynten a table, firste þey maken yt whyte, for
 24 þere nylle none coloure lasten but yt be leyde vpon whyt; & it is þenne opere rare, because þat vndirstondyng myzte þe sonnere passe þorwe hym; & yt is nessche þat þe meffynges off vertues myghte þe betyre habbe place; & þe brayn ys towz, þat þe synwes
 28 þat goth out of hym, myzte be þe⁵ more towzere, and þe more þat þey ben enlongyde from here bygynninge, þe more hardere þey scholde be; and also that þey scholde be bowable y-nowz nought azeynestondyng here hardnesse. And yt is necessarye þat þe
 32 brayn scholde be cloped with tweye clothys, þat in hys meffynge as *y haue seyde tofore he scholde nought ben y-hurt of þe brayn panne.

Add. MS. 12,056.

[5 fol. 72 a]

- Also þe brayn ys departyde into pre celules with þe addita-
 36 mentes of þe pannycles of pie⁶ matris, þat þe spiritis myzt þe lengore dwellen in þe ventricles, to reseyfen by ordre, digestioun, forme & perfeccion, more þanne þey hadden fyrst of þe hert, and þat euery vertue myghte fulfille hys accioun in hys ventrycle, ere

⁶ MS. *pie*, twice.

Part of the
brain is most
essential to
life,

Nota

[1f. 61]
especially the
substance of
the Ven-
tricles.

Different
kinds of
wounds on
the head.

myzte passe to þe ventricle þat is sewingge.¹ Not azenstondynge þese propirtees þe brayn haþ sum substaunce of marie þe which fulfilliþ þe voidenes of þe forseid panniclis. & pilke mary enuyroun- neþ þe forseid panniclis, of þe which mary þer may sum partie in 4 hurtynge of þe heed be lost; & not azenstondynge þe goynge out² of sum partie of pilke mary, a man schal nouȝt die. For þis mary ³is not of þe substaunce of þe ventriclis of þe brayn of þe which mynde is maad; for þei ben of so greet nobilite, þouȝ þat þer be 8 neuere so litil infeccioun, or ellis þat þer falle neuere so litil a lesyng of hem⁴ þei ben deprived of her heelp, in so myche þat oon colule⁵ may not be lost & a man be saued, as manye idiotis supposen contrarie / ⁶Anotamie of yzen, eeris, nose, chekelappis, mouþ, tunge & 12 teþ, we deferren to ordeyne in þe þridde tretis, in þe whiche if god wole we þenken to treten, & of opere sicknessis, & of opere lymes out-cept woundis.

& þo hurtyngis þat ben maad in þe heed eipir þat ben maad 16 wiþoute wounde or wiþ wounde. & wheþer þat þei ben wiþoute wounde or wiþ wounde, eipir þei ben wiþ brekyng of þe brayn

¹ MS. *swingge*.

² MS. inserts *ȝ*.

⁴ of hem written on margin.

⁵ *cellul* written above.

⁶ The MS. has a marginal note: *Anotomy off eyen, eres, nose, chekes, mouthe, tounge, teth.*

Add. MS.
12,056.

þanne þe foys þat ys comprehendyde myghte passe to þe ventricle þat ys sywyng. Nowȝt azeynestondynge þese propretes, þe brayn 20 haþ sum substaunce of marie whiche fulfilliþ þe voydenesses of þe forseide pannycleres. And pilke marye envyrownȝth þe foreseyde pannycles, of þe whyche marye þere may sum partye in þe hurtynge of þe hed ben y-lost; and nouȝt ageynestondynge þe goynge out of 24 sum partye of pilke marye, a man schal nouȝt deye. Ffor þis marye is nought of þe substaunce of þe ventricles of þe brayn, of whiche mynde ys y-mad; ffor þey ben of so grete noblete, ȝif þere be neuere so litel infectioun opere ellys þat þere falle neuere so lytel a lesyng 28 of hem, þey ben depreffyde of alle here helthe, in so myche þat on celele may nouȝt ben y-lost, and a man ben saffyde, as manye ydyotes supposen. Anothomye of eynen, neose, erne, chekelappes, mouþ, tonge & teþ, we deferren to ordeynen in þe þridde tretys, in 32 þe distyncioun whiche ȝif god wol, we þynkeþ forto treten of opere syknesse of þe lymes, outsepte woundes. And þo hurtynges þat bep y-mad in þe hed, opere þey ben mad withouten wounde, opere with wounde. & wheþere þat it be wyth wounde opere wiþouten 36 wounde, opere þey ben with brekyng of þe brayn þanne, opere

panne or wipoute brekyng of þe brayn panne / Or wheþer þat it be maad wip breche of þe brayn panne, or wipoute breche of þe brayn panne, summe ben wip hurtyng of þe brayn, & summe ben
4 wipoute hurtyng of þe brayn / & riȝt as þilke hurtis haue difference in tokenes, so þei han difference in perels & pronosticaciouns & maners with þe whiche þei musten ben holpen /

1 & if þat ony hurt be in þe heed wipoute ony wounde as wip
8 fallynge or wip smytyng of a stoon or of a staf or wip sum opir þing þat brusip, & if þat it be wipoute breche of þe brayn panne & wip hirtyng of þe brayn panne, it nedip not but schauynge of þe heed & anoyntyng with hote oiles of rosis & [abofen þe vncture]*
12 to strawen on þe poudre of mirtillis seed, & streyne þe place wip a boond til al þe place be fastned & þe swellynge be vanyschid away / In þis maner þou fastne al þe place þat no þing schal be corruppid, or ellis þer schal dwelle a litil corrupcioun, & if þat ony þing of
16 corrupcioun abide, þe place schal be opened wip an instrument, & so schal þe quyttur be excludid, & he schal be curid riȝt as opere empostymes þat ben woundid.

& if þat þe brayn panne were broke wipoute wounde of þe
20 heed þe which may be knowe bi disposicioun of þe cause & also of þe sike man, in biholdynge, if þat þat smytip were strong, or ellis

[¹ lf. 61, bk.]hurt of þe
heed
without any
wound or
fracture.

Nota

Have the
head shaved
and an oint-
ment applied.Fracture of
the skull,
without any
open wound.

without brekyng of þe breyn panne. And wheþer 2 þat yt be mad wip þe breche of þe brayn panne opere withouten breche of þe breyn
24 panne, some ben with hurtyng of þe brayn, some without hurtyng of þe brayn. And ryȝte as þilke hurtynges habben dyfference in toknes, so þey haue differens in pereles & pronosticaciouns & maners, with þe whiche þey most ben y-holpen. And ȝif an hurt be
28 in þe hed withouten wounde, as with fallynge, opere with smytinge of a ston, opere a staff, opere with sum opere thyng þat brusyth, and ȝif þat yt be withouten breche of þe brayn panne, & with outen hurtyng of þe brayn panne, it nedyth nouȝt but schaffynge of þe
32 hed, & anoyntyng wip hote oyle of roses, and abofen þe vncture* to strawyn on þe poudre of þe seed of myrtylles, & streyne þe place with a band tyl al þe place be y-fastnyde & þe swellynge be y-
vanschyd aweye. In þis manere þou schalt fastne al þe place, þat
36 noþyng schal be corruppid, opere ellys þere schall dwelle a lytel corrupcioun. And ȝif enye þyng of corrupcion abyde, þe place schal ben y-opnyde with an Instrument, & so alle þe quyter schal be excludyd, & he schal ben y-curyd ryȝt as opere empostemys þat beþ
40 y-woundyde. And ȝif þat þe brayn panne were y-broke withoute enye wounde of þe hed, þe whiche may ben y-knowe by disposicioun of þe cause & eke of þe syke man, in biholdynge ȝif þat þat smyt

Add. MS.
12,056.[² fol. 72 v]

Symptoms of
the fracture:
[1 lf. 62]

as giddiness,

vomiting,
headache.

Test by harp-
ing on a
thread, which
the patient
holds with
his teeth.

þat þe sike haue falle from his place, or ellis þat he was smyte with stronge smyting, & also if þat he fel & myzte not hastili arise. ¹& if þat he hadde scotomie, ²þat is to seie a maner sijknes, whanne þat þer semeþ as flien or opere smale gnattis fleen tofore his yzen / or 4 ellis he spewip his mete, or he felip to gret akþe in þe heed, & if þat he may not breke a knotte of a straw wip hise teep, & if þe heed be smyte wip a lizt drie staf as of salow or ellis of pinee— & þanne leie þin eere to his heed, & if þat þe boon be hool þou 8 schalt here an hool soun aftir þe comparisoun of þe soun of an hool belle, also if þou makist þe sike man to holde bitwene his teep a pred twyned & I-wexid, & þanne bigynne to harpe with þi nailis vpon þe pred faste bi þe sike mannes mouþ, & so harpe wip þi naylis 12 vpon þe pred alwey streyned & makynge soun to þe eende of þe pred, & þilke pred schal ben on lenkþe fro þe mouþ of a cubite, & so þou schalt harpe ofte tymes, & if þat þe pacient mowe susteyne þe soun, he haþ not his brayn panne broke, for if his brayn 16 panne were broke, þe sike man myzte not susteyne þe soun of þe pred. Alle þese signys, or ellis manye of hem bitokenen þat [2 lf. 62, bk.] þe brayn panne is broken / & tweyne ³of þe laste signys ben ²scotomie. Vigo Interpret. "*Scotomia*. They shoulde saye, Scotoma, and it is a disease, when darckenes ryseth, when al thinges seme to go rounde about."

Add. MS. were stronge, opere ellys þat þe syke haue y-fallen from hye place, 20
12 056. opere ellys þat he was y-smyte with stronge smytynge; and also 3if þat he fel & myght nought hastlye aryse, and 3if þat he hadde scotomye: þat ys to sugge a manere seknesse, whenne þat þere semyth as flyezes, opere smale blake gnattys vleyzen tofore hys 24 eyzen, opere ellys he spyweþ hys mete, opere he felyth to grete akþe in hys hed, and 3if þat he may nought breken a knotte of a straw with hys teth, and 3if þe hed be snyten with a lyzt dreyze staff, as [4 fol. 73 a] of salwe opere ellys pyne, and þenne leye þyn ⁴ere to hys hed; & 28 3if þat þe bon be hol, þou schalt heren an hol soun after þe comparisoun of þe soun of an hol belle & a bloke belle; also 3if þat þou makyste þe syke man to holde bytwene hys tep a prede y-twyned & y-waxed, & þenne begynne to harpen with þy naylles vpon þe 32 prede faste be þe seke mannes mouth, & so harpe with þyne naylles vpon þe pred alle wey streyned, in makynge soun to þe ende of þe pred, & þilke pred schal ben of lengþe from þe mouth be þe space of a Kubyte; and þou schalt harpe so ofte tymes, & 3if þat þe 36 pacient mowe susteyne þe soun, he haþ nozt hys brayn panne y-broke; ffor 3if hys breyn panne were broke, þe seke man myghte nought susteyne þe soun of þe pred. Alle þese signes opere ellis manye of hem betokne þat þe breyn panne is broken. And to þe 40

more certeyn þan ony of þe opere. & vndirstonde þat þe brayn
 panne mai ofte tymes be to-broken, & nepeles þe brayn felip noon
 harm in þe bigynnyng. But¹ aftirward ofte tymes of hirtyng
 4 of þe brayn panne, þe brayn is hirt² / Galien witnessynge, þe *Galien*
 brekyng of boonys in þe heed is dyuers in perels fro brekyng
 of opere boonys in þe bodi, for þe accidens þe which þat fallip ofte
 tymes to þe breche of þe brayn panne. Neipir is no man ne neuere
 8 was þat myzte euermore helpe to alle accidentis, whanne þat þe
 brayn was meued in þe bigynnyng þat not³ azenstondynge his
 help,¹ be he neuere so good a leche, þat þe syke ne muste die /

Fracture of
the skull is
very danger-
ous,

the following
accidents
(symptoms)
are frequently
mortal.

Evil symp-
toms:
yvel acci-
dentes

If the animal,
natural, and
vital func-
tions,

[⁵ 1f. 63]

Euel accidentis þe whiche þat [comyth to þe accidentes of þe
 12 brayn & of hys]* pannicle ben² alwey dwellynge as constipacioun
 of þe wombe, or ellis þe flix of þe wombe, or ellis crokidnes, or ellis
 lokinge asquynt of þe izen, or ellis wepyng of þe oon yze, or ellis
 an hard scotomie, or ellis febilnes of alle þe vertues & chaungynge.
 16 Not³ oonly animal vertues, þat ben vertues of þe brayn, ben³ I-
 chaungid, also naturel vertues & liui⁴ vertues—sensibles & ⁵motifes ;

¹ *help* in margin.

² One word "*sperving*" omitted, and *as* erroneously inserted in both
 MSS. Lat.: "*Mala autem accidentia . . sunt vomitus perseverans consti-
 patio ventris,*" etc.

³ MS. inserts *nouzt*.

⁴ *liui*, Lat. *vitales*.

laste signes beþ more serteyne þenne enye of þe opere. And vnder-
 stonde þat þe breyn panne may ofte tymes ben to-broke, & napeles
 20 þe brayn felyth nought in þe bygynninge none hurtyng. But
 afterwardys ofte tyme of hurtyng of þe brayn panne þe brayn ys
 y-hurt, Galien wytnessynge ; the brekyng of þe bonys of þe hed ys
 dyuers in perelys from brekyng of opere bonys of þe body, for þe
 24 accidentes whiche þat fallyth ofte tymes to þe breche of þe brayn
 panne. Ne þere nys no man, ne neuere ne was, þat myzte euyre
 more helpen to alle accidentes whenne þat þe brayn was meffye in
 þe bygynninge, þat nouzt ageynestondynge his helpe, be he neuere
 28 so gode a leche, þat þe syke ne moste deye. Euyre accidentes
 whiche þat *comyth to þe accidentes of þe brayn & of hys pannycle,
 ben alwey dwellynge : as constipacioun of þe wombe, opere ellys
 flux of þe wombe, opere ellys crokydnesse, opere ellys lokinge a-
 32 squynte of þe eyzen, opere ellys wepyng of þat on eyze, opere ellys
 an hard scotomye, opere ellys ffebylnesse of alle þe vertues &
 chaungynge. And nozt only anymal vertues, þat beþ vertewys of
 þe brayn, beþ nozt y-chaungyde, but also naturel vertewys, & lyf
 36 vertewys sensyble & motifes ; sensible, for þat þey seen nozt

Add. MS.
12,056.

the imagin-
ation,
reason,

memory,
and motor
power are
affected.

A strong
fever pre-
ceded by a
cold shiver-
ing,

blackness of
the tongue,
blains, etc.,
are bad
symptoms.

sensible, for þei ben¹ not riȝtfulliche; for boþe her heerynge & opere
comoun wittis ben troublid; also priuy vertues þat ben troublid as
ymaginatif, for þei bileuen þei seen, [þat þey seen nouȝt];* also
resonable vertues, for þei speken in deuyn² & answeren whanne þei 4
ben nouȝt I-askide / also³ memorial þat þei þenke nouȝt on her owne
name / also meuable vertues is so myche greued þat vnneþe þei moun
nouȝt meue hem nameliche aboute þe necke. þei syke greuouseleche,
& a scharp feuere falliþ, þe which arrigor, þat is to seie a cold schurg- 8
ynge⁴ goiþ tofore / Arrigor is no þing ellis, but as it were a prick-
ynge of nedelis, or ellis of netlis in þe fleisch, & if þis rigor come wiþ
a feuere, or ellis without feuere, it is þe worste signe tokene of deeth,
& if þe crampe folowe it is deedly / Also þese ben yuel accidentis: 12
blaknes of þe tunge, bleyenis aboute þe skyn or þe chekis, or in ony
partie of þe heed þanne [in]* þe wounde, is an yuel signe.⁵ & sum-
tyme blood comeþ out at þe eeris & noseprillis. & if þe more partie
of þese tokenese or ellis alle comen, þe sike man muste nedis die, 16
[If. 63, bk.] namely, & þe accidentis conteynen⁶; ⁷& specially if þe sike man
haue be her-tofore manye daies in good disposicioun, & after þilke

¹ *ben*, error for *seen*. Lat.: quia non recte vident.

² See page 102, note 2. ³ MS. *alle*. ⁴ *schurgynge*, schurien, to shower.

⁵ Lat.: vel in alia parte capitis quam in vulnere: quod est malum signum.

⁶ *conteynen* for *contynnen*.

Add. MS. 12,056. [fol. 73 b] al^sso priuie vertues ben y-trublyde as ymagenatyff, ffor þey
beleffe þat þey seen, *þat þey seen nouȝt; also resonable vertue, for 20
þey speken in deveyn, & þey answeren whanne þey beþ nouȝt
y-askide; also memoryal, þat þey þynke nouȝt on here owne name;
also meffable vertue ys so myche y-greuyde, þat vnneþe þey mowe
nouȝt mefen hem namlyche aboute þe nekke. þey syken greuouselye, 24
and a scharpe ffeuere fallyth, þe whiche a rigor goth tofore. A
rigoor nys nothyng ellys but as yt were a prikyng of nedlys opere
of nettlys in þe flesch, and ȝif þis rigor come with a ffeuyre opere
ellys with outen ffeuyre, yt is worst signe, and ȝif the crampe fol- 28
wen, yt ys dedlye. Also þese beþ yuele accidentes: blaknesse of þe
tonge, bleynesse⁹ aboute þe chyn opere þe chekenesse, opere in enye
opere partye of þe hed þenne in* þe wounde, ys an yuele signe, and
sum tyme blod comyth out at þe erys & noseprylles. And ȝif þe 32
more partye of þese toknys, opere ellys alle comen, þe syke man
moste nedys deyzen, namlye & þo Accidentes contynnewen, and
specially ȝif þat þe syke man haue y-be tofore manye daies in gode
disposicioun, & after þilke disposicioun þese yuele accidentes fallen; 36

**Sygnum
Mortal.**

⁹ *bleynesse*, leady colour. See *N. E. Dict.* s. v. *bley*; mistake for *bleynes*, blains.

- good disposicioun pilke yuel accidentis fallen ; but sumtyme in þe
 bigynnyng þese yuel accidentis fallen wickid, & aftirward bi good
 gouernaile & good help of þe leche pilke yuel accidentis ben
 4 departid & good comeþ, and þanne it is a [good]* signe, for it bi-
 tokeneth strenkþe of kynde, hauynge no drede of þe sjuknes, &
 kunnyng of þe leche / O holi goost, al þing fulfyllynge, alle þingis
 sanctifynge, & alle þingis liȝtnynge, & alle þingis gouernynge, opene
 8 þe yzen of hem þat loken & reden on þis book, þat þei moun vndir-
 stonde þat þing þat is weel seid, & þat þei moun demene¹ þoruȝ þi
 cleernes þat, þat is yuel seid, & specialy in þis caas² where þat
 oonly not I þat am vnwiȝs & vnkunnyng, but also greete maistris
 12 & more kunnyng han writen sotilliche, & han sett in þis caas
 dyuers vndirstondynge. Ne þei ne I ne foond no wey in þis werk
 þat myȝte us make sikir, specialiche in seryuynge of þe brayn
 panne, in þe whiche cure³ dyuers men haue³ I-wrouȝt dyuersliche. [† lf. 64]
 16 ⁴I wole bigynne at a symple wounde of þe fleisch of þe heed, in
 þe which þat þer is noon hurtyng of þe brayn ne brayn panne. //
 Biholde wheþir pilke wounde be maad wiȝ a swerd or ony þing
 sembla[b]le to it, & þanne sowe pilke wounde, & caste aboue þe

It is a good
sign when
evil symp-
toms grow
better.

May the
Holy Ghost
enlighten the
readers.

Nota
Treatment of
a symple
wounde.

¹ demene, O.Fr. "demener," for *demen*.

² in þis caas. Lat. : in isto passu. See below *pas*.

³ cure, *have*, above line.

- 20 ryȝtfullyche, for boþe herynge & opere comyn wyttes ben y-trublyde; Add. MS.
 but sumtyme in þe bygynninge euyle accidentes comyȝh, afterwarde, 12,056.
 by good gouernayle & by gode helpe of the leche, þese euyle
 accidentes ben departyde & good comyȝh, & þenne yt is a good*
 24 signe, for it betoknyȝh strengþe off kynde, hauynge non drede of þe
 syknesse & konyngnesse of þe leche. O holy gost, al thyng ful-
 fyllynge, al þinge sanctifynge, lytnynge & gouernynge, opyne þe
 eyzen of hem þat redyn in thys booke, þat þey mowen vndirstonde
 28 þat þynge þat is wel seyde, & þat þey mowe demen þorwe þy
 clernes þat þat⁵ ys euyle seyde, speyaliche in þis cas where þat only
 nouȝte y þat am vnwys & vnkunnyng, but also grettere maistryes
 & more kunnyng han y-writen dotousliche. & haȝ y-sett in þis cas
 32 ⁶dyuerse vnderstondynge. Ne þey ne y ne fonde non wey in þis [† fol. 74 a]⁷
 werke þat myȝte maken vs sykere, specialiche in grefynges of þe
 breyne panne, in whose cure dyuerse men han wrought dyuerslye;
 y wyȝh begynne at a symple wounde of þe flesch & of þe hed, in þe
 36 whiche þat þere ys non hurtyng of þe brayn ne of þe brayn panne.
 Byholde whar pilke wounde be maad wiȝ a swerde opere enye þynge
 semblable to hit, & þan sowen þylke wounde, & caste abofen þe

⁵ MS. *at*.

⁷ Heading of the page: *Cure of symple Wounde off þe hed*.

wounde þe poudre of iym tofore seid, & do al þing bi ordre, as it is conteyned aboue in þe chapitle of woundis of fleisch /

Treatment
of a contused
wound.

Apply
a maturatif,

& if þat a wounde be maad in þe heed wiþ brusynge, as wiþ a mace,¹ or wiþ a staf, or ony þing þat brusiþ, þanne it is nessessarie to 4
leie aboue þe brusynge a maturatif maad of .iiij. parties of watir, & oon partie of comoun oile & flour of wheete, þat suffisiþ to make it pikke,² til þat þe mater þat is brusid be maturid; þe which maturatif schal be do abroad vpon a linnen cloþ & leid to þe 8
wounde, & þou schalt fulfille þe wounde wiþ oile of rosis & zelke of an ey, & lynt of an oold linnen cloþ medlid togidere, til þat þe wounde ȝeue quytture & þe akþe be aswagid. & aftirward leye in þe wounde drie lynt of old cloþ, & fille þe wounde of þe same 12
lynet, & leie aboue þe mundificatif of mel roset & barly mele, ³til þat it be perfiztly clensid; & leie aboute þe wounde, from þe bigynnyng til þat þe wounde be parfiztly clensid, a defensif of bole armonyak, þe which I haue told ofte tyme; aftirward incarne 16
it, þat is to seie brynge ouer fleisch, & aftirward consowde.

[3 lf. 64, bk.]
a mundifi-
catif,
and
a defensif.

Cure of a
wound which
touches the
membrane.

& if þat þis wounde towche þe pannicle þat byndiþ boonys togidere, þouȝ þat þe boon be not to-broken, charge it not litil, but

¹ mace, Lat. macia.

² MS. pilke.

Add. MS. 12,056. poudre of lym tofore seyde, and do alle þynge be ordre as yt is 20
conteynede aboue in þe chapiteH off wounde of þe flesch; and ȝif þat a wounde be maad in þe hed with a brusynge, as with a mace

Maturatif
for brosure

to leggen aboue þe brusynge a maturatyf, y-mad of foure partyes of 24
water, & on partye of comyn oyle & floure of whete, þat suffiseþ to maken yt pikke, tyl þat þe matere þat is brusyde be matured; þe whiche maturatyff schal be do abroad on a cloþ & y-leyde to þe wonde, & þou schalt fulfille þe wounde with oyle of roses & þe ȝolke 28
of an neyȝe,⁴ & lenet of an olde lynne clout y-medlyde to gedre, tyl þat þe wounde ȝif quytter & þe akþe be aswagede. & afterwarde leye in þe wounde dreye lynt of lynne cloth, & fille þe wounde full of þe same lynt, & leye aboue þe mundificatyff of mel rosat & 32
barlye mele, tyl þat he be perfittlye clansyde, & leye aboute þe wounde fro þe begynnyng, tyl þat þe wonde be perfittlye clansyde, a defensyf of bol armonyak, þe whiche y haue tolde of ofte tymes; afterwarde incarne hit—þat is to sigge, brynge ouere flesch, & after- 36
warde consoude yt; and ȝif þat þis wounde touchith þe pannyele þat bynde þe bonys togedre, þowȝ þat þe bon be nouȝt to-broken,

⁴ neyȝe at the beginning of a line.

take þerof good hede, & do þerynne in þe wounde hoot oile of
rosis down to þe pannicle þat byndiþ boonys togidere, til þat þer be
noon akyng in þe wounde. & kepe þilke wounde as þou woldist
4 kepe opere woundis of þe brayn panne; & kepe þe brayn fro cold
& fro heete, for cold is moost greuous to boonys & to panniclis þat
ben woundid. þer ben summe maner men þat leien wiþout forþ
on alle maner woundis of þe heed, wheþer it be wiþ wounde of þe
8 brayn panne or wiþoute þe wounde of þe brayn panne, in what
maner þat þe heed be hurt, a lynnen cloof wet in þe oynement þat
is maad on þis maner / Take white rosis libram ß, oile of rosis 3 v,
whizt wex 3 iij, þei melten alle togidere in an yren panne, & þei
12 maken 2 þerof .j. bodi, & boile it aftirward in good wyn bi þe space
of an hour; & þei leten it aftirward ny3 colden, & þei weten þer-
inne a pece of a lynnen clout, & þei schapen þilke pece wiþ a schere
aftir þat þe wounde is, & þanne þei baþe þilke pece in good wiyn, &
16 þanne leie þilke pece [on þe wounde]*, & anoon aftir þei leien vpon
þilke pece on eipir side of þe wounde a plumaciol I-wet in good
hoot wiyn; & þei leien on a drie pelowe of herdis vpon þo two
wete pelowis, þe which drie pelewe of herdis schal comprehende þe
20 tweie wete, & bynde hem faste; & þei 3euen to summen to drynke

Apply
olium ro.
hoot.

Nota

Some phy-
sicians use
a general
treatment for
wounds on
the head.

Entreet.¹

They apply
Compresses
with an
ointment,

[2 lf. 65]

¹ Entreet. See entreten ne. entreat, Mätzner, *Dict.*

charge yt nozt litel but take þere of gode hede, & do in þe wounde
hot oyle of roses don to þe pannycle, tyl þat þere be non akþe in þe
wounde. & kepe þilke wounde, as þou woldiste kepen opere wondys
24 of þe brayn panne & of þe brayn, fro colde & from hete; ffor colde
ys most greuest to bonys & to pannycles þat beþ woundyde. 3 þere
ben some manere of men þat leggen withouten forth on alle manere
wondys of þe hed, wheþere it be wiþ wounde of þe brayn panne
28 opere without wounde of þe brayn panne, in what manere þat þe
hed ben y-hurt, a lynnen cloth y-wett in þe oynement y-made in þis
manere: R whit resine lb. ß., oyle of roses 3 v., whyt wex 3 iij,
þey melten aH togedres in an erthyne panne, & þey maken þere of
32 on body, & þey boyllen yt afterward in gode wyn by þe space of an
Oure; & þey leten afterwarde ny3 colden, & þey weten þere yrne a
pece of lynnen cloth, & þey schapen þilke pece with a schere aftere
þe wounde ys, & þey baþen þylke pece in gode wyn, & þey leggen
36 þilke pece on þe wounde,* and anon afterwarde þey leggen on þilke
pece on eipere syde of þe wounde a plumacyole, y-wet in good hote
wyn, & þey leggen on a drye pylwe of herdes vpon þo tweie wete
pylwes, þe whiche dreie pylwe schall comprehende þe tweie wete
40 & bynden hem faste; and þey 3euen some men to drynken gode

Add. MS.
12,056.

[3 fol. 74 b]

Cura
Ancellina

and diet with
wine and
fowls.

I never dared
to try this
treatment.

[² lf. 65, bk.]

Nota bene.

Wine is
especially
dangerous.

Treatment if
the skull is
broken:

riȝt¹ good wyn, & to ete good fleisch of¹ hennes & of¹ capouns; &¹
þei comaunden to drynke a drope of¹ water; & þei gouernen on þis
maner alle men þat¹ ben woundid in þe heed differentliche, & þei
seyen þat¹ mo men ben heelid bi þis maner cure þan dien. But bi as 4
myche as alle auctouris ben azens þis cure, namely in dietynge, I ne
was neuere hardi to preue þis maner cure; for in mannys bodi a
medicyn schal not be preued which þat¹ is not acordynge to resoun /
For alle autouris acorden þat¹ þer is no þing¹ ²þat¹ so soone greueþ þe 8
brayn & þe senewis as wiyn doiþ, & vsynge of¹ fleisch is cause of¹
bryngynge yn an hoot¹ enpostyme. Neuere-þe-latter if¹ a man þat¹
vsip¹ of¹ custum sich a maner dietynge haue a strong¹ heed, in his
hele him dredip no wiyn, & þe vertu of¹ him þat¹ is sijk be strong¹— 12
in sum manere of¹ folk wiþ þis maner gouernaile, vertu is more
strenkþid, & þe sunner þei ben heelid. But I ne procede not¹ wiþ
sich a maner dietynge bi cause of¹ drede lest¹ an hoot¹ enpostyme
schulde come to þe sore, but I procede in dietynge & worche aboute 16
þe wounde as I haue seid tofore.

Opere men loke [in brekynges of þe brayn panne, wheþer þat]^{*}
þe brekynge of¹ þe brayn panne be with a greet¹ wounde, or smal

¹ Lat.: & præcipiunt quod unam guttam aquæ non bibat.

Add. MS.
12,056.

[⁴ fol. 75 a]

wyn, & to eten gode flessch of capouns & of hennys; & þey 20
comaunden to drynken a drope watere; and þey gouernen on þis
manere alle men þat ben woundyde in þe hed differentlyche, & þey
sigge þat mo³ men ben y-helyde by þis manere cure þen dyzen.
But by as myche as alle auttours beþ azeyns þis cure, namlyche in 24
dyetynge, y ne was neuere hardye to preuen þis manere of cure;
ffor in mannys bodye a medecine schal nouȝt ben preuyde, whiche
þat is noȝt acordynge to resoun; ffor alle auctores acorden, þat þere
ys nobynge þat so sone greuyth þe brayn & þe synwes as wyn doiþ, 28
and vsynge of flesch ys cause of bryngynge in an hot Emposteme.
Neuere þe latere ȝif a man þat vsith of custome swyche a manere
dyetynge haffe a stronge hed, & in hys hele he dredyth non wyn,
& þe vertue of hym þat ys seek ⁴be stronge, in some manere of folk 32
with þis manere of gouernaylle vertue ys more y-streynþed, & sunnere
þey ben y-helyde. But y ne procede nouȝt wiþ swyche a manere
dyetynge, by cause of drede leste an hote empostome scholde come
to þe sore; but y procede in dyetynge & worche aboute þe wounde, 36
as y haue seyde tofore. Opere men loken^{*} in brekynges of þe
brayn panne, wheþer þat þe brekynge of þe breyne panne be with a
gret wounde opere a smal wounde, opere without wounde; and ȝif

³ MS. no.

- wounde, or withoute wounde. & if þat þer be a greet wounde, þei loken wheþer þei moun se if ony pece of þe brayn panne be to-broken, & þei don it away. & aftirward þei putten bitwene þe
 4 brayn panne & duram matrem a þinne clout wet in þe white of an ey, & sumwhat þe white compressid out, & þei fulfillen al þe wounde of þe brayn panne with sich a maner cloop. & þei leyn in þe ouer wounde which þat is in þe fleisch, lynet wet in þe white of an ey,
 8 til þat þe blood be staunchid; ¹ & þei leien aboue a plumaciol wet in an ey. & whanne þe blood is staunchid, þei leien a dreie cloop vndir þe brayn panne in þe wounde, & þei leien aboue þe wounde a potage, þe which engendriþ quytture; & whanne þat þe quytture is
 12 engendrid, þei leien in þe wounde carp,² eiþir lynet of a cloute; & þei anoynte aboute þe wounde wiþ vnguento fusco; & at þe laste eende þei leien aboue apostolicon.³
- & þei asaie in pis maner if þat þe brekyng of þe brayn panne be wiþ a rimel,⁴ þat is to seie a chene, eiþir a creueis; & if þat ilke creueis peerse to wiþinne, makyng þe sike man to streyne his

Broken pieces are removed,

wet compresses applied to stanch the blood;

then dry compresses, a poultice,

and an ointment.

Treatment of a fissure of the skull:

² *carp*, Lat. *carpia*, 'charpie.' *oile* struck through after *carp*.³ *Apostolorum Unguentum*, a cleansing Ointment, so call'd, because it is made of twelve Drugs, according to the number of the Apostles.—Kersey. 1706.⁴ *rimel*, Lat.: *si fractura esset rimalis*. O.Fr. *rimule*, Lat. *rimula*, a small chink.

- þat þere ben a gret wounde þey loken wheþere þey mowe seen zif enye pece of þe brayn panne ben to-broken, & þey don yt away.
 20 And afterwarde þey putten bytwene þe brayn panne & duram matrem a þenne clout y-wett in þe whyte of an eyze, & sumwhat þe whyte compressyde out, & þey fulfyllen alle þe wounde of þe brayn panne with swiche a manere cloth. & þey leggen in þe ofere
 24 wounde whiche þat ys in þe flesch, lenyt y-wett in þe whyte of an eyze, tyl þat þe blode be staunchyde; & þey leggen aboue a plumacyole y-wet in an eyze. And whanne þat þe blode ys y-staunchyde, þey leggen a dreie cloth vndire þe brayn panne in þe
 28 wounde, and þey leggen aboue þe wounde a potage, the whiche engendryth quytere; & whenne þat þe quyter ys engendryde, þey leggen in þe wounde carp opere lyneth of a clout; and þey anoynt⁵ aboute þe wounde with oygnelement fusco; and at þe laste ende þey
 32 leggen aboue Apostolicon. And þey assayen in pis manere: zif þat þe brekyng of þe brayn panne be with a rimele, þat ys to seye a chyne, opere a creueys; & zif þat þilke creueys perse to wiþinne, makyng þe syke man to streynen hys mouþ & hys nese, & þey

Add. MS. 12,056.

⁵ At the end of the line.

Some physicians open the fissure from end to end,

which is entirely wrong.
[5 lf. 66, bk.]

Better open only one end of the fissure, make several holes in the skull,

and remove a piece of the bone.

mouþ & his nose, & þei maken him þanne to blowen, & þei loken¹ if ony þing² exale out bi þilke rimele,²— as blod or ony other mater, þei drede not to perse þilke rimelle. & þanne summe seien þat þilke rimele schulde be to-broke eipir peersid from þe toon eende to 4 þe toþir wiþ rinspindel³, perischinge þe brayn scolle / A rinspindil is an instrument⁴ þat coteleris poudren⁴ with her haftis, þe which figure schal be schapen in þis same chapitle folowyng. & þe worste þing⁵ þat a man may do is to peerse þe rimele on boþe sidis / 8 But opere⁵ men don bettere which þat peerse þe rimele on þe oon eende which is moost hangyng; & þei maken as manye hoolis, oon biside anoper, as it is nessessarie to make an hole in þe brayn panne, bi þe which hole if ony þing⁶ be fallen vpon, duram matrem⁶ 12 myzte be clensid; & þese, in as myche as touchinge trepanacioun⁶ worchþ best / & whanne þat þei han maad manye hoolis, þei kutten from oon hole to anoper hole wiþ an instrument, þat þei moun drawe out þe boon þat is bitwene þe ordure of holis þat was 16 maad & þe rimele, & þei casten him away, & aftirward þei proceden

¹ þanne struck through after loken.

² as blod or ony oper mater. þei drede not to perse þilke rimelle, this is as a note at the bottom of the page.

³ rinspindil, see mod. Germ. Rennspindel, f., upright drill, pump drill. Trépan.—Rumpf, *Technolog. Dict.*

⁴ poudren for boren, under the influence of 'pore.' Lat. porus.





⁶ Lat.: quantum est ad trypanacionem.

Add. MS. maken hym þenne to blowen, & þey loken 3if enye þynge exale out 12,056. by þilke rymele. * & 3if þat enye þynge exale out by þylke rymele, as blod ore enye opere matere, þey drede nozt to perce þilke rymele; 20 and þenne some sigge þat þilke rymele scholde be to-broke opere y-perced. from þat one ende to þat opere with Rynspyndles, persyng 24 þe braynscolle. 7 A rynspyndeH ys an Instrument þat Cutlers poudren wiþ here hefttes, whose ffigure schal be schappyde⁸ in þe same chapitle ffolowyng. And þe worste þynge þat a man may do, 28 ys to perce þe rymele on boþe sydes. But opere men don bettyre whiche þat persen þe rymele at þat one ende, whyche is moste hongyng; and þey maken as many holys on bysyde an opere, as 28 beþ necessarye to maken an hole in þe brayn panne, be þe whiche hole 3if enye þynge beþ⁹ fallen vpon þe duram matrem myzte ben y-clansyde; & þese in as myche as towchyng trepanacioun worchith best. And whenne þat þey haue made manye holys, þey kutten 32 from on hole to an opere with an spatymyne,¹⁰ þat ys an Instrument, þat þey mowe drawyne out þe bon, þat ys betwene þe ordre of holys þat was y-made & þe rymele, & þey casten hym aweye, afterwarde


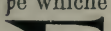
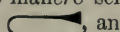
⁸ MS. scharpyde. *rp* for *pp*, like *lk* for *kk*. See p. 120.

⁹ þ above line.

¹⁰ Lat.: cum spatumine.

- forþ in opere maner þingis as it is seid tofore / For whanne þou
 desirist way of¹ trepaninge [þis manere trepanynge]* sufficiþ to
 þee in þe rimelis of þe brayn panne. þis schal be þe foorme of a  A description
 of the instru-
 ments used:
 the trepan,
 the spatina
 (spatula).
- 4 trepane [with þe whiche þe brayn scolle schal be trepaned wip]*
 & þis is þe foorme of a spatanam, wip þe which a man
 schal kutte from oon hole to anoþer hole  & þou schalt
 smyte wip a mal² eiþer an hamer on þe greet eende; & whanne þou
 8 hast remeued of þe boon þat schal be remoued, euene þe brynkis
 with schauynge, þat þou mowe not leue no maner scharpnes in þe
 brynkis. þis is þe maner of þe schap , ³& þis schauē schal [³ ff. 67]
 kutte on þe side þat foldiþ ynward, & it schal be blunt on þe oon
 12 side þat is outward. & þei fulfillen þe wounde þat is wiþinne þe
 fleisch wiþoutforþ, as I haue seid, with þe cloþ expressid of þe
 white of an ey & lynet, til þat þe wounde be ful, & also til þat
 þe kynde haue regendrid a repeirement, þe which schal fulfille
 þe place þere as þe boon was don away. Aftirward þei curen
 þe wounde aftir comoun cure of woundis / Alle opere maner of
 trepanacioun is comprehendid vndir o summe, þouȝ þat summen
 ordeyne particuler aftir her dyuyse, diuers maners.
- 20 But bi as myche as I haue not seen in þis caas no way þat

¹ þe struck through after of.² mal, Lat. malleus.

- þey proceden forth in opere manere thynges, as yt is seyde tofore. Add. MS.
 And whenne þat þou desiriste þe wey of trepanynge, *þis manere
 trepanynge sufficiþ to þe in þe rimeles of þe brayn panne. þis schal
 24 ben þe forme of a trepane, *with þe whiche þe brayn scolle schal be
 trepaned wip  And þis is þe forme off a spatimene, with
 þe whiche a man schal kutte with from on hole to an opere hole
 And þou schalt smyten with a Mal opere an hamere
 28 vpon þe gret ende; and whenne þou haste remefed of þe bon þat
 schal be remeffyde, euene þe brynkes wip schauynge, þat þere mowe
 noȝt lefe non manere scharpnesse in þe brynkes. þis ys þe manere
 of þy schafe , and þis schafe schal kutten on þe syde þat
 32 feldyȝth inwarde, & schal be blunt on þe syde þat ys outwarde.
 And þenne fulfyllen þe wounde þat is in þe flesh, wiþoutforþ as y
 haue seyde tofore, with cloþ expressyde of þe whyte of an eyȝe, &
 lynet to þat þe wounde be ful, and also tyl þat þe kynde haue
 36 regeneryd a repeyrement, þe whiche schal fulfille þe place where
 þat þe bon was don away. ⁴Aftirwarde þey cure þe wounde aftere
 comyn cure of wondys. Alle opere manere of trepanacioun ys
 comprehendyde vndire on Somme, þowȝ þat sum men ordeynen
 40 partyklerliche aftere here devyse, dyuerse maners. But be as
 myche as y haue noȝt seyne in þis place no wey þat myȝte remefe

[⁴ fol. 76 a]

Trepanning
is dangerous.

Galien

and

Auicen

used medi-
cines instead
of operating.

[³ If. 67, bk.]

Nota.

I operate if
the broken
piece

.1.
gets under
the healthy
bone,

.2.
or hurts the
dura mater,

causing a
tumour,

then cramp,

myzte remeue me from doute, bi as myche as I haue saied bi longe
tyme, boþe bi summe auctouris experimentis, & also bi myn experi-
ment, & þat wei is not certeyn / þerfore here þei Galien, þat seip :
if we mowe remeue quytture wipoute doynge awei of boonys þat
schulde be do away, it is good / And auicen & serapie¹ acorden to
þe same sentence of cure of heed akþe þat comeþ of smytynge or
ellis of fallynge, where þat he towchip² þe worchinge of hurtis of
þe brayn³ panne, not bi trepanacioun, but bi emplastris & medicyns / 8
& also I took good hede þat manye mo men ben heelid bi maner
of medicyns & emplastris, þan ben heelid bi trapanes, þat ben
peersynge or þrillynge / For I ne vse not instrumentis to remeue
the boon but in two causis / þe oon cause is if þat þe brayn panne 12
be so myche I-slend⁴ þat þe part þat is broke, entre vndir þe partie
þat is hool / þe secunde caas is, if ony pece be departid from þe
brayn panne, þe which þat prickþ duram matrem / In þe firste
caas dura mater is compressid. In þe secunde caas dura mater is 16
prickid, which is cause of akþe, & akyng is cause of drawynge
humouris, þere engendriþ an empostyme vpon þe same pannicle, þe
which is cause of a crampe, & of opere accidentis tofore seid ; &

¹ Serapie, probably Ser. the Elder, an Arab physician, cc. 900.

² towchip for techip.

⁴ islend, Add. MS.ysclend. See slent, to tear, to rend (Dorset).—Halliwell.

Add. MS.
12,056.

me fro doute, by as myche as y haue assayed longe tyme boþe by 20
sum auctores experyment, & also by myn experyment, & þat wey
is nozt certeyn, þerfore here þey Galien, whiche þat seith : zif we
mowe remywe quyter without doynge away bonys þat scholde be
do away, hyt is good. And Ausene & Serapio acorden to þe same 24
sentense of cure of hed-akþe, þat comyth off smytinge opere ellys of
fallynge, where þat he techith þe worchyng of hurtynges of þe
brayn panne & of þe brayn, nozt by trepanacioun, but by emplastres
& by medycines. And also y toke gode hede þat manye mo men 28
ben y-helyde by manere medycines & emplastres, þenne ben y-helyde
by trepanes þat beþ persynge opere þrillynge. Ffor y ne vse nozt
Instrumentes to remywe þe bon, but in tweye cases—þat on cas ys
zif þat þe breyn panne be so myche y-scleud, þat þe part þat ys 32
y-broke entre vndire þe partye þat ys hol, þe secunde cas ys zif þat
enye pece be departyde from þe brayn panne, whyche þat pryketþ
duram matrem. In þe firste cas dura mater ys compressede. In þe
secunde cas dura mater ys y-prikyde, þe whiche ys cause of akþe, 36
& akyng ys cause of drawynge of humoures, the whiche engendriþ
a posteme vpon þe same pannycle, the whiche is cause of a⁵ crampe,
& of opere accidentes tofore seyde, & at þe laste þey bryngen dep

⁵ a, above line.

at þe laste þei bryngen deef to þe pacient / In þese .ij. causis finally death.
 I leue hem¹ constreyned to remeue a boon wip handely² instru-
 mentis. In alle opere maners of brechis eiper in creueis, in what In all other
 4 maner þat þei happen, þouȝ þat I be not siker of þe pacientis lijf, medicine,
 neþeles I procede in þis maner with more trist, bisekyng alwey
 help of god, þe which þat³ hap heelid mo men bi myn hondis, þat³ [3 lf. 68]
 am his instrument, þan haue ben deed, nouȝt azenstondyng alle and by God's
 8 my cautels & helpinge. For soþe þat I haue biholde sopliche resonis help I have
 & þe proces of opere auctouris, I holde þis wey lasse dredeful þan generally
 any opere / for I folowe þe sentence of Galien, which þat seiþ: been suc-
 if þat a man haue but o wei to his hele,⁴ it is good þat he holde cessful.
 12 þilke wey, þouȝ þat it be yuel. Galien

& whanne þat I come to a man þat is woundid in þe heed, & I Treatment of
 knowe þat þe brayn panne be broke, bi tokenes tofore seid, first I fractures of
 considere þe vertu of him þat is pacient, & also his age & alle the skull,
 16 opere partuler þing, & nameli vertu, & gladliche I leue þe cure, without
 if þat I se any deedly tokenes, but if it so be þat I be preied wip trepanning:
 þe grettere instaunce of þe freendis of þe sike man. & not azen-
 stondyng her preier I telle hise freendis þat bi wey of resoun þe

¹ hem for am; leue is erroneously added in margin.² handely ne. handy.⁴ MS. ixelc.

20 to þe pacient. In þese tweye causes y am constreynde to remefe a Add. MS.
 bon with handly Instrumentes. In alle opere manere of breches 12,056.
 opere of crefeys, in what manere þat þey happen, þowȝ þat y be
 nouȝt sykere of þe paciente, naþeles y procede in þis manere with
 24 more trest, by sechyng alweye help of god, þe whyche þat hap
 y-helyde mo m⁵en be myn handys, þat am hys Instrument, þenne
 han be ded, nouȝt azeynstondyng al my cauteles & ⁶helpyng. [6 fol. 76 b]
 Ffor sytthe þat y haf beholde sotelyche þe resouns & þe processes
 28 of opere auctourys, y holde þis wey lesse dredful þenne enye opere.
 Ffor y folwe þe sentence of galien, which þat seiþ: ȝif þat a man
 hath but o wey to hys hele, hyt ys gode þat he holde þilke weye,
 þowȝ þat þilke wey be eueH. And whenne þat y come to a Man
 32 þat is woundyde in the hed, & knowe þat hys breyn panne ys
 to-broke, by þe tokenys tofore seyde, ffirste y considere þe vertu of
 hym þat ys pacient, & also hys age & alle oper⁷ partyclere thyng,
 & namly vertue. And gladliche y leue þe cure, ȝif þat y se enye
 36 dedly signes; but ȝif þat so be þat y be preyde wip the grettere
 Instaunce of þe frendes of þe seke man. And nouȝt azeynstondyng
 here preyere, y telle hys frendys þat by resoun þe pacient scholde

⁵ MS. m, en cut away.⁷ oper, above line.

If there are
no mortal
symptoms
and if the
wound is
large,
[1 ff. 68, bk.]

I shave the
head and
apply
Olium
Rosarum,

a defensif
ointment,

compresses,
and band-
ages.

pacient^t schulde die, & þanne I worche aboute him as in a man in
whom yuele accidentis appere. & if þat þe signys ben not^t
deedliche, & þe breche of þe brayn panne be with a greet wounde
of þe heed, & þat a greet partie of þe brayn panne be do away al 4
togidere, so þat I mowe ¹haue a good wey to leie medicyns vpon
duram matrem / First I do schaue his heed, afterward I leie on an
eeld lynnyn clout & a þenne,² wett^t in .ij. parties of oile of rosis
swete smellynge, & oon partie of mel roset colat, bitwene þe *duram* 8
matrem & þe brayn panne slyzly & softli, þat *dura mater* be not^t
compressid wip þe cloof þat is wet tofore seid; & I fulfille þe
wounde of þe fleisch wip lint of oold lynnyn cloof wett^t in þe zelke
of an ey, & oile of rosis, boþe liche myche; & anoynte aboute þe 12
wounde wip a defensif of hole armoniak ofte tymes I-seid, & leie
aboute þe wounde a plumaciol, þe which þat schal keuere al þe
wounde; & þanne aboute al-togidere I leie a greet plumaciol, wett^t
in good hoot wiyn. & aftirward I bynde þe wounde wip a boond, 16
byndynge ofte tymes aboute þe heed wip þe lynet & þe cloof, þe
which þat is in þe wounde & aboute þe wounde myzte not^t slide to
no partie, & bynde þe wounde in þat maner þat *dura mater* bi no

² MS. *þanne*. error for *a þenne*. Lat.: *pannum lineum vetustum et subtile*. See below.

Add. MS. 12,056. deyze, & þenne y wirche aboute hym, as y worche in a Man in 20
whom yuel accidentes apere. And zif þat þe signes be nought
dedlyche, & þe breche of þe breyn panne be with a gret wounde of
þe hed, & þat a grete partye of þe breyn panne be don awaye alle
togedre, so þat y mowe han a gode wey to legge medycynes vpon 24
duram matrem. ffirste y do schaffe hys hed, afterwarde y legge an
olde lynnyn clout & a þenne, y-wett in two parties of oyle of rosys
swote smellynge, & on partye of mel rosat colat bytwene þe *duram*
matrem and þe brayn panne, slyzlye & softlye, þat *dura mater* be 28
nozt compressyde with þe cloth þat ys y-wett tofore seyde, & y
fulfille þe wounde of þe fflesch with lynt of olde lynnyn clof wet in
þe 3olke of an eyze & oyle of roses, of boþe y-lyche myche; & y
anoynte aboute þe wounde with deffensyfe of hol armonyak ofte 32
tymes seyde, & y legge abouen þe wounde a plumacyole whiche þat
schal keuere alle þe wounde, and þenne ³abouen alle togedre y
legge a grete plumacyole in-wet in gode hot wyn. And afterwarde
y bynde þe wounde with a bande, in byndynge ofte tymes aboute þe 36
hed, þat þe lynet & þe clof whyche þat is in þe wounde & aboute
þe wounde myzte nozt slyde to non partye, and y bynde þe wounde
in þat manere þat *dura mater* be no weye be compressyde. þe

[3 fol. 77 a]

- wey be compressid. þe heeris of þe heed schulen be remeued away on þis maner: clippe hem first^t with scheris, afterward take .ij. parties of^t water cold, & oon partie of^t oile ¹of^t rosis in somer, & make hoot^t þe same water & oile in wyntir, & waische þe heed softliche, takynge hede þat^t no water ne oile entre into þe wounde, & þanne schauē it^t wip a rasour / & whanne þat^t I haue serued þe pacient on þis maner, I lete him reste til on þe morowe, & aftirward I serue þe wounde on þe same maner til þat^t þe wounde be hool / Neþeles I considere if^t þat^t þe pacient^t be ful of^t blood, & his vertu be strong, & if^t he be 3ong^t, & litil blood bled at^t his wounde, & whanne alle þese þingis acorden, I make him to be leten blood on þe coral² veyne of^t þe arme / & but^t if^t he mowe go to priuy, I helpe him onys aday, or wip suppositories or wip clisterie; & I procede in dietynge, as I haue seid in þe chapitle of^t dietynge / & whanne þat^t þe wounde makip sufficiently quytture, I leie in þe wounde of^t þe brayn panne, & vpon þe brayn panne, as I haue don tofore; & aboue þe wounde I leie a mundificatif^t of^t mel roset^t, colat^t, & barly mele, til þat^t þe wounde be clensid, & þat^t þe dura mater be sowdid with þe brayn panne / & þanne I caste in þe wounde of^t þe heed a poudre maad on þis maner / Take frank encense & ciperi, þat is þe

How to shave the head.

[1. 69]

If the patient is strong,

I bleed

and purge.

If pus is discharged

I use a mundificatif

and puluis capitalis.

² coral veyne, vena cephalica.

- herys of þe hed schul be remywede away on þis manere: clippe hem firste with scherys, afterwarde take two partyes of colde water & on partye of oyle of roses in somere, & make hot þe same watyr & þe oyle in wyntere & wassche þe hed softliche, takynge hede þat non watere ne oyle entre into þe wounde, & þenne schaffe yt with a rasoure. & whenne þat y haue seruyde þe pacient on þis manere, y lete hym resten tyl on þe morwe; and afterwarde y serfe þe wounde on þe same manere tyl þat þe wounde be hol. Napeles y consydere 3if þat þe pacient be replet of blod, & hys vertue be stronge; & 3if þat he be 3onge, & lytel blod haue nouzt go out of hys wounde, & whanne alle þese þynges acorde, y make hym to by leten blod on þe coral veyne of þe arme; & but 3if he mowe schiten, y helpe hym onys a day, opere wip suppositorye opere wip clisterye; and y procede in dyetynge as y haue seyde in þe chapyteH of dyetynge. And whenne makyth sufesentlyche quyter, y legge in þe wounde of þe brayn panne & vpon þe brayn panne as y haue don toforn, & aboue þe wounde y legge a mundayficatyff^t of mel rosat colat & barlye mele, tyl þat þe wounde ben y-clansyde, & þat þe dura mater be y-soudyde wip þe breyn panne; & þenne y caste in þe wounde of þe hed, poudre y-mad on þis manere: R frank Ensence, ciperi, þe

Add. MS. 12,056.

[¹ lf. 69, bk.]² note of a cipres, ¹seed of mirtilles, mirre, ana. orobi, $\frac{3}{4}$ j; make poudre, & leie þis poudre in þe wounde, & aboue þe poudre leie þedis of lynnē cloþ, or ellis lynet; & aboue al-togidere leie an entreet³ maad of .ij. parties of whizt⁴ rosyn,³ & oon partie of wex 4 moltun togidere vpon stronge vynegre, & colid þoru; a þinne streynour vpon cold water / & whanne þin hondis ben anoyntid wiþ oile of rosis, malaxe⁴ it longe tyme togidere. In somer take euene porcioun of whizt⁴ rosyn & of wex; in wyntir / take .iiij. 8 partis of rosyn,* & þe .v. part of wex, & drawe abroad þat treet⁵ on a cloþ, & leie it on þe wounde til þat he be perfiztliche cicatrisid. & if þat þer were ony partie of þe boon þat prickide duram matrem, þanne I aforce me to remeue þilke partie þat 12 prickip wiþ pynsouns,⁶ if þat I may; & if þilke partie þat prickip be ioyned so faste to þe hool boon þat he wolde not be remeued away, þanne I remeue him away wiþ rugement⁷ from þe partie þat halt,⁸ in makynge oon hole or two, or mo, aftir þe quantite of þe 16

Lay over all an
Entreet
(Plaster)
made from
wax and oil
of roses.

I remove a
bone which
pricks the
membrane,
with pincers.

² At the foot of lf. 69 is this note: R *radicis erios, aristologe, thuris, mer, aloes, sanguis draconis, orobus ana, ffac puluis.*

³ whight rosyn, hardened Terpentine.

⁴ malaxe, Lat. malaxo, mollify.

⁵ treet = entreet. See p. 123, note 1.

⁶ wiþ pynsouns, cum piccario. See Pynsone, Tenella. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 400.

⁷ wiþ rugement. Lat. : cum rugine ruginando, Fr. rugine, ruginer.

⁸ Both MSS. omit to translate the Lat. *si non possum.*

Add. MS. 12,056. note of cypresse, sede of mirtylles, mirre ana. $\frac{3}{4}$ i., orehy. $\frac{3}{4}$ j., mak poudre & leye þis poudre in þe wounde, & aboue þe poudre leye þe þedis of lynne cloþ ofere ellys lynet; and aboffe al togedire y-legge an entrete⁹ y-made of two parties of whyte resyn & on party 20 of wex y-molten togedre, & vpon stronge Vynegre, & y-colyd þorwe a þenne streynoure vpon¹⁰ colde water; & whenne þat þyne hondys ben anoyntede with oyle of roses, & malaxe yt longe tyme togedyre. In somere take euene porcioun of whyt resyn & of wex; in wyntere 24 take foure parties of —* & þe fifte partye of wex, & y-drawe abroad þilke tret on a cloþ & legge yt on þe wounde, tyl þat he be perfittliche cycatrysede. And 3if þat þere were anye —* of a bon. whiche þat prekyde duram matrem, þenne y aforce me to remeffe 28 þilke partye þat prykeþ with pynsones 3if y may. And 3if þilke partye þat prikeþ ys y-ioynede so faste to þe hol bon þat he nyl nouzt be remeffyd away, þenne y remeffe hym awaye wiþ rugenyng. from þe partye þat halt, in makynge an hole, ofere two, ofere mo, 32 after þe quantyte of þe bon þat scholde be don away,* þat halt with þe hole bon; & afterwarde y kutte with a spatymene from on hole

¹⁰ MS. *o pound.*

- boon þat schulde be don awey [þat halt with þe holt bon & after-
warde y kutte with a spatymene from on hole to anoþere tyl al
þe bon be remeffyde aweye.]* / & whanne þat þe boon is remeued
4 awei, I procede in þe cure as it is ¹seid in þis chapitle / But [1 lf. 70]
whanne I remeue a boon wiþ instrumentis of þe brayn panne,
þanne I stoppe þe sijk mannes eeris, þat he mowe not heere þe I stop the
soun of þe yren þat trepaniþ. & I remeue þe same maner þe partie patient's ears
8 þat is broke, þe which þat goiþ vndir þe partie þat is hool, & com- during the
pressiþ þe dura mater. & if þat a gobet eipir a pece of a boon operation.
holde sumwhat in þe wounde, & myzte not lyztliche be remeued
away, & he prickiþ not dura mater ne compressiþ not dura mater,
12 þanne at þe bigynnyng I do on þe boon hoot oile of rosis, & I
fulfille þe wounde wiþ oile of rosis & þe zelke of an ey medlid **Nota**
togidere, til þat þe boon be neischid & may lyztliche be remoued I soften the
away; þanne I remeue þe boon softliche, & I procede in þe bone before
16 worchinge bitwene þe boon & duram matrem, as it is seid tofore removing it.
- & if þat þe breche of þe brayn panne were as a creueis or ellis
I-slend, & neiþer part of þe boon were lower þan oþer, þanne I
considere if þat ilke slendynge² perce al þe brayn panne; & þat
20 þou schalt knowe bi þe tokenes tofore seid, or ellis þou schalt
knowe bi þis signe, þat neuere failiþ / Make ³a plastre of poudre of [3 lf. 70, bk.]
- ² slendynge, see p. 128, note 4.

- to anoþere tyl al þe bon be remeffyde aweye.* And whenne þe bon Add. MS.
ys remeffyde awey, y procede in þe cure, as yt is seyde in þis same 12,056.
24 chapyteH. But whanne þat y remeffe a bon with Instrumentes of
þe brayn panne, þenne y stoppe þe syke mannys eres, þat he mowe
nozt here þe soun of þe eyren þat trepanyth. And y remeffe þe
same manere, þe partye þat is broke, whiche þat goþ vndir þe
28 partye þat ys hol, & compressyth þe dura mater; and zif þat a
gobbet opere a pece of a bon helde sumwhat in þe wounde, &
myzte nozt lyztlye be remeffyde awey, and he prikyde nouzt ne
compressyde nouzt duram matrem, þenne at þe bygynnyng y do on
32 þe bon hot oyle of rosys, and y fulfille þe wounde with oyle of roses
& þe zolke of an eyze y-medled togedire, tyl þat þe bon be y-
nesschyde, and mowe lyztlyche be remywede aweye; þenne y
remeffe þe bon, & y procede in worchyng bytwene þe bon &
36 duram matrem, as it is seyde tofore. & zif þat þe breche of þe
breyn panne ⁴were as a cerfes, opere ellys y-slend, & neiþere party
of þe bon were lower þenne opere, þen y consydere zif þilke
slendynge parten alle þe breyn panne, & þat þou schalt y-knowe by
40 þe toknys tofore seyde, opere ellys þou schalt y-knowe by þis signe
þat neuere faileþ: make a plastre of þe poudre of mastyk & þe
- [4 fol. 78 a]

How to discern by means of a Plaster, whether the fissure pierces the skull or not.

When the skull is pierced,

some physicians use trepanning.

mastik & þe white of an ey, medlid togidere as þikke¹ as hony, & distende² it vpon a clooþ, & leie it on þe place þat is hurt fro morowe til euen, or ellis from þe euene til þe morowe / & whanne þat þe plastre is remoued away, if þat þe creueis peerse þoruþ þe 4
brayn panne, þou schalt se þe plastre more drie azens þe creueis þan in ony oper place, for þe greet heete þat cometh fro þe brayn [& zif þe breyn panne]* be nouzt I-slend þoruþ, þe plastre schal be nomore drie aboue þe creueis þan on anoþer place / & if þe creueis perse 8
not þe brayn scolle, þe cure is as it is seid in þe bigynnyng of þis chapitle, þere as I tolde of cure of wounde of þe heed, where þat þe brayn panne eiþer þe brain is not hurt. For if þat ilke remile peerse þe brayn panne, þer is a greet doute in þe caas, for summen seien þat 12
it is impossible sich a wounde to heele; but if þe remele be trepaned, & a quantite of þe boon be doon away, þat þe superfluyte þat is cast vpon duram matrem may be doon away, or ellis þe dura mater schulde putrifien & be corrupt, & bi þat skil³ þe pacient schulde 16
die, þe which þat myzte⁴ be heeled bi þe remeuynge of þe boon /
Nota. Neþeles I þat haue seen in trepaninge greet perel, namely whanne

¹ MS. þilke.

² distende, Lat. distendo.

³ bi þat skil, Lat. quare. Skil = causa, synon. with 'resoun' occurs frequently in *Polyckron*. See Gloss. The same construction in: '& by þe same skile' ea ratione, *ibid.*, iii. 465.

Add. MS. 12,056. whyte of an eyze, y-medlyde togedyre as þykke as hony, & distende it on a cloþ, & leye it on þe place þat ys hurt from morwe tyl euene, 20
oper ellys from euene tyl þe morwe. And whenne þat þe plastre ys remefyd away, zif þat þe crefeys persith þorwe þe breyn panne, þou schalt se þe plastre more drye auonde⁵ þe crefeys þen in enye oper place, for þe gret hete þat comyth from þe brayn; * & zif þe 24
breyn panne* be nozt y-slend þorwe, þe plastre schal be namore rye abouen þe crefeys þenne on an opere place. And zif þe crefeysd perse nouzt þe brayn scolle, þe cure is as yt is seyde in þe bygynnyng of þis chapyteff, þere as y tolde of þe cure of wounde of 28
hed, where þat þe breyn panne opere þe brayn ys nozt y-hurt. Ffor zif þat þilke ryemele persyth þe breyn panne, þere ys a gret doute in þe cas, ffor some seyne þat yt ys vnpossible swyche a wounde to ben y-helyde, but zif þe rymele be y-trepanyd & þat a quantyte 32
of þe bon be y-don away, þat þe superfluyte þat ys y-caste vpon duram matrem mowe be done away, ellys þe dura mater scholde putrefien & be corrupt, & by þat skylle þe pacient scholde deye, whiche þat myzte be helyde by remywyng of þe bon. Napeles y 36
þat haue y-seye in trepanyng grete peryle, namlyche whanne þat

⁵ Over an erasure.

þat þe creueis is bisidis þe semys, where þat þe trepaninge is
 deedlich / & I haue seen manye þat wiþoute trepanyng¹ almyzt
 god haþ delyuerid bi myn hondis, wiþoute touchinge of ony brayn
 4 scolle wiþ ony trepan or wiþ iren ; but I helde in to þe creueis hoot ^{de vertute}
 oile of rosis colat, & mel roset colat, medlid togidere aftir þe ^{Olium}
 doctrine tofore seid, fulfillynge al þe wounde with sich maner ^{Rosarum.}
 clopis ; & aftirward leie aboue þe zelke of an ey & oile of rosis
 8 medlid togidere, & aboute a defensif of bole armoniak tofore seid, ^{I use oil of}
 til þat þe quytture be engendrid. & aftirward I contynue mel ^{roses,}
 roset & oile of rosis in þe wounde, & aboue a mundificatif of mel ^{a defensif}
 roset & barly mele til þat þe ligament be fully engendrid on þe ^{and a}
 12 brayn panne, & þat þou schalt knowe whanne þat þou seest þe ^{mundificatif}
 boonys ben¹ ioyned togidere, as it were two bordis weren ioyned ^{medicines,}
 togidere with cole² or with glu ; & þanne I fulfille þe wounde wiþ
 drie predis of clene lynnen cloþ, & aboue ³a mundificatif, til þat ^[5 12. 71, bk.]
 16 þe boon be keuerid. þanne I strowe on aboue þe capitale poudre
 tofore seid, & I leie on þe schauynge or ellis þe rasure⁴ of lynnen
 cloþ, & aboue al þis I leie on a treet of whigt rosyn ; & I do alle ^{and a plaster}
 þese þingis þat I haue seid tofore til þat þe wounde be consowdid / ^{of terpentine.}

¹ ben, above line.² cole, Lat. : sicut si essent duo ligna cum glutino in simul incolata.⁴ rasure, Lat. rasura.

20 þe crefeys ys bysyde þe semys, where þat trepanynge ys dedlyche, Add. MS.
 and y haue seye manye þat wiþouten trepanynge almyztie god haþ 12,056.
 delyuerede be myn handys, without touchynge enye brayn scolle
 with trepane opere with eyren ; but y helde into þe crefeys hote
 24 oyle of roses, and y legge aboue cloþes y-wett in mel rosat colat, &
 oyle rosat colat y-medlyde togedyre aftere þe doctryne tofore seyde,
 fulfillynge aH þe ⁵wounde wiþ swyche manere clothys, & after- ^[5 fol. 78 b]
 warde y legge aboue þe 3olke of an eyze & oyle of roses y-medlyde
 28 togedres, and aboue þe wounde a defensiff of bol armonyac tofore
 seyde, tyl þat þe quyter be engendryd. & afterwarde y contynwe
 mel roses & oyle rosarum in þe wounde, & aboffe a mundificatyf of
 mel rosarum & barly mele, tyl þat þe ligament be fulliche engendrede
 32 on þe breyn panne, & þat þou schalt y-knowe whenne þat þou seste
 þe bonys Ioynyde togedre, as yt were tweye bordys Ioynede to
 gedre wiþ colle opere wiþ glew³ ; & þenne y fulfille þe wounde with
 drye predys of lynnen cloþ, and abouen a mundificatyf tyl þat þe
 36 bon be keffride aboue. & þenne y strawe on aboue þe capytale
 poudre tofore seyde, & y legge on þe schaffynge opere ellys þe
 rasure of lynnen cloþ, and abouen al þis y legge on a Tret of resyne ;
 & y do alle þynges þat y haue seyde tofore tyl þe wounde be con-

Nota.

This remedy
dissolves the
blood and
pus,which exhales
through the
fissure.

[3 ff. 72]

Treatment of
a wound of
the skull
when the skin
is not broken.Some phy-
sicians use
trepanning.I apply oil of
roses.

& if 3e make an obieccioun how þat it myzte, wiþoute arerynge of þe boon, þe blood & þe quytture be dried, þe which þat fil down bi þilke slendynge vpon duram matrem / I answe: ryzt^t as þe mater of þe frenesie & þe mater of þe litarge¹ þat is more doutes, bi 4 emplastris wiþoutforþ I-leie is dissolued, & þer is no slendynge of þe brayn panne, ne no wounde in þe skyn, myche more lyztloker & more bettere þe blood, þat is lyzt^t & able to be resolued, þe which þat wente down bi þe forseid slending^t, may bi þe forseid slendynge 8 þe bettere be exaled. Ne þilke blood is not viscat² in þe substaunce of dure matris, as þe mater is in empostymes, wherfore he is more obeisschaunt* — — to þe attraccioun of medicyns /

& if þe brayn panne be hurt wiþoute wounde ³of þe skyn, þe 12 which þou shalt knowe bi þe tokenes tofore seid / þanne summen kutte aboue þe hurtyng in þe maner of a crose, & þei areren þe .iiij. quarters, & þei kutten & fleen þe pannicle þat keueriþ þe boonis. & aftirward þei vsen trapanes & her opere comoun curis, as 16 it is schewid tofore / But I kutte not þe skyn in þe maner of a crose, but in þe maner of a scheeld or ellis of a þing^t þat is triangle in þis maner ◁, & I make but oon quarter, & I vnwrie þe boon þat þe oyle of þe rosis may peerse yn, & þat þe vertu of þe medicyn, 20

¹ *litarge*, Lat. *lethargus*. Lethargy, stupor.² *viscat*, Lat. *inviscatus*, inclosed. See below, *inviscat*.Add. MS.
12,056.

soulded. And 3if me maken an obiecioun how þat yt myzte with-
outen arerynge of þe bon, þe blod & þe quyter be dreiede whiche
þat fel down by þilke slendynge vpon þe duram matrem, I answe: 24
ryzte as þe matere of þe frenesie & þe matere of þe litargie þat is
more doutes, by emplastres withouten forth leyd is desolfed, and
þere nys none scelyndynge of þe breyn panne ne no wounde in þe
skyn, myche more lyztlokere & more bettere þe blod þat is lyzt &
able to ben reselfyde, whiche þat wende done be þe forseide 28
scendynge, may be þe forseide scendynge beter ben exaled. Ne
þilke blod ys nozt inviscat in þe substaunce of dure matris as þe
matere ys in apostemys, wherfore he ys more obeyssaunt to* þe
expulcioun of kynde, & also ys more obeyssaunt to the attracioun 32
of medecine. And 3if þe brayn panne be hurte wiþout wounde of
þe skyn, þe whiche þou schalt y-knowen by þe toknys tofore seyde,
þenne sum men kutten aboue þe hurtyng in þe manere of a cros, &
þey areryn þe foure quarters, & þey kyttten & flen þe pannycle þat 36
keferith þe bonys, & afterwardes þey vsen trepanys & here opere
comyn cures, as ⁴yt ys schewyde tofore. But y kytte nozt þe skyn
in manere of a cros, but in þe manere of a Schelde opere ellys of
a thyng þat ys tryangle in þis manere ◁, & y make but on 40
quartere & y vnwrye þe bon, þat þe oyle of roses may persen yn,

[4 fol. 79 a]

pat^t is maad of^t hony of^t rosis & oile of^t rosis, may drawe fro byneþe
 þe brayn-panne / & I do in þis caas al þing^t as it^t is declarid next^t
 aboue. & if^t 3e make obieccioun azens me bi costantyne¹ or ellis bi
 4 opere, pat^t seien pat^t bi al oure myzt we eschewen pat^t neiþer oile
 ne noon oyntuose þing^t falliþ not^t wipinne þe brayn-panne / I
 answeare wip auicen, pat^t seiþ: pat^t he worchiþ riztfulliche pat^t vsiþ ^{bnt} **Auicen**,
 teped² oilis, & þe same tellen galien & serapion; & also I seie pat^t ^{Galien,}
 8 oile of^t rosis, þe which pat^t schal³ be maad of^t grapis of^t olyue trees ^{Serapion,}
 pat^t ben not^t ripe, is not^t oyntuose, but^t it^t is drie, & is clepid oile ^{and I use}
 enfancinum;⁴ & namely whanne pat^t rosis ben medlid wip pilke ^[3 lf. 72, bk.]
 oile, pilke oile haþ gete to him a swete smellynge & a drie þing^t of^t ^{Oleum}
 12 comfortynge⁵ animal spiritis; & also pat^t oile haþ a vertu expressif, ^{as a strength-}
 as galien telliþ in þe book of symple medicyns, bi þe which þe ^{ening}
 brayn is comfortid & akþis ben swagid / & if^t þer be maad ony greet^t ^{remedy.}
 blood, it^t is maad sutil with pat^t oile; & whanne alle þese þingis ^{Galien.}
 16 ben congaderid & leid aboue duram matrem, it^t is clensid /

¶ Sumtyme þe brayn is meued of^t sum greet hurt eiper of^t sum ^{Concussion of}
 fallynge or of^t sum smytynge wipoute ony wounde or wipoute ony ^{the brain not}
 complicated

¹ Constantinus Africanus, c.c. 1070.

² teped, Lat. tepidus.

⁴ enfancinum, for omfacinum ὀμφάκινον ἔλαιον, oil made from unripe
 olives (*Diosc.* I. 29). *Vigo Interpr.*: "Omphax in Greke is an vnripe
 grape. *Vigo* calleth oyle of omphacyne, that oyle that is made of vnrype
 Olyves." Compare *Tomm. Dict.* s. v. onfacino.

⁵ See below.

and pat þe vertue of þe medycine, pat ys y-mad of honye of ^{Add. MS.}
 20 roses & oyle of roses, may drawe fro byneþe þe brayn-panne; and ^{12,056.}
 y do in þis cas al þynge, as yt declarith nexte aboffe. And 3if
 men make obieccioun azeyns me by constantine opere ellys by hym,
 pat seyth pat by alle oure myght^t we enchewyn pat nepere oyle ne
 24 non vncomys⁶ þynge falle nozt withynne þe brayn-panne, I answeare
 with Auecene, pat seyth: pat he wircheþ ryztfulliche pat vsith
 certeyne oyles, & þe same telliþ galien & serapion, and also y seye
 pat oyle of roses, which þe be mad of grapes of Olyue tres pat beþ
 28 nozt ripe, is nozt vnctuose, but is dreyze; & it is clepyde oyle
 Omfacinum, & namlye whanne pat roses ben y-medlyde with pat
 oyle, pilke oyle hath y-gete to hym a swete smellynge & a dreyzinge,
 cumfortynge animal spiritis; and also pilke oyle hath a vertue
 32 expressif, as galien tellyth in the bok^t of symple medycines, by þe
 whyche þe brayn ys comfortyde & akþes ben aswagede, & 3if þere
 be mad enye gret blod, yt is y-made SotyH; & whenne alle þese
 þynges ben y-gadryde togedyre & leyde abouen, dura mater ys
 36 clansed. Sumtyme þe brayn ys meffye of sum gret hurt opere of
 sum fallynge, opere of sum smytynge withouten eny wounde ore enye

⁶ Corrupt, probably for vnctuous.

by a wound
or fracture.

Nota

A certain
Canon fell
from his
horse,
and was left
senseless.

[1 ff. 73]

I thought
him dying,

Nota

but entreated
by his friends

I anointed his
head

and laid on
compresses,

breche of ony boon, þanne do þou as I dide to a chanoun of þe
ordre of seynt austyn. Whanne þat he wolde haue lept vpon an
hiz hors & haue seten in þe satel, þe hors areride vpon hise two
hyndere feet, & pilke chanoun fel down backward vpon þe erþe vpon 4
his heed; & al his bodi was brusid & namely aboute þe heed, þat
anoon he loste þe meuyng and þe felynge of al his body / þanne a
lewid leche ¹þat was frend to pilke chanoun was clepid, & he cowde
not helpen him, for he hadde neuere seen þe same caas, ne he 8
cowde not no lettrure² / & at þe laste I was clepid, & I foond him
neiþer heerynge, ne spekyng, ne no þing¹ meuyng, & I deemede
him for deed / & neþeles³ I seide, & he were my broþer, I nolde not
for an .C. mark, but I asaiede in him goodnes of þe helpinge of 12
medicyns / for ofte tyme kynde wiþ good werkis helpiþ priuylie
þat semer vnpossible to a leche. & þei þanne preieden me with greet
instaunce / & I made þe heeris of his heed to be schauen & þanne
I anoyntide al þe heed wiþ. iij. parties of oile of rosis, & oon partie 16
of vynegre hoot medlid togidere, & I castide aboue poudre of
mirtillis, & leide aboue a sotil lynnen cloþ þinne, wett in þe same

² Lat. : nec sciebat aliquid de scripturis. O.Fr. lettreure. See *Piers the Plowman*, ed. Skeat. Gloss.

³ Lat. : meo tamen addens iudicio quod pro centum marchis argenti non dimitterem, quin adhuc probarem in eo, si meus esset frater, iuvamenta medicinæ inducens.

Add. MS. 12,056. breche of eny bon, þan do þou as dyde y to a Chanoun of þe ordre
of saint Austyn. Whanne þat he wolde haue lopyn vpon an hye 20
hors and haue seten in þe sadyH, þe hors areryde vpon hys two

[3 fol. 79 v] ³hyndere fete, & pilke chanoun fel down bakwarde vpon þe erthe
on hys hed; & alle hys bodye was y-brusyde, and namlye aboute þe
hed þat anon he lost þe ffelynge & þe meffynge of alle his bodye. 24
þanne a lewyde leche þat was frende to pilke Chanoun was y-
clepyde, & he couþe helpe hym nozt, for he had neuere seyne þe
same cas, ne he ne couþe nozt on lettre. And at þe laste y was
clepte, & y fonde hym nozt herynge ne spekyng ne nothyng 28
mevyng, I demyde hym for ded, and napeles sauyde, zif þat he
were my broþere y nolde nouzt for an hundrede mark, but y sayede
in hym þe godnesse & þe helpynge of medicines; ffor ofte tymes
kynde with gode werkys helpiþ preueliche þat semyth vnpossible 32
to a leche. And þenne þey preyede me with gret Instaunce, and y
made the herys of hys hed to be schaffen and þenne y anoynt aþ þe
hed with þre partye of oyle of roses, & on partye of vyneger hot
y-medlyde togedyre, & y caste abouen þe poudre of mirtylles, and y 36
leyde abouen a sotyH þenne cloth y-wet in þe same oyle & vynegre,

oile & vynegre, & aboue þat tow3 smal tosid, & I boond al þe heed a bandage,
 wip a boond, & aboue I leide a lambis skyn. & so I chaungide it and a lamb's
 pries ech day in anoyntyng þe nolle & þe necke into þe myddil¹ skin.
 4 of þe rigge-boon bihynde wip hoot oile of camomille / In þe
 ij. day he openede a litil hise yzen, & he bigan to loken aboute On the 2nd
 2 him as it hadde be a deef man þat were in a wondring / & þanne day he opened
 summe wolden haue asaied if þat he myzte haue ete / & I wolde his eyes.
 8 not suffre him to ete / & I seide þow3 þat he wolde ete þat he [2 lf. 73, bk.]
 schulde not / In þe iij. day I spak to him / he answeride me babe- On the 3rd he
 lynge as a child þat bigynneþ to speke, but he myzte forþ wip no babbled.
 word³ / In þe iiij. dai he spak boistousliche⁴ / & þanne I 3af him to On the 4th he
 12 drynke hoot ypocras⁵ þat is maad of sugre & of watir / In þe v. spoke
 day he took pikke tizanne⁶ / In þe vj. dai I 3af him broþ of a boisterously.
 chicken; and þanne he bigan to strenkþe litil & litil, & litil & litil From the 6th
 to meuen / & neuer þe-lattere he myzte not walke not manye daies day I gave
 16 aftir. & whanne þat he myzte take sufficiently mete, I comaundide him strength-
 ening food,

¹ of þe myddil, inserted.

³ See below, note 8.

⁴ *boistisliche*. Lat.: *balbutiendo*, stammering, seems to connect the sense of O.Fr. *boistous*, lame, with *boisterous*.

⁵ *ypocras*, error for *ydrosacre*. See below. "*Hydrosaccharum*, a Syrup made of Water and Sugar." Phillips. *Hippocras*, a kind of "Artificial Wine, made of Claret or White Wine, and several sorts of Spice." *Ibid*.

⁶ Lat. *ptisanam spissam*. Matth. Sylv.: "*Tisanna i. aqua ordeï uel fariola*."

& aboue þat tow3 smale y-tosyde, & y bonde alle þe hed with a band, Add. MS.
 & abouen y leyde a lambys skyn, & so y chaungede yt twyes euerye 12,056.
 day; in anoyntyng þe nolle & þe nekke into þe myddeH of þe
 20 rygge-bon byhynde wip hote oyle of Camamylle. In þe secunde
 day he opnyde a lyte his eyzen, & he bygan to loken aboute hym
 as it hadde be a deff man, opere ellys a man þat were in a
 wondryng; and þenne some wolden haue assayed zif þat he wolde
 24 eten, & y wolde nouzt⁷ Suffren hym to eten, & y seyde þow3 þat he
 wolde eten he scholde nouzt. In þe þridde day y spak to hym, & [7 fol. 80 a]
 he answerde me bablynge as a childe þat begynneþ to speke, but he
 myzte formen non worde.⁸ In þe fourþe day he spak bostynglyche,
 28 and þenne y gaf hym to drynke hot ydrosacre, þat ys y-mad of Sugre
 & of watyre. In þe ffyfte day he toke pikke⁹ tysan. In þe sixe day
 y gaf hym þe broth off a chykne, & þenne he gan to strengþe litel
 & lytel & lytel, & lytel to meffen, & neuere þe latere he myzte nouzt
 32 walkyn by manye dayes. And whanne þat he myzte take Suffi-
 sauntlye mete, y comaundyde hym to take Pylulas Cochias, for to

⁸ Lat.: *verbum non potuit formare*.

⁹ MS. *þilke*.

purgative
pills,

and brain of
fowl and kid.

Evil
symptoms
[s. 1f. 74]

are: cramp,
immobility
except of the
muscles of
the chest.

Three ways
of treatment:

1.
the way used
by
Anselme.

2.
trepanning.

3.
my own way,

him to take pilulas chochias¹ for to resolue bi euaciacioun þe matere þat I-gaderide togidere in þe heed bi pilke fallinge / & I comaundide him to ete ofte þe braynes of briddis heedis, & of hennys & of smale briddis & kedis / & in þis maner he was hool; nepeles he was 4 neuere so sotil of witt¹ as he was tofore /

In þis ben yuel signes as þe face to be to² crokid, & þe yzen to loke asquynt³ eiper crokidliche, apoplexie, crampe, to schite wipoute felynge, & vnmouablete of alle þe membris outcept þe lacertis of 8 þe brest þat monn be saaf⁴ / He þat rediþ þis book may chese aftir his owne wil oon of iij. weies þe whiche þat ben now vsid / þe toon is þe wey þe whiche þat is seid in þe bigynnynge of þis chapitle, þe which wey manye vsen, & a leche of Ianewe⁵ þat is clepid anselme 12 vsiþ þis wey, & þerbi he gate myche money / nepeles I wiste weel þat manye men dieden in hise handis bi þis wey / þe secunde maner is in almaner hurtynge of þe heed to vsen terabracioun⁶ eiper remeuynge of þe boon wip handliche instrumentis / þe iij. is my wey þe 16

¹ *Cochia*. An ancient name for several officinal purgative pills. Dunglison, *Medic. Lex.* κόκκος, a pill. Alex. Trall. Compare Fr. cochée.

² *be to*, added in margin.

⁴ Lat. : præterquam lacertorum pectoris qui sallire videntur. The translator evidently read *sallere* instead of *sallire*.

⁵ Anselmus de Ianua. A. de Porte, quoted by Guy de Chauliac as Anserinus de Ianua, XIII. cent. Ianua is Genoa, see Eloys Dictionn. historique.

⁶ "*Terebration*, a boring or piercing; a Term more especially used in Surgery." Phillips. "*Terebra*, an Awger or Wimble, a Piercer; also an Instrument to engrave on Stones; also a Surgeon's Trepan or Trepandiron." *Ibid*.

Add. MS. 12,056. resolfe by evacuacioun þe matere þat was y-gadrede togedire in þe hed by pilke fallynge. And y comaundyde hym to eten ofte þe braynes of briddys hedys, as of hennys & of smale bryddes, & also of kyddes; and in þis manere he was hol; napeles he was neuere 20 so sotyl of wyt as he was tofore. In þis cas buþ yuele signes: as þe face to be crokyde, & þat on eyze to loken asquynt oper crokydlyche, apoplexie, crampe, to schyte wipout felynge, & vnmouablete of alle þe membris outsepte þe lacertes of þe brest þat 24 mowe be saff. He þat redith þis bok may chesen after hys owne wyl, one of þre weyes whiche þat bep now y-vsye, þat on ys þe wey whiche þat ys seyde in þe bygynnynge of þis chapiteff, þe whiche weye many vsen, and a leche o Ianewe þat is y-clepyde 28 Anselme vsith þis weye, & þereby he gat myche moneye, napeles y wiste wel þat manye men dyzeden in his handys by þis wey. þe [7 fol. 80 b] 7 secunde weye is in alle manere hurtynges of hed to vsen terebracioun, opere ellys remeffynge of þe bon with handlyche Instru- 32 mentes; þe þridde ys my weye whiche þat y haue tolde opynlye in

which þat I haue told openliche in almaner caas / & I bileue, if¹ where fewer
 þat he take hede to alle þese weyes & þat he wole wisely discussen people die.
 alle þe opynyons of auctouris, þat he schal seen fewere die bi my
 4 .iij. wey þan bi ony of þe opere .ij. weyes // Almyȝti god lede þe
 redere of þis werk in þe best wey, þoruȝ whos myȝtis, wordis takis
 sentencis & also vnderstondinge.

þouȝ þat we han bihoten to tretyn of ano¹tamie of membris [1 f. 74, bk.]
 8 þat ben compound, in þe bigynnyng of eueri chapitle of þis
 secunde tretis, neþeles we leuen² it for þe bettere for to treten of
 anotamie of þe visage, to þe þridde tretise, where we schulden treten
 of sijknis þat comen to þese membris, þe whiche syknessis ben non³
 12 woundis // // // The anatomy of the face is given in the 3rd treatise.

The secunde chapitle of woundis of þe face & ¶ Cap. ij.
 anotamie of þe same.

Woundis þat ben maad in þe face, or þei be maad wiþ a swerd
 16 or wiþ sum dinge⁴ ellis þat woundis, or þei ben maad wiþ pricknyge
 of a knyf, arowe, eiper spere. It is necessarie þat a surgian haue
 more diligence in þe woundis of þe face, for it is a place þat is
 myche seen, & it is wel to do make⁵ a sotil⁶ cicatrice / A wounde
 Wounds of the face must be treated carefully.

² Lat. relinquimus tamen propter melius.

³ MS. *now*.

⁴ *dinge*, in margin.

⁵ Compare: *þis instrument may ȝe do make wiþoute grete cost*. Quinte
 Essence, p. 62.

⁶ *a sotil*, in margin.

20 alle manere of cas; and y beleue ȝif þat he wyl take hede to alle Add. MS.
 þese weyes, & þat he wyȝ wyslye discussen þe opyniouns of 12,056.
 Auctores, þat he schal se fewere dyȝe be my þridde weye þenne by
 enye opere. Almyȝti god lede þe redere of þis werk in þe beste
 24 wey, þorwe whose myȝte, wordes takyȝ sentence & echyn vnder-
 stondyng. þowȝ þat we han behoten to treten of Anotamye of
 membres þat ben componed, in þe bygynnyng of eueri chapyteȝ of
 this secunde tretys, napeles we leuen yt for þe bettire for to treten
 28 of þe Anotamye of þe vysage, to þe þridde tretys, where we schulle
 tretyn of seknesse þat comyȝ to þis membres, whyche seknesse
 beþ non woundes.

¶ Cap. off woundes of þe face & Anotamye of þe same.

32 Woundes þat ben made in þe face, opere þey beþ mad with a
 swerde, ore wiþ sum thyng ellis þat woundis, opere þey ben mad
 wiþ prikyng of a knyf, arwe, opere spere. Yt is necessarye, þat a
 surgyne haue more diligence in þe woundes of þe face, for it is a
 36 place þat is myche y-seyne, & yt ys wel y-do to make a sotly cic-
 tryce. A wounde þat ys mad with a swerde opere with sum þyng

pat^t is maad wip a swerd or wip sumping^t semblable pat^t is alwei in
 lenkpe, a man muste sotilliche sowen & gaderen þe parties of þe
 wounde togidere / & for þat^t manye men lizen of^t þe wounde of^t þe
 nose, þei seien þat^t oon bar his nose kutt of^t in his hond, þe which 4
 nose was afterward sett azen in his owne kynde ; þe which is an open
 lesynge / For þe spirit of lijf of felynge & ¹meuynge passip, whanne
 a membre is depertid from þe bodi / I wole bigynne at a wounde of þe
 nose þat^t is kutt in lenkpe, þe which cure is lizt to hele / Brynge þe 8
 parties togidere of þe wounde & sowe hem, & worche aboute þe wounde
 as I haue seid tofore in þe chapitle of woundis / & if þat^t þe nose
 were kutt ouerþwert^t down to þe ouer lippe, & nepeles þat^t þe ouer lippe
 & þe nose were kutt al away, but þat^t it held faste at boþe þe eendis 12
 of þe eendis of þe wounde, þanne sette azen þe nose in his propre place,
 þe noseprillis ech azen opir as þei weren toforen, & make two smale
 tentis of wex & putte on eiþir noseprille aboute þe wounde, if þat^t þou
 maist, & þanne make a poynt bi þe space of a litil fyngre from þe oon 16
 eende of þe wounde, & anoper poynt at þe opere eende of þe wounde,
 & anopir poynt in þe myddil of þe nose azen þe forheed ; and aftir-
 ward a poynt on eiþer side of þe nose, aftirward make [a poynt]*
 bitwene eueri poynt, so þat^t þou haue in noumbre of alle þe poyntis 20

² Heading to this page : *Off wondes off the fface & Anotumy off þe same ffrom the face to the ffote.*

Add. MS. 12,056. semblable þat is alweye in lengthe, a man moste sotylliche sowyn &
 gedre þe parties of þe wounde. And for þat many men lyzen ³ of
 [3 fol. 81 a] þe wounde of þe nese, þey seyzen þat on bare hys nose y-kytte of in
 hys hande, þe whiche nose was afterwarde y-sette azeine in hys 24
 owne kynde ; þe whiche ys an opyn lesynge, for þe spiryt of lyf of
 felynge & of meffynge passith aweye, whanne a membre is departyde
 from þe body. I wylle begynne at þe wounde at þe nese þat is
 y-kutte in lengthe, wose cure ys lizt to hele ; brynge þe parties to- 28
 gedre of þe wounde & sowe hem, & wirche aboute the wounde as y
 haue seyde tofore in þe chapitle of wondes. And zif þat þe nese
 were y-kutte twarte offere down to þe ouere lippe, & napeles þat þe
 ouyre lippe & þe nose were nozt kutte al away, but þat it helde 32
 faste at boþe þe endys of þe wounde, þanne sette azeine þe nose in
 his propre place, þe noseprellis yche azeins opere as þey were to-
 fore, & make two smale tentys of wex, & putte in boþe þe nose-
 prellis aboute þe wounde, zif þat þou maist, & þenne make a poynt 36
 by þe space of a litel fyngere from þat on ende of þe wounde,
 & an opere poynt at þe opere ende of þe wounde, and an opere
 poynt in þe myddel of þe nose anentys þe forhede ; & after-
 warde a poynt on eiþere syde of þe nose, afterwarde make a poynt* 40
 betwene evry poynt, so þat þou haue in noumbre of alle þe poyntes,

- whanne þei ben ful maad, .ix. Caste þe poudre þat is tofore seid throw a powder on the wound, vpon þe wounde, þat is maad of ¹lime, frank encense, & sandragoun / & take þe white of an ey & oile of rosis, & bete hem togidere, [1 lf. 75, bk.]
- 4 & wete þerinne a lynnen cloþ & leie aboue þe wounde / Aftirward bynde* þerto þre plumaciols, oon vndirneþe, anoþer on þe oon side, apply three pledgets, and two bandages, anoþir on þe toþir side / & þanne bynde þe nose wiþ two bandis / þe toon schal holde vp þe nose þat he may not discende dounward /
- 8 þe toþir schal be leid aboue þat he mowe kepe þe plumaciols, poudre, & þe sowynge / & þilke boond þat is vnder þe nose þat halt þe nose vpward, schal be knytt² aboue vpon þe heed, & aftirward he schal be one holds the rose in position, turned ouertwert³ ouer þe forheed, þat he mowe holde þe boond, þat
- 12 þe nose decline to neiþir³ side. & þe boond þat is leid aboue þe nose, the other the pledgets, schal be bounden bihynde in þe nolle / & aftirward he schal turne azen aboue þe nose, holdynge þe plumaciols þat þei moun not wagge to neiþir side aboute þe sowynge; & aboute þe forheed, þou schalt leie
- 16 þe defensif⁴ of bole, & aftirward þou schalt worche on þe wounde of þe nose, as I haue seid in a wounde of fleisch in þe fourþe⁴ tretis / [5 lf. 76]
- þe woundis þat ben maad in opere parties of þe face ⁵as wiþ Wounds on other places must be carefully stitched, a swerd or ony þing⁵ semblable, brynge hem togidere & sowe hem &
- 20 cure hem, as it is conteyned in general chapitlis of woundis, takynge

² MS. kutt.³ MS. þe neþir.⁴ fourþe for firste.

- whenne þey ben ful mad, .IX. Caste þe poudre þat is tofore seyde. Add. MS. vpon þe wounde, þat is y-mad of lym, frank ensence, saucdragoun, 12,056. & take whyte of an ey & oyle of roses and bete hem togidere, &
- 24 leye þereynne a lynne cloþ & leye abouen þe wounde, aftirwarde [bynde]* þereto þre plumaciolus, one ⁶vndireneþe, & on on þat o syde, [5 fol. 81 b] an opere on þe opere syde; & þanne bynde þe nose wiþ tweye bandys, þat on schalt holden vp þe nose þat he may nouzt discendyn dounward, þat opere schal be leyde aboffe þat he mowe kepyn þe plumacyolus, poudere, & þe sowynge. And þilke bande þat ys vnder þe nose þat halt þe nose vpwarde, schal be knett abouen on þe hed, and aftirwarde he schal be turnyde twarte offere þe forehed, þat he
- 32 mowe holde þe bande, & þe nose declyne to neipere syde. And þe bande þat ys leyde aboffe þe nose, schal be bounden behynden in þe nolle; and afterwarde he schal turnen azeine aboffe þe nose, holdynge þe plumacyoles þat þey mowe nozt wagge on neythere syde
- 36 aboute þe sewynge; & aboute þe forhed þou schalt legge þe deffensif of bol, and aftirwarde þou schalt worche on þe wounde of þe nose as y haue seyde in a wounde of fleisch in þe firste tretys. þe woundes þat beþ y-mad in opere partye of þe face as with a swerd
- 40 ore opire þynge semblable, brynge hem togidere, sowe hem, & cure hem, as yt ys conteyned in generall chapitle of woundys, takynge

Nota bene

or brought
together by
an adhesive
plaster.A wound
made with
a dart or an
arrow.

[1 lf. 76, bk.]

If the arrow
head is
hidden,

try to find it,

Add. MS.
12,056.[^a fol. 82 a]

hede herto þat þe sowynge þat is maad in þe face schal be more sotil & fairer þan in ony opere partie of þe body / & þou maist make a sowynge in þe face, if þat þe wounde be not to myche, on þis maner / Take mastik, sandragoun & poudre hem & tempre hem 4 togidere wiþ þe white of an ey to þe pickenesse of hony, & wete þerinne two pecis of linnen cloþ as longe as þe wounde / & leie þe toon on þe oon side of þe wounde, & þe oper on þe toþir side & lete hem drien / & aftirward make þe wounde sumwhat to blede, & 8 þanne brynge þe parties of þe wounde togidere; & sowe þilke .ij. pecis togidere, & caste aboue poudre of lyme, frankencense, sandragoun tofore seid, & wete a cloþ in þe white of an ey & oile of rosis, & leie aboue al togidere, & kepe þe partee wiþ ligature & 12 prosede forþ in alle þingis as I haue tofore seid /

& if þat þe wounde be maad wiþ a dart or wiþ an arewe & þe arouwe be drawe out & þe wounde be myche sene, þanne þe cure is 1 þe same þat was seid in þe same chapitle or elles in þe firste tretis, 16 wheþer þat þer be a seneuwe prickid eipir noon. But if þe arouwe heed were entriged in ony priuy place of þe face, so þat it myzte not be seen, þanne euery man bisie him to knowe bi his witt how þat þe sike man stood, whanne þat he was smyte, & whens þat þe 20 arouwe cam, & to what partie þe wounde strecchiþ, þat he mowe loke

hede hereto, þat þe sowynge þat ys y-mad in þe face, schal be more sotyl & fairere, þanne in enye opere party of þe body. And þou maiste maken a sowynge in þe face, zif þat þe wounde be nouzt to 24 myche, on þis manere. R mastyk & sandragoun & poudre hem & tempre hem togedire wiþ þe whyte of an eyze to þe þyknesse of hony, & wete þereynne tweye pecys of linnen cloþ as longe as þe 28 wounde, & leye one on þat o syde of þe ² wounde, & þe opere on þat 28 opere & lete hem dreyzen, and afterwarde make þe wounde sum what to blede, & þenne brynge þe partyes of þe wounde togedires; & sowe þilke two pecys togedres, & caste aboue þe poudre of lym, ffranc ensence, sandragoun tofore seyde, & wete a cloþ in þe whyte 32 of an eyze & oyle of roses, & leye aboue al togedyre, and kepe þe partyes with ligature, & procede forþ in alle þynges as y haue tofore seyde. And zif þat þe wounde be y-mad with a dart opere with an 36 arwe, & þe arwe ben y-drawe out and þe wounde be myche y-sene, 36 þenne þe cure ys þe same þat was seyde in þe same chapytell opere ellys in þe firste tretys, wheþere þat þere be a synwe prikyde opere none. But zif þat þe arwe-hed were entrygede in enye priuy place of þe face, so þat yt myzte nouzt ben seyzen, þenne euerye man bysie 40 hym be his wyt, to knowe how þe seke man stod, whanne he was y-smete, & whennys þat þe arwe come, & to what party þe wounde strecchith, þat he mowe loke zif þat he mowe fynden enye manere

if þat he mowe fynde ony maner wey how he may drawe out pilke
 arowe-heed; & þanne drawe him out þe best maner wey þat he
 may / & if he may not, heelde he in þe wounde oyle of rosis & þe
 4 þelke of an ey togidere medlid; & wiþ þis medicyn worche in þe
 wounde, til þat kynde schewe sum maner wey / Manye men han
 born an arowe-heed in þe parties of her face bi longe tyme; &
 after longe tyme kynde haþ cast out þe arowe heed, or ellis he haþ
 8 schewid sum wey bi þe which wey pilke arowe-heed myzte be taken
 out. & þou must take hede bi al þi miȝt þat, whanne þat þou
 sowist þe woundis of þe face, þat þe moup be not crokid, but make
 so slizly þi sowynge þat pilke accident may ¹not fallen; & þat þou
 12 maist do weel, if þat þou cowdist ordeyne weel þi sowynge / & if
 þat þou canst, kepe weel þi sowynge wiþ plumaciols and wiþ
 byndyngis // // //

and draw
 it out;
 if you fail,
 apply
 Oilum
 Rosarum
 till nature
 works.

Beware of
 disfiguring
 the mouth in
 making the
 suture.

[¹ If. 77]

The bridde chapitle of þe secunde tretis is of ¶ Cap^m 3^m
 16 woundis of þe necke & anotamie of the same.

Bi þe necke is conteyned al þe place þat is bitwene þe heed &
 þe schuldris, þe which anotamie I wole telle as I haue bihiȝt /
 Summen maken difference bitwene þe necke & þe wesaunt² & þe

Anatomy of
 the neck.

² wesaunt gula; wesande, ysophagus. Wright W., page 676, XV. cent.
 See Vicary, page 47, note 4.

20 wey, how he may drawen out pilke arwe-hed; and þenne drawe
 hym out þe beste manere þat he may. And ȝif he may nouȝt, helde
 into þe wounde oyle of roses, & medle he oyle of roses & þe ȝolke
 of an eyȝe togedre, & helde into þe wounde, & wiþ þis medicine
 24 worche in þe wounde, tyl þat kynde schewe sum manere wey.
 Manye men han born an arwe-hed in þat parties of here face by
 longe tyme; and aftere kynde haþ cast out pilke arwe-hed, opere
 ellys haþ schewyde sum weye by whom pilke arwe-hed myzte be
 28 taken out. And þou moste taken hede be al þy myght þat whanne
 þat þou sowyste þe woundes of þe face þat þe moup be noȝt crokyde,
 but make so slylye þy sowynge þat pylke accident may noȝt ³fallen;
 & þat þou maiste do wel, ȝif þat þou coupest ordeyn wel þy sowynge
 32 & ȝif þou coupest kepen wel þy sowynge wiþ plumacyolus & wiþ
 byndynges.

Add. MS.
 12,056.

[³ fol. 82 b]

¶ Cap. iij. tretis ij is off woundes of þe nekke &
 Anotomye of þe same.

36 ¶ **B**y the nekke is contynwede alle þe place þat is bytwene þe
 hed & þe schuldres, whose Anotamye y wyȝt tellen as y haue
 behyght. ¶ Some men makyth dyfference bytwene þe nekke & þe
 SURGERY.

L

In the neck
are
vij spondilis,
or Vertebrae,
the 1st is
articulated
with the occi-
pital bone.

[² lf. 77, bk.]

.1.
.2.3.
.4.5.6.
7

From the
cervical
vertebrae
spring 7 pairs
of sinews,

prote-bolle, & alle þese ben comprehendid vndir þe name of þe necke. In þe necke þer ben .vij. spondelis þat is to seie whirlboonys / whirlboonys of þe rigge. þe firste of þe boonys is bounde wip a boon of þe heed þat is clepid passillare¹ with manye smale 4 feble ligamentis; & þei were feble bi-cause þat þilke ioynt next to þe heed myzte meue many weies. & þe cause whi þat þer were smale ligamentis multiplid in þat ioynt, þat manye smale myzten susteyne a greet burþun as weel as a fewe greete; & if þat þer were 8 a fewe greete, þei weren not so able to be meued / þe firste spondile² is bounde to þe secunde / þe secunde to þe þridde, þe þridde to þe fourþe / þe fourþe to þe fifþe, þe fifþe to þe sixte / þe sixte to þe seuene / þe seuene is bounde loseliche to þe firste spondile of þe 12 rigge, þat þe necke myzte more litzliche meuen, which þat is clepid þe .vij. spondile / whanne þat þou rekenest [from þe hed dunwarde]* Seuene peire of senewis proceden out [by þese .vij. spondelis. þe firste peire of synwe procedeþ out]* bitwene þe firste 16 spondilis and³ þe boon of þe heed þat is clepid passillare / þe secunde peire of senewis is bore bitwene þe firste spondile & þe secunde, & so euery peire passen out bitwene ech spondile / þese senewis ben

¹ See *Vicary*, page 44, note 2.

³ MS. of. Add. MS. 10,440, fol. 2: "*& he is vnterberyng in þe hynder partie al þe bones of þe heued, & þerfore he is clepid þe berere vp or passillus.*"

Add. MS. 12,056. wesant & þe prote-bolle, and alle þese be comprehendyde vndire þe 20 name of þe nekke. In þe nekke þere ben vij spondiles—þat is to say, whirle bonys of þe rigge. þe furste of þe bonys ys y-bounde wip a bon of þe hed þat ys y-clepyde passillare wip manye smale feble ligamentys; & þey weren feble bycause þat þilke Iuncte 24 nexte þe hed myzte meffe manye weyes. And þe cause why þat þere were manye smale lygamentes multeplyede in þat Iuncte, þat manye smale myzte susteyne a grete burthyne as wel as a fewe grete; & zif þat þere were a fewe grete, þey were nouzt so able to 28 be meffyd. The firste spondyle ys y-bounden to þe secunde, þe secunde to þe þridde, þe þridde to þe fourþe, þe iiij. to þe v., þe v. to þe vi., þe sixte to þe sevenþe, þe vij. ys y-bounden loselyche to þe fyrste spondile⁴ of þe rugge, þat þe nekke myzte more lyztlyche 32 meffen, whiche ys clepyde þe viij. spondile, whanne þat þou reknyste from þe hed dunwarde.* vij. peire off synwes growiþ out by þese .vij. spondelis. þe firste peire of synwe procedeþ out* bytwene 36 þe fyrste spondile⁵ & þe bon of þe hed þat ys y-clepyde passillare; þe secunde peire of synwes ys y-bore bytwene þe firste spondile & þe secunde, & so euery peire passith out bytwene euery spondile.

[⁵ fol. 83 a]

⁴ MS. *Whenne þat þou reknyst from þe hed, struck through, after spondile.*

dyuydid in many weies bi þe heed, þe necke and þe face, & þe brest, schuldris & þe armes; þe braunchis of þe senewis of þe heed in sum place ben conteynued & ioyned with þese senewis / & þese 4 senewis ben clepid meuyng, riȝt² as þe senewis þat comen of þe fore partie of þe brayn ben clepid felynge, & þese han also felynge. Of þese senewis þat comen of þe spondilis of þe necke þere ben maad braunnys, þe whiche ben instrumentis of meuyng of þo 8 parties. In ¹þe necke bihynde, þere ben ordeyned open² veynes comynge fro þe lyuere þe whiche þat ascenden into þe heed / & vndir þe veynes þer ben arteries priuylliche³ comynge fro þe herte & goynge to þe heed for notable profitis. & whanne þat þei han⁴ 12 doon al her office in þe heed þei discenden down bi þe place þat is bihynde þe eeris & þei bringe partie materie spermatife: þat is to seie mater of sperme, down to þe ballokis / & þefore it is seid if þat þo veynes weren kutt, a man schulde neuere engendre⁵ / On þe 16 riȝtside & also on þe liftside of þe necke ben ordeined. ij. nollis⁶ whiche⁷ ben of ligamentis matire, þe whiche proceden out of þe

communi-
cating with
the sinews of
the head.

[1. f. 78]

The neck
contains
veins
and arteries,
ascending
from the
heart,

and bringing
spermatic
matter to the
ballocks,

it contains
also liga-
ments,

² open, Lat. manifestæ, superficial. ³ Lat. arterie occulte. ⁴ MS. ben.

⁵ Avicenna quotes Hippocrates as authority for this curious belief: "Et Hip. quidem dixit in suis intentionibus quod plurimum materie spermatis est ex cerebro & quod descendit ex duabus venis que sunt post ambas aures. Et propter hoc abscindit phlebotomia ambarum generationem & facit incurere sterilitatem." Canon Lib. III, Fen XX, Tract. 1, Cap. 3, ed. Ven. 1523, fol. 5.

⁶ nollis, Latin cervices, seem to be the transverse processes.

⁷ whiche, struck through after nollis.

þese Synwys buȝ devyded manye weyes by þe hed, & þe nekke, & þe face, & þe breste, schuldres, & þe armes; þe braunches of þe 20 synwes of the hed in some place beȝ contynwede & ioyned with þese synwes. And þese synwes buȝ y-clepyde meffynge ryȝte as þe synwes þat comyȝh of þe fore partye of þe brayn beȝ y-clepyde felynge & þese habbiȝ also felynge. Of þese Synwes þat comyȝh 24 of þe spondlis of þe nekke þere beȝ mad brawnys, þe whiche beȝ instrumentes of mevyng of þe partyes. In þe nekke behynde, þere ben y-ordeyned opyn veynes comynge from þe lyffere whiche þat ascenden to þe hed, and vndire þo Veynes þere ben Arteryes y- 28 hud priuylliche, comynge sfrom þe herte & goynge to þe hed for notable profetes. And whanne þat þey han do al here office in þe hed, þey descenden down by þe place þat beȝ behynde þe erys & þey bryngen materie spermatice, þat is to say mater of sperme, don 32 to þe ballokes, & þefore it ys y-seyde: ȝif þat þo Veynes weren y-kutt, a man scholde neuere engendre. On þe ryȝt syde & eke on þe lefte syde of þe nekke þere ben y-ordeyned tweye nollis, þe whyche beȝ of lygamente mater, þe whiche procedeȝ out of þe bonys

Add. MS.
12,056.

to support
the sinews.

Gula,
[³ lf. 78, bk.]
gullet run-
ning from
the mouth to
the stomach.

The gullet
has 2 coats.

The windpipe
is made of
gristle,

boonys of þe heed & of þe spondilis, & þei strecchen down to þe
ecris¹ in lenkþe² beside þe spin boon, & þei ben a couche & a rest-
yng place to þe senewis þat comen out of þe nucha. In þe fore
partie of þe necke þere is gula, þe which þat strecchiþ from þe chyn 4
down to þe forke of þe brest³; & bitwene þe necke & gula wipinne-
forþ þere is ordeyned mary,³ þat is to seie þe wesant; þe which þat
discendiþ of⁴ a smal skyn enuerounyng⁵ al þe mouþ wipinneforþ
& so goyng down to þe stomak, & he is hool & conteyned wip þe 8
stomak, & is of substaunce of þe same stomak, & he discendiþ down
bi þe hyndere partie of þe necke cleuyng to þe spondilis til þat he
come to þe fifþe spondile of þe rigge; & þere he is departid from
þe spondilis, & he declineth into þe ynnere partie til þat he peerse 12
þoruþ þe mydrif⁶, & is compounned of .ij. panniclis, & in þe ynnere
cloþ þere ben braunnys in lenkþe bi þe whiche drauþtis is maad of
mete & of drynk, & þe vttere cloþ þere ben brawnys in brede bi
þe whiche is castyng out of superfluytees; & he haþ noon tran- 16
suersarie, þat is to seie goyng ouerþwert, for wipholdyng is not
nedeful to him. & in þe fore partie of þe brest þere is sett þe
canne⁷ of þe lungis, þe which is compounned of gristil ryngis bounde

¹ *ecris* for *ers*.

² *the forke of the brest*, the clavicle.

³ *mary*, Lat. *meri siue oesophagus*. Arab. *marî*.

⁴ MS. *of*, twice.

⁶ *mydrif*, diaphragma. Wright W., *Gloss.*, page 578, l. 23, XV. cent.

⁷ MS. *same*. Lat. *cauna pulmonis*. See *Vicary*, page 47, note 7.

Add. MS. of þe hed & of þe spondiles, & þey strecchen down to þe ers in 20
12,056. lengþe besydes þe spyne bon, & þey ben a couche & a restyng

[⁸ fol. 83 b]

place to þe synwes þat comyth out of þe nucha. In þe fore partye
of þe nekke þere ys gula whiche þat strecchiþ from þe chyn down to
þe furcle of þe brest; and bytwene þe nekke & þe gulam wipynne- 24
forþ þere ys⁸ y-ordeyned mery—þat ys to seie þe wesand; þe whiche
þat discendiþ of a smal schyn environyng alle þe mouth withynne-
forþ, & so goyng down to þe Stomak, & he ys hol & conteynde wip
þe Stomak, & ys of Substaunce of þe same stomak, & he dissendiþ 28
down by þe hyndere partye of þe nek cleuyng to þe spondelis; tyl
þat he come to þe .v. spondile of þe rugge, & þere he ys departyde
from þe spondelis and declyneth into þe Innere partye tyl þat he
perce þorwe þe mydryff, & he ys componed of twey pannycles, and 32
in þe Innere cloþ þere ben brawnys in lengthe, by þe whiche drauþte
ys made of mete & drynke, and in þe vtter cloþ þere bene brawnys
in brede by whom ys made castyng out of superfluyte; and he haþ
non transversarye, þat ys to seie goyng twartoffere, ffor wythhold- 36
yng ys nouþt nedfful to hym. And in þe fore partye of þe brest
þere is y-set þe canne of longes, þe whiche ys componed off grustlye

togidere wiþ pannicleris ligamentis, hauynge in þe ynnere partie a ful smeþe pannicle ioynynge togidere pilke gristili ryngis. & pilke ryngis whanne þei ben ioyned wiþ merie, þei ben defaultif azens þe
 4 merie / & þe foorme of þe canne of þe lungis is* as it were þe foorme of a cane, ¹þat is to seie a rehed,² of þe which rehed þe
 fourþe partie were kutt away in lenkþe, & aftirward pilke caane is wrie with a sotil clooþ þat whanne þat a greet mussel of mete passe
 8 doun bi þe merye, he schulde not haue lettinge, but pilke pannicle of merye zeueþ stede³ to þe greet mete passynge doun to þe stomak. þe prote-bolle⁴ is maad of iij gristlis, & is sett aboue pese two weies. & boþe on þe riȝt side & on þe lift side of þe caane of þe
 12 lungis þer ben ij. greete veynes þat ben clepid organice or ellis guydes⁵; & vndir þe veynes þer ben greete arteries, & of þe kuttynge of pilke veynes & arteries þer comeþ ofte tyme greete perels, & sumtyme deþ; for þe grete affenite þat þei han wiþ þe herte,
 16 and þe greet noyousnes⁶ þat þei han to þe lyuere, bi hem sonner⁷ blood is euacued, wherfore *spiritus* exaliþ, þe whiche þat ben

and gives way to great morsels.

The 2 Venæ organice (Jugular Veins) and 2 great Arteries go along the windpipe.

An incision into them is dangerous, for they are near the heart and the liver.

² Read *reed*.

³ *zeueþ stede*, Lat. *cedere*. See *Catholicon Angl.*, page 155, to *giffe stede*, *cedere*, *locum dare*. ⁴ *prote-bolle*. See *Vicary*, page 48, note 1.

⁵ *guydes*, Lat. *guidegi*, *Ibid.* p. 48, note 3. Compare Arab. *widāsch*, *vena jugularis*. Matth. Sylv.: "*Guedegi sunt vene guides. Alguidegi in collo flobotomantur.*"

⁶ *noyousnesse*. See *noyous*, *Cathol. Angl.*, page 256. The Latin has: *propinquitatem*, and the translator seems to have been influenced by the preceding *affenite*. ⁷ *sonner*, in margin.

rynges y-bounde togedire wiþ panycleris ligamentes, habbynge in þe Innore partye a ful smeþe pannicle ioynynge togedire pilke
 20 grustly rynges. And pilke rynges, whenne þat þey ben ioynede with mery, þey ben defaultif anonde þe mery. And þe forme of þe canne of þe longes [is]* as yt were þe forme of a cane—þat is to say a reed, of þe whiche reed þe fourþ part were kutt away in lengthe, & aftere-
 24 ward þe canne ys y-wreye wiþ a sotyl cloth, þat whanne þat a grete mosseH of mete passe doun be þe mery, he scholde han not lettynge, but pilke pannicle of mery zeuyth stede to þe grete mete passynge doun to þe stomak. þe protbolle þat is mad of þre grustlys, ys y-sette
 28 aboue pese ⁹two weyȝes. And boþe on þe ryȝte syde & eke on þe lefte syde of þe cane of pese longes, þere beþ tweye grete veynes þat beþ y-clepyde **organice** opere ellys **guydes**. & vndire þe veynes þere ben grete arteryes, and of þe kyttinge of pilke Veynes &
 32 Arteryes þere comyth ofte tymes gret peryle & sumtyme sodeyne deþ; for þe grete afynite¹⁰ þat þey han in þe herte & þe grete noyousnesse þat þey han to þe lyffer, sennore by hem blod ys euacued, wherfore spiritus exaleþ whyche þat buþ frendys, boþe to þe body &

Add. MS. 12,056.

[⁹ fol. 84 a]

¹⁰ a, above line.

The muscles,
nerves, and
vessels of the
neck

[* lf. 79, bk.]

pass in its
longitudinal
direction.

Wounds on
the neck are
either longi-
tudinal or
transverse.

In the latter
case staunch
the blood,

sew the vein,
and the
nerve,

and apply a
preparation

freendis bope to þe body and also to¹ þe soule² / þe ligament³ of þe
þrote is clepid emanence eiþir þe heiþe of þe epiglote, & in þe sidis
of þe þrote þere is sett gula. &³ þe goynge of brawnys, senewis
and cordis, veynes & arteries & her braunchis bi⁴ parties of þe heed 4
proceden aftir þe ordour of eeris,⁵ & þei ben ordeyned in þe necke
& in gula aftir her lenkþe. & herbi þou maist⁶ se þat it is necessarie
a surgian to make hise kuttingis & hise brennyngis bi lenkþe of þe
necke & of þe þrote, & þat þe woundis þat ben maad ouerþwert⁸
ben more perlous, þan þo þat ben in lenkþe /

Now we wolen tretyn of woundis þat ben maad in þis place,
wiþ a swerd or wiþ sum þing semblable to him, or wiþ an arowe or
sum þing semblable to him. & if it be wiþ a swerd, eiþir it is ouer- 12
þwert⁸ eiþir in lenkþe / & if it be ouerþwert⁸ & þere be kutt⁹ greete
veynes eiþer arteries, it is to dreden. Neþeles þou schalt helpe to
staunche þe blood & consowde þe veyne, aftir þe techinge tofore
assigned in þe chapitle of flux of blood. & if þer be a senewe kutt⁹, 16
þanne brynge boþe parties of þe senewe togidere & sowe þe pelliclis
of þe senewe wiþ þe sowynge of þe woundis, as I haue tauzt tofore
in þe place of sowynge of senewis, & leie aboue lumbricus of þe

¹ to, above line.

² Lat.: qui est inter corpus et animam amicabile ligamentum.

³ in, inserted.

⁵ eeris for heeris.

Add. MS. eke to þe soule. þe ligamente of þe þrote ys y-clepyd þe⁶ eminence 20
12,056. opere þe hekþe of þe epiglote, & in þe sydes of þe þrote þere is y-set
gula. & þe goynge of brawnys, cordys, synwes, veynes, arteries &
here braunchys by parties of þe hed proceden aftyre þe ordre of
heres, & þey ben ordeyned in þe nekke & in þe gula aftire here 24
lengþe. And hereby þou maiste ysene, how þat yt is necessarye a
surgyn to maken hys kuttinges, & hys brennynges by lengþe of þe
nekke & of þe þrote, and þat þe woundys þat ben y-mad twarte
offere beþ more perylose, þen þo þat bene in lengthe. 28

Wonde of þe nekke. ¶ Now we wyl tretyn of woundes þat
beþ mad in þis place wiþ a swerd opere with sum þynge semblable
to hym, opere wiþ an arwe, opere with sum þynge semblable to hym.
And ȝif it be wyth a swerde, opere yt ys twarte offere ore in lengthe; 32
and ȝif it be twart offere, and þere ben y-kutt grete Veynes opere
arteryes, hit ys gretly to dreden. Napeles þou schalt helpe to
staunche þe blod & to consoude þe veyne, aftere þe techynge tofore
asygned in þe chapytle off⁷ flux of blod. And ȝif þere be a synwe 36
kutte, brynge þe parties of þe synwe togedyre, & sow þe pellykles
of þe synwe with þe sowynge of þe wounde, as y haue tauzt tofore
in þe⁷ place of sowynge of synwes, and leye aboffe lumbricus of þe

[7 fol. 34 v]

⁶ þe, above line.

- erpe, þat beth erpe-wormes staumpid & boilid wip oile of rosis, & of earth-worms. [1 lf. 80]
 kepe þe sowynge ¹with byndynge, & so procede forþ in al þing¹ of
 þe cure, as it is told in þe chapitle tofore schewid / & if þat þe If the wound
 4 wounde were in lenkþe, it is not¹ necessarie but for to sowe þe is longitudin-
 al it needs
 wounde & caste aboue þe poudre of lyme, frankencense, & sandra- sewing and
 goun, & kepe þe poudre & þe sowynge wip byndynge, til þe wounde puluis
 be ful consowdid / & if þe wounde were maad in þe parties wip an
 8 arowe or wip a knyff, or with a spere or sum þing¹ semblable to hem,
 & if þer be an arowe, drawe him out¹; & if an arowe be drawe out,
 loke if þer folowe emorosogie,² þat is to seie, a greet flux of blood,
 & þanne staunche it aftir þe doctryne þat is told tofore / & if þer An arrow
 must be
 12 be no flux of blood, loke if þer be akþe / & if þer be acþe, putte in drawn out,
 and if
 þe wounde a litil tent¹ þat may holde þe wounde open al a day, þat Emorogie
 (hemorrhage)
 þou maist¹ seen þat þe woundid man schal haue noon acþe / & if ensues,
 staunch the
 he haue noon acþe, lete þe wounde be consowdid; for sumtyme it blood,
 if there are
 pains, tent
 the wound.
 16 happiþ, þat an arowe or sum þing¹ semblable passiþ þoruþ þe necke
 & þe prote, & he touche not þe senewe, arterie, ne veyne, & þanne it
 nedliþ not¹ but þat þe wounde be ³consowdid. & if þer were akþe [3 lf. 80, bk.]
 eiper bigynnyng of swellynge, þanne it were necessarie to fulfille
 20 þe wounde wip hoothe oile of rosis & to putte in a tente not¹ to
² Lat. emorosagia. Matth. Sylv.: "Emorogia. Emorosagia .i. sanguis
 fluxus vel discursus."
-
- erthe þat beþ erthe wormes y-stampyde & boylled wyth oylle of Add. MS.
 roses, & kepe þe sowynge with byndynge, and so procede forþ in alle 12,056.
 þynge in þe cure, as yt is tolde in the chapitle tofore schewyde.
 24 And 3if þat þe wonde were in lengþe, yt ys nozt necessarie but
 forto sowe þe wounde & to casten aboue, þe poudre of lym, ffrank
 ensence & sank¹ dragoun, & to kepe þe sewynge & þe poudre with
 byndynge, tyl þat þe wounde be ful consouded. And 3if þat þe
 28 wounde were y-mad in þo parties with an arwe opere a knyff¹, opere
 a spere, opere sum þynge semblable to hem, and 3if þere be an arwe,
 drawe hym out, and 3if þe arwe be drawen out, loke 3if þere folwe
 emorosogie, þat ys to seye, a gret flux of blod, & þenne staunche hym
 32 aftere þe doctryne y-told tofore. & 3if þere be non flux of blod,
 loke 3if þere be akþe; & 3if þere be akþe, put into þe wounde a
 lytel tente þat may holde þe wounde opyn al day, þat þou may se
 þat þe wounded man schal han non akþe. And 3if he haue non akþe,
 36 lete þe wounde be consoudyde; ffor sum tyme it happith, þat an
 arwe, oper sum thyng semblable passith þorwe þe nekke & þe prote,
 & 3it he touchiþ nozt veyne, arterye, ne synwe, & þenne it nedliþ
 nozt but þat þe wonde be consouded. And 3if þere were akþe opere
 40 ellys a bygynnyng of swellynge, þan yt were necessarie to fulfille
 þe wounde wip hot oyle of roses & to put in a tente nozt to grete,

greet^t, wet in þe zelke of an ey & oile of rosis hoot, & so holde þe wounde open, til þat he zeue quytture, & aftir clense him & aftir consowde him / Vndirstonde þe perilis þat comen for [wondys]* þat ben maad in þis place / þe firste perel is: if þat þe necke be kutt^t 1 ouerþwert^t wiþ a swerd, so þat þe necke-boon & þe marie of þe necke-boon be al atwo, it is deedliche. & if þat nucha, þat is mary of þe necke boon, is not kutt^t al atwo but is hurt, it is perile of lesynge, felynge & meuynge,¹ & at þe laste be deed, but if þat 8 medicyns þat I schal telle moun helpe / & if þat ony veyne or ony greet senewe be kutt^t ouerþwert^t, I suppose þat he be heelid, þe necke schal neuere haue² his free meuynge; & if þat ony of þe veynes organik, þe whiche þat ben clepid guydes, or ellis ony of þe 12 arteries þat ben vndir hem be kutt^t, it is drede of sodeyn deef, for sodeyn exalacioun of þe spiritis & also for affinite of þe herte; & also if þat þe cane of þe lungis be kutt^t ouerþwert^t al atwo, for þe more partie it is deedliche / Also it is seid, þat if þe veynes þat 16 ben bihynde þe eeris bee kutt^t al atwo, he ne schal neuere engendre. And also sumtyme it is kutt^t eiþir prickid þe senewe þat is clepid reuersif^t, þat is vndir boþe sidis of þe eere, of þe whiche kuttinge or prickynge euermore is maad hosnesse⁴ / And if þat þe places 20

Nota. Houseness follows the cutting of the "reversif nerve" (auricularis posterior).

¹ Lat.: est periculum amissionis sensus et motus. ² haue, in margin.
⁴ hosnesse. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 248. "hoorsnesse, Rancor."

Add. MS. 12,056. y-wett in þe zolke of an eyze & oyle of roses hot, & so holde þe wounde open to þat he zyfe quyter, & afterwarde clanse hym & afterwarde consoude hym. Nota: vndirstande þe peryles þat comen from wondys* þat ben maad in þis place. þe firste ⁵Perel ys: 3if þat þe nekke be kutte twarte offere with a swerd, so þat þe nekke-bon & þe marye of þe nekke-bon be y-kut al atwo, yt is dedlyche; and 3if þat nucha, þat ys þe marye of þe nekke-bon, is nozt y-kut al atwo but ys y-hurt, yt is peryle of leosynge, ffelynge & meffynge, & 28 at þe laste to be ded, but 3if þe medycines þat y schal tellen afterwarde mowe helpen. And 3if þat enye Veynes opere enye gret synwe be y-kut twart offere, y suppose þat he be helyde, þe nekke schal neuere haue hys fre meffynge; and 3if enye of the veynes 32 organyk^t whiche þat beþ clepyde guydes, opere ellys enye of þe arteries þat beþ vndire hem beþ y-kut, yt ys drede of sodeyne deþ, ffor sodeyne exalacioun of þe spiritis & also for Afynyte of þe herte; & also 3if þat þe canne off þe longes be y-kut twarte offere al 36 atwo, for þe more partye it is dedlyche; & so it ys seyde 3if þat þe veynes þat beþ belhynde þe eres be y-kut al atwo, he schal nevire engendre. Also sum tyme ys y-kut opere y-prekyde þe synwe þat is clepyde reuersif^t, þat ys vndire boþe þe sydes of þe ere, of whose 40 kuttinge opere prekynge euere more ys maad horsnesse. And 3if

ben peersid with an arowe, & þou þat trache arterie be peersid or ellis ysophage, so þat nucha be nouzt prickid bi þe mydle, þanne 3itt¹ he may be heeled wip gode medicyns & acordynge.

- 4 þou schalt helpe nucha þat is hurt in þis maner: þou schalt helde into þe wounde, in þe bigynnyng, oile of rosis, & aftirward do yn oile of rosis & zelke of an ey medlid togidere, and þou schalt be bisy in al maner to aswage akþe; & whanne þat quytture is 8 maad, þanne leie a mundificatif wip medicyns confortatiuis & incarnatiuis maad in þis maner / Take oile of rosis colate 3.iiij., wex, rosyn of ech two dragmis, terbentine .iiij. 3, frankencense, mastik of ech .i. 3, mirre, sarcocol,¹ mummie² of ech 3.ß., barly mele 3.ß., 12 streyne it on a clop & ³leie it on þe nucha þat is hurt. & þei þat hereof⁴ pronosticioun schulde go tofore, þe which schulde schewe to yuel, neþeles bi þis medicyn þer comþ a rectificacioun to þe nucha, & melioracioun of meuyng of lymes, þat ben byneþe þe 16 place of þe nucha þat is hurt, more helpinge, þat semeþ possible to þe leche. For þer is no þing vnpossible to stalworþe⁵ nature; namely, whanne þat it is holpen wip a good leche & wip þingis, þat ben

Treatment if the spinal marrow is hurt.

Apply
Olium
Rosarum.

R

Modus
confortandi
& mundifi-
candi vul-
nera Nuche.

[³ ff. 81, bk.]

Tho' the
prognosis is
unfavourable,
yet medicine,

Nota

nature and
the physician
may help.

¹ *Sarcocolla*, Gr. Σαρκοκόλλα, "is the Gumme or liquore of a tre growyng in Persia." Halle, *Table*, p. 109.

² *mummie*, *mumia*. See Halle, *Table*, p. 72, and Notes.

⁴ MS. of here.

⁵ *stalworthe*. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, s. v. *Stalwart*.

- þat place ben y-perced with an arwe, & þow þat trachea arteria be 20 y-percyde opere ellys ysophage, so þat Nucha be nozt prilled be þe mydle, þey mowe ben y-helyde with gode medycines & acordynge. þou schalt helpe Nucha þat ys y-hurt in þis manere: þou schalt helden into þe wounde in þe bygynnyng oyle of roses & afterwarde 24 leye aboffe oyle of roses & þe zelke of an eyze, and þou schalt be busy in alle manere to aswage akþe; & whenne þat quyter ys y-mad, þenne leye a mundificatyff wip medicynes confortatyff and ⁶Incar- natyfes y-mad in thys manere: R. oyle of rosis colat .3. iiij, with ⁷ 28 resyne ana. 3. ij, terbentyne 3. ij, frank ensence, mastyk ana. 3. i, mirre, sarcocolle,⁸ mumie ana. 3. ß, barly mele .5. ß; streyne it on a clop & leye yt on þe nucha þat is hurt. And þaw þat hereof euere more pronosticacion scholde go tofore whiche scholde sownen to 32 yuele, napeles by þis medicine þere comyþ rectificacioun to þe nuca, & amelioracioun off mevyng of lymes þat bep beneþe þe place of þe nuca þat ys y-hurt, more helpynge, þenne semyþ possible to þe leche. For þere ys noþyng vnpossible to Stalworth nature; namlyche 36 whanne þat yt is holpen wip a gode leche & wip þynges, þat bep

Add. MS.
12,056.

[⁶ fol. 85 b]

⁷ wip for wax.

⁸ MS. *sarceticolle*.

Wounds of
the brain, the
Spinal Cord,

and the
principal
nerves

[4 lf. 82]
are mortal.

Avoid such
hopeless
cases.

helpinge & acordynge to a good intencioun / Here vndirstonde þat
al maner wounde þat peersip to þe substaunce of þe brayn or ellis
to þe nucha, so þat bi þer hurtynge of þe nucha þe meuyng & þe
felynge of summe lymes ben lost, nameliche from þe whirle-boonys 4
of þe rigge, of þe reynes vpward, & al maner wounde þat is maad
in þe extremittees of¹ þe lacertis² as .iiij. fyngir mele³ brede vndir þe
schuldris, eiper .iii. fyngir mele brede aboue þe elbowe eiper byneþe,
eipir .iiij. fyngir mele aboue þe kne or byneþe / & ech wounde þat is 8
in a senewe place with strengest akþe & hardnes, ⁴schal be deemed
deedlich, for þe nobilte of pilke brayn, & for þe affinite of þe nucha
wiþ þe brayn, of þe which nucha passip as a reuere⁵ from a welle,
& for þe affinite of pilke senewe wiþ þe brayn bi mene of nucha, of 12
þe whiche þei passen out as a flood / Wherefore þou schalt euermore
in sich maner woundis pronosteken deth, & euermore fle as miche
as þou myzt from vnresonable curis, but if þou be with þe more
instaunce y-preied / Neþeles sumtyme nature wiþ good helpinge 16
worchip þat semeþ to þe leche vnpossible, neuer-þe-lattere loue noon
sich [cures]* but if þou be greetliche preied & þanne entermete of
þe cure of þe sike man //

¹ MS. *as*. Lat. in extremitatibus lacertorum.

² *lacertis*, the sinewy part of the arm. See *Vicary*, p. 57, note 1.

³ *iiij fyngir mele brede*. Lat. tribus digitis.

⁵ MS. *rēuere*.

Add. MS.
12,056.

of
woundes
þat ben
dedlich

[6 fol. 86 a]

helpynge & acordynge to a gode entencioun. Here vndirstande þat 20
alle manere wounde þat persith to þe substaunce of þe brayn opere
ellys to þe nuca, so þat by þe hurtynge of þe nuca þe meffynge &
þe ffelynge of some lymes ben y-lost, namlyche from þe whirle-
bonys of þe rugge, of þe reynes vpwarde, & alle manere wounde þat 24
ys mad in þe extremities of þe lacertes as þre fyngre mele brede in
þe schuldres, opere þre fyngre mele brede aboue þe elbowe opere by-
neþen, opere þre fyngre mele aboue þe kne opere byneþene, & euery
wounde þat ys in a synwey place with strengest akþe & hardnesse, 28
schal be demyde dedlyche: ffor þe noblete of pilke brayn, & for þe
Affynite of nuca wyth þe brayn, of þe whiche nuca passith as þe
Ryuere from a welle, & for þe Afynite of pilke Synwes wiþ þe brayn,
by mene of þe Nuca, of whom þey passen out as of a flod, where- 32
fore ⁶þou schalt eyure more in swiche manere woundes pronostiken
deþ, and euere more fle as myche as þou mayst from vnresonable
cures, but 3if þou be wiþ þe more Instaunce y-preyzed. Naþeles
sumtyme nature with gode helpinges worchith þat semeþ to the 36
leche vnpossible. Neuere þe latere loue non swiche cures* but 3if
þou be gretliche y-preyede, and þenne entyremete of þe cure of þe
syke man.

THe .iiij. chapitle of þe .ij. tretis is of woundis ¶ Cap^m .iiij.^m
of þe spawde,¹ schuldre, arm, handis, fyngris,
brawnys, veynes, & her anotamie /

4 þe spawde is oon of þe .iiij. boonys, þe which þat makþ þe
foorme of þe schuldre / & þe spawde-boon is þinne & brood two-
ward þe schuldris & in hise endis gristly. On þe vpper side of
him he haþ an egge sumwhat greet^t & toward þe arm ²in þe place
8 of þe schuldre he is greet^t & round ; & þilke eende is holowe as a
box, & þis boon is lich to a pele³ wiþ þe whiche men setten breed
into þe ouene, & on þe hyndere partie of the schuldre he haþ an
eminence. & in þe box of þis boon — —⁴ þe which is clepd adiu-
12 torium ; þe which is oon boon sumwhat crokid, greet^t & holowe /
þis boon is greet^t for necessità of strenkþe, & of schap holowe, þat
he were lizt^t, þat he schulde not þoru; his heuynes lette þe worch-
inge of lacertis, & þe round extremite of þis boon entriþ into þe
16 holownes of þe spawde. & þei ben bounden togidere wiþ a bowable
ligament. þe canel-boon⁵ of þe brest is in þis maner maad, hauynge

¹ The Shoul-
der-blade.

² If. 82, bk.]

² The Ad-
jutor
(Humerus)

is strong and
hollow.

The Cannel
bone (Clavicle)

¹ *spawde*, *spatula* = *scapula*, shoulder-blade. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 352.
“*spawde* Armus.” O.Fr. *espalde*.

³ *pele*, Lat. *palla*. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 273, note 4.

⁴ Some words are wanting in both MSS. (*entriþ þe extremite of a boon*).
Lat.: In hac pyside sive concavitate huius ossis, intrat extremitas ossis
adiutorii.

⁵ See *N. E. Dict.* This is the earliest reference for *canelbone* = *clavicula*.

¶ Capit. .iiij. tretis .ij. is of woundes of þe spawde, Add. MS.
schuldre, arme, handis, ffigres, bawnes, veynes, 12,056.
and here Anotamye.

þe spawde ys one of þe .iiij. bonys whiche þat makþ þe forme
of þe schuldre, & þe spawde-bon is þinne & brode toward þe
schuldres & in hys endys gristly. On þe vppere syde of hym he
24 haþ an egge sumwhat gret & toward þe arme in þe place of þe
schuldre he ys grete & rounde. And þilke ende ys holwe as a box,
and þis bon ys lyche to a pele, þe whiche men settyth brede into
þe ovyne, and on þe hyndere partye of þe schuldre he haþ an
28 emynense. & in þe box of þis bon — —* whiche ys y-clepyde ad-
iutorium þe whiche ys a bon sumwhat crokyde, gret & holow. þis
bon ys gret for necessite of strengthe, & of schappe holwe, þat he
were lyzte, þat he scholde nouzt prowen his hevynesse lette þe
32 wirchyng of lacertes, and þe rounde extremite of þis bon entreþ in-
to þe holwenesse of the spawde. & þey beþ y-bounde togedre with
a bowable ligament. þe canel-bon of þe brest ys in this manere

an additament^t *sum*what^t round in þe neþer partie, þe which entrip a maner box, þe which is in þe ouer partie of þe ouer boon of þe .vij. boonys of þe brest. Euery extremite of þilke vij. boonys ben ioyned *with* þe spawde, þat^t þe schuldre myȝte be þe more strengere, 4
 & forto make þis place more strengere, þer ben sett^t .ij. smale boonys, þe whiche ben clepid *rostralia*¹ to þe lijknes of þe bele ²of a crowe, and for to fastne þe schuldre, þis boon rostral is putt^t in maner of a wegge / But þe boon of þe adiutori hap in þe neþer partie twoward 8
 þe elbowe .ij. eminentis, & þe oon of þe eminence is more hizere þan þat^t oþer; & boþe þese eminence ben as þei it^t were holf^t a boket³ wiþ þe which men drawen watir / & pilke .ij. additamentis ben ioyned wiþ þe boonys of þe arm / þe arm from þe elbowe dounward hap .ij. 12
 bonys; & þe ouer boon, þe which þat^t arecchiþ fro þe þombe to þe boon þat^t is clepid *adiutorium*, is þe smallere boon; & þe neþir boon þat^t strecchiþ from þe litil fyngir to þe elbowe is þe grettere boon. & he hap in þe ouer ende twoward þe elbowe an additament^t lijk twoward 16
 a bille or a pike; & þilke pike makip þe elbowe scharp whanne þe arm is folden, & it^t lettip þat^t þe arm may not^t be bowid [bakwarde]*.

Joins with the
Os Rostrale
(Coracoid),
[² lf. 83]

and has 2
eminences.

The Forearm
has two bones
(Ulna and
Radius),

and an "Ad-
ditament"
(Olecranon).

¹ *rostralia*. Coracoids. "*Rostriformis Processus*, a Process of the Shoulder-blade, and of the lower Jawbone."—Phillips.

³ Compare *Vicary*, p. 49, l. 18, where the word *polly* is substituted for bucket.

Add. MS. 12.056. [⁴ fol. 86 b] y-made, habbynge an additamente *sum*what ⁴rounde in þe neþere partye, þe whiche entryth a manere box, þe whiche ys in þe offere 20
 partye of þe ovyre bon of þe vij. bonys of þe brest. And euerye extremyte of þilke vij. bonys beþ y-loyned wiþ þe spawde, þat þe schuldre myghte be þe more stronger; and forto make þis place þe more strengere, þere beþ sette two smale bonys whiche beþ y-clepyde 24
rostralis to þe lyknesse of þe byle of a crowe, & forto fastne þe schuldres, þis bon rostrale ys y-put in þe manere of a wegge. But þe bon of þe adiutorie hap in þe neþere partye towarde þe elbowe tweye emynences, and þe on of þe emynence ys more herre þenne 28
 þe othire; and boþe þese emynence beþ as yt were half^t a bokett^t wiþ þe whiche men drawip water; and þilke tweye Additamentis beþ y-loyned *with* þe bonys of þe arme. þe Arme from þe Elbowe dunwarde, hap two bonys, and þe offere bon whiche þat^t strecchiþ 32
 from þe þowmbe þat ys clepyde *adiutorium* is smallere bon, and þe neþere bon þat strecchith from þe lytel fyngere to þe elbowe is þe grettere bon. & he hap in þe offere ende towarde the elbowe an additament like to a byle oþere a pyk^t, and þilke pyk^t makyth þe 36
 elbowe scharpe, whenne þat þe arme ys y-folden, and it letteþ þat þe arme may noȝt ben y-bowyde bakwarde.* þese tweye bonys beþ

þese .ij. boonys ben so ioyned togidere, þat it¹ semeþ as þou; it² were but³ oo. boon. & þe neþir ende of þese boonys ben ioyned with þe boonys of þe hand, þe whiche ben clepid rasceta,¹ þat ben
 4 .viij. boonys, .iiij. of ²hem ben ordeyned & ioyned with summe additamentis to þe .ij. boonys of þe arm / & þe opere .iiij. ben conteyned³ with þe boonys of þe hand þat ben clepid pecten⁴ / þe firste boon of pecten is ioyned with þe firste boon of rasceta,⁵ & þe
 8 opere .iiij. in þe same maner outaken þe þombe. — ⁶þat haþ .iiij. boonys as þe opere fyngris han, conteyneþ³ his firste boon wiþ þe extremite of þe ouer fosile,⁷ & þe þombe euenliche azenstondip þe strenkþe of þe opere fyngris in clicchinge.⁸ & alle þese boonys þat
 12 mencion is maad of, þat ben in ioynturis, as þe schuldris, elbowis, raschet, & þe knottis of alle þe fyngris, ben ioyned togidere bi mene of ligamentis, as it is seid tofore / & þese boonys ben clopid wiþ symple fleisch & brawnys after þat þe dyuersite of foorme of lymes
 16 askip /

& alle þe greete senewis proceden out of nucha, þe whiche senewis ben concounned wiþ ligamentis & wiþ symple fleisch, makynge brawnys meuyng þo parties; of þe whiche brawnys
 20 summe ben open to a mannys siȝt, & summe ben hid; for þei ben departid in two ⁹þe leeste parties¹⁰ / þere ben .iiij. brawnys open in þe fleischy partie of þe arm, bitwene þe schuldre & þe elbowe: oon on þe ynnere half, anopir on þe vttere half, anopir on þe lowere
 24 half, anopir on þe hizere half. Whanne þe ynnere brawn is drawe togidere þanne is þe arme foldid ynward, & þe contrarie brawn on

To the arm-bones are joined the 8 hand-bones, the Rasceta.

[² lf. 83, bk.]

The wrist articulates with the 4 metacarpal bones.

The thumb has 3 phalanges.

The Sinews, Ligaments, and simple flesh form the Muscles.

[⁹ lf. 84]

The Upper Arm has 4 Muscles.

When the inner Muscle contracts,

¹ *Rasceta*, Arab = carpus. Castelli, *Lexicon medic.*, p. 139. See Littré: "rchette," and Devic Suppl. to Littré. *Dict.*

³ *conteyned*, *conteyneþ* for *continued*, *contynueþ*.

⁴ *pecten*, Latin, pecten manus. See Halle, *Treatise of the Anatomye*, p. 62 (A.D. 1562). "And after these bones Rasceta, are constitute the bones of the palmes of the hands, called Ostea metacarpis. i. Postbrachialia, Palma, vel manus pectus." The corrupt form *Patinis* occurs in *Vicary*, p. 50, l. 9.

⁵ MS. *pasceta*.

⁶ Two words (þe þombe) are wanting. Latin: Nam pollex tria habens ossa. . . . He counts the metacarpal bone of the thumb as a phalanx.

⁷ *fosile*, Latin: focile. See *Vicary*, p. 49, note 3.

⁸ *in clicchinge*, Latin: (pollex) ut sit solus ex opposito comprehendens cum aliis firmitus, et firmitus retinens apprehensum.

¹⁰ Lat. in tres partes minimas diuiduntur.

so y-Ioynede togedire, þat it semyth as on bon. And þe neþere ende of þese bonys beþ y-Ioyned wiþ þe bonys of þe hande, whiche beþ
 28 y-clepyde rasceta þat beth viij bonys.

Here the Add. MS. ends.

the outer extends.

The muscles end in Cords near the joints of the arm.

[4 lf. 84, bk.]

N

From the Vena Cava one branch runs to each armpit,

where it divides into 2.

1. at the elbow called Basilica,

in the right hand Salvatella, in the left hand Splenatica;

þe vttere half¹ is maad long^t; & whanne þat^t þe vttere brawn of þe¹ arm is maad schort^t, þanne is þe arm drawe outward & þe ynnere is maad long^t; & in þe same maner by² opere .ij. brawns, þe arm is houe vp & lete falle doun / & whanne þat^t alle þe brawns traueilen 4 liche myche, þe arm stant^t euene riȝtliche & deelyneþ to no partie / & þese brawns,³ .iiij. fyngir mele from þe ioyniture of þe schuldre, ben nakid cordis, & þei ben þe same from þe ioyniture of þe elbowe & in þe myddil of þe adiutorie, þat^t is þe place þat^t is from þe 8 schuldre to þe elbowe; þe cordis ben multiplied dyuersliche wiþ fleisch to þe composicioun of þe same brawns, .iiij. fyngir mele aboute þe elbowe. & .iiij. fyngir mele by⁴neþe þe elbowe ben nakid cordis; & þere þei maken anopir⁵ brawn; & in þis maner ben 12 maad nakid cordis & generacioun of brawns, til euery lyme haue his meuynge, after þat^t it nedip him.

In boþe þe armes ben .iiij. open veynes þat^t comen from þe lyuere, & ben scharpeled⁶ þoruþ þe arm. For þere is a braunchid 16 veyne þe which wexip on þe vttere partie of þe lyuere, & is dyuydid in two parties: oon arisyng, anopir discendynge; þe veyne arisyng comeþ to þe mydrif^t; & sum partie of hir is sparpoiled⁷ þoruþ þe mydrif^t & þe lymes of þe brest / þat^t opere partie of þe veyne passip 20 to þe arm-hoolis, & þere he is forkid. & þat^t veyne passip byneþe the arm to þe elbowe, & þere sche may be seen; & he is clepid basilica⁸ or ellis epatica, & aftirward he strecchip bi þe nepir partie of þe arm to þe hond, bitwene þe litil fyngir & þe leche⁹ fyngir, & 24 sche is clepid saluatella¹⁰ or ellis epatica in þe riȝthond, & in þe lift-hand splenatica. þe topir partie of þis veyne þat^t is dyuydid fro þis assellari strecchip to þe vttere partie of þe schuldre: & þere is

¹ brawn, struck through after of þe.

² MS. ben.

³ ben, inserted.

⁵ corde, cancelled, after anopir.

⁶ ben schorpeled, Latin: disperguntur—O.Fr. escharpiller, mettre en pièces. See Godefroy.

⁷ is sparpoiled, Latin: dispergitur—O.Fr. esparpeiller. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 351, note 6.

⁸ Basilica. See *Vicary*, p. 52, note 5. There is one reference for φλεψ βασιλική given in *Stephanus Thes.*, from Synesius, *De febris*, which is a translation of an Arab. treatise by Constant. Africanus.

⁹ leche fyngir. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 291, note 4. O.E. *læcefinger*, *Leechd.*, vol. i. p. 394. See Notes.

¹⁰ Salvatella. See *Vicary*, p. 53, note 1. Dufresne gives one reference for Salvatella with a different meaning: "Pellicula involvens cerebrum." It occurs frequently in the Latin translations of Arab. authors, and translates Arab. sceilem or osalemon.

- ¹dyuydid. & þe oon partie goiþ to þe heed & þe opir partie to þe arm. & þilke is eftsoones dyuydid, & þe oon partie is spred bi þe arm manye weies wipoute forþ, þat is clepid funis²; & þe opere
 4 partie strecchiþ euene to þe elbowe, & þere sche is schewid bi þe ouer partie of þe arm; & so sche strecchiþ to þe hand, & þere sche apperijþ bitwene þe fyngir and þe þombe, & is clepid cephalica. ij. braunchis þat^t ben diuided þat^t comen fro þe schuldre, þe toon is
 8 cephalica, þe opere from assillari,³ þat^t is basilica, maken oon veyne þat^t is clepid mediana eiper purpurea. & þere ben .iiij. veynys, as it is seid bifore, *scilicet*, finis⁴ brachij þat^t strecchiþ bi þe vttere partie
 12 of þe arm, & sephelica þe which þat^t strecchiþ bi þe ouer partie, & basilica þat^t strecchiþ bi þe lower partie & communis seu mediana seu purpurea seu fusca *quod idem est* is comun veyne eipir myddil
 veyne, þe which þat^t is compounned of basilica & cephalica tofore seid, & sche apperijþ openliche in þe foldyng of þe myddil of þe
 16 arm. // ¶ Þe veynes þat^t comen from þe lyuere han manic departingis⁵ & dyuers placis, & for to telle alle þe departyngis, it is not profitable for a sirurgian / Saue it suffisijþ for a sirurgian, for to knowe in
 what place þe grete veynes sitten & þe arterijs, so þat he mowe
 20 saue him-silf from perel & helpe hem, whanne þei ben kutt / þis þou schalt wite, þat^t from þe lyuere þer comeþ a veyne to euery lyme bicause of nurischinge. & for to make þe lymes ful of lijf, Arterijs comen þerto also. & þefore in euery place þere þat^t ben
 24 grete veynes, in þe same place ben arterijs.
- ¶ Bi þes þingis þat ben aforseid, þou maist wite wel þat^t þere comeþ greet perel of woundis, þat^t ben aboute þe schuldris & vndir þe arme-pittis,⁶ & in þe boon of adiutorie, & in þe arm, & in þe
 28 hondis / for whi: if woundis be maad in adiutorijs & in þe arme ouerþwert, it is greet perel lest þe braun be kutt away, wherby þe arme schulde haue his meuyng; & it is perel of kuttinge of veynes and arterijs, lest þe blood myzte not be staunchid. ¶ And
 32 if it be maad a wounde with a þing þat prickide, & falle vpon a

[1 lf. 85]
 2. the other runs a. into the head;
 3. one branch, funis, outside the arm;
 4. another branch, Cephalica, along the arm, between the thumb and the 1st finger.
 The Basilica with the Cephalica form the Mediana.

Besides these 4 chief Veins,

there are many smaller ones,

[5 lf. 85, bk.]

which a Surgeon needn't know.

With every vein there is an Artery.

Off perelles off woundes an quettes,

if an important muscle is out

or a blood-vessel, if a Cord or Tendon is wounded,

² *funis*, Castelli, *Lexic. Medicum*, p. 351. "Arabes venam Medianam vocasse Funem brachii, testatur Ioh. Zecchius, lect. ii. in sect. 1. *Sph. Hipp.* p. m. 109." On this place *funis* evidently means not the vena mediana, but one of the recurrent veins.

³ *Vena ascellaris*. Matth. Sylv.: "Vena communis nigra purpurea media — dicitur communis quoniam componitur ex assellari et humerali."

⁴ *finis* for *funis*.

⁶ *þe arme-pittis*. See *Wr. W.*, 627. 3. xv. cent.

[1 lf. 86]
where cramp
may arise,

especially if
it is the ten-
don of the
elbow.

Treatment :
A wound
along the
arm is not
dangerous,

and must be
sewn.

If nerves or
blood-vessels
are cut,

[3 lf. 86, bk.]
staunch the
blood,
join the
nerves or
cords

and apply a
defensive
medicline.

If the pains
do not cease,
open the
suture,

and fill the
wound with
oil of roses

[5 lf. 87]
until pus is
discharged.

corde þat is in þe ¹ende of þe braun, & is clepid thenantos,² þanne it is greet drede of þe spasme & aftirward of deep, for þe akyng eutriþ in þe corde þat is prickid, & so þe akyng arisiþ vp to þe brayn, & þanne comeþ spasme. ¶ Also it falliþ many tyme þat a 4 man is hurt þe brede of iij. fyngris wiþinne aboue þe elbowe, þer is þe eende of þe braun & þere ben cordis; & þanne þer wole come greet akyng, & þanne þe spasme aftir, & pese woundis ben mortal.

¶ If þat wounde be maad endlongis in þe arme & in adiutorio, 8 þanne it is not so greet drede þerof, þerfore it is necessarie for a sirurgian to knowe þe perel of woundis þat falliþ in þis place, & wheþer þe wounde be ouerþwert or endelongis. & if þe wounde be endelongis, þanne he schal ioyn þe wounde togidere & sewe hem, 12 & sprynge þeron þe poudre of lyme & ofere þingis, as it is aforeseid, for to kepe þe sewyngis & þe ligaturis togidere & alle þingis as it is aforeseid in þe wounde of fleisch. ¶ If þer be ony nerues, or arterijs, ouþer veynes kutt ³ ouerþwert: þanne þou schalt worche 16 with þingis þat streyneþ blood, & þou schalt sewe þe hedis of þe nerues togidere or of þe cordis. & þe pacient schal be kept from akyng wiþ good kepinge & with reste, & he schal ligge in an euene bed. & þou schalt leie aboute þe wounde a defensif of bole & of 20 oile of rosis þat is aforeseid / And þou þis defensijf be forþete in ofere woundis, in þis wounde it may not in no maner. ¶ þou schalt kepe þe sewyngis & þe ligaturis with poudre & lynet, as it is aforeseid / Also þis þou must knowe if þou sewist sich a maner 24 wounde of nerues & cordis, & if þe akyng go not away, þou muste rippe þe sewyng azen, & þou þis be contrarie to þe soudyng of þe nerues, zitt it is bettere to do ⁴ þus, þou he lese þe meuyng of sum lyme, þat þe nerue seruede þerfore, þan falle in þe spasme; 28 for þanne it were drede of deep / þerfore it is necessarie for to opene þe wounde & fille it ful of oile of rosis & of 3elke of an ey. & vpon ⁵ þe wounde leie of þe same medicyn til þe wounde quyt- ture, & þanne make þe wounde clene with mundificatiues, & þanne 32 regendre fleisch as it is aforeseid // If it be so þat þere come ony hoot apostymes vpon woundis in þis place: þanne þou schalt worche as it is aforeseid in a propre chapitre // If it so be, þat þou leie vpon þe wounde oile of rosis, & 3elke of an ey for to do awei þe 36

² *thenantos*, sinew. Matth. Sylv.: "Tenantos gre. est chorda que in capitibus musculorum aggregatur." It is a corrupt form of Gr. *τένοντες* (Suidas Gloss.).

⁴ *do* above line.

akyngē, & if þere falle a flux of blood, & þanne if þou leidist þerto
 ony constreyning þingis, þe akyngē wolde be þe more, & if þou
 leidist þerto þe ʒelke of an ey & oile, þat wole make þe flux of
 4 blood þe more—In þis caas what is for to done? þou schalt brene
 þe hedis of þe veynes & of þe cordis with an hoot yrn, but þou
 schalt not touche þe lippis of þe wounde wip iren in no maner; &
 þanne þou schalt leie in the wounde þe ʒelke of an ey & oile of
 8 rosis, til al þe rynde of þe brennyng falle awei. & þanne þou schalt
 leie þerto mundificatiues, & þanne þou schalt regendre fleisch, and
 þanne þou schalt soude þe wounde /

If oil causes
hemorrhage,
and styptics
pain,

then use the
**Cauterium
actuale**
(red-hot
iron).

1 Of woundis of thoracis & of þe brest & of þe
 12 membris þat ben conteyned in it, & anothamia. [1f. 87, bk.]

THorax is maad of .vij. boonys & euery boon at þe eende is
 cartilagosum / þese .vij. boonys ben ioyned togidere in þis
 maner þat euery leeneþ vpon opir, & wip þese .vij. boonys ben maad
 16 fast .vij. ribbis þat ben grete ribbis, & þo .vij. ribbis ben maad fast
 in þe rigge boon bihynde, & þese ribbis ben crokid / Wipinne² þese
 .vij. ribbis ben v. ribbis þat ben lasse, & ben clepid lital ribbis, &
 20 of a man þei haue no fastnyngē to no boon, saue þei ben maad fast
 with lacertis.³ & bitwixe þe .viij. boon & þe .ix. boon, diafragma is
 maad fast, for to bigynne tellyngis of boonys aboueforþ. & þis
 diafragma departiþ þe spirituals from þe guttis. & in þe holownes
 24 þat is aboue liggip þe herte & þe lungis /

¶ V. Co.

The Brest has
7 bones with
gristly ends,

7 true,

5 false Ribs,

and the
Diafragma,
which diuides
the Spiritual
Members
from the
guts.

þe herte⁴ is maad of hard fleisch & strong⁵ & of lacertes⁵ þat þei
 miȝte be hard, þat it ne schulde take a greuaunce liztli.⁵ & perfore
 summen seiden þat it is al braun; but it is not so, for þe braun of
 28 a man meueþ whanne he wole, & restiþ, & þe herte is alwei meuyngē
 & not reste. & þe herte is schape aftir a pyne, & hangip in þe
 myddil of þe hizere holownes, & hangip sum-what to þe liftside-
 ward; & þe hizere perof⁶ is brood, & þat place is medlid wip car-
 32 tilaginosi ligaturis, & is maad fast in þe lungis⁶; & þe lungis
 touchip not þe herte, saue in þe aboue, þere it is maad fast togidere,

[4 1f. 88]

The heart is
made from
muscular
fibres,

is like a pine,

is surrounded
by Pannicles
(Pericard-
ium),

² wipinne. The Latin has *infra*, which the translator took for *intra*.

³ lacertis. See *Vicary*, page 57, note 1.

⁵ Avicenna, Lib. III., Fen XI., Tract. I., Cap. 1, ed. Venet, 1527, f. 204:
 "Cor quidem creatum est ex carne forti ut sit longinquum a nocumento."

⁶ lungis, a mistranslation of *panniculi*. The pericardium is also called
 panniculus cordis.

and has
ij. ventriclis.

& þe lunge defendiþ þe herte from greuance. & þe herte hap two ventriclis .i. two holowe placis wipinne, & þat oon ventricle sittip in þe riȝtside of þe herte, & þat oþer in þe lifside¹; & þese ventriclis holdiþ & resseyueþ eir & norischiþ þe herte / In þe riȝt ventricle 4

Into the right
one comes a
Vein from the
liver,
[¹ If. 88, bk.]

comeþ a greet veyne þat is clepid ramosa² þat comeþ from gibbo³ epatis, & comfortiþ diafragma, & peersiþ þoruȝ diafragma. & þis veyne is ful of greet⁴ norischinge blood & hoot, & it norischiþ lymes of greet substance. & þis veyne goiþ bi þe riȝtside of þe 8 herte, & filliþ þe herte ful of norischinge blood. & þanne þe blood in þe herte sutillip⁵ & filliþ ful þe two ventriclis of þe herte, & of þis clene blood þe spirit is engendrid; which spirit is more cleer & more schynyng⁶ & more sutil, þan ony bodi þat is maad of þe iiij. 12 elementis. & þefore it is turnid⁶ into heuenly bodies, & it is bitwixe a mannys bodi & his soule a louely byndynge. ¶ And of þe lift ventricle þere wexiþ out ij. [arteries]⁷ and þat oon þerof hap a maner coote, & þefore of summen it is clepid arteria venalis.⁸ & 16

and fills the
Heart with
nourishing
blood,
which is
refined
into a clear
spirit between
body and
soul.

From the left
Ventricle
springs
arteria
venalis

and the Aorta
from which
all other
Arteries pro-
ceed.

þis arterie berip sutil blood to þe lungis & norischiþ þe lungis / And þat oþere arterie hap .ij. cootis. & of þe ilke⁹ comeþ alle þe arteries in a mannys bodi, & ben departid in euery lyme of a mannys bodi. & þese arterijs makip alle a mannys lymes to haue lijf & spiritis; 20 & alle þes arterijs & alle þese spiritis þat ben aforeseid; and þese arterijs goiþ to þe brayn¹⁰ & þei goiþ to þe lyuere & ȝeueþ him vertu ful myche & makip defynge / And þese arterijs goiþ to a mannys ballokis & ȝeueþ him vertu for to engendre; & in þis place 24 þe vertu of alle þe spiritis of a mannys bodi ben ioyned togidere.¹¹

[¹⁰ If. 89]

¹ The translator has omitted the following passage: "In medio illorum duorum ventriculorum est quedam fouca: & vocatur a quibusdam ventriculus tertius, super ventriculo dextro et sinistro. Item duo additamenta cartilaginosa fortia et flexibilia quandam habentia concauitatem, et constringuntur & dilatantur, & recipientes & retinentes nutrimentum et aerem ad nutriendum et temperandum cor."

² The translation is not correct. Lat.: "ad dextrum nanque ventriculum venit una vena ex ramosa vena." This vein is the vena cava inferior, which gets the blood from the liver by the venæ cavæ hepaticæ. "The seconde veyne is called Vena choele, or Vena concaua, and of some Vena Ramosa." Halle, *Anatomie*, page 78.—1565.

³ gibbus. See *Vicary*, page 69, note 1. ⁵ sutillip. Latin: subtiliatur

⁶ MS. *turid*. Latin: vergit in naturam supracelestium corporum.

⁷ arteries, wanting. ⁸ Arteria venalis. See *Vicary*, page 58, note 1.

⁹ MS. inserts, *ij cootis*

¹¹ The translation is corrupt. Lat.: Iste namque spiritus cordialis, qui per viam quæ dicta est a corde sumit originem, sicut omnes virtutes, quarum est instrumentum, cum ad ventriculos peruenit cerebri, aliam ibi recipit digestionem, quæ meretur formam suscipere spiritus animalis, & ita ut ad epar dirigitur, in ipso formam recipit nutritiui, et in testiculis generatiui, donec

¶ *þe lungis ben maad of .iij. substauncis: of fleisch þat is* *þe lungs are made of*
recchingē,¹ & braunche of arterijs, & of veynis,² & of cartilaginis *3 tissues,*
þat ben holow, & þese goþ out of canna pulmonis as it is afore- *flesh, vessels,*
4 seid. ¶ þe profit þat þe lungis doiþ a man is þis: þe lungis drawiþ *and liga-*
eir into þe herte, for to do awei þe fume & þe vntemprid heete of
þe herte, & mak iþ þe herte in tempre hete / And in tyme whanne *They bring*
þe herte is constreyned, þanne it is necessarie for to drawe coold eir *cool air to*
8 to þe herte; & if þe lungis myzte not drawe eir to þe herte, þe *the heart.*
spirit of lijf schulde be stoppid, & so a man schulde be deed / &
þerfore it is necessarie þat a man haue clene eir, for þe eir passiþ *They bring*
þoruþ þe lungis þat ben tendre & goiþ to þe herte; & þerfore vnclene *the air ought*
12 eir doiþ harm to þe lungis & also to þe herte. & þerfore þe lungis *to be clean.*
ben ³departid into .ij. placis, & if þer falle ony harm to þe oon *[3 lf. 89, bk.]*
partie of þe lungis, þanne þat opere partie beriþ al his charge //

¶ *Woundis þat ben maad in þe brest. If þe wounde go into þe* *Woundis mad*
16 holownes, þanne it is miche to drede þerof, for þanne it miȝte falle *in the brest.*
þat sum substaunce of þe herte miȝte be harmed, & þanne þe wounde
were mortal // ¶ *Ouþer if þe wounde ȝede into þe lungis, þere were* *Wounds of*
greet perel: for þe wounde mai not be helid but if it be soudid *the lungs are*
20 anoon // ¶ *And if þe wounde go þoruþ diafragma, it is mortal /* *dangerous,*
And if it be so þat þe herte be hurt, þere lijþ no⁴ cure þeron, saue *wounds of*
he schal die anoon; for þe herte takiþ no lijf of no lyme of al þe *the midriff,*
bodi, saue þe herte ȝeueþ lyues to euery lyme of þe bodi; & þe *or the heart*
24 herte ordeyneþ alle lymes to vertues, & þe herte is þe welle of lijf; *are mortal.*
& þerfor þe herte mai suffre noon harm, saue ioie ouþer sorowe /
þerfore if þe herte be kutt wiþ a swerd ouþer ony greet arterie þat *When the*
is nyȝ þe herte, þe wounde is mortal; for þe arterijs goiþ to þe herte *heart, the*
28 ⁵ & þanne al þe blood of þe herte & þe spirit passiþ out bi þe arterijs, *well of life, is*
as þou myȝt se bi ensauple of a candel. For if a candel þat *hurt,*
brenneþ, ouþer a weke, be putt al in oile ouþer in grese, þe fier þerof *[3 lf. 89*]*
wole out; in þis same maner is þe spirit of lijf queynt, whanne þe *either the*
32 herte is hurt, for þe greet flux of blood, þat falliþ to þe herte & *blood rushing*
stoppiþ þe spirit of lijf / Ouþer if þer be greet flux of blood com- *to the heart*
ynge fro þe herte, þanne þe spirit passiþ out þerwiþ; as þou miȝt *quenches the*
se bi ensauple of a candel: whanne þe talow of a candel is doon, *flame of life,*
36 or wex, or oile, þanne þe liȝt wole passe, & in þe same maner it

omnis spiritus, omnisque particularis virtutis perfectio cum virtutum operationibus coniungatur. ¹ *recchingē.* Latin: *rara.*

² *braunche of arterijs & of veynes.* Latin: *ramis arteriæ venalis.*

⁴ MS. *do.* Lat.: *Cor autem vulneratum curam non recipit.*

When the lungs are hurt the wound must be stitched before it suppurates.

[² If. 89*, bk.]

Medicines reach the lungs by a long way, and therefore the patients get phthisis.

The midriff is to the heart what bellows are to a fire.

Symptoms if the herte be wounded,

[⁴ If. 90]

and if the lungs be wounded.

Throw a powder into the wound,

and close the wound when the lungs are healed.

De vulnere diafragma.

Symptoms of a wounded midriff.

farisþ bi a mannis lijf, as it is aforseid. ¶ þe lungis wolen take no souding^t whanne þei ben hurt, but if þe leche be þe more kunnyng^t & soude þe wounde or it quytture. For if it qutture, þe lungis moun not be maad clene but wiþ cowzyng^t, & þe more þat þe 4 pacient cowzeþ, þe more þe wounde wexiþ // ¶ Also þe lungis ben euermore meuyng^e; & [if] woundis¹ schulen be soudid in lymes, þe lyne 2 mote reste; & þerfore for þe contynuel meuyng^e of þe lungis, þe woundis þerof ben seid incurable // ¶ Also þouȝ a man wolde 8 soude þe woundis of þe lungis wiþ ony medicyne þat is consolidatif, it ne mai not come þerto but bi a long wey as bi þe stomak, ouþer bi þe lyuere, ouþir bi veynes, & so þe vertu of þe medicyne ne may not come to þe lungs, but bi þe forseid weies; & þerfore men þat 12 ben hurt in þe lungis falliþ in þe tisik³ / ¶ If a man be hurt in diafragma, þer is no remedie þerof; for diafragma is alwei meuyng^e, for þat is an instrument of wijnd to the herte, riȝt as a belowe is an instrument for a fier / For riȝt as a below, whanne he is opened, 16 he takiþ in wijnd, & whanne he is closid, he puttiþ out wijnd & blowiþ þe fier /

¶ If þe herte be woundid, in þis maner þou schalt knowe: þe pacient schal swowne, & þe blood þat cometh out is blak, & he schal 20 siȝe sore, & þanne he is but deed //

¶ If þe lungis ben hurt, þou schalt 4 knowe in þis maner bi cowzyng^e, & þe blood þat goiþ out of þe wounde wole be spumous & cleer / If þe wounde hereof be streit wiþoutforþ, make it largere, 24 & þanne in þe wounde of þe lungis caste poudre of mastix. & olibani,⁵ draganti, gumme arabici, fenigreci ana; & he schal ete no mete saue þat, þat he mai soupe, & penidis⁶ medlid þeron, & loke þat he haue sciелence & good reste, & þat he traueile not; & þou 28 schalt not close þe wounde wiþoute, til þe wounde of þe lungis be sowdid, & þanne soude þe wounde wiþoutforþ //

¶ If þat a wounde be in diafragma, þes ben þe signys þerof: streit secching^e of breeþ, & greet agreuance for to drawe his 32 breeþ, & greet akyng^e in his side, & greuous cowzyngs; alle þese ben signys of deef, & principali if þese signys be greet & greuous /

¹ þat inserted. Lat.: et vulnerata membra indigent ut quiescant.

³ "*Tisica*, Italis et Hispanis Phthisis."—Dufresne. "*Tissick*, an Ulceration of the Lungs, accompany'd with an Hectick Feaver, and causing a Consumption of the whole Body."—Phillips, 1706. *tysyk*, Hampole, 701. "*þat man þat hath þe tisik & þe etik*," Quintess, p. 17, 7.

⁵ *Olibanum*. Thus masculinum. Arab. al-louban (Devic. Dict.). N.E. oliban.

⁶ *Penidium*, barley sugar.

If þese signys ben but litil & not strong^t greuou, þanne ȝeue him Alay the coughing and apply a tent.
metis & drynkis þat mowe swage¹ þe cowȝe, & þanne take a tent^t
þat he not to greet, & wete it in þe ȝelke of ²an ey & oile of rosis, [² If. 90, bk.]

4 & þanne cure þis wounde as þou doist^t opere woundis /

If it so be þat a wounde be in a caua³ & noon of þe forseid If a wound enters into the hollows of the chest
lymes ben not hurt^t, þanne wete a tent^t in oile of rosis hoot^t & putte
in þe wounde; & whanne þou remeuest^t þi medicyne ouper leist^t

8 þerto ony medicyne, be war þat þer passe out noon eir þoruȝ þe beware that no air passes through the wound.
wounde, ne entre in noon eir into þe wounde, & þefore or þou
chaunge þi tent^t, loke þat þou haue þingis þat ben necessarie þefore

redi, þat þe wounde mowe be stoppid anoon, þat þere go no breep
12 into þe wounde, ne out of þe wounde / For if þer go ony breep out,
it wole afeble þe patient, & if þer go ony breep þere, it wole do
harme to þe spaulis. Leie vpon þe wounde oile of rosis & þe ȝelke
of an ey, & herwiȝ wete þi tent^t til þe wounde quytture. & þanne

16 euery dai make him to turne vpon his side, & make him cowȝe & Make the patient cough out the pus.
spitte out þe quytture, & avoide þe quytture bi þe wounde also. &
if þere be myche quytture, & may not be avoidid bi þe wounde,

þanne þou schalt make sich a maner waischinge & putte it yn wiȝ [⁴ If. 91]

20 ⁴an instrument^t maad lijk a clisterie / R .mel ro. ȝ iiij., mirre, R
fenigreci, farine lupinorum ana ȝ ſs, boile hem to þe consumpcioun a loction for wondis within the breast
of þe .iiij. part^t in li j. of swete wijn, & li j. of water, & þanne cole
hem & putte in þe colature as it is aforseid. Vpon þe wounde

24 wiȝoutforþ, from þe tyme þat it quytturiȝ, leie þis mundificatif^t
planed vpon a cloop.⁵ R mel ro. li j., farina ordeï substillissimi. ȝ R
iiij., mirre, fenigreci ana. ȝ j., be þei encorperat⁶ & boildid at esi A cleansing (mundificatif) plaster.
fier / & whanne þei ben weel boildid, & weel medlid togidere so þat

28 it be þicke, do hem doun of þe fier, & do þerto ȝ .iiij. of terbentyne
waischen & medle hem weel togidere. þis emplastre þou schalt
vse, & þe waischingis þat is aforseid, & þou schalt holde open þe
wounde with a tent^t wet in oile, til þe quytture þat is withynne be

32 perfitli dried / þis þou schalt knowe bi þe vertu of þe patient & bi One knows by the odour of the patient's breath
þe sauour of his breep, & whanne his cowȝynge goiȝ awei, & whanne

¹ swage. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 372.

³ MS. *canna*. Lat.: Cum autem vulnus est in cassum penetrans. *Cassus*, Pecten. Semibarbaris ex Arabico. Castellus, Lex. Med. *Casse*, Arab. Kas, cup, calice.—Devic. I would rather trace it from Lat. *cassus* adj. void, hollow, and *cassum*, i = *cassa*, orum sb. the hollows. The latter form *cassa* gave origin to Ital. *cassa* f. See *cassa* del cranio, etc.

⁵ &. Lat.: super pannum distensum. O.Fr. planer, Lat. planare.

⁶ *encorperat*. Lat. incorporatus, O.Fr. encorperer.

if the wound
is clean.

[1 lf. 91, bk.]

When sup-
puration con-
tinues, a weak
patient dies.

If the patient
is strong,
make a new
incision.

Do the same,
if blood and
pus gather on
the midriff.

[* lf. 92]

his vnkyndely heete goiþ awei / If þou doist alle þese þingis to him
þat^t ben aforseid, & þe quytture ¹ be not wiþdrawe þerwith, & his
cowzyng & his akyng be not aswagid, & his vertu be feble, & his
spirit be nouzt, þanne do þou nomore þerto, saue he schal al turne 4
him to goddis merci // ¶ Saue if it so be þat he haue þe cowze &
greet quytture in þe wounde, & he be strongt, & principali if þe
wexe ony swellng in his side bihinde bitwixe þe .iiij. & þe .v. rib,
þan þere þou schalt make a newe kuttyng & lete out þe quytture, 8
& bi þis place drawe out þe quytture, & holde þe wounde open,
& lete þe olde wounde close togidere. & if it be nede, caste yn
þe forseid waischinge bi þis wounde & leie a mundificatif wiþoute
til þe quytture be al aweie, & þis cure þou schalt folowe / It falliþ 12
ofte tyme þat a man is hurt an hiz aboute in þis place, & þanne
þe blood & þe quytture falliþ vpon diafragma & gaderiþ togidere,
þanne þou schalt kerue him bitwixe þe .iiij. & þe .v. rib as it is
aforseid, for þe blood & þe quytture mai haue no cours to þe wounde 16
about; & if he is kutt so byneþe, þanne þe blood & þe quytture
mai be drawe away; ² & if þou doist not þus þe pacient schal die,
& if þou doist þus þe pacient schal be delyuerid wel // Whanne
woundis ben in thorase ouþer in þe brest, & þe woundis ne goon 20
not þoruþ, þanne þou schalt cure him as it is aforseid in opere
woundis //

Of woundis of þornis³ ouþer spondilium, & of þo þat
ben conteyned in him & anothamie ⁴

¶ vj: cº /

The spinal
column is
composed of
20 Spondles
or Vertebrae.

BOnys of þe necke, as we haue aforsed, ben .vij. & rigge boonys
of þe brest ben .xij. & of þe reynes ben .v. riggeboones, &
vndir þe reynes ben .iiij. riggeboones, & vpon þe place þat is clepid⁵
—þe boon of þe tail is maad of .iiij. rigge boones, & þere ben .xxx. 28
¶ Eueri boon of þe rigge is an hole þoruþ, & þoruþ þe ilke hoolis
nucha⁶ goiþ endelongt þe rigge; & euery boon of þe rigge haþ .iiij.
addicouns to him, & summe han mo; þis is not necessarie to telle
to a sirurgian, saue it is necessarie to a sirurgian for to knowe þis: 32

³ MS. þorais. Lat.: De vulneribus spinæ seu spondylium & eorum anatomia. The scribe changed þornis, the translation of 'spinæ,' into þorais, for thoracis, as in the heading to Cap. V. The words: & of þo þat ben conteyned in him are taken from the same Chapter-heading.

⁴ See Vicary's Anatomy, page 74.

⁵ One word is here wanting. Lat.: super locum qui dicitur aboratur alahume. aboratur is perhaps a corruption for ab arabis, alahume is the Os sacrum.

⁶ nucha, Arab. nukha', spinal marrow.

- pat' euery rigt-boon hap a greet' hole, & nucha goip per poru3. & Through the Vertebrae passes the Spinal cord. [1 lf. 92, bk.]
- per ben opere smale hoolis in pe boones bi pe sidis aboutforþ, & pere
- poru3 goon nerues for to holde pe lymes faste ¹ togidere. & so þese
- 4 .xxx. boones ben bounden togidere wiþ stronge ligaturis, & þei ben
- so strongeli bounden togidere pat' þei semeþ al oon boon. þese The Spondiles form the Back-bone.
- boones bineþe pe necke is clepid þe rigge ouper spina, & þis is þe
- foundement of al þe bodi //
- 8 ¶ Woundis pat' ben maad in þis place. If nucha be kutt' The Prognosis is unfavourable, if the Spinal Cord is cut,
- poru3 ouerþwert', þe wounde is mortal for þe nobilte of nucha pat'
- comeþ fro þe brayn rigt' as a ryuer comeþ of wellis.² ¶ And pou3
- nucha be not' kutt' al poru3 saue hurt', it' is greet' perel þerof', for
- 12 þe lymes bineþe schulen lese her meuyng, for þe nerues pat' ben
- aboute þe boones of nucha ben kutt'. & also þe rigge-boones ben or the Spondiles, or the Muscles along the Spine are severally injured.
- kutt' & herof' cometh greet' perel / And if þe braun pat' sittip ende-
- longis þe rigge in boþe sidis of þe rigge-boon & durip³ from þe heed
- 16 adoun anoon to þe tail eende, & if ony of alle þese be kutt' ouper
- prickid, it' is greet' perel for þe spasme, for þe causis pat' ben aforseid /
- þe curis herof' ben lijk to þe curis pat' ben aforseid of opere
- woundis, saue it' is necessarie for a cirurgian to knowe pronosticatiuis The Treatment is the same as in other wounds. [4 lf. 93]
- 20 of þis ⁴ place, & also if a man be hurt' in þat' place, he mote haue
- for þe causis aforseid //

Of woundis of þe stomac / & intestinum & wombe, & anothamia !

- 24 **I** Haue seid heretofore in what' maner mery⁵ goip down þoru3 ¶ vijo. co.
- þe necke wipinneforþ, and goip þoru3 diafragma, & is maad
- fast' with diafragma, & diafragma goip aboute þe mouþ of
- þe stomak. & þe stomak is schape in þis maner,⁶ & in oon
- 28 side he is gibbous, & in þe toper side he is more playn.
- & þe stomac is maad of .ij. clopis. & pat' oon cloop sitt' The stomach is made of 2 Membranes
- wipoute & pat' oper wipinne, & þe cloop pat' sittip wipinne
- is villosus & neruous, & þe cloop pat' is wipoutforþ is
- 32 fleischli / ¶ In þe yzner cloop ben longe villis wherof' with longitudinal and transverse fibres.
- comeþ drawynge, & pere ben villis ouerþwert', wherof'

² Rases, Liber ad Almansorem, Tract. I, Cap. 1, ed. Ven. 1506, fol. 2.
 "Cerebrum quasi fons sensuum est et motus voluntarii, Nucha vero sicut fluius magnus ab eo manans."

³ durip. Lat. distenditur. As to the local sense, compare O.Fr. durer.

⁵ mery, oesophagus. Arab. *marijun*, windpipe.

⁶ In the margin is a diagram of the shape of the stomach.

comeþ wipholdyng / In þe clooþ þat is wipoutforþ, þere ben longe villis, & þat makip expulcioun. þe ynnere clooþ is neruous, þat it mowe fele whanne it is ful; wipoutforþ it is fleischi for to make him hoot & moist, þat he miȝte helpe for to make digestioun. 4 þat skyn þat is wipinne þe stomak is norischid with moisture of mete ^[1 lf. 93, bk.] 1 þat is resseyued into þe stomak / The skyn þat is wipoute þe stomak is norischid of blood, þat comeþ fro þe lyuere in smale veynes & goiþ al aboute þe stomak. ¶ Also þere comeþ arterijs 8 from þe herte to þe stomak & makip him to haue lijf, & of þese .ij. þingis, þat is to seie vena & arteria, gibbus² is maad þat gouerneþ þe stomak & þe guttis wip his fatnes, & makip hem hoot. ¶ In þe botme of þe stomak þere is a mouþ, and þat mouþ is more 12 streit þan þat aboue. & þe firste gutt is maad fast to þe lower mouþ, & þis gutt is clepid duodenum.³ þis is þe skille whi he is clepid so, for he is of þe lengþe of xij. ynchis; & þanne þere ben .vj. guttis bineþe him; & þanne þis firste gutt is maad of .ij. cootis, 16 as alle þe opere guttis ben, but þe .ij. gutt is smal & folde togidere. þe .iiij. gutt is clepid ieinum,⁴ *id est*, fastyng, for he is euermore voide,⁵ & þat is for he is nyȝ þe galle & resseyueþ myche colre⁶ for to avoide him, & þere goiþ to him manye veynes, wherbi he is 20 voidid / Aftir him þere comeþ a gutt þat is clepid orobum⁷ 8 ouþer a sak, & it hap but oon mouþ, & he resseyueþ alle þe fecis; & þere is fulfillid þe firste digestioun of þe guttis / Aftir þis gutt þer is a gutt þat is clepid colon, & lijþ ouerþwert þe wombe & resseyueþ 24 feces / And aftir þis gutt comeþ langaon,⁹ & is þe eende of alle; & he hap .iiij. brawnys, & þerof he hap vertu for to wipholde þe fecis yn, & for to putte hem out whanne a man wole / Euery meuyng of þe guttis is kindely & eueri gutt of þese þat ben 28 aforseid hap diuers kynde // ¶ þer ben manye maner causis whi þat guttis ben folde with nerues: þe firste enchesoun is þis, þat a man schulde not as soone as he hadde ete, anoon riȝt go to sege as

Arteries bring life to the Stomach.

The Entrails or Guts: duodenum.

Ieinum.

Orobum, [8 lf. 94]

where the first digestion is made

Colon. langaon. retains and finally evacuates the faeces.

The entrails are nervous

1. that the food may be retained

² gibbus, mistake for ȝirbus. See *Vicary*, page 64. note 2; and page 86, note.

³ duodenum. See *Ibid.* page 65, note 1.

⁴ jejunum. See *Vicary*, page 65, note 2.

⁵ Avicenna, Lib. III., Fen. XVI., Tract. I., Cap. 1, ed. Ven. 1527, f. 248. "et nominatur hoc intestinum ieinum, quum ipsum inuenitur secundum plerimum inanitum et vacuum."

⁶ colre. Lat. cholera. Choler, "Bilis."—Huloet.

⁷ orobum. Lat. orbum. The *Ileum* is here meant.

⁹ langaon. See *Vicary*, page 66, note 5. Lat. longanon, longao = the straight gut.

- doip a beest. þe .ij. cause is þat þe mete miȝte abide in þe stomak
for to make digestion, & þat þat is not fulfillid in þe stomak is
fulfillid in þe guttis. þe .iiij. cause is þis, þat it first abide in oon
4 gutt / & þanne it is sent to anoþer & so forþ. & þanne for to holde
alle þese þingis / þe stomak & þe guttis is ordeyned a skyn, þat is
clepid þe siphac¹; & is a syngle skyn & is not ²villous, & is engen-
drid bineþe as is diafragma is aboue, as it is aforeseid, & is maad
8 fast at þe rigge bihinde, for to holde vp þe stomak & þe guttis / In
þis partie bineþe þis þer ben engendrid of siphac ij. þingis þat ben
clepid dindimi³ & goiþ adoun al aboute þe ballokis, & is clepid þat
yunner skyn of þe ballokis; & þoruȝ þis dindimi goiþ arterijs &
12 veynes to þe ballokis, & makip hem haue lijf & norischinge &
kynde of sperme // ¶ Alle þese þingis þanne ben comprehendid in
a skyn þat is fleischi & of lacertis maad, & is clepid mirac, & is
clepid þe vttere wombe in whiche ben lacertis, for to helpe putte out
16 þe fecis & wijnd & vrine /
- þerfore woundis þat ben maad in þe stomac ben perilous, & in
þe guttis, for manie causis / þe firste cause is þis, for her worchinge
is necessarie to þe bodi, for þei ben þe firste instrument of digestioun,
20 & her worchinge is so necessarie to þe bodi, þat it mai in no maner
be susteyned, ne abide wiþoute hem / þerfore if þere be ony woundis
in þis place her wor⁴chinge is lost, but if þe wounde be soudid
anoon; & þat is ful hard & sumtyme impossible for þei ben neruous,
24 & þere is no fleisch on hem, & also for þei ben alwey meuynge, &
þrincipali whanne woundis ben maad in þe hindere partie of þe
stomac oupir in þe smale guttis / For if þe woundis falle in þe
nepir partie of þe stomac þat is fleischi, ouper in þe greete guttis
28 bineþe, if þe leche be kunnyng, þe pacient mai lyue /
- ¶ If it bifalle þat a man be hurt in ony of þese placis þat ben
aforeseid in þe stomak ouper in þe guttis, þe leche muste knowe
wheþer þe substaunce of þe guttis or of þe stomak be prickid þoruȝ
32 or no; þat þou miȝt knowe bi þe goyng out of þe fecis at þe
wounde; & þanne þe wounde is iugid mortal. ¶ If a man be
woundid in his stomak & þe wounde of þe wombe wiþoutforþ ne
be not brood, þanne kutte it more & þanne sewe the wounde of þe
36 stomak wiþ a nedele þat is iiij. squar & wiþ a sutil þreed, & þis þou
schalt speciali, whanne þe wounde is in ⁵a fleischi place of þe stomak,

^{2.}
and digested
in the
stomach
^{3.}
and the guts.

[² 1f. 94, bk.]
Siphac
(Great Omen-
tum):

it is con-
tinuous in its
lower part
with the
dindimi
(Tunica
vaginalis).
ciffac is þe
inar sken,
mirac
the vtter.
(Peritoneum)

Wounds of
the stomach
and the
bowels are
dangerous,
as their func-
tional activity
is necessary.

[⁴ 1f. 95]

The patient
may recover
if the fleshy
part of the
stomach or
guts is
wounded.
Nota.

A wound
which per-
forates the
entrails is
mortal.

Sew the
wound in the
stomach,

[⁵ 1f. 95, bk.]

¹ siphac. See Vicary, page 62, note 4.

³ dindimi, used elsewhere to signify the Testicles.

and keep the
external
wound patent
while the
stomach
heals.

When the
bowels fall
out from the
wound, re-
place them,

[1 lf. 96]

Nota.

sew the
Siphac and
Mirac to-
gether,

and keep the
external
wound patent.

[3 lf. 96, bk.]

Some phy-
sicians put a
reed-pipe
into the
wounded in-
testine before
sewing it.

for if þe wounde be aboue in a place of þe stomak þat is neruous,
ne traueile þou not þere aboute þanne, for it is an idil / Whanne
þou hast sewid þe wounde bineþe as it is aforseid, þanne springe
þeron poudre consolidatif & soude þe wounde of þe stomak, & holde
open þe wounde of þe skyn wipoute, til þe wounde of þe stomak be
hool // ¶ If it bifalle þat a man be hurt in þe greete guttis bineþe,
so þat þe wounde be not to greet, þanne þou schalt sewe þe gutt, &
þe eendis of þe predis schulen hange out, & þe vtter wounde schal
be holde open, til þe wounde of þe gutt be soudid ¶ If it so be þat
þe wounde of his wombe wipoutforþ be so brood þat þe guttis falle
out, putte hem yn anoon while þei ben hote / If it be so þat þe
guttis be colde, or þat þou come þerto, & þe wounde of þe wombe
be to swolle, & þe guttis be chaungid wip þe eir, wherfore þe guttis
wolen not in azen, þanne þou must sutilli make þe wounde of þe
wombe a litil more, þat þe guttis ¹mowe listly falle yn azen wipoute
grenaunce. Whanne þe guttis ben ynne, sewe mirac & siphac in
þis maner togidere, so þat þei moun boþe be soudid togidere; for if
mirac were soudid & not siphac, þanne aftir þe tyme þat þe wounde
were soudid, þere wolde leue a crepature.² þerfore þou must sewe
in þis maner / Take þat oon side of mirac & siphac togidere so
þat þei be euene, & loke þat þi nedel be .iij. squar, & þanne make
oon poynt þoruþ hem ij. togidere, in þe same maner in þe toþer, &
þus þou schalt make þeron as manie pointis as þou þenkist neces-
sarie / And whanne þou hast sewid mirac & siphac togidere in a
good maner, þanne knytte þe predis togidere þat þei vnknytte not,
as þou seest þat is to doing; & lete þe eendis of þe predis hange
out, & þanne springe vpon þe sewynge þe poudre consolidatif þat
is aforseid, and holde open þe wounde wipoutforþ til mirac & siphac
be perfitli soudid, for in þis maner mirac & siphac moun be soudid
bi þis cause: Siphac is neruous & hap ³no fleisch, & mirac is fleisch,
& bi þe vertu of him siphac is soudid; & þanne do þe cure herof
aftir as it is tofore // ¶ Summen seien þat þe smale guttis moun
be sowdid in þis maner: make a pipe of eldre, & putt wipinne þe
gutt, & þanne soude þe gutt þer vpon. & I seie þat it is not soþ,
for þis þing, þe smale guttis wolen not soude, & to þe greete guttis
þis queyntise is nougt; þerfore triste to þe maner þat is aforseid, 36
& take kepe of þe perels þat ben forseid.

² crepature, hernia.

Of woundis of þe lyuere & splen & reynes & þe
bladdre, and anothamia¹ /

- T**he firste schapinge of þe lyuere is maad of þe .ij. spermes as ¶ viij. Co.
- 4 ben þe opere principal lymes, saue þe greetnes of þe lyuere is The Liver is
principali maad of blood & is in þe hardnes of fleisch. & þe sub- made of
stance þerof is fleisch, & it is in þe maner as it were blood runne, blood.
- 8 & chilus comuneþ fro þe stomac to þe lyuere for to zeue him
norischynge, & þe lyuere is gibbous wipoute, & wipinne holow þat
it miȝte be þe more closynge to þe stomac. & þe heete of þe ²lyuere
makip þe stomac to seþe as fier makip a furneis to seþe.³ ¶ The
lyuere haþ addicioun, & ben diuers; for in summe ben .iiij. & in
[² lf. 97]
12 summe ben .v. & in summe ben .iiij. Of sperme þe mater of þe The Liver is
lyuere wipinne is gaderid. & þerof comeþ a greet veyne & is en- to the
gendrid in sima⁴ epatis, & is clepid þe ȝate of þe lyuere. & of þis Stomach,
veyne summen seien þat þere ben engendrid .viij. veynes, & sum- what fire is
lyuer. to a furnace.
- 16 men seien þat þere ben mo; & þus veynes ben ȝatis riȝt as rootis
of a tree.⁵ & þese veynes ben clepid miseraice / & summe of þese
veynes ben maad fast wip þe botme of þe stomac, & wip a gutt þat
From the
12 gutt þat is clepid ieunum, & summe wip orobo oupir wip þe sak // spermatic
part of the
Liver comes
the Vena
Porta.
- ¶ þe lyuere is maad fast to þe riȝtside of þe stomac, & in þe
liftside of þe stomac sitt þe splene, & is schape along, & is maad
fast with o partie of þe stomac. & oon partie þerof is maad fast
The Spleen
- 24 twoward þe rigge in þe liftside, & haþ .ij. poris, & þoruȝ þat oon
pore he drawip malancolious blood of ⁶þe lyuere, & clensip þe
draws the
Melancholic
Blood from
the Liver,
lyuere of malancolious superfluite, & þerof þe splene is norischid. [6 lf. 97, bk.]
& þere is anoþer pore þat goip to þe mouþ of þe stomac, & makip
and incites
Appetite in
the Stomach.
- 28 þe mouþ of þe stomac to haue appetite⁷ //

¹ See *Vicary's Anatomy*, page 68.

³ "for his heate is to the stomacke as the heate of the fyre is to the Potte or Cauldron that hangeth ouer it."—*Vicary*, p. 69.

⁴ *sima*, concavitas hepatis. *Matth. Sylv.*, see *Dufr. σμῶς, ἡ, ὅν*, hollow, concave: τὰ σμὰ τοῦ ἥπατος, the bottom of the liver. *Poll. 2. 213*, *Galen*. It is used opposite to *κυρτός*, convex, curved, in *Galen ad Glauc. 2.*—See *Stephanus Thesaurus*.

Sloane 2463, fol. 40: "*Syma of þe lyuer is as it were þe palme oper þe holwennesse of þe hond. The vtilite, whi þat it is of suche forme oper schappe is because þat it schulde ben aplied oper leyen to þe stomak as þe hond lieth to an appull, whan þe appull is in þe hond.*"

⁵ *Lat.*: venæ quæ sunt ipsi portæ sicut radices arbori.

⁷ *De propr. rer. Trevisa*, Lib. V., Cap. 41, Add. 27,944, fol. 57 b: "ð Constantyn seiþ þat þe melte is i-set in þe lift side, ð þe schap þerof is

The Reynes þe reynes ben set, þat oon in þe riȝtside & sittip hizere, & þat oon in þe lifside & sit lowere, & ben maad of hard fleisch, & ben sett in two sidis of þe rigge boon. Boþe þe reynes hauen .ij. veynes oupir .ij. neckis, & þat oon is aboue, & þat opere is bineþe. þoruȝ 4
 draw watery blood from the *vena ramosa*, and transmit urine to the
 þe necke aboue of þe reynes is drawe watri blood & comeþ from *vena ramosa*¹; & þis watri blood is vryne, & from þe reynes it goiþ to þe necke of þe bladdre þoruȝ a veyne þat is clepid kylym,² & in þis maner þe vryne comeþ into þe bladdre / 8

bladdre via the ureters.
 þe bladdre is maad of .ij. þinne skynnes, & boþe skynnes ben neruous, & þe necke of þe bladdre is fleischli. In men þe necke is long, for it passiþ þoruȝout þe zerde, & in wymmen þe necke of þe bladdre is schort, & is maad fast to the cunte.³ / þe necke of þe 12
 bladdre hath oon braun, & is in þe mouþ of þe bladdre 4 & þat makip a man holde his vryne whanne he wole, & putte cut his vryne whanne he wole, wiþ help of þe wombe þat pressip, & of

[4 lf. 98]

galle. lacertis // ¶ Of þe galle we makip noon anothamie, for al oure 16
 science makip noon mencion of a wounde in þe galle /

¶ Woundis þat ben maad in þe lymes aforeseid ben euermore perilous / For alle þese lymes, oupir þei ben principal lymes as is þe lyuere, oupir þei serueþ principal lymes, wiþoute whiche lymes þe 20
 bodi ne mai not be susteyned / If þe lyuere be hurt in þe depe substaunce, þanne þe lyuere schal lese al hir worchinge, & al þe blood þerof wole be disturblid þat is matere of þe spirit, & in þis maner þe spirit of lijf is disturblid & þe foundement of alle hise vertues; 24
 saue if þe wounde of þe lyuere be but litil it may be soudid, so þat þe wounde be freisch & not oold hurt, forwhi a principal lyme mai not suffre longe sijknes // ¶ þoruȝ a man were hurt in þe splene, 28
 zitt he miȝte be wel curid, & þoruȝ þere were a gobet þerof kutt away, so þat it ne were not to myche and ouerþwert, for þerof ofte tyme fallip þe dropesie; oupir if þe poris were kutt, it wolde afeble þe stomac. ¶ Woundis þat ben in þe reynes ben not curid,

Only small and recent wounds of the Liver can be healed.

Even severe wounds of the spleen can be cured.
 [5 lf. 98, bk.]

euelong, and is somewhat holouȝ toward þe stomak & bunchinge toward þe ribbis. In þese treye places he is i-bounde with certeyn smale cloþinge, & me seiþ þat þe melte hap treye reynes, by þe on þerof he drawip blak colera of þe blod to þe lynour, & by þe opir he sendip what sufficeþ to þe stomak to comforte þe appetite þerof."

¹ *vena ramosa*, Vena Cava.

² Lat.: per venam chylim quæ a quibusdam pori uritides dicitur = Meatus Urinari = Ureter. *Kylym*, from χυλός, juice. See also *Vicary*, p. 72, note 3.

³ "Hec vulva, cunte." Wright, *Voc.*, p. 677. 32, xvth cent. O.Fr. cunne, Lat. cunnus, *cunte* is a diminutive form like *cunetta* of *cuna*.

- for þei ben norischid wiþ watri blood, for þat^t is *contrarius* to
soudinge / & for þe reynes ben alwey in meuynge, & also vryne þat^t
alwei is bitynge goiþ þoruþ þe reynes. ¶ þe bladdre ne mai not^t be
4 soudid if it be kutt^t, for it is a lyme þat^t is neruous & hap no fleisch,
& is alwei meuynge, & for he is alwei resceuynge vryne & also þe
vryne fretiþ & þat^t lettiþ þe souding^t / For ypocras seiþ / If þe
bladdre be kutt^t, or þe brayn, or þe herte, þe wounde is mortal. ¶ If
8 a leche be sent^t aftir, for to come to a man þat^t is woundid in ony of
þese forseid / if þe leche be a man of good loos & a kunnyng^t man,
he schal, whanne he comeþ to þe pacient^t, & seeþ þe perel þerof, he
schal telle þe perel of þe wounde to þe pacientis frendis, & he schal
12 seiþ to þe man þat^t is hurt^t þat^t he schal ascape & fare weel; and
first^t he schal make him haue hise riztis¹ ²of holy chirche, & lete
him make his testament^t, or þat^t his vertu faile / þanne he schal
bigynne wiþ his good worchinge, rizt^t as he took no drede þerof /
16 for ofte tyme kinde worchiþ, þat^t þat^t semeþ vnpossible to þe leche,
& principali if he worche wel. Neþeles þouþ þe leche se goode
signys bi þe pacient^t, he schal alwei haue his owne pronosticacioun
as it is aforseid, til þe man be al hool, if he schal ascape / for ofte
20 tyme whanne þe pacient drawiþ toward þe deef, his passioun wole
aswage; & also þe contrarie þerof is seen, þouþ þe pacient^t haue
greet^t peyne & þe signes of deef, zitt^t he mai ascape / & þerfore for
þese perels þat^t ben aforseid, he mot^t be war of vndirtakyng & of
24 biheest^t // ¶ If a leche be in straunge cuntre, he ne schal bi no maner
wei take sich a cure. & also he schal forsake alle maner of curis
þat^t ben harde to do, & also he schal forsake curis þat^t ben longe for
to make ony perfeccioun þerof, & he mote be war þat^t faire biheste,
28 ne veyn glorie, ne coueitise ne bigile him not^t /

Wounds of
the kidney

and bladder
are incurable,

as ypocras
says.

The physician
shall warn
the patient's
friends,
but cheer the
patient,

[2 lf. 99]

and advise
him to
arrange his
spiritual and
temporal
affairs.

nota.

The phy-
sician must
never despair,
and always
remember his
first prog-
nosis.

He must be
cautious in
a foreign
country.

³Of woundis of þe zerde & of ballokis, & of þe regioun
of þe bladdre and anothamia.⁴

- 32 **G**Od almyzti þat^t alle þingis knewe tofore þe makynge of þe
world ouþir of man, he knewe þat^t a man schulde be maad
of moist^t substaunce, as of sperme, in which natural hete schal
worche.⁵ & for to resseyue þe mater of sperme, it is necessarie þat^t
Man's gener-
ative organs.

¹ Lat. : primo tamen ipsum faciat confiteri.

⁴ Comp. *Vicary's Anatomy*, p. 81.

⁵ Compare *Auicenna*. Lib. III., Fen. XX., l. 1., ed. Venet. 1527, fol. 279 :
"Sublimis deus creauit duos testiculos," etc.

a man haue ballokis / He made ballokis as it¹ was necessarie, & 3af^t hem schap & complexioun for to engendre / & he 3af^t a man greet delite for to lie bi a womman, so þat^t a man schulde not^t haue abhominacioun þerof^t, saue a man schal do it^t with greet will & wiþ 4 greet loue, so þat^t generacioun miȝte be multiplied wiþ greet delite¹ /

It is natural to desire copulation. ¶ Also god almizti schop in a man a 3erde. & in þe bigynnyng þerof^t ben cartilaginiis & ben maad fast to þe laste boon of þe rigboon, & is maad of nerues, veynes & arteryis, & is sumwhat holow, 8 þat^t he miȝte be fulfillid wiþ spirit. & in þe heed þerof is fleisch

The Yard has a Glans and Prepuce. þat^t is felynge, & a skyn þat^t goiþ ouer & is clepid prepuceum. & þe meuyng of þat^t skyn ²& of þe fleisch tofore helpiþ for to putte out þe sperme / þe risynge of a mannes 3erde comeþ of a mannes 12 herte, & witt of þe brayn, wilnyng, & greet desier; & watri humour comeþ of þe lyuer. & haþ .ij. open holis; & þoruþ þat^t oon hole goiþ out vryne & comeþ fro þe bladdre, & þoruþ þat^t opir hole comeþ sperme and comeþ fro þe ballokis. & þese .ij. holis ben 16 good for to knowe / And auicen seiþ: þat^t þere is þe .ijj. hole, & þoruþ þat^t hole passiþ a maner of superfluite þat^t a man felip not, as whanne he halsiþ a womman wiþ hise hondis; saue þis þridde hole is not knowen of a cirurgian³ // 20

Erection is caused by man's passion. þe .ij. ballokis ben maad of hard fleisch in þe maner as ben wommans brestis, & þat^t oon ballok of a man is grettere þan þe toþer & stronger, & to þe ballokis comeþ veynes & arterijs, & makiþ hem haue lijf & norischinge. & superfluite of good blood & clene 24 comeþ þerto of alle þe lymes, & gaderiþ togidere in a mannes ballokis, & þere it^t bicometh whizt & turneþ into sperme, riȝt as blood bicometh

The yard has two passages, a. for urine, b. for spermin; mylk in a wommans brestis / And þer ben maad fast wiþ þe ballokis .ij. vessels, & ben brode vpon þe ballokis, & narowe toward 28 þe 3erde, & ben clepid þe vessels of sperme, & ben clepid of auicenne

Auicen mentions a 3rd one.

The structure of the Testicles.

They make spermin of the purest blood.

[⁴ lf. 100, bk.] ⁴mylk in a wommans brestis / And þer ben maad fast wiþ þe ballokis .ij. vessels, & ben brode vpon þe ballokis, & narowe toward 28 þe 3erde, & ben clepid þe vessels of sperme, & ben clepid of auicenne

The Seed passes along the excretory ducts (Vas deferens).

¹ *De propr. rer.*, Lib. V., Cap. 48, Add. 27,944, fol. 60 b: "For as Constante seiþ, to covenable getynges & gendringe of bestis god haþ ordeyned & i-made couenable membres, in þe whiche he haþ i-sette þe cause & mater of generacioun, þe whiche may not come forþ in dede wiþoute affeccoun of loue. ¶ In þe membres genytal god haþ send such an appetite inseperable, þat eueriche beest schulde be comfortid to multeplie beestis of his owne kynde, and þat is i-doo by schewinge of god, lest 3if þe doynge of generacioun were abhominable, generacioun of best were i-lost." This passage is taken from *Constantinus Afric. De morb. cog. et. cur.*, Lib. VI., Cap. 1, ed. Basil, 1536, p. 122.

³ *Avicenna l. c.*, "Et in virga sunt meatus tres, meatus vrinæ et meatus spermatis et meatus alguadi." *Matth. Sylv.*: "Alguedi est humor ille qui egreditur, cum aliquis tangit mulierem."

barbachi,¹ & of þese vessels comeþ sperme into þe 3erde, & þoru; þe 3erde is born into þe matris of wymmen / In þese .ij. vessels sperme is fulfillid, saue þe hete þerof comeþ of þe ballokis; & to þe ballokis

Auicenn
calls them
Barbachi.

4 as it is aforseid cometh veynes & arterijs, & goiþ þoru; dindimous, þat ben maad fast to þe siphac as it is aforseid //

¶ þe maris in a womman is maad neruous & is schape as it were a 3erde þat were turned azenheer.² & þe necke of þe maris is

Female
generative
organs.

8 fleischi, & brawny, & felynge, & gendring, & in þe necke of þe maris ben veynes þat ben to-broke whanne a womman lesiþ hir mayden-

hode. & þe botme of þe maris is schape as it were þe case of a

12 mannes ballokis / And þe maris haþ .ij. brode ballokis in þe necke,

The Matrix
has two
ballocks
(Ovaries),
and two
spermatic
ducts (Fallo-
pian Tubes).
[³ lf. 101]

12 & wiþ þe ilke .ij. ballokis ben maad fast .ij. vessels of sperme, & ben

more schort þan a mannes vessels of sperme / And of þese ³ves-

sels, a wommans sperme goiþ to þe botme of þe maris / And in þe

tyme of conseyuynge þe wommans sperme [is] medlid wiþ a mannes /

16 And þe maris of a womman haþ wipinne .ij. grete concauitees / And

þe maris haþ manie veynes, & þoru; þe ilke veynes, whanne a

The Embryo
is nourished
by blood from
the liver.

womman haþ conseyued, comeþ blood to⁴ þe lyuer for to norische þe

child. And whanne a womman is not wiþ childe, þoru; þe same

20 veynes cometh blood of þe veynes menstrie & is putt out, & in þis

Menstruation
removes
superfluous
blood.

maner a womman is purgid of superfluite of blood; & it is maad

fast bitwixe þe grete gutt & þe bladdre, & is hizere þan þe bladdre,

& is maad fast to þe rigge wiþ ligaturis, & in tyme of child berynge

24 þe ligaturis recchip, & aftir þat tyme⁵ * — /

If þere be woundis in ony of alle þese placis, þei ben stronge

perilous for her sutil complexioun, & for her nobilte of worchinge.

Wounds of
generative
organs are
dangerous.

¶ If it so be þat a man be hurt in his 3erde or ouerþwert in a

28 litil quantite, þou schalt sewe þe wounde, & sprynge þeron poudre,

Treatment of
a wounded
yard.

& leie þerto defensiuis, & lete him blood, & diete him with pinne

6mete, & cure him wiþ good diligence //

¶ If it so be þat a mannes

[⁶ lf. 101, bk.]

32 3erde be kutt al off ouerþwert, þanne it is greet drede þerof / for

If the yard is
cut away,
death from
hemorrhage
may ensue.

þe veynes þat comeþ þerto & þe arterijs & manie nerues, for sum-

tyme þe pacient mai be deed, or þe blood mowe be staunchid / Saue

¹ *barbachi*, Arab. *bārbāḥ*, 'conduit of water, canal of the urine.'

² Galen (ed. Kuehn, vol. IV., p. 635) has originated this curious comparison, which has been copied by the Arab. authors. *Avic.*, Lib. III., Fen. XXI., Tract. I., Cap. 1, Ven. 1527, fol. 285 b: "Matrix est quasi conversum instrumentum virorum."

⁴ *to*, mistake for *from*. Lat.: per quas sanguis ei venit ab hepate.

⁵ Some words are wanting. Lat.: partusque completo tempore constrin-

gatur.

Wounds of
the Testicles

cause Impo-
tence.

Wounds of
the Matrix
are mortal.

Treatment
of wounded
Colon.

[² If. 102]

in þis cas þou schalt take hede for to do awei þe akyngþe wiþ oile of
rosis, anoynte him aboute þe ers & þe regioun of þe 3erde, & brenne
þe 3erde wiþ an hoot^t irn for to constreyne þe flux of blood; for a
cauterie streyneþ blood tofore alle þingis. ¶ Woundis þat^t ben in 4
þe ballokis, þei roten hem anoon, & þou3 a man be not^t in perel of
deef þoru3 þe hurtyng^t of hem, 3itt^t his generacioun is lore / A
wounde in þis place schal be curid in þe same maner as woundis in
oþere place of þe bodi, & þe cure schal not^t be chaungid þerof // ¶ If 8
it^t so be þat^t a womman be hurt^t in her marijs wiþ a swerd, ouþir wiþ
a knyf, ouþer wiþ a dart, þe wounde is mortal // ¶ If it^t bifalle þat
colon¹ be hurt^t wiþ sum scharp þing^t ouþir wiþ hardnes of humouris,
he may wel be curid þe while þe wounde is freisch, with putting^t 12
2^o of vnguentum album rasis of ceruse distemprið wiþ ius of arnog-
lossa.³ & if it^t so be þat^t þe wounde of þis place be olde, þanne it^t
is for to make a mundificatif þerto, wiþ castyngþe yn of gotis whay
ouþir watir of barley // 16

Of woundis in þe haunche and of þe coxe of þe knee,
and of boonis of þe feet and of anothomia.

¶ x^o. c^o /
The Haunch-
bones

have each a
box (aceta-
bulum) which
contains the
head of the
thigh-bone.

BOnys of haunchis ben maad fast^t wiþ þe lattere boon of þe
rigboon / & ri3t^t as þe rigboon susteyneþ alle þe boones aboue, 20
so alle þe boones bineþe ben maad fast^t to him / þese boones ben
cartilaginous & sutil toward þe fore partie, & bineþe þei ben more
greet^t; & eueri of hem haþ a box þat^t is clepid pixis haunche &
vertebrum sit^t þeron.⁴ & þat^t is þe eende of þe hipe boon. & wiþ 24
this boon is maad fast^t þat^t boon þat^t goiþ ouerþwert^t vndir þe ars
aboue þe 3erde, & is clepid os pectinis. & as summen seien þere ben
iiij. partis, saue in cirurgie it^t is seid al oon. & þe place of þe con-
iuncioun of þese boones is clepid þe scie.⁵ & sumtyme þese boones 28
goon out^t of þe ioynt, as þou schalt haue a perfit teching^t 6 herof in
þe .iiij. tretis in þe chapiter of dislocacioun / þis hipe boon, as it^t is

[⁶ If. 102, bk.]

The thigh-
bone

¹ Lat. *Se si collo vulnus fieri accideret.* Phillips. "Collum Uteri, the Neck of the Womb."

³ *arnoglossum.* Wr. Wü., p. 559. 27 (XIII. cent.) "*Arnoglosa*, i. plaun-
tein," O.E. *wegbræde*, waybread.

⁴ Sloane 2463, fol. 42 b: "*þei ben cleped ylia other ossa yliorum, and in
þe vtter partie of þe mydward of hem ben concauytes other holewnesse, þe
whiche ben clepid boystes, in þe whiche þe endes of þe bones of the þizes ben
receyved inne.*"

⁵ *scie*, Med. Lat. *scia*, from *ισχίον*, it means the hip-joint. Wr. Wü.,
610. 11 (xv. cent.), "*Scia* an^{ce} the whyrlebon."

- aforseid, is maad fast^t aboue wip ligaturis & pannyclis & nerues, & it^t is a greet^t boon & miche holow wipinne, & is ful of^t marow ; & it^t is hollow and is greet^t, for it^t schulde be strong^t ; & it^t is holow, for it^t schulde be
- 4 list^t. & pis boon is maad fast^t in pe knee, & pere pe boon of^t pe hipe is joined with the leg-bone in the knee.
- & pe boon of^t pe leg^t ben ioyned togidere in a box as it^t is aforseid.
- & pese boones ben bounden togidere wip ligaturis & senewis, & vpon pe ioynt^t of^t pese boones & for to kepe pis ioynture from harm, is
- 8 ioyned peron a round boon & is clepid rotula, & of^t summen it^t is Rotula.
- clepid pe y3e of^t pe knee, & alle pese boones ben bounden togidere wip strong^t ligaturis // ¶ Vndir pe round boon of^t pe knee ben ordeyned
- .ij. boones in pe leg^t, & pat^t oon perof^t is grettere & sittip tofore in The two bones of the leg
- 12 pe leg^t, & pe toper is smaller & sittip bihynde in pe leg^t. & in pe neper partie pei ben maad fast^t wip pe boon of^t calcanei pat^t sustenteyne^t alle pe boones, & with alkarad,¹ & pat^t is a boon pat^t fulfillip articulate with the Calcaneus and Astragalus.
- pe ioynture & is ²ioyned wip pe boon pat^t is clepid naucula / [2 lf. 103]
- 16 ¶ Racheta³ of^t pe foot^t is maad of^t iiij. boonis, & ben bounden Naucula.
- togidere wip ligaturis. & wip pese boonys ben maad fast^t pe bonys of^t pe toos pat^t ben .xiiij., for eueri boon hap .iiij. boones, saue pe boon of^t pe grete too, & pat^t hap but^t .ij. boones / to alle pese boones The Racheta has four bones articulating with the fourteen Phalanges.
- 20 comeþ nerues fro pe riggeboones—& wip pese nerues, & with pese ligaturis, & wip symple fleisch pese boones ben maad fast^t togidere —& 3eueþ to pese lymes meuyng & felynge. & per ben greete brawnes in a mannes leggis & in hise hipis, & ben ful of^t grete The nerves confer movement and sensation to the leg.
- 24 veynes & arterijs & senewis, & ben departid into alle pe leggis & to pe feet^t / & summe of^t pese veynes comeþ fro a veyne of^t pe lyuer, pat^t is clepid vena ramosa as it^t is aforseid in armys. & perfore pese placis ben swiþe perilous, whanne pei ben woundid, for pe perels pat^t The veins of the lower limbs start from the Vena Ramosa (Vena Cava), which divides into the
- 28 ben aforseid. & pese veynes ben departid in pe foot^t, & .ij. perof^t ben in pe holow of^t pe foot^t wipoutforþ, & pat^t oon veyne perof^t is clepid sciatica, & pat^t opere is clepid renalis, ⁴& pis is þus miche to Sciatica and the Renalis.
- seie : pat^t oon veyne serueþ for pe scie, & pat^t oper for pe reynes / [4 lf. 103, bk.]
- 32 þanne per ben ij. oper veynes in pe holow of^t pe foot^t withinne, & pat^t oon is clepid sophena, & pat^t oper is clepid vena ventris, id est a Saphena, Vena ventris.
- veyne of^t pe wombe. ¶ pe veyne pat^t is clepid renalis scheweth it^t silf^t bitwixe pe list^t too & pat^t oper too next, & pe blood-letyng
- 36 of^t pis veyne is good for þus manye þingis : for cancrena pat^t ben in

¹ alkarad, Lat. alchaab, from Arab. *al kab*, a die.

³ Racheta, Lat. Rasceta, from Arab. *rusgh*, which means the carpus or the tarsus. The Rasceta pedis is not exactly our tarsus, as it comprises only the three Cuneiform bones and the Cuboid bone.

þe hipis & for a mormal¹, & for varices & for vlcera þat ben in þe hipis ouþer in þe leggis.

Wounds of
the lower
extremity are
dangerous.

Bi alle þese skillis þou myzt wel se, þat woundis þat be maad in þese placis ouerþwert ben swiþe perilous for þe kutting of nerues 4 & of cordis & braun, & of veynes & of arterijs, for alle þese þingis goiþ endelong þe leggis & þe hipis, & þerfore woundis þat ben maad ouerþwert in þis place ben swiþe perilous as it is aforseid // ¶ Woundis þat ben maad in þes placis þat ben curable, schulen be 8 curid in þe same maner as it is aforseid in curis of armys & of hondis / Saue of o þing þou schalt take kepe, þat woundis þat ben maad iij. fyngris brede wiþinne þe knee, for þe ²nobilte of þe place & for þe causis þat ben forseid, þe wounde is iugid mortal / þerfor 12 woundis þat ben in þese placis þat ben forseid & ben curable þou must do good diligence þerto, & be wel war of woundis þat ben mortal as it is aforseid //

Treatment
of such
wounds.

[² lf. 104]

¶ The techinge of þe .ij. tretis is fulfillid þoruþ þe help of god, 16 & now schal bigynne þe techinge of þe .iij. tretis & schal conteyne .xviij. chapitris /³

the þerd
book con-
teynes viij.
c.⁴

Here bigynneþ þe þridde book.

¶ io. cº /

Of þe engendryng of heeris //⁵

20

HEeris ben engendrid of greet fume & of viscous mater, & þe more hoot þat a man is, þe more heer he schal haue⁶ / & þer falliþ manie amementis of heeris.⁷ ¶ First we wolen speke for to make heer fair, & aftirward of opere sicknessis þat falliþ in placis 24 of heeris.

¹ for a mormal, ad malum mortuum, a severe form of leprosy. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 343.

³ Inserted by the translator; the number of the chapters is incorrect. Lat. Add. 26,106, f. 44 b: "Incipit tractatus tertius, et erit de curis morborum, qui non sunt vulnera, qui possunt accidere diuersis membris a capite usque ad pedes, que veniunt ad curam cyrurgici, qui continet tres doctrinas et est capitulum primum doctrine prime, tractatus tertii de ornatu capillorum."

⁴ The marginal note ought to be: þe firste doctrine of the þerd book conteynes VIII. C.

⁵ A list of passages on the same subject from works of Lat. and Arab. authors is given by Adams, *Paulus Aegineta*, vol. I., p. 339 (for "Rhases ad Mansor, VI. 1.", *ibid.*, read "Rhases ad Mansor, V. 1.").

⁶ De propr. rer. Add. 27,944, fol. 66 b.: "And here is i-bred and comeþ out of fumosite hoot & drie." Compare *Vicary*, p. 24.

⁷ Lat.: quibus multa accidunt corrigenda.

- ¶ If þou wolt make longe heeris, ouþer if þou wolt make heeris
wexe long¹, dissolue a litil mustard in water of decoccioun of *ble-*
*tarum*¹ & waische þerwith ofte, & þanne anynte with comoun oile. A wash to
make the
hair grow
long.
- 4 ¶ If þou wolt make heeris ȝelow, þou schalt do in þis maner. An ointment
to dye the
hair yellow.
R. mirre ȝ iiij., lupinorum amarorum 3 vj., ²flos salicis, fecis vini
combusti ana 3 .iiij., grinde hem wel togidere & distempere hem R
wip þe maad of askis of vinis, & herwith anynte þe heeris aftir þe [² lf. 104, bk.]
- 8 tyme þat þei ben wel waissche wip þe forseid lye //
- ¶ If þou wolt make hem blac³ R stercus irundinum, & enulam R
siccam, & orobum,⁴ semen raphani & sulphurus, & florem capillaris⁵ An ointment
to dye the
hair white.
succus, grinde alle þese wip a galle of a bole ouþer of an oxe &
12 tempere hem wip vinegre, & herwith anynte hise heeris, & first
þou schalt fumie⁶ hem wip sulphur, & þus þou schalt do ofte. &
þou schalt anynte him with oile of sambuci, þat is maad of whit
flouris of ellern, & leid in oile riȝt as me makip oile of rosis.
- 16 ¶ If þou wolt kepe þe eendis of þe heeris fro fretynge, kutte A treatment
to keep the
ends of the
hair from
splitting.
hem alle euene & ȝeue þe pacient good mete, & anynte ofte his
heed with oile & watir medlid togidere, & anynte herwith ofte / &
anynte it with muscillage seminis lini & psillij⁷ //
- 20 ¶ If þou wolt make heeris crisp R farinam fenigreci, & mirre, R
& semen raphani gallarum, gummi arabici, calcis abluti, & wynde
alle þese þingis & frote þe heeris, and þei ⁸wolen bicomme crisp. An ointment
to make the
hair crisp.
[⁸ lf. 105]
- ¶ If þou wolt kepe heeris þat þei schulen not falle awei. R
24 ladani⁹ .ȝ j, & resolue it in ȝ iiij of oile of mirtilles & herwip An ointment
to keep the
hair from
falling off.
anynte þe rootis of þe heeris / ¶ If þou wolt saue heeris fro
hoornes so þat þei bicomme not whit, þanne it is necessarie for to
kepe him fro al maner þingis þat engendriþ fleume, & fro greet
28 studijnge,¹⁰ & fro fisch þat is rotid, & fro roten wijn, & he mote ofte R
Feed well in
order to pre-
vent the hair
from getting
gray.
- ¹ *bleta*, Alphita, p. 22, "*Beta major*, uel *bleta* uel *bletis*, *atriplex agrestis* uel *domestica*." ³ *blac*, O.E. *blác*, *albus*.
- ⁴ Lat. : *orobum*, qui appellatur in gallico *uicia*.
- ⁵ Lat. *florum cappa*; *capillaris* is a mistake for *capparis*, the caper plant. See *N. E. Dict.* s. v. *Caper* l.
- ⁶ *fumie*, Lat. *suffumigare*. Compare *Macer. Engl. Translat.*, xvth cent., Sl. 2527, f. 251: "*make therof a suffumygacyon*."
- ⁷ *psillie*, Wr. Wü., p. 559. 6 (XIII. cent.), "*psillium*, i. luseded." Cooper, "*psyllion*, the herb called fleawort."
- ⁹ *Ladanum*, *Laudanum*, *Labdanum*. "A gumme that runneth from the hearbe Lada, and is much used in Pomanders."—Cooper.
- ¹⁰ *fro greet studijnge*, Lat. a *fastidio*. The correct explanation is given in *De propr. rer. lib. VII. Cap. 44. Add. 27.944. fol. 91^b*: "*And fastidium is vnskilful abhominacioun & vletsomnes of mete & drinke and most greueþ þe vertu of fedinge and of norischinge, for as Isidir seiþ, fastidium is i-seide as it were makege noye & disese, for a man þat hap abhominacioun hap noye and disese in þing þat anothir hap solas in & lykinge*."

R purge fleume with turbit, and vse strong^t wijn & a litil, & vse sutil sauce, & vse of pese pingis: R. mirabolanorum,¹ kebulorum indorum, emblicorum, & bellicorum² ana,³ & grinde hem alle with oile of almondis longe, & panne tempere hem vp with wijn & hony, & eueri 4 morowe he schal take þerof þe quantite of a note / And þow schalt die hise heeris if þei ben white, wiþ tincture þat ben forseid //

A hair-dye.

R ¶ If a man desirijþ for to haue blac heeris as doiþ greuis⁴ & spaynardis, panne make þis tincture. R foliorum mirti, foliorum 8 papaueris rubij, capilli, ciperi, spice, seminis bletarum, apii, ana 3 j., seþe hem in iiij li of watir, til þei come to o pound, & panne cole⁵ [p. 105, bk.] hem & do þerto li. j. of oile of violet⁶ & boile hem in a double vessel til al þe watir be waistid away; panne caste into þe oile 3 f 12 of acacie, & make aischis of pyne applis, whanne þe kirkels ben taken out þerof, & medle hem alle togidere, & kepe þis oynement. & herwiþ anoynte heeris þat þou wolt make blake.

Of allopucia þat is namys of fisik þat signifief 16
diuers passiouns /

¶ ij^o

The falling
off of the hair
called Alo-
pecia is a
sort of
Leprosy.

N Amys of phisice þat signifief diuers passiouns vndir oon name ofte tyme bigilijþ a leche, & bringijþ him into greet errour / For comounli al maner lesing^t of heer is clepid allopucia⁷; saue for 20 to seie þe soþe, allopucia is a maner spice⁸ of lepre þat comef of rotid fleume / Saue in þis chapitre I wole speke of allopucia þat fallijþ oonli in þe heed. Allopix in grew, is seid a fox in latin, for a fox in sum tyme of þe 3eer his heer pilijþ awei, & þerfore fallyng^t 24 awei of heer is clepid allopucia / ¶ Tinea⁹ is as miche to seie as a

The disease
is called

¹ *Mirobolans*, a kind of Plums.—Phillips.

² *Chebuli*, *Emblici*, and *Bellirici* are different kinds of Mirabolans. See Tommaseo Diz.

³ Lat. ana partes equales.

⁴ Greeks.

⁵ *cole*, Lat. colo, strain through a sieve.

⁷ De propr. rer. Add. 27,944, fol. 66 b.: "And if suche fumosite faileþ nouȝt, but is infect or i-lette by som opir humore, þan failinge and lak of heer is nouȝt propirliche ballidenes, but a special yuel þat phisicians clepen allopiciam. ¶ By þat yuel þe nurtur of heer is corrupt & faileþ, & þe heer falleþ & þe ferþe partye of þe heed is bare, and þe furþer skyn of þe heed is þe foulere. ¶ Soche men faren as foxes, for þe heer of hem fallijþ happiliche for inmoderat and passinge hete. ¶ Allopex in grew, vulpes in latyn, a fox in englishe."

⁸ *spice*, Lat. species. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 355, "a Spyce; species." As to the pleonastic use of *spice*, compare: a maner kynde of sponges (leaf 109).

⁹ De propr. rer., *ibid.*, fol. 80: "Also þe heed is ofte disesid wiþ an famuler passioun, þat children haue oft, and by constantin þat yuel hatte squama, skalle, & we clepiþ þat yuel tinea, moppe, for it fretiþ & gnaweth þe ouer partie of þe skyn of þe heed as a moppe fretiþ cloof & cleueth þerto wiþoute departinge & holdinge þe skyn wel faste."

reremous, for þe heeris of a reremous ben alwey aboute þe heed, & þerfore cirurgians makip difference bitwixe allopuciam & tineam, for þei ¹clepid tineam þere þat þere is corrupcioun in þe skyn wip harde crustis & quytture / Saue allopucia is whanne þe heeris fallip awei wipoute ony wise of þe skyn.²

Tinea when attended by corruption of the skin.
[1 lf. 106]

¶ Allopucia þat is wipoute comeþ of þe skyn,³ & sumtyme it comeþ in þe eende of a siknes for defaute of norischinge of þe bodi þat schulde helpe to norische þe heeris, oupir it comeþ, for þe poris openeþ to myche / In þis cas it is necessarie for to augmente norischinge of þe bodi wip good metis þat engendriþ good blood, & frote wel þe heeris of his heed wip þin hond & anoynte it wip oile of mirtillorum / If þis suffise not, frote wel þe heeris of his heed with þin hond til þe skyn of his heed bicomē reed; & þan frote it wip ryndis of an oynoun til it bicomē drie, & þanne þere wole arise þere vpon, as it were, bladdris, & þanne anoynte þe place wip greece of a maulard. & whanne þe heeris wexen azen, lete schauē hem ofte, for miche schauynge is good þerfore /

Alopecia arises from want of nourishment.

Treatment of this disease.

If it so be þat allopucia comeþ of vijs⁴ of humouris, þat þou miȝt knowe bi þe teching⁵ þat is aforseid in allopucia þat comeþ of long⁶ sijknēs; for if it come of vijs of humouris, þanne vlcera wole be in þe skyn. þan þou must loke of what humour it come, þat þou miȝt knowe bi disposicioun of al þe bodi & bi þe colour of þe place, as if þe pacient be fleischi & wel colourid, & if þe fleume of his mouþ be swete, & þe pustulis þat ben in his heed be reed, & if his vryne be picke & reed, & if he be zong⁷, & if he etip metis þat engendriþ miche blood, & if vlcera be in þe skyn, & if al þe skyn be reed & ful of quytture, alle þes ben signys of aboundaunce of blood. If it so be þat his bodi be leene, & þe colour of þe place be rufus ouþer zelow, & vlcer be drie, it is signe þat colre is þe cause / If his bodi be sumwhat whijt, & if he haþ smale veynis, & if he haue miche moisture in his mouþ, & if his vryne be whijt & picke, & if he þirstip not, & if þe place be whijt & neische and miche moisture þeron wipouten ony brennynge, it is a signe of fleume / If þe colour of his bodi be derk ouþer blac, & if he be leene, & if his vryne be pale & pinne,⁸ & if he haþ greet appetit, & if his blood be blac, & if he vsip miche for to ete beef & caul, &

The skin is ulcerated,
[5 lf. 106, bk.]
if the disease is caused by bad humours.

Signs for telling

whether it is caused by superabundance of blood, by choler,

by phlegm,

[6 lf. 107]

² withoute ony wise of þe skyn, Lat. absque cutis vitio apparente; of viis of humouris, Lat. propter humorum malitiam.

³ Mistranslated from the Lat. alopecia quæ sine cutis est vulnere.

⁴ See note 2.

oper *pingis* *pat* engendriþ malancolie, & if þe place of þe siknes be
 or by melan- ledy & hard, *pat* is a signe of malancoli, saue þis passioun comeþ
 choly. ful seelde of malancoli, but if it be of greet corrupcioun, & þanne
 it is worse þan ony oper aforseid / 4

First remove the cause of the disease. Whanne þou knowist of what humour it comeþ, first þou
 must auoide¹ *pat* humour, for þis is a general rule of .G., for as .G.
Galien. seiþ / First, þou must do awei þe cause, & I woole teche þee to
 a generale rulle off galyen. auoide þe matere with fewe medicyns *pat* ben approued & ben 8
 laxatiuis, profitable, & ben necessarie for a cirurgian for to knowe
 alle þe maner of purgaciouns, for ellis he schal neuere wel worche
 in sich maner causis / If it so be *pat* a man be ful of humouris, þou
 must first bigynne for to lete him blood, if he be strong & in age, 12
pat is, & not to zong ne to oold. & þan lete him blood, ouþer garse
 him, & þan afterward purge him, saue it is bettere to purge him
 [2 lf. 107, bk.] first, & þanne wiþinne a few daies lete him ²blood / If it so be *pat*
 blood be oonli þe cause, þanne it suffisiþ ynow for to lete him 16
 blood / ¶ If it so be *pat* þou dissoluest þe water wiþ a laxatif, &
 if þou letist not him blood tofore ne aftirward, þanne þou art not
 sure; for ofte tyme þe medicyne laxatif wole engendre a feuer, &
 principali if it be hoot / 20

To purge coler. ¶ Colre schal be purgid in þis maner / R̄ *violarum* ʒ j., *pruno-*
 rum ʒ j & ð, sebesten .xv. in noumbre, iuiubas .xx., seþe hem in
 iij li of water, til þei come to li j, & cole hem, & resoluþ *peron*
 cassia fistula³ ʒ j., thamarindorum, manne ana ʒ ð., & boile hem a 24
 litil togidere, & þan cole hem, & aneuen do *peron* poudre of mira-
 bolani citrini ʒ. j., & of rubarbe, & amorowe cole hem, saue chaufe
 it a litil first, & distempere it with ʒ ð of sugre *rosarum*, & lete
 R̄ him drynke it⁴ / ouþer wiþ þese pelottis⁵ / R̄ aloes cicotrini⁶ .ʒ j., 28
 mirabolani citrini, *rosarum* rubearum ana .ʒ ð., scamonie quintam

¹ *auoide*, Lat. *evacuare*. See *N. E. Dict.*, *avoid*, 1.

³ *cassia fistula*, see *Alphita*, p. 35, and *Adams l. c.*, vol. III., p. 429. It is *Cassia fistula* L., the pudding-pipe tree.

⁴ The following prescription is omitted in the text, but written in a different hand at the bottom of lf. 107 bk.: *pro colera* R̄ *cantaridarum*, *mane*, *medulle cassia fistule* ana ʒ ð, *myrhol*, *cytri*[ni] ʒ ij, *boylle in li* ð *watir*, to the halfe put therto ʒ j *suger* & ð 3, & *drenk yt*.

⁵ *pelottis*, Lat. *pillis*, Fr. *pelote*, a little ball. Phillips. "Pellota (in the *Forest Law*) the ball or round fleshy part of a Dog's Foot." *Charta de Foresta*, 1225: in *Annales de Burton*. *Annales Monast. Luard*, vol. I., p. 233: "Talis autem sit expeditatio [canum] per assisam comitatum, quod tres ortilli absceidantur siue *pelota* de pede anteriori."

⁶ *aloes cicotrini*, Lat. *sucotrini*, for *socotrini*, so called from the island Socotra.

partem .3. j., *pat* is to seie þe .v. part of 3., & make þerof pelottis with sirupo violaceo. & þis is good to 3eue to a strong man / Also þese ben good pelottis for to purge clene colre / R̄ mirabolani R̄
 4 citrini .3 j., seamonie cocte. Ð ð, masticis ¹grana iij., grinde hem & tempere hem vp wip ins of iouis barba,² & make þerof pelottis & þis ius, but collige on zest.³ ¶ Þis þou must wite þat whanne þou wolt purge colre, first þou muste make a preparatijf tofore with 8 oxisacra⁴ & wip metis þat ben colde & moist & wip reste. [7 ff. 108]

¶ If þou wolt purge fleume þou schalt to þis medycyne þat Maister William of Salerne vside / R̄ turbit albi gummosi .3 j & Ð j, diazinziberos .3 ij., & medle hem togidere & make herof a gobet, R̄
 12 & medle þerwip a litil of sirupe of rosis. ¶ It is good forto medle zinziberos wip turbit for þat wole comforte þe stomac & defie fleumatik humouris, & also it is good for to ete euery dai fastyng wipouten ony medlynge of ony laxatif / R̄ zinziberis albi .3 j., R̄
 16 liquericie rase .3 iij., gariofili cardamoni, nucis muscati, granorum paradisi .3 ij., zucare albissime .li. ij., & make herof a letuarie not to hard soden; oupir wip þese pelottis: pulueris pigre,⁵ turbit electi ana .3 x, pulpe colocintide .3 iij & Ð j, grynde all þese & sarce hem,⁶
 20 & tempere hem vp wip oile of almondis & make þerof pelottis, & herof þou myzt ⁷3eue at oonys 3 ij. ¶ Þe poudre of pigre þat goip to þese pelottis is good þouz it were bi it-silf.⁸ & it is swiþe comoun, & Rasis & A. acorden þeron, & hali abbot & serapion⁹ / R̄
 24 rosarum rubearum, masticis, xilobalsami, spice, cassie lignie, azari ana,¹⁰ aloes þat it be good, double to alle. ¶ If fleume be medlid wip
 To purge Flem l. h.
 A prescription used by William of Salerne
 R̄
 R̄
 [7 ff. 108, bk.]
 A powder used by Rasis & Auicenn
 R̄

² *iouis barba*, med. L. for *Sempervivum tectorum*. Add. 15,236, fol. 4: "*Iouis barba. semperuiua idem. G. Iubarbe A. siluegrene.*"

³ *zest*, Lat. et sit dosis una. "Zest, a chip of orange . . . it is also sometimes taken for a short afternoon sleep or Nap: as to go to one's zest."—Phillips. Zest (chip of orange), Fr. zeste, Lat. schistus—zest (nap), Esp. siesta, Lat. sextus.

⁴ *oxisacra*—Oxysaccharum, a Composition of Sugar and Vinegar.—Phillips.

⁵ *pigre*, πικρός, η, όν, sharp, bitter. Matth. Sylv.: "Pigra Gal. in dinamidiis i. amara, quæ amaritudine sua morbos & humores expellunt."

⁶ *sarce* hem, Lat. cribellentur. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 318. "a Sarce, colum." Phillips. "Scarce or Sarce, a fine Hair Sieve." Lat. serica, Ital. sargia, Fr. sarge.

⁸ *be it-silf*. The *N. E. Dict.* s. v. by 4, gives examples for the early occurrence of 'by oneself' = alone. The first reference for 'by itself' is quoted by Shaks.

⁹ *hali abbot & serapion* are not named in the Latin text. Hali abbot, also called Hali þe abbot, is Ali the son of Abbas, a Persian physician (994), the author of 'al muluki' = the Royal. See *Sprengel II.*, p. 412.

¹⁰ Lat. ana partes equales.

cochium
Rasis.

To purge
melancole

R̄

[3 lf. 109]

R̄

A stronger
medicine:

R̄

After having
purged, pro-
ceed to the
local cure;
use rubbing
and mild
medicines,
if necessary—
stronger ones

R̄

[6 lf. 109, bk.]

R̄

For rich peo-
ple use an
ointment of
Cantharides.

colre, þanne do [þerto]¹ þe forseid pelottis of turbit, of scamonie .3 ij. & ʒ, sticados arabici² .3 .v, & þanne þou schalt do þerto turbit .3 .v—& it was aforseid .3 x in þe resceit tofore—& þese pelottis ben clepid cochium rasis, & þis is þe beste þing þat mai be 4 for to purge dyuers humouris þat ben in þe heed / I ne knewe no medicyn laxatif þat is so good, þat is so profitable for to purge ij. humouris þat ben medlid togidere as þis medicyn is / For þere ben opere medicyns as sure as þis, saue þei ben not so myzty. Also 8 þere ben opere medicyns more myzty, saue þei ben not so sure. ¶ Þou schalt purge malancoli wiþ þis list medicyn þat is ofte ʒeue / R̄. epithimi .3 j., & boile it in li j. of gotis whey, saue þou schalt boile it but a while, & lete hem stonde so al nyȝt, & a morowe 12 chaufe³ it a litil & cole it, & ʒeue it to drynke; ouþer make it wiþ a decoccioun of Epithimi Rasis R̄ mirabolanorum indorum .3 x, pollipodij 3 .v, sene 3 vij, turbit 3 iij, sticados .3 x, seþe alle þes in iij li of watir, til it come to j. li., & þanne do þerto epithimi 16 3 .x, & lete it boile a litil, & þan sette it adoun fro þe fier; & whanne it is cold cole it & do þerto sugre ro. 3 j., & ʒeue it to drynk in diluculo / If þou wolt make a medicyn þat is more 20 strengre, ʒeue first bi iij. houris þese pelottis. R̄ aloes 3 j., salis indi 3 .ʒ., agarici .ʒ ij., ellibori nigri þe .iiij. part of a 3., & make herof pelottis wiþ hony, ouþer make herof a sirup.

Whanne þou hast wel purgid þe mater, þanne þou must go to þe cure in þis maner / Loke if frotyngis and list medicyns þat ben 24 seid in þe firste bygynyng of þis chapter suffise in allopucia þat ben not vlcera, saue conli fallyng awei of heeris. If þe forseid medicyns wolen not serue, þan þou muste make stronger / R̄ spume maris, þat is a maner kynde of sponges,⁴ saue it is more sutil & 28 more whit, 3 x. baurac⁵ .i. ⁶nitrum, in þe stide herof we moun do þerto sal gemme, sulphuris, euforbij ana 3 .ij., staphisagrie, cantaridarum ana .3 j, grynde alle þese togidere & make hem wiþ oile, & anoynte herwiþ his heed. ¶ If þou wolt worche more stronglich 32 aboute þe place þat þe heeris ben pilid awei, & princpaly if he be a riche man: R̄ olium de ben.⁷ 3 j., cantaridarum & kutte awei þe

¹ Wanting.

² *stecados* or *stickadone*, Cassidonie or French Lavender. Minsheu.—*Stoechas d'Arabie*. Pharmacopœa Gallica.

⁴ See page 179, note 1.

⁵ *baurac*, Arab. = nitrum.

⁷ "*Ben* or *Behn*, the Fruit of a Tree, like the Tamarisk, about the bigness of a Filberd, which the Perfumers bruise to get the Oil out of it, not so sweet smelling of it-self, but proper to receive any sort of Scent."—Philippus.

- hedi; perof & þe wyngis ana .3 j., stampe a litil cantarides & leie hem in oile of violet,¹ & sette þe viol² vpon soft colis & lete hem boile, & putte in a smal sticke, and alwei meue hem & it wole
- 4 bicomē al into an oynement, & make it haue a sote smel wiþ musco, & herwiþ anynte his heed; & þis wole make bladdris arise peron, & it wole make heeris to growe. Saf þou must take hede, þat in medicyns þat ben cantarides ynne, þei wolen make a greet
- 8 brennyng, and þat brennyng wole be yuel to take awei. & sumtyme it falliþ þat þoruþ þat brennyng comeþ a feuer. First, þou schalt helpe þis caas³ in þis maner: þou schalt anynte þe place with vnguentum⁴ album þat schal be seid in þe antidotarie /
- 12 ¶ Vlcera þat ben in allopucia ouþer tinearum⁵ summe ben curable & summe ben incurable; if it be so þat þe substaunce of þe skyn be not to hard, þanne þou schalt traueile þereaboute. Also if þe skyn be hard & calose,⁶ þanne it is seid incurable //
- 16 ¶ If þere ben pustulis þat ben hote & ful of blood, & þe skyn be ful of humouris & neische, þanne it is good for to garce þat skyn, & þanne waische al his heed with þat blood hoot, & þanne hile⁷ his heed wiþ caule leuis. & þanne aftirward anynte al his heed wiþ oile of notis
- 20 ouþer of camomil hoot, til al þe scabbis perof be wel tobroke. & þanne bigynne for to drie with þese drynge medicyns / Rꝛ, argillam rubeam þat it be neische & clene wiþouten grauel & wiþouten stoonys, & distempere it with strong vinegre, & make it as it were
- 24 an oynement, & þerwiþ anynte his heed //
- ¶ Item, argillam partes ij., sulphuris viii, cineres corticis, cucurbite siccos⁸ pulpe colloquintide ana partem j., distempere hem with vinegre⁹ & anynte herwiþ. þis is good þing þerfore & driē swiþe vlcera þat ben
- 28 hoot, & alle pustulas þat ben in þe heed & in þe face; þis driē & soudiþ //
- ¶ If þe matere be corrupt & swiþe hoot & brennyng, first þou schalt aswage þe heete wiþ vnguentum album rasis þat schal be seid in þe antidotarie, & anynte þerwiþ al his heed, &
- 32 þanne leie þerevpon a linnen cloþ wet in þe iuys of stoncroppe,¹⁰

Inflammatory symptoms, such as fever, to be treated with unguentum album.

[4 If. 110]

Ulcers accompanying Alopecia or Tinea are sometimes incurable.

Treatment, if there are blood-pustules, and if the skin is full of humours.

Rꝛ

[9 If. 110, bk.]

Cool with unguentum album

and a lotion.

¹ in oile of violet, Lat. in oleo in fiala.

² viol, Lat. fiala. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 129, s. v. fialle.

³ Lat.: Primo casu succurre cum unctione . . . in secundo casu ponas egum in balneo.

⁵ Lat.: Vlcerosarum autem allopiciarum seu tinearum.

⁶ calose, Lat. callosus. The references in *N. E. Dict.* are later.

⁷ hile, O.E. helan.

⁸ MS. siccage.

¹⁰ stoncroppe, Wright W., 712. 35. "Hec vermicularis, stoncroppe." Lat.: crassula minor Add. 15,236, fol. 175 b.: "Cassula minor frigid. sicc. teste de soriz. stoncroppe."

Treatment of
Tinea in an
early stage.

R̄

[⁵ If. 111]

Treatment, if
there is much
phlegmatic
(liquid) mat-
ter in the
skin.

An ointment
for removing
the hair.

R̄

Another for
restoring the
hair and skin.

[¹⁰ If. 111, bk.]
to mak heres
grow

R̄

Treatment, if
the matter is
melancholic
(cold and
dry).

& lete þis lye þeron til al þe brennyng be aweie, & þanne aftir þis
anoynte his heed wip oile of violet. & þanne hele his heed wip
leuys of *bletarum* til al þe skyn bicome moist & neische & wipoute
brennyng, & þanne drie it vp & soude it wip þingis þat ben afor- 4
seid // ¶ Item, if tinea be¹ newe, þou schalt do þerto anoþer
maner cure / R̄, abrotani agrestis,² fumiterre, lappacij acuti,³ arte-
mesie⁴ ana .m. j. boile alle þese in oile til þei bicome al drie þeron,
& wip þis oile anoynte his heed manye daies, & þanne sprynge þeron 8
poudre of staphisagre & of elleboro; wip anoynting of þis oile þe
matere schal be⁵ taken out of þe skyn, & wip frotyng of þis
poudre it schal be dried // ¶ If þe mater be fleumatik þat is in þe
skyn, & if þere be⁶ myche corrupcioun þeron & if þe skyn be 12
crusty,⁷ þanne waische his heed wip a decoccioun of malowis in
watir, & þanne anoynte his heed wip oile of camomille & oile of
notis medlid togidere; & whanne it is anoyntid, hile his heed wip
caule leuis, & þus þou schalt do manie daies til þe skyn be more 16
scabbid⁸ þan it was. & þan frote it wel wip an oynoun til þe skyn
bicom hoot & reed, & þan þou schalt waische his heed wip lye
maad wip aschis of a vine, & þeron schulen be dissolued wijn-
drastis brent.⁹ & whanne þou hast waische his heed herwip, þan 20
þou schalt anoynte his heed wip þe oynement þat wole pile awei þe
heeris / R̄, calcis vif. 3 .iij., arsenec 3 j., aloes 3 .iij., & make herof
a poudre & tempere hem togidere wip seping hoot water, & herwip
take awei hise heeris, & þan waische his heed aȝen wip þe lye þat 24
is aforseid til þe matere be wel dried / þan for to make þe heeris
10 wexe & for to regendre skyn & soude it, þou schalt anoynte þe
place with an oynement þat is maad þus / Take aischis maad of
a mannes heer 3 j, fecis of oile, lynseed ana. 3 .iij., mirre 3 j & ʒ, 28
staphisagre .3 .ij., euforbij .3 j., make þerof an oynement // ¶ If
þe matere come of malancoli, þou must take hede to make þe matere
neische and moist wip waisching of a decoccioun of violet & fumi-
terre in water, & anoynte it wip oile of violet til þe matere be 32
resolued & þe skyn bicome neische, & þe pacient schal ete moist

¹ not, erroneously inserted. Lat. Item fit aliter cura tineæ novæ.

² *abrotani agrestis*, Wr. Wü., p. 544. 20, *superuude*. Add. 15,236, f. 14
bk.: "*Abrotanum. gallice aueroyne. anglice suthernewode*." See *Alphita*,
p. 1.

³ Add. 15,236, f. 17 bk.: "*Lapacium acutum. anglice reddoke*."

⁴ *Ibid.*, fol. 12: "*Artemisia. A. mugwort*."

⁶ *be*, in margin.

⁷ *crusty*, Lat. *crustosus*.

⁸ *scabbid*, Lat. *ulceratus*. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 320.

⁹ Lat.: in quo dissoluta sit fex vini combusta.

metis, & þou schalt baþe him in swete watir, & þan þou must drie
it vp wiþ medicyns þat drien þat ben aforseid /

þis is a medicyn þat is approued of G. & is good for tineam &
4 vlcera þat ben harde in þe heed, & for pustulis þat ben clepid
saphati,¹ & for impetiginem & morpheat,² & for fallyng¹ awei of
heeris, & for al maner scabbe. R̄, gallarum .3 iij., seminis secute
3 .ij., baurac .3 j. & þe iiij part of [3 i],³ sulphuris viʒ 3 ij. & ſ.,
8 arsenec rubij, aristologie rotunde ana ʒ ij, salis armoniaci, ful-
luginis, amigdalarum ⁴amarum, colloquintide, eris vsti, venarum
citriinarum, & in stide þerof þou miȝt take lumbricos terestres brent,
litargirij, capparum foliorum, fice sicce,⁵ radices canne siccarum, flos
12 eris, alumnis sicci, rosarum, mirre, aloes, olibani ana 3 ſ., picis
liquide, foliorum oliue, vellis vaccini, ana .3 j., grinde hem sutilly &
tempere hem wiþ eysel, & sette hem in þe sunne in a vessel of glas,
ouper in a vessel of erþe glasid⁶ wipinne, & meue hem wel in þe
16 sunne, til it bicomē al an oynement, & herwiþ anoynte his heed, til
it be perfitly hool, saue þou muste take kepe of þingis þat ben
aforseid þat þe humouris be purgid /

A general pre-
scription of
Galen
for skin-dis-
eases.

R̄

[⁴ ff. 112]

Of þe fallynge of heeris //

20 CAluiciem is a fallyngt away of a mannis heeris tofore, & is as
miche to seie as ballid. & oon cause herof [is]⁸ kindly as
whanne a man is oold for to be ballid, & oon þerof is vnkyndly,
as whanne a mannis heeris falliþ awei for sijknes as it is aforseid &
24 remedijs þerfore in þe nexte chapter here tofore. & if þis cause
come for elde þanne it is incurable // ¶ Also ballidnesse ⁹comeþ of
humouris rotid þat ben vndir þe skyn as it is in allopucia & tineam,
& þe cure herof is bi avoidyngt of humouris as it is aforseid.¹⁰ ¶ þe

Baldness is
caused by
old age,

by sickness,

[⁹ ff. 112, bk.]

by a cor-
ruption of the
humours.

¹ *Saphati*, Hebr. *Sapathath*.—Philipps. “*Saphatum*, a dry Scurf in the head.”

² *morphea*, a skin-disease. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 243, s. v. *Morfew*.

³ Add. 26,106, fol. 46 b.: et quartam partem 3 iⁱⁱⁱ.

⁵ *fice sicce*, Lat. *fisti sicce*. Halle Table, p. 87: “*Fistakia* so named bothe in Greeke and Latine, and vulgarly *Fistici*, are the frutes of a tree.”
Fisti-nut, from *fistick-nut*.

⁶ *glasid*, vitreatus.

⁷ This paragraph is omitted in the printed editions of Lanfranc's Surgery and in Add. 26,106. It is preserved in Roy. MS. 12. C. XIV, fol. 32, where it forms part of cap. II, but with a separate heading. The translator took it for cap. III, but did not alter the following chapter-numbers. ⁸ *is*, wanting.

¹⁰ De propr. rer., lib. V., cap. 66, Add. 27,944, fol. 67: “*Ballidnes is prinacioun and defeaute of heer, and comeþ of defeaute of moist fumosite in þe formere partye of þe heed; so seiþ constantyn. . . . Ofte þe heer of men*

cause whi þat^t makip a man ballid ben þese / as whanne þe skyn
 recchip alongt, & if^t his bodi be drie & pinne & his skyn hoot, þan
 þou must^t do þis cure / Take olium mirtinum & olium de mastice
 ouper olium ladani, & anointe þerwith his heed. & if^t þe tyme of^t 4
 þe 3eer be coold, þou muste anointe him wip olium de spica //

Treatment, if
 the patient is
 young, ¶ Whanne a mannes heeris fallip awei so in vnkyndeli tyme, as þe
 while he is 3ongt, þan make him a baþ & anoynte him wip camo-
 mille & wip bittir¹ almondis & wip oile maad þerof^t // If a man 8
 bicome ballid for cause þat^t his skyn is to neische, þese ben þe
 signys þerof^t as whanne a man haþ fewe heeris & sotil / þanne take
 olium mirtinum & olium mastice wip oilio laurino, & herwith anointe
 his heed, whanne hise heeris ben schauen awei // ¶ Item, take 12
 capilli veneris, ladani ana, grinde hem & medle hem with wijn &
 with olio mirtino / If^t a mannes heed be waischen² herwip, it wole
 make hise heeris longe & make hem sitte faste / Also take water
 þat^t bletis ben soden yn & a litil mustard, & þerwip waische hise 16
 heeris & after anointe him wip oile //

if the skin is
 tender, ¶ Also to make heeris þat^t þe
 falle not / take leuys of^t mirte & sette hem in water til þe watir
 þerof^t bicome al troublly þan take li .j of þe water & olium infantini
 or of^t oile þat^t is vnripe & medle hem togidere. & þan seþe hem til 20
 þe water waaste awei, & þanne caste þerto canel & ladanum grounden
 & resolued in wijn, & make herof^t an oynement & anointe herwip þe
 rotis of^t þe heeris /

An ointment
 for preserv-
 ing the hair
 from falling
 off.

Of litil pustulis þat wexip in a mannes face or in 24 children hedis /³

¶ iijo. co/
 Saphati, a
 scab on the
 head and face.

Treatment of
 Galien.

Saphati ben litil pustule þat^t wexip in a mannes heed & in
 children forhedis & her face, & principali in wommens facis, &
 also in mennys facis þat^t ben moist, & makip sumtyme crustis / For 28
 to cure þis passioun, here þou schalt^t haue a good medicyn of .G.
 þat^t is aforseid of^t aischis of^t cucurbite & argilla // ¶ Children moun
 be holpen þerof^t if^t her norice absteyne hir fro salt^t metis & scharpe
 & fro strongt wijn⁴, & þe child schal be baþid in a decoccioun of 32

þat ofte seruen venus fallip and bredip ballidnes litil & litil. . . And if a
 man is withoute hed-her, he is i-holde þe more vnhest.

¹ MS. butir. MS. 12. C. XIV, fol. 32 bk.: cum amigdalīs amaris.

³ Lat., Add. 26,106, fol. 47: "pustule parue que nascuntur in capite fronte et facie puerorum."

⁴ Gul. de Salic., lib. I., cap. 2, Sl. 6, fol. 55 b.: "This seknesse is not
 bred but in children, when þei souken, and it ys clepid a crost, and it ys
 mad in hem in þe forhed and in þe hede. . . The cure of it ys þat every

camomile ¹ & rosis & fenigreci, & þou schalt anointe þe place wiþ ^[1 lf. 113, bk.]
 oile of camomille hoot // ¶ Furfurea ben a maner of squamis .i. ^{Furfures}
 schellis þat comeþ of brennyng þat is in þe skyn; if þei be frotid ^{(dandrif).}
 4 wel wiþ a manys nailis, þei wolen falle awei, & sumtyme þei ben lizt
 & wolen falle awei wiþ þe heeris, whanne þei ben schauē & wiþ
 waischingis of hoot water / If þis suffise not þerfore, anoynte his ^{Ointment.}
 heed with an oynement maad of farina ciceris & þe seed of malowe
 8 uisci temperid with vinegre / If it be not remeued herwiþ, anoynte
 him wiþ þis oynement // Take farine ciceris .ʒ. iij, farine fenigreci, ^{Ry}
 sulphuris viui, nitri croci,² sinapis ana .ʒ. .iiij., tempere hem wiþ
 vinegre and watir /

12 Of cloop³ þat is clepid fraclis or goute roset.

PAnnus is a superfluite þat falliþ in a wommans face, & comeþ ^{iiij. co.}
 ofte in childberyng, & also whanne hir menstrie is wiþholde, ^{Pannus, a}
 & is as it were a maner ledi⁴ colour or purpur, & sumtyme it is ^{skin-disease}
 16 medlid myche wiþ blak, & it comeþ alwei of malancolious matere. ^{on the face,}
 & þou schalt first purge þe matere with a decoccioun of epithimi & ^{which affects}
 gotis whey, & þou schalt make þat ⁵ he leue metis þat engendriþ ^{women, when}
 malancoly, & þanne take seed of raphani in a newe linnen cloop, ^{they are with}
 20 bittir almoundis, mele of benis, seed of melonum & curcubite, ^{child.}
 stampe hem alle togidere & tempere hem wiþ water & dissolue a litil ^{Apply a}
 safron & hony & make þerof an oynement, & herwiþ þou schalt ^{purging}
 anoynte hir face at euen late, & amorowe þou schalt waische hir ^{medicine,}
 24 face with a colature of bran // ¶ If it so be þat þis passioun be ^[5 lf. 114]
 oold, þanne þow schalt make a stronger oynement wiþ þe same
 oynement, & do þerto eruca þe seed þerof, & argentum viuum
 slayn⁶ wiþ spotil, & pepir & mirre,⁷ & tempere hem wiþ oximel, &
 28 sumtyme it is nede to sette vpon þe place watir lechis. & after ^{and leeches.}
 þat anoynte it wiþ þe poudre of catapucie⁸ & staphisagre temperid

day þe place most be anointed with oyle of camomille hoot. And þe noryse
 absteyne hyre fro fleshes, and fro chese, and fro scharp metis."

² croci, for crossi.

³ cloop, translated from Pannus. Lat.: De pannis, cossis et gutta rosacea et de lentiginibus et cicatricibus vulnerum.

⁴ ledi, from "lead." Lat. lividus.

⁵ slay, Lat. extinguere, precipitate. Comp. H. G. Niederschlag.

⁷ mirre, mistaken from Lat. nitro.

⁸ catapucie. Add. 15,236, fol. 74 bk.: "Catapucia, semen spurge, catapuste, spurge sed." The original meaning "a medicinal preparation" is shown in Aelfr. Gloss.: "Catapodia, a swylfende drenc." Compare N. E. D. s. v. catapuce.

Auicē.
R̄
vnguntum
amigdala-
rum.

[¹ lf. 114, bk.]

Cossi are
small pus-
tules on the
face.

dubium

R̄

Gutta rosacea
changes the
colour of a
man's face.

A purging
medicine.

[⁶ lf. 115]

with hony // ¶ Also a medicyn of A. for þis passioun / Take argenti viui .3 j. g^m amigdalarum 3 ij. medle hem togidere & stampe hem til þou se noþing¹ of þe quik siluer, & do þerto seed of melonis maad clene .3 ij., stampe alle þese togidere & anynte herwip hir 4 face aneue & amorowe ; waische hir face wip watir ¹pat¹ violet¹ hap leye þeron / Lentigines² ben purgid wip a strong¹ purgacioun & wip a strong¹ medicyn pat¹ ben forseid for pannum //

¶ Cossi³ ben lital pustulis & harde pat¹ ben engendrid in þe face, 8 & principali aboute þe [nose],⁴ & þei makip þe place reed, & þerfore þis medicyn is good. R̄, sulphuris viui .3 j, & make it to sutil poudre, & leie it in a pound of watir of ro. in a glasen vessel, & stoppe wel the mouþ þerof, & hange it in þe sunne in þe monþe of 12 Iulij & august bi xv. daies, & euery dai þou schalt meue þe vessel, & with þis watir þou schalt anynte his face þere pat¹ þe passioun is //

¶ Gutta rosacea,⁵ pat¹ is a passioun pat¹ turnep þe skyn of a mannys face out of his propur colour & makip þe face reed. & þis 16 passioun comep of humouris brent & abidip in þe skyn, & herfore is a good purgacioun pat¹ purgip salt humouris. & þis is þe medicyn / R̄, litargiri, auripigmenti, sulphuris viui, viridis eris ana⁶ & poudre of lital meis⁷ brent, & of þis poudre half so miche as of alle þe opere. 20 & þis schal be poudrid wip .ij. partis of trifolij⁸ & þe .iiij. part of swynys grese freisch, & make of alle þese an oynement. & on euen anynte herwip his face, & amorowe waische his face wip a decoccioun of semina frigidorum⁹ & wip a lital campher, & þan make his 24 face clene, & þan anynte his face wip olio tartarino,¹⁰ & al þe

² "*Lentigo*, a Pimple, or Freckle ; a small red Spot in the Face, or other Part, resembling a Lentil."—Phillips.

³ Gulielm. de Salic., lib. I., cap. 63, Sl. 277, fol. 12, mentions as skin-diseases : þe ampte, þe teter and þe ryngworm. Dunglison identifies the ringworm with *cossi*, deriving it from Lat. *cossis*, or *cossus*, *m.*, a worm that breeds in wood. The description given by Gul. de Sal. differs entirely from Lanfranc's description of *cossi*.

⁴ *nose*, omitted in MS., but space left free. *Dubium* in margin refers to it. Lat. *circa nasum*.

⁵ De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 65, Add. 27,944, fol. 100 b. : "*And nuphea is al in þe skynne, & lepra in þe fleische & in þe skynne ; þis infectionn is but lital diners from infeccioun pat hatte gutta rosea, pat infectip þe face wip smale pymples, and comep of a gleymy & a MS. & bloody & colerik humours, pat ben bytrene felle and fleische.*" Sl. 563, fol. 17 b. : "*þo rose goute.*" Gutta rosacea vel rosea, Rosy Drop or Whelk. (Dunglison.)

⁶ The dose is omitted, so it is in Add. 16,106, fol. 47 b. Prints : *unc. 1.*

⁷ *meis*, "*mice*." Lat. *pulveris parvorum suricum*. *meis* is probably an error for *miis*. ⁹ MS. *fin*.

¹⁰ The translator has omitted the prescription of *oleum tartarinum*, given

remenaunt^t herof^t þou schalt^t do of^t þis cure & fulfille wiþ medicyns
as it is aforseid / *ad pannum* /

¶ Cicatrices vulnerum ben remeued wiþ litargirum nutricum, & 4 is good for manie maner pingis, for it doip awei wennys, and it doip
awei scharpnes of^t þe browis & gendriþ goöd fleisch in woundis &
fretiþ awei wickid fleisch, & is maad in þis maner / Take litarge & R⁷
grinde it^t sotilli in a morter & caste þerto a litil vinegre & þanne
8 a litil oile of^t ro., & þus þou schalt^t do til it^t come to a perfit
oynement^t /¹

To remove
the scars of
wounds.

Of icchinge & smertynge² and scabbe.

¶ Cap. vo.
pruritus

Itch and
scabs arise
from acid
humours,
[³ lf. 115, bk.]
and are
caused by
salt meat,
strong wine,
and filth.

They are
contagious.

Dry scab is
called itch.

Treatment of
scabs.

R

12 I Cchinge & scabbe comeþ of^t salt^t humouris, & a mannys kynde
hap abhominacioun þerof^t, & putteþ³ hem out of^t þe skyn,⁴ &
þis falliþ ofte of salt^t metis & scharpe metis & of^t ⁵wijn þat^t
is strong^t; & it falliþ ofte to hem þat^t wakip & traueilip &
vsip no baping^t & werip no lynnen clopis, & þis is oon of^t þe
16 siknes þat^t is contagious, for o man mai take it^t of^t anoþer / þis maner
sijknesse comeþ sumtyme of^t blood, sumtyme of^t fleume, sumtyme of^t
colre, sumtyme of^t malancolie / Also scabbe, sum is drie & summe
is wet^t / If it^t be drie, it^t schal propirli be clepid icche / And if it be
20 moist, it^t schal be clepid scabbe / To þe cure herof^t þou schalt^t avoid
salt^t fleume, þou schalt^t defie þe matere wiþ þis sirup / R⁷, abstinthij,

in the Lat. Original. It is written by a later hand on the margin of lf. 114,
bk.: "oylle off tarter. R, tarter off whyt wyn made in powder temperd w^t
venygre as past, bynde yt in a clothe & put yt under embers, to yt be welle
brent; þan put yt in a ston pot with an holle benethe. & þis ys oylle off
tarter."

Two prescriptions, which are not in the Lat. Original, are added on the
same place:

"aqua pro guta rosacha: R, lytargiri. argenty vini ana ʒ iiij, acety alby
li. i, boyll yt to conschoun^a in an erthen veselle, let stande & clere & keep yt."

"R. salt ar. 3 i, saltpeter 3 i, salt comun 3 i, clere water ʒ iiij, mihte
togeder with y^e sexte part off a 3 off camffer, let colle, put thes ij waters
togeder."

¹ The following prescription, translated from the Lat. Original, is written
by a later hand on the margin of leaf 115: "Item gos gres & dow & diaculum,
alle sycatrynes it rectifyes."

² smertyng, Lat. pruritus.—Prurigo, emertung, Wr. W., 114. 3.—emertung,
is probably a mistake for smertung, to O.E. smeortan. ³ MS. putte.

⁴ De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 62, Add. 27,944, fol. 99: "Schabbe is
corrupeion of þe skynne, & comeþ of corrupt humours þat bep bytrene felle
and fleische, & hurtip & greueþ & defoulip þe body. For as Constantine
seib, kynde puttþ out euel humours to þe vtter parties of þe body to clense
and to purge þe inner parties."

^a consumption.

abrotani, cuscute, fumus terre, ana m .j., & take xx. damascenes & xij. figis, & vj. datis, sene 3 j, thimi, epithimi : 3 ß., sepe hem wel in li iij of water & li j. of vinegre til þei come to li j. & dī. cole hem & do þerto iuys of fumi terre & sugur li .j. & ß, & make þerof 4 a sirup & herwiþ defie þe matere / & þan þou schalt purge him wiþ
 R þese pelottes, R7, aloes optimi, cortices mirabolani, citrini, ana .3 j stampe hem & tempere hem with iuys maad of fumi terre, til þei be picke as it were hony, & lete it drie til þer mai be maad gobetis 8
 [1 lf. 116] þerof & maad þerof pelottis, & herof þou schalt zeue þe 1 weizte of ij. 3. at oonys, & þis medecyne mai be rehersed ofte. ¶ Also blood leting is good þerfore, if opere particlis acordiþ þerfore // ¶ Also gotis whey is good þerfore, in which be leid mirabolani wiþ sugre, & ofte 12
 R take, for þat clensiþ miche, & is maad in þis maner / In li .j of gotis whey leie 3 j. of mirabolani citrini powdrid an eue, on þe morowe heete hem & cole hem & do þerto 3 .j of sugre ro. // ¶ If it be drie
 Treatment of dry scab. scabbe, hoot watir is good for to baþe him ynne, in which is soden 16 fumi terre & enula, lappacij acuti, & in þe baþ anoynte him with oile of ro. & iuys of ache & vinegre, & herwith his bodi schal be wel frotid in þe baþ ouper in a stewe // ¶ Also an oyment þat rasis
 An ointment made by Rasis. R made for þe scabbe þat is drie / R7 salis communis, salis gemme, 20 ellebori, nigri costi, 3 .j., picis liquide 3 vj., olium violarum & aceti, & herof make an oynement / & anoynte herwiþ in his stewe & frote him wel, & aftir lete him be þerinne by an hour, & aftir baþe him in a decoccioun of bran & lappacij acuti, enule campan² & arthe- 24
 de scabi humida. R misie // ¶ If þe scabbe be moist / þan make an oynement of rasis / R7, argenti viui extincti, ³ & in þis maner þou schalt sle⁴ it: leie it
 [1 lf. 116, bk.] in a peuter disch & spete þeron, & frote it wiþ mannes heeris, & do þerto: whit litarge, elleborum nigrum, alumen⁵ vetus, oleandrum ana, 28 grynde alle þese togidere & tempere hem with vinegre,⁶ & herwiþ al his bodi schal be anoyntid at euen, & at morowe he schal be stewid,⁷ and whanne he swetiþ his bodi schal be frotid wiþ vinegre // ¶ Also

² MS. compare.⁴ sle = slay. See p. 189, Note 6.⁵ alumen, on margin.⁶ The following passage omitted by the translator is written on the bottom of lf. 116, bk., by a later hand: " & olio communi miscantur de quo totum corpus unguatur in ceco, mane intret stuppam et cum sudaueret fricet corpus cum usne et aceto. rsne i. mosse off the oke."usne, Arab ouchna. See *Littre-Deric*.—"Usnea, a kind of green Moss which grows upon Humane Skulls that have been lying in the open Air for some years, and which is used in Physick."—Phillips.⁷ he schal be stewid, Lat. intret stupham. See Skeat, *Etym. Dict.*, s. v. stew.

azen scabbe & icching, first lete þe pacient blood, & make him þis
 oynement / R̄, sulphuris viui & t̄m¹ de sale & tartaro, grinde hem R
 wel togidere til it bicome in þe maner of an oynement, & wiþ þis
 4 oynement anoynte þe pacient, & þis wole delyuere him fro icching //
 ¶ Also if þe pacient haue greet brennyng & greet icching, þanne
 anoynte al his bodi wiþ oile of ro. þat ben good, & lete him reste
 so .vij. daies // ¶ Also for þe same cause / R̄ succus affodillorum & R
 8 distempere it wiþ whit hony & anoynte him herwith, whanne he
 goiþ out of his stewe; for þis oynement doiþ away filþe of þe skyn
 and clensiþ myche /

Of morphue² and impetigine³ //

12 **N**OW we han medycyns drawen of .ij. wellis & of manie [⁴ 1f. 117]
 maistris, þat is to wite: of Salerne, & of Costantyn, & ¶ vj^o. c^o
 Platearij, & of Iohannes de sancto Paulo & of opere manie auctouris, The school of Salerno
 as of Ipocras, Galien, & Serapion, & Isaac, & Iohanne[s] Mesue, and the Arab
 16 Aicen / Hali þe abbot, & Rasis, & of opere manie auctouris / Alle physicians differ as to the names of the diseases.
 þese auctouris speciali zeue it us, saue þei acorden not in names /
 5 Forwhi impetigo, serpigo & morphea ben seid in salerne diuers
 names, for þat men of salerne clepen albam & arabes clepen im-
 20 petigo morphea / & men of salerne clepen morpheam / men in
 arabie clepen it albarec /⁵ & þefore I wole in þis book teche þe

¹ MS. t̄m, tantum. This prescription is neither in the prints nor in Add. 26,106, but preserved in Roy. MS. 12 C XIV, fol. 33 b.

² *morphue*. See p. 187, Note 2. N.E. morphew, Med. L. morphea, Fr. morphée, Ital. morfea, is probably the Latinized form of an Arab. past part. marfu, connected with marf, 'thin.' See *Lane Lex.*, p. 1132.

The derivation given by Tommas: *μορφή*, is unsatisfactory. Phillips: "Morphew, a kind of white Scurf upon the Body, from the French Word *Mort-feu*, i. e. dead Fire; because it looks like the white Sparks that fall from a Brand extinguished."

³ De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 63, Add. 27,944, fol. 99: "And þis eucl hatte *impetigo*, for it lettij and greueþ þe skyn and þe fleissch, namliche with tikeling and icching. Also þis eucl hatte *serpigo*, as it were a crepinge eucl, for it crepiþ into þe skynne al aboute as it were a serpn̄t opir an addre, & infectiþ þe skynne and defouleþ it wiþ smale skales aftir cracching and clawinge."

Lib. VII., cap. 65, fol. 100: "*Morphea* is speckes in þe skynne, and cometh of corrupecioun of mete and drinke, and what is lepre in þe fleische is *morphea* in þe skynne. Also som *morphea* is white & cometh of fleume, & som is blak & cometh of malencolia, & som is red & cometh of colera opir of blood."

⁵⁻⁵ The passage is corrupt. Lat.: Nam serpigo, impetigo, morphea sumuntur aliter apud salernitanos aliter apud arabes. Quod enim salernitani vocant SURGERY. O

Serpigo is an acidity of the skin.

Treatment:

[1f. 117, bk.]

R

difference of euery of hem, & after þat þe curis of hem / & I seie þat serpigo is a scharpnes of a mannes skyn, & it is clepid serpigo, for it passip fro place to place. þou schalt cure it wip gumme of cheritrees distemperid wip vinegre, ouþer gumme of plumtre & anoynte wip buttir & turbentyne. & þis oynement is good þerfore / Take gres ¹ of a doke clene purid, ysopi humide, olium ro., zelow wex, terbentyne, mussilaginis seminis citoniorum ² ana, make of alle þese an oynement, & anoynte him þerwith amorowe, 8 & þanne waische him in watir þat þer haþ leie þeron semen melonum & violet. & be he ofte bapid wip sich swete water. & good swete mete is good for hem þat engendriþ good humouris //

Impetigo, a disease, where the skin gets white.

¶ Impetigo is anoþer maner passioun, as whanne a mannys 12 skyn chaungip in oþer colour þan it schulde, & propirli into whit colour & wipouten ony harmyng of þe skyn. & þer is no þing þeron þat harmeþ a man, saue oonly þe colour of þe skyn chaungip oþir þan it schulde be // ³ 16

Morphea, a kind of leprosy confined to the skin.

¶ Morphea is a passioun þat þe skyn is out of his propir colour & þe skyn is harmed þerbi. & morphea is a spice of lepre þat sitt in þe skyn; for riȝt as lepre sittip in þe fleisch, in þe same maner riȝt so morphea sittip in þe skyn. ⁴ 20

Albaras.

Nota

[1f. 118]

Albaras is a local disease of the flesh and the skin.

¶ Albaras. ⁵ Not oonly þe skyn, saue þe fleisch is harmed þerbi / þis is þe difference of albaras & morphea / In morphea þe vertu of expulcion ⁶ is strong / & þe mater ⁷ þerof is but litil, & þerfore it is al putt into þe skyn / In albaras þe vertu of expulcion is but feble & 24 þe matere is corrupt, & þerfor it is boþe in þe fleisch & in þe skyn, & þer is but litil difference bitwixe albaras & lepre, saue albaras abidiþ alwei in oon place, & lepre goiþ into al þe bodi / In boþe þese causis it is nede for to awoide humouris þat ben in þe cause ⁸, 28

serpiginem, arabes vocant alunda. Et impetigo apud arabes est morphea, et apud salernitanos aliter et aliter apud nos. Quod autem Salernitani vocant morpheam, arabes vocant albaras.

² *Citonia* = *Cydonia*, quince.

³ Lat. Add. 16, 106, fol. 48 bk. : et non peccat ibi nisi color.

⁴ Not in the Lat. Origin.

⁵ *Albaras*, Arab. al-baras, leprosy. Compare *Avicenna*, lib. 4, fen. 7, tract. 3, cap. 9, and ff.

⁶ MS. *expulsif*. Lat. : virtus expulsiua.

⁸ *humouris* þat ben in þe cause. Lat. : Conveniunt in hoc quod omnis humoris indigent euacuacione peccantis. *N. E. Dict.* s. v. cause, q. b. gives references for *to be in cause* : to be to blame.—*Litré Dict.* (14th cent.) ils en sont en cause.—Duf. gives several references for *in causa esse* : to be ill, from *Causa*, morbus.

saue þat' oon mote haue stronger medicyns þan þat' oper. ¶ Impe- Treatment of Impetigo.

tigo muste haue abstynence fro þingis þat' engendriþ fleume, & he muste haue a purgacioun for to purge fleume / Anoynte þe place Purge and use all ointment.

4 wiþ oile of whete þat' is maad in þis maner / Take whete & leie bitwixe two platis of iren hoot' / & presse hem togidere & þerof R

wole bicomme oile // ¶ Also in anoþer maner / Take .ij. vessels of erþe, so þat' þe moup of þe oon vessel go to þe moup of þe toþer R

8 vessel, & þat' oon vessel schal stonde in þe erþe, & in þe vessel aboute þou schalt' do þi whete, & þou schalt' stoppe þe moup of þe vessel þat' is aboute þat' þe whete is ynne with a plate of bras ouþer of iren þat' is bettere, ¹ & þe plate schal be ful of smale holis. & Oil of wheat obtained by distillation.

12 þan þe moup of þis pott' schal be ioyned to þe moup of þe pott' þat' is in þe erþe with good lute, þat' þere mowe noon eir out' þerof. &

þan make a fier aboute þe pott' þat' is aboute þe erþe, & þere wole distille oile into þe pott' þat' is bineþe in þe erþe, & wiþ þis oile þou

16 schalt' anoynte þe place ofte, & frote harde. & if þis suffise not, þanne þou schalt' sette vpon þe place watir lechis ofte, for to do away þe fleumatik blood / If þis suffise not, leie þervpon a mun-

dificatif of cantarides stampid wiþ whete, til þe place schyne², &

20 þan cure it vp wiþ an oynment' of ceruce / Frote him wiþ an oynement' maad of armoniac & with þe sournes of citri, & nitro is good þerfore //

¶ þe white morphu is curid wiþ purgacioun þat' purgiþ roten Treatment of the whyt Morphea.

24 fleume, & wiþ þis special medicyn / R⁷, trifere minorum .3. .iiij., turbit, pulueris pigre .3. .ij., colloquintide .3. .ij., make herof pelottis R

wiþ hony, & he schal take þerof .iiij. pelottis euery wike, & eueri dai bitwixe he schal take .3. .ij. of trifere minorum, & he mote

28 absteine him fro metis þat' engendriþ ³ fleume; & þe place shal be [³ 1f. 119]

frotid in þe sunne wiþ an oynement' of tapsia, & þe seed of raphani, rubie maioris / elleboro nigro & mustard, & distempere hem wiþ

vinegre / Also froting' wiþ squillis is good þerfore //

32 ¶ þe blac morphe is curid wiþ ofte purging' of malancoli, wiþ Treatment of the black morffue.

gotis whei, & wiþ epithimo, & opere medicyns þat' purgiþ malan-

colie, þat' be forseid in allopucia; & his dietyng' schal be moist, & he schal absteine him fro metis þat' engendriþ malancolie, & he

36 schal be bapid ofte in swete watir, & he schal be anoyntid & frotid as it is aforseid //

¶ Albaras þat' is whit' is curid wiþ þe same þingis & with

² til þe place schyne, donec locus excoarietur.

Treatment of
white
Albaras

stronger medicyns þat^t ben aforseid in þe cure of þe white morphu, & miche castyng^t is good for hem, & þou schalt frote wel þe place with squillis in a stewe, & after þat^t sprynge þeron poudre maad of tapsia, & staphisagre, & þe wombis of cantarides, & seed of eruce, 4 & tordis of a culuere, & þou schalt anoynte him wiþ blood of a blac serpent, for þat^t is bi prop^rte good þerfore /

Black
Albaras
is incurable,
[1 lf. 119, bk.]
the attendant
discoloration
of the skin
may be cured.

Albaras þat^t is blak is incurable, for it^t is a particuler lepre, & but^t 1 if it^t be so þat^t it^t mowe be take awei wiþ alle rootis, it^t schal 8 neuere be curid; saue þe colour of his skyn mai be amendid / R7, aloxanti, þat^t is þe flour of þe wipi,² mirram, feces of wijn brent, reed cley, & alyme, poudre alle þese, & herwiþ frote þe place til þe pacient^t fele prickyng^t & brennyng^t. þis wole deye þe skyn for 12 manie daies, & whanne þis failiþ reherse it^t aȝen.

// Of lepre and of þe domys of lepre³ //

¶ vij^o. c^o
Leprosy
arises from
the corrup-
tion of the
melancholic
humours and
affects the
whole body.

L Epra⁴ is a foul sijknes þat^t comē of malancolie corrupt^t, oupir of humouris þat^t ben brouȝt^t to þe forme of malancolye⁵ 16 corrupt. & it^t goiþ into al þe bodi, riȝt^t as a cancre is in oon lyme of a mannes bodi / For whanne malancolie multipliē⁶, & a mannes guttis ben not^t strong^t for to putte it^t out, & þe weies bitwixe þe splene ben stoppid & þe poris of þe skyn closid, þan malancolious 20 blood wole rote wiþinne, & rotiþ complexionns of þe lymes. & þe bigynnyng^t of þe mater myȝte be of blood oupir of fleume, colre, ouper of malancolie, neþeles whanne þe mater is fulfild 7 it^t is malancolie corrupt^t. & þis is oon of the syknessis þat^t ben contagious / 24 ¶ In þis place I wole sette curis of lepre þat^t ben profitable for a cirurgian to kunne, & also curis þat^t comē ofte to a cirurgian handis /

[1 lf. 120]

² Lat. aloxantum, quod est flos salis. The translator read *salicis* for *salis*. ἀλόσανθον, τό, brine. Matth. Sylv.: "Alosantus i. flos salis et invenitur super petras nili fluminis."

³ Lat. de lepra et iudiciis leprosi The translator read *iudiciis*.

⁴ Add. 27,944, fol. 99 b.: "*Lepra meselrye is an universal corrupcioun of membres & of humours.*" Four different kinds of Leprosy are distinguished, "1. the *Elaphantia*; 2. the *Tiria* or *Serpentina*, and hap þat name of an adde þat hatte tyrys, for as an adde leneth liȝtliche his skynne and is skaly, so he þat hath þis maner lepra is ofte i-strept and i-hulde, & ful of scales; 3. *alopicia* & *vulpina* foxissch; 4. *leonina*, it fretiþ as a lyon & destroyeþ all þe membres."

⁵ & inserted.

⁶ multipliē, Lat. multiplicatur.—Multiplie, fructificare, multiplicare. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 246.

- Men þat ben leprous,¹ in þe bigynnyng¹ her heeris of her heed falliþ awei, & þe heeris of her browis, & þe heeris of her berd; & her forheed bicometh reed & as it were schynnyng. ¶ Also in
- 4 summe þe face wexiþ reed & swellþ & is somewhat ledi, & principalis aboute [þe nose]² // ¶ Also her vois is rowþ ouþer sumtyme it is wondirly scharp, & þe whit of her izen bicometh al deþ, & þe heeris goon awei of her browis / Her noseþrillis bicometh smal,
- 8 ouþer wondirly greet, & her noseþrillis ben streit for to drawe yn wijnd, & her nailis bicometh ledi / Also her breeþ wole stynke & her sotes / Also her pisce wole be streit³ & þei schulen haue greet snesyng⁴ / Also þei wilneþ myche to comue⁴ wiþ wommen / Also
- 12 þei schulen be heuy, & if her skyn be in þe coold eir, it wole bicometh as it were þe skyn of a gander⁵ þat þat hise feþeris weren pilid away / Also þese ben priuy pingis: if þou prickist his leg bilynde, he ne schal not fele it / & if þou waisschist hise lymes in watir,
- 16 anoon riht it wole drie yn // Also þese signes ben comoun: his yzen wolen bicometh rounde, & þer wolen wexe pustulis in his tunge, & her nailis wolen bicometh greet, & þer wolen wexe scabbis aboute-forþ. And þe fleisch þat schulde be bitwixe þe þombe & þe nexte
- 20 fyngir þerto schal be wastid away, & if þou prickist him in þe hele he schal not fele it, & if he be lete blood, her blood wole be scharpe & as it were ful of grauel. & if þou waischist her blood, in þe botme þerof wole leue as it were grauel. & þis sijknese aftir
- 24 þe tyme þat it is conformed is incurable, saue in þe firste bigynnyng it mai be curid wel //
- ¶ þe cure of lepre is not sett in þis book, for þis book is of cirurgie, saþ þer ben in þis solempne medicyns & apreued for to
- 28 kepe a man, þat þei schulen not wexe, & for to make it priuy, & canterijs þerfore / For alle þese pingis falliþ for a cirurgian / þis þou schalt knowe: if þe siknes be strong, it is hard for to do ony medicyne þerto; þforwhi, if þe sijknese be strong, þanne he muste
- 32 haue stronge medicyns, & þat were greet perel, & also þe medicyn muste be ofte rehersid.⁷ Saue þou schalt chese a list medicyn þat

Signs of Leprosy: the hair falls off,

the face gets red and swollen, the voice gets hoarse,

the nostrils are disfigured,

the breath is foetid,

[⁵ lf. 120, bk.]

the legs lose their feeling,

pustules grow on the tongue,

the blood is sharp and leaves a sediment like sand.

Treatment of Leprosy.

[⁶ lf. 121]

Strong medicines are dangerous.

¹ The symptoms of leprosy are similarly described by Avicenna, lib. IV., fen. 3, tract. 2, cap. 2.

² þe nose, wanting.

³ her pisce wole be streit, Lat. item accidit eis strictura pectoris.

⁴ comne for comune.

⁷ Add. 26,106, fol. 49 b.: Scias quod in egritudinibus fortibus si fuerint cronice fortes non competunt medicine, nam licet propter egritudinis fortitudinem medicina sit nocciua tamen dari non debet, quia medicinam oportet sepius iterari.

Light purg-
ing medi-
cines.

[2 lf. 121, bk.]

Give the pa-
tient nourish-
ing food.

A preparation
made from
the flesh of a
black snake

is given, until
the patient
becomes
giddy.
Then let him
lie down and
give a re-
viving medi-
cine in case
of collapse.

wole falle for to purge þe humour listli // A medicyn maad of gotis whey wiþ epithimo, þis medicyn is riȝt & good, for it purgiþ malancolie lital & lital, & also a man schal not be greued þerebi // Pelottis þat be maad of epithimo þat ben aforseid in þe tretijs of 4 allopucia ben good herfore, for þin entent schal be oonly for to purge malancolie þat is corrupt, & amende his complexioun wiþ good dietyng. Blood letyng is not good þerfore, but if þe cauce come miche of blood / If his breeþ be streit, þanne it comeþ of þe 8 veyne þat goiþ to þe herte / Sumtyme it is in þe veyne of þe nose¹ / þou schalt ȝeue to men þat ben drie lepre & comeþ myche of colre, þou schalt ȝeue him gotis whey ofte for to drynke, & ²þou schalt, in as miche as þou miȝt, make his complexioun moist & baþe him in 12 tempere baþ & lete him swete þerinne; & þan þou schalt anoynte him wiþ oile of violet & oile of cucurbita, & þou schalt ȝeue him good metis þat engendriþ good blood, & hese metis & hise drinkis schulen be in tempere heete, not to hoot ne to coold // ¶ Summen 16 curiþ hem wiþ þe fleisch of a blac eddre³ þat ben in drie lond & among stones, & þan þei kutten away þe heed & þe tail of þe eddre & doiþ awei þe guttis wiþinne / & þan þei doon hem in⁴ a vessel of erþe wiþ a lital peper & galyngale & salt & vinegre & watir & oile, 20 & so þei seþe þe eddre til al þe fleisch þerof be dissolved. þanne þe broþ herof is ȝeuen to drynke, & þe fleisch for to ete til þe pacient haue scotomiam⁵ & al his bodi to-swolle / Whanne his bodi is to-swolle & he haþ had scotomiam, þan leie him in a bed & lete 24 him ligge; & if þere falle ony þing to him as syncopis, ouþer greet cooldnes of hise lymes wiþoutforþ, or if his herte quake, þan ȝeue

¹ Incorrect translation. Add. 26,106, fol. 49 b: "Flebotomia namque non conuenit nisi quum scis lepram esse valde sanguineam cum hanelitus strictura tunc fit de uena cordis et de duabus guides timendo suffocationem: alia fit de venis nasi propter palliandum faciei colorem."

³ De propr. rer., *ibid.* fol. 100: "To hele opir to hide lepra as plato seiþ, best is a rede adder wiþ a white wombe; ȝif þe venym is awaye & þe tail & þe heed i-smyte of, þanne þe body i-sode in leke, ȝif it is ofte i-take & i-ete; in þe same wise wyne in þe whiche it rotieþ, ȝif þe patient drinke ofte þerof, and þis helpiþ in many iucles, as he telleþ of a blind mannes wif þat wolde slee here housbonde, and ȝaf him an addre with garlek in stede of an ele, þat it myȝte slee hym, & he cet it, and aftir þat by moche swete he recovered & had his siȝt goode & clere." The flesh of vipers is commended by Galen for the treatment of elephantiasis. Lib. II., Simpl. de carne viperæ.

⁴ in, in margin.

⁵ scotomia, σκόρωμα, αρος, τό, dizziness. Vigo Interpret.: "They shoulde saye Scotoma, and it is a disease, when darckenes ryseth before the eyes, and when al thinges seme to go rounde about."

him tiriaca maior wip a litil musco ouper hoot wijn // In pis maner
 al his ¹fleisch wole pile & alle hise heeris wolen falle awei & newe [¹ lf. 122]
 heeris wolen come vp azen / & pis medicyne schal be rehersid so
 4 ofte, & kepid wip dietyng^t til he be perfitli hool / Forwhi manie
 men moun be delyuerid of manye greet^t sicknessis, if her leche is A skilful
physician
often cures,
where a neg-
ligent one
fails.
 kunnyng^e & diligent^t aboute hem, & bi negligence & defaute of
 help manie men ben perischid / Cauterijs herfore þou schalt fynde
 8 ynowe in þe chapiter of cauterijs, & oynementis þat makip clene &
 soudip, all þese pingis þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie.

¶ Of waastyng^e off membris and bicomen smal /

12 **A** Mannes lyme bicomē smal wip greet^t streynyng^t of ligaturis ¶ viije. c^o/
 þat takip awei. þe norischyng^t of þe lyme, or of long^t akyng^t Limbs be-
come swollen
after a
streight
ligature,
they become
larger by
congestion.
 of ioynt^t þat enfeblip al þe lyme / þese pingis makip a mannes lymes
 to bicomē smal // ¶ Also a mannes lymes bicomē greet^t ouper þan
 þei schulde be,² whanne veynes ben feble & matere fallip þerto &
 16 þe vertu of soudyng^t failip, & in pis maner þe lyme swellip, & þe
 mater is fleumatik, & for defaute of heete it turneþ not into
 quitture ³saue it abidyng in þe lyme & swellip þe lyme / [³ lf. 122, bk.]

¶ A lyme þat is bicomē smal, in pis maner þou schalt make it^t To restore a
wasting limb
remove the
cause of the
disease,
 20 greet^t: if þere be ony ping^t to take awei þerof as akyng^e ouper ony
 stricture, ouper ony byndyng^t, þan remeue away þat first in þe
 manere as it schal be seid in þe chapiter of ioyntis. Whanne þe
 akyng^e is doon awei, þanne waische þe lyme wip a decoccioun of apply a wash
 24 malowis & violet^t & rotis of bismalue in watir, saue his lyme schal
 be in þe water no lenger þan it bigynneþ for to bicomē reed & sum-
 what to swelle, & be war þat his lyme be not so longe in þe water
 til þat he swete, & þan drie his lyme wip a lynnē cloop & frote it^t
 28 a litil wip þin hond, & þanne take a litil smal zerde & bete þe lyme
 þerwip til þou drawe blood þerto, & make a plastre þerto in pis
 maner. R̄, picis naualis, picis grece, resine albe ana, & melte alle
 þese in a panne. & whanne þei ben molten cole hem þoruȝ a cloop
 32 into coold water, & þanne anoynte þin hondis with oile & þan take
 it vp of þe watir & tempere it togidere & make þerof gobetis &
 kepe hem for þin vss⁴, herof þou schalt plane vpon ⁵a leper, & and an adhe-
sive plaster.
R
 leie it to þe lyme þat is forseid, & so lete it ligge adai, & aneuen [⁵ lf. 123]

² Lat. ingrossatur etiam membrum aliquod ultra debitum. Compare þe
 colour . . . chaungip opir þan it schulde be, p. 194, Note 3.

⁴ vss.

There is no perfect cure in case of an old dislocation.

If the swelling of a limb is caused by the phlegm,

use a purging medicine,

a bandage and compresses, soaked in lye,

R

[1 ff. 123, bk.]

or in a solution of saltpetre,

R

or bruise lily-leaves, and apply them.

If the swelling arises from melancholic blood, purge and use a softening ointment.

[2 ff. 124]

drawe it away, & so lete þe lyme be til amorowe, & þanne reherse þe waischinge þat is forseid & þe frotinge & þe betinge. þis wiþouten ony drede wole bringe [þe lyme] azen to his greetnes as it schulde be, but if þe lyme be out of ioynct & haue be longe tyme, þan it wole be hard, þan it is yuel to make þe lyme greet azen as it schulde. & þouȝ it mowe not be maad greet as it schulde be, neþeles bi þis maner it may be myche amendid //

¶ If a mannes lyme is gretter þan it schulde be, if þe cause 8 þerof be of fleume þat þou miȝt knowe bi neischenes of þe lyme, for if þou þriste yn þi fyngir, þer wol leue a pitt þerafter, it may be brouȝt azen to greetnes þat it schulde be, if it be purgid ofte wiþ a medicyn þat is clepid trociscus de turbit þat is aforseid, & þe pacient 12 schal kepe him fro alle metis þat engendriþ fleume, & he schal be war of greet replacioun of metis & drinkis, & þan þou schalt cure him wiþ medicyns þat schulen be seid in þe chapitre of apostemes of fleume / Take lye maad ¹of aischis of wijn or of an ook, & leie 16 þeron a double linnen cloop & wete it wel, & þerwiþ folde þe lyme, & þan streyne þe lyme wiþ a boond, & euery dai þou schalt wete it .ij. sipis in þat lie & bynde so his lyme, & in þis maner his lyme schal drie. Ouþer in þis maner / Take sal nitre & distempere it 20 wiþ watir, & þanne take a sponge þat it be so myche þat it mowe hile al þe lyme & þan lete þe sponge drie so þervpon, & þan wete þe sponge azen & leie it on þe lyme azen, & lete it drie azen & alwei bynde wel þe lyme; & þis þou must do manye sipis. Or take 24 þe leues of lillie celestie & grynde hem wel and þanne leye it vpon þe lyme, & þanne bynde wel þe lyme, & in þis maner þe matere wole waaste away & þe lyme wole bicoine smal as it schulde / If it so be þat þis greetnes come of malancolious blood or of greet 28 fleume, make him a purgacioun with gotis whey & epithimo, or anopir competent medicyn. & first þou schalt make þe lyme neische wiþ oile of lillie, or wiþ oon of þe oynementis þat ben mollificatiuis þat ²schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, þanne go to þe cure þat is 32 forseid. Whanne þe swellyng of þe lyme is doon aweie, if it be in hond or in arme, þat falliþ ofte tyme, or in þe foot & in þe leggis & in þe knee, þanne þou schalt make bitwixe þe fyngiris cauterijs þat ben clepid cauterium cultellare, as þou schalt fynde in þe chapitre of 36 cauterijs // þe greetnes of a mannes foot þou schalt cure as it schal be seid in elephancia as it is conteyned in his propre chapitre /

pe firste chapiter of engendering of humours & pe
kindis of hem, & conteyneþ .xviij. chapters /

pe .2. doctrine.

- 4 **E**Veri enpostym is engendrid of .iiij. humouris, oupir of water, or of wijnd. & it is impossible for a cirurgian for to kune a cure, but if he knowe pe cause perof, & perfore me pouzte þat it was necessarie for to make a propre chapitre of pe generacioun of humouris¹ & alle pe propurtees perof, þat pe redere of þis book
8 mai knowe pe causis of apostyms & pe curis perof & metis & drinkis þat ben necessarie in þis cause for norisching² & augmenting² of pe lymes & for to engendre natural heete / // Whanne pe mete falliþ into a mannes stomac & pou haddist anothamie perof, þan in pe
12 stomak pe mete is soden, & þan fro pe stomak it goiþ into pe guttis, & perof pou haddist anothamiam, & þan pe mete goiþ anon to pe gutt þat is clepid orobum or pe sak. Veynes þat ben clepid miseraice & pere ben manie maners perof as it is forseid, & þei ben
16 maad fast wiþ pe botme of pe stomac & wiþ pe gutt þat is clepid duodeno, & wiþ pe smal gutt, & wiþ pe gutt þat is clepid ieunium as it is forseid, & wiþ þese veynes bigynneþ pe .ij. digestioun & berip a veyne þat is clepid kilus³ to pe lyuer, & þat veyne goiþ to
20 pe stomac fro pe lyuer. & pe .iiij. humouris of iiij. substauncis ben engendrid in þis place of digestioun⁴ / For pere is engendrid pere a maner spumous substaunce whanne pe digestioun failiþ heete; & pere engendriþ anoper partie þat is sutil as it were wijn; & þe
24 greet substaunce goiþ adoun & styngip. If pere be engendrid greet fleume⁵ & miche, þat is cause for it quenchip pe hete of pe stomac / Also in pe same placis is engendrid a subtil substaunce, & scharp hete worchip peron & gaderip him hete & scharpnes, & þis is clepid
28 collera rubea; & if humouris wexip to miche, it wole achause pe lyuer / & causis of engendring⁶ of colre ben hote metis & drinkis &

¶ 1o. co.

Impostems ingendred off pe iiij humors.

A disease can only be cured if the cause is known.

[2 lf. 124, bk.]

The first digestion.

The food is sodden in the stomach, and passes through the guts.

Incipit ij dys^o

The mesaraic veins carry the chyle to the liver.

nota

The four humours are produced in the liver.

1. Phlegm,

[5 lf. 125]

2. the Choleric humour,

¹ De propr. rer., lib. IV., cap. 6, Add. 27,944, fol. 33: "Þise foure humores bep i-bred in þis manere: whan mete is i-fonge in pe place of seeping, þat is pe stomak, first pe more sotil partie & fletinge perof, þat phisicians clepiþ pthis-maria, þat is i-drawe be certeyn veynes to pe lyuore, & perby pe worchinge of kinde hete it is i-chaungid into pe foure humoures; þe breedinge of hem bigynneþ in pe lyuer, but it endiþ pere atte fulle."

³ The translator mistook *kilus* for the name of the Vein, perhaps in reference to the *Vena cava*, called *Vena chillis* by the translators of Arab. medical works, from *κουλη*.

⁴ Lat.: Ita in hepate ex chylo veniente a stomacho quatuor humorales substantiæ generantur.

3. Blood, traueile & fastyng¹ & stronge saucis // ¶ Also þer is a clene substance engendrid þat² kyndeli hete worchip þeron, & þat² is blood. & þe matere herof³ is good metis & drynkis þat² ben swete // ¶ Also þer is engendrid anoper substance þat² is sumwhat⁴ stynkyng¹ & is 4
 4. the Melancholic humour. clepid malancoli & is engendrid in .ij. maners: oon maner is þis of greet¹ hete þat² is breunnyng¹ & of greet¹ cooldnes þat² wexip hard¹; & þe cause herof³ ben grete metis,² & metis þat² engendrij malancoli / And þes .iiij. humouris Sanguis, Colera, fleumtica & Malancolia, & 8
 These four humours have different qualities. euery of hem hap diuers qualitees, for blood is hoot¹ & moist, fleume coold & moost¹, Colre hoot¹ & drie, Malancoli coold & drie // ¶ Also
 [3 lf. 125, bk.] of þese humouris³ summe ben kindeli & summe ben vnkyndely, & þefore in þis chapitre we wolen make mencion of alle, ffor bi 12
 gendring¹ of þese humouris enpostyms ben engendrid //

Phlegm is either natural or unnatural. ¶ Of fleume þere ben .ij. kyndis, oon is natural & þe toþer innatural / Natural fleume is coold & moist¹ & whit¹, & goip sumwhat⁴ to swetnes,⁴ of which lordschipe⁵ þer folowip a litil wilnyng¹ 16
 The natural Phlegm quiets a man's nerves. for to comoun wip wymmen, & þe palesie, & [he is]⁶ pesible, & louep wel for to haue reste⁷ / Saue þe moost¹ part¹ of fleume is in a mannes brayn, & in hise lungis, & in his stomac, & in hise guttis, & in hise ioynctes. And þe lordschip of fleume is in þe hynder 20
 It is chiefly in the back of the head and in the spine. part¹ of a mannes heed, & in þe rigbonys. & fleume doip þe profitis, þe .j. is þis: suntyme a mannes kynde failip blood, & þan kinde worchip vpon fleume & makip blood, & of opere humouris þis mai not¹ be do / þe .ij. profit¹ of fleume is þis: for fleume goip wip 24
 blood for to norische diuers lymes / þe .iiij. profit¹ of fleume is þis, þat² it¹ acoldip þe ioynctis & makip hem moist¹, for ellis in greet¹ meuyng¹ þei schulden wexe drie / Of fleume þat² is innatural ben
 [8 lf. 126] .iiij. maners⁸ as: fleume dulce, fleuma acetosum, fleuma ponticum, 28
 fleuma dulce. fleuma salsum // ¶ fleuma dulce is in .ij. maners. þe firste maner

¹ of greet cooldness þat wexip hard. Lat. ex frigiditate ingrossante.

² grete metis, Lat. cibi grossi.

⁴ swetnes, a mistake for whitnes. Lat. ad paucam tendens albedinem. De propr. rer., lib. IV., cap. 9, *ibid.* fol. 35: "Kyndeliche fleume is coolde & moist, & white in colour, and fletinge in substance, a litwhat swete in sauour, opir al werisch & vnsauoury."

⁵ of which lordschipe, Lat. de cuius dominio.

⁶ he is, wanting.

⁷ *Ibid.*, fol. 35 bk.: "a verray fleumatik man is in þe body lustles, heuy & slow, dul of wit & of pouzt forzetful, neissche of fleissche and quauy, bloo^a of colour, whitliche in face, ferdeful of herte, ful of spittinge snyuel & rokeinge, ful of slouthe & of slepinge, & of a litil appetite & of litil þurst."

^a bloo, MS. bood.

is þis: as whanne fleume is medlid wip blood, or as whanne hete worchip wip fleume to turne it into blood // ¶ **fleuma acetosum** is seid in .ij. maners / as whanne ebullitium¹ comeþ to fleume dulce & makip him to rote, & it [is] herto as it bifallip in opere þingis þat ben swete, as to swete winis whanne sournes comeþ þeron it bcomeþ coold, & in þe same manere fleuma acetosum makip fleuma dulce coold // ¶ **fleuma salsum** is moost drie of alle, & þis is whanne þer is ony part of colre medlid wip fleume, þan it is clepid fleuma salsum, for þe hete of þe colre makip it salt / ¶ **fleuma vitreum** was liquide fleuma, & wip cooldnes it is congilid, or sum partie of malancolie is medlid & congilip it hard // ¶ **Colre sum** is natural & sum is innatural / Natural is list & scharp & reed in colour &² in substaunce, & þe more hoot þat it is þe more reednes it makip / þanne vertues of colre ben pese / A colerik man schal haue hasti entendement & sotil³ of witt, & hardi & hasti þouzt, & hasti answe, & listly meued to wrappe⁴ / Of colre innatural ben .v. maners, as citrina, [vitellina]⁵, adusta, prassina & eruginosa / **Colera citrina** is medlid wip subtil fleume / **Colera vitellina**⁶ is medlid wip greet fleume / **Colera adusta** is in .ij. maners; oon is þis, þat it is to miche brent in⁷ þe lyuer; þan wip þis brennyng þe subtil partie departip fro þe grete parties, & in þis maner it takip a spice of malancoly // ¶ In anoper manere, partijs of malancoli þat ben brent, [ben]⁸ medlid þerwip // ¶ And þer is .ij. maner of colre adust, & is whanne his blood is adust *id est* brent as it schal be seid here after // ¶ þer is anoper maner of colre þat is clepid **prassina**,⁹ þat is swipe bittir // ¶ **Eruginosa** is lijk þe rust of copur, & þis maner of colre is miche freting & scharp, & G. seiþ þat þis maner colre is engendrid of hoot metis & scharpe as oynouns, garlek, mustard, & opere mo // ¶ Of malancoli þer ben .ij. maners—as malancoli natural & malancoli innatural / Malancoly þat is natural

fleuma
acetosum.

fleuma
salsum.

fleuma
vitreum.

[3 If. 126, bk.]
Colera
innatura is.

Colera
citrina.

Colera
vitellina.

Colera
adusta.

Collera
prassina.
Colera
eruginosa.
Galion.

Malancoli.

The natural
Melancholy.

¹ *ebullitium*, Lat. *ebullitio*.

² MS. *colour*, erroneously inserted.

⁴ De propr. rer., lib. IV., cap. 10, Add. 27,944, fol. 36: "And so colerik men beþ generalliche wraþeful, hardy, vnmeke, list, vnstable, inpetuous; in body long, sklendre & lene; in colour broun, in eer blak and crips, hard and stif; in touche hoot, in puls strong & swift."

⁵ *vitellina*, wanting.

⁶ *colera vitellina*, called *yellow3 colera*, in De propr. rer. *ibid*.

⁷ MS. & for *in*.

⁸ *ben*, wanting.

⁹ De propr. rer., *ibid*. fol. 35 b.: "Þe þridde maner of colera hatte *prassina*, & is grene of colour and bittir scharp as an herbe þat hatte *prassium*, & *marubium*, & *porrus* in latyn."

[² lf. 127] hap þese signis / þe .j. is as it were fecis of blood,¹ ² & her colour is as it were ledi & blac, & her bodi schal be leene & drie, & þei schulen haue good appetit^t for to ete, & þei schulen haue good mynde for to kepe þingis in her þouzt, & þei schulen be dredeful & 4 ful of enuye & gile & sorowe & coueitous / Malancolie innatural comeþ of humours brent & corrupt. Of euery of þese humours ben engendrid diuers maners of enpostyms / & euery maner postyme hap diuers cure as it schal be seid here-after. 8

The un-
natural
Melancholy.

A general word of empostyms /

¶ ij. c^o.

Any swelling
in a limb is
called Apostema.

Auicenn.

It arises from
the humours,
[⁵ lf. 127, bk.]
or from water
or wind in the
body.

The exciting
cause is either
external or
internal.

A Postyme hap manie diuers names of diuers men, for lewid cirurgians³ seien, þat þer is noon apostym but þat, þat makip quytture / Saue I seie, & alle auctouris seien þat eueri swellyng^t in 12 a lyme, whepir it be greet or smal, it schal be clepid apostym / For .A. seiþ: litil swellyngis schule be clepid litil apostyms, & grete swellyngis schulen be clepid grete apostyms / þerfore apostym is seid swellyng^t in lymes, oupir inflatioun⁴ þat chaungip þe lyme of 16 þan it schulde be; & þe mater herof comeþ of manie diuers þingis; ouper it comeþ of humouris, or of watir, ⁵or of wijnd / If it comeþ of humouris, þan it comeþ of blood, ouper of fleume, or of colre, or of malancolie // Also enpostyms þat cometh of humours: summe 20 comeþ of natural humours, & summe of innatural; & summe of sengle humours, & summe of humouris medlid togidere / And summe enpostyms cometh of causis wipinneforþ, & summe of causis withoutforþ / þe causis wipoutforþ is falling^t ouper smiting^t, or of a 24 wounde, or chaunging^t of eir / Of þe causis wipinneforþ: as of wickidnes of humours, or to ful of humouris, or to ful of water, or of wijnd / or whanne a man is hurt wipoutforþ: or wip greet hete þat brennep, or wip greet cooldnes of eir þat constreynep, or of 28 greet drienes þat constreineþ, for alle þese causis humouris gaderip togidere & makip enpostyms // Also if a man falle vpon a stoon or vpon an hard þing, or if a man be smite wip a stoon or wip a staf, or þoruþ prickyng^t of a venimous beest: alle þese þingis moun 32 engendre venimous⁶ enpostyms / In þis maner þou ⁷schalt knowe

[⁷ lf. 128]

¹ De propr. rer., *ibid.* fol. 36: "þe kyndeliche malencolie is coole and drye, þat is i-bred in blood as drastes in wyne."

³ *lewid cirurgians*, Lat. *rurales cyrurgici*.

⁴ *inflatioun*, Lat. *inflatio*, O.Fr. *inflacion*. *Vigo* l. c. "*Inflatus*, Puffed vp, swellyng."

⁶ *a venimous*, cancelled.

diuers enpostyms of what humouris þei comeþ / If superfluite of blood drawe to a lyme, as is clepid flegmon,¹ & þes ben þe signes þerof: þe place wole be reed for lijkes of blood, akyng for þe
 4 greet replecioun þerof, beting² for þe greet depnes of mater, or for greet akyng / He may haue greuaunce of a feuer³ / If þe blood be þinne in substaunce & hoot in qualite, þan it makþ herisipulam.
 & þis is þe signe þerof, þat in þe highest place þerof, it wole be
 8 moost reed and hoot; & if þou leist þi fyngir þeron, & whanne þou remeuyst þi fyngir, þe skyn wole be whit þere þi fyngir was, & anon it wole bicomē reed azen, for þe mater þerof is subtil, & þe pacient haþ greet brennyng þerof & akyng // Blood in his owne
 12 substaunce is more gretter & makþ more hete, & makþ apostym, þat is clepid carbunculus / þis enpostym comeþ to a man whanne he haþ haboundance of greet blood, & þerfor whanne he is replete of mete, he schulde baþe him or traueile him-silf, þat þe blood
 16 miȝte falle out, & for his greetnes & hardnes it mai not be⁴ resolued [4 lf. 128, bk.] with hete, & þanne it leueþ in þe skyn & makþ apostym.⁵ þe signes herof ben þes: þe enpostym is hard for þe þiknes of blood,
 & þe colour þerof is swart reed for þe greet hete, & þe greet heete⁶
 20 herof makþ a man sumtime to haue a feuer þerwiþ; & sumtyme it makþ a man to haue sincopin,⁷ & þis is speciali whanne þe matere is brent, & in þis maner þe matere þerof is turned into venym /

Superfluity of blood causes flegmon.

Symptoms.

Poverty of blood causes herisipulam.

Symptoms.

Fullness of blood causes carbunculus.

Symptoms.

¹ Halle. Table, p. 84. "φλεγμονή, id est inflammatio uel collectio, ἀπο τοῦ φλέγμου, hoc est a sanguine dicta, written moste commonly hither vnto (with muche rudenes) *Flegmon*, is properly a symple tumore (as Galen sayeth) and an affecte of the fleshie partes, comming of a greater fluxe of bloude then they nede or can naturally susteyne."

² beting, Lat. pulsatio. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. beat, 13.

³ De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 59, Add. 27,944, fol. 97 b.: "And somtyme it comeþ of ventosite & of wind, & hatte bubo; somtyme of a symple humour, as of blood, and hatte flegmon; þe tokenes þerof beþ^a: rede rednes comeþ of þe colour of blood, hardnesse comeþ of multitude of matiere & of hete þat wastþ watry matiere, quappinge & lepinge^b of ventosite & fumosite, schuftynge & puttinge, sore ache of þe^c strecchinge of þe place; hete comeþ of hote matiere, & swellinge comeþ of multitude of matiere."

⁵ 26,106, fol. 52 b.: hoc apostema fit cum homo habundat sanguine grosso, et balneatur post ciborum repletionem aut laborat, ita quod sanguis ad extrema movetur et propter suam grossitiem et duritiem non potest a calore resolui remanens in cuti facit apostema.

⁶ heete, in margin.

⁷ Halle. Table, p. 122. "Syncope. Συγκοπή, id est animi deliquium, uel præseps uirium lapsus, that is the defecte of the mynde, or a sodeine slyding away of the strengthe of the body, and commonly called swoundynge."

^a MS. by.

^b Lat. pulsus i. saltus.

^c MS. ofte.

Natural
colre
causes Ery-
sipelas.

Natural colre makij herisipulam,¹ & þe signe þerof is hardnes for þe greet drieness of colre. & þe heed of þe enpostym is schape as it were a pyne, for þe grece þat it hap.² & þe colour þerof is reed medlid wip ȝelow //

Phlegm
causes
vdimia.
(oedema).

An enpostym þat cometh of fleume, is clepid vdimia³ or ȝima,⁴ & is a neisch enpostym, & þe colour þerof is somewhat whijt. & if þou pressist in þi fyngir, þer wole leue þere a pitt for þe gret neischenes; & whanne þi fyngir is aweie, it wole arise vp aȝen. 8. þis enpostym is wipout akyng, saue it makij a greuance /

Natural
malancoli
causes
Sclirosis.
[⁵ lf. 129]

¶ Natural malancoli makij an hard enpostym, & is clepid Sclirosis.⁵ & þe signe þerof is hardnes, & þe colour þerof is as þe colour of malancolie ledi or blac /

A watery
apostema.

Enpostym þat cometh of blood & watir medlid togidere. þis is þe signe þerof: if þou settist þeron þi .ij. fyngiris of þi .ij. hondis, & first pressist þat oon fyngir & þanne þat oþer, þou schalt fele þe watri mater remeue fro þat oon fyngir to þat oþer //

These are
the simple
Apostemas.

¶ þese ben þe differencis of apostyms þat ben symple, þat cometh of oon matere at oonis; & þese ensaumplis ben schewid tofor, for þou schalt þe bettir knowe enpostyms þat cometh of double matere //

Apostemas
arising from
more than
one cause:
Apostema
flegmonides
and
herisipilades

¶ þer cometh an empostym of blood & colre; & if þe more partie be of blood, þan þe enpostym schal be clepid flegmonides; & if þe more partie þerof be of colre, þanne he schal be clepid herisipilades. & þe signes herof þou schalt knowe bi þe signes of

¹ De propr. rer., *ibid.*: "*herisipila, þat is holy fure per antifrasm, þat is contrarie spekinge.*"

² Lat. propter igneitatem ipsius.

³ *vdimia*, οἰδημα, tumour.—Vigo, Chirurgery. The Interpretation: "Undimia is a barbarouse terme, in greke it is called oedema, in latin tumor. For it is softe swellynge wythout payne."

⁴ *Zima*. Sinonoma Barth, "*Zima est apostema flancorum molle sine dolore.*" From ζῆμα, that which is boiled, decoction. De propr. rer., *ibid.*: "*In þe same manere aposteme cometh of fleume, and hatte zimia oþur palus; for riȝt as in mures and in mareys is moche superfluyte of slyme & of wose, so in þis posteme is moche superfluyte; and if þou þurstist þy fyngre þer vpon, hit dyueth inne, for þe rennyng matiere wiþdrawiþ & lettith þe vingre entre, & þanne in þe myddel is a putte as hit were þe bore of an hole; & whanne þe fingre is aweye, þe matiere cometh aȝen & filliþ al þe place.*"

⁵ Add. 16, 106, fol. 53: apostema quod vocatur scliros ab aliis sephiros vel sclirosis. Halle, Table, p. 114. "Scirrhus Σκίρρος και σκληρότης, id est durities, writen of old *Sclirosis*, is (as I gat her of Galen in diuers places) a tumore against nature, and an affecte of harde and thicke partes."

þe symple apostyms // ¶ Also blood & fleume natural [ben]¹ medlid are caused by the blood and choler.
 togidere, & makip an enpostym þat is vdimia. & þe signe herof
 [is]² þat þe heed of þis enpostym is reed, & þat opere wole be
 4 whit³ / ¶ Also blood is medlid wip greet fleume & malancolie, &
 engendriþ glandulas & Scrophulas.⁴ ¶ Colre medlid with fleume
 5 makip fleume rennyngt, & makip þat fleume goip wip him into [5 lf. 129, bk.]
 ioynctis. & herof þou schalt haue a pleyner teching in þe chapitre
 8 of ioinctes. ¶ Also greet fleume is medlid with malancoli, & þerof
 comeþ glandula & Scrophule / Also malancolie & blood, colre & **Glandula & Scrophule.**
 fleume ben medlid alle togidere & makip an enpostym þat is clepid
 antrax; & þe malice þerof is diuers after euery humour. Saue if **Anthrax**
 12 blood & colre be feruent togidere & malancolie be malicious, þan is caused by
 þere falliþ manie harde pingis þerto, as quaking of þe herte, & **Melancholy,**
 sincopis, & out of hise wittis, & sumtyme deef. & þe signes herof **Blood Choler**
 ben greet hardnes of þe enpostym, & þe schap þerof as it were a **and Phlegm.**
 16 pyn, & greet akyng, & sumtyme he schal not fele it. And þerfore **Symptoms of**
 .G. seiþ: hote apostyms, if þei be not felid, ben incurable. & **Anthrax.**
 veynes þat ben þeron wolen be of diuers colouris, & vpon þe **Galion.**
 enpostym þere wole be as it were a litil bladdre,⁶ & þe colour þerof
 20 wole be as aischis, & it semeþ þat it is drawe ynward wip a þreed.⁷
 & þis enpostym is seid contagious.

Of humouris þat ben [in]⁸ natural, þese pingis folowip þerof /
 Of fleume þat is corrupt cometh Bicia & testudines / Of malancolie
 24 comeþ scrophule & glandule, as it is aforseid. & of alle þese þou
 schalt haue propre chapitris / Of colre þat is brent & of opere
 humouris þat ben brent & corrupt þere comeþ manie pustulis, &
 summe þerof ben ful malicious after þe malice of þe matere / Herof
 28 comeþ ignis persicus, miliaris, formica, herpes, herpes estiomenus.

¹ ben, wanting.² is, wanting.³ Incorrect translation. Add. 26,106, fol. 53: facit apostema quod videtur vdimia, nisi quia in superficie magis rubet.⁴ Halle. Table, p. 115. "Scrophula (so called by Auicenna, Guidone de Cauliaco, Bruno, Theodorico, Lanfranco, and others a Scrophula, a pregnant soowe: because it or the lyke, is a disease common to hogs) is a harde Scirrhus tumore, in the glandules of the share or arme holes, but chiefly in the necke."⁶ Compare Guilelm. de Salic., I. 59. Sl. 277, fol. 11: "In þe antrax . . . þer been smale bladdres aboute þe copp of it, as þouȝ fier hadde touched þe place."⁷ De propr. rer., lib. 7, cap. 59, Add. 27,944, fol. 93: "And also it semeþ þat hit is i-drawe to þe ground þerof wip a maner þrede, i-fastned to þe vltir partye of þe bladder in þe myddel." Not in Guilelm. de Salic.⁸ in, wanting. Lat. De humoribus autem non naturalibus.Anthrax is contagious.
[9 lf. 130]**Bicia & testudines** caused by corrupt Phlegm.**Diseases** arising from corruption of the humours:

- ignis persicus.** Ignis persicus is a signe¹ þat þere ben manie pustule þeron & venymous water. & þe pustule ben reed al aboute & ȝelow, & occupiep al þe lyme. & it is wiþ greet brennyng. & þis comeþ of colre brent and þinne / Miliaris haþ litil pustulis, & haþ not so greet brennyng, ne þe place þerof is not so reed. & þis comeþ ofte of fleume medlid wiþ a litil colre // ¶ fformica is a pustula þat is swiþe feruent, & haþ a cruste aboue, & it comeþ of colre brent. & þis is goynge & fretiþ þe lyme aboue, & it hath greet brennyng // 8
- Pruna.** ¶ þe firste² is a pustula þat comeþ of malancolie & is blac or [3 ff. 130, bk.] ledi, & it comeþ of þe venemous mater of malancoli / ³Herpes esthiomenus. esthiomenus is as miche to seie as fretyng him-silf, & þis comeþ in manie maners / It comeþ in medlyng of colre þat is brent & 12 malancolie innatural & brent & sutil. & whanne þis falliþ into a lyme, it fretiþ þe lyme for þe greet malice þat it haþ // ¶ Also þer is anoþer maner passioun þat haþ manie diuers names, for summen clepen it cancerum, & summen lupum. & men of fraunce clepen it 16 malum nostre domine⁴ / And lumbardis clepen it fier of seint antony, & summen clepen it herisipulam. Of alle þese diuers names is no charge of, saue þe signes of þis siknes ben þese: freting & brennyng & blac colour & stynkyng, & þat riȝt foul 20 stynkyng. & or þe skyn þerof be to-broke, it wole not stynke, saue þe place þerof wole be ledi. & if þou felist þe place wiþ þi fyngir, þou schalt fynde þe fleisch þerof al corrupt // ¶ Cancer is a postym þat is swiþe corrupt. & is in .ij. maners: as cancer 24 vlceratus, & cancer þat is not vlceratus. ¶ A cankre þat is not
- Canorum & lupum.**
- Cancer vlceratus**

¹ *signe*, probably mistaken for *siknesse*. Lat. ignis persicus est egritudo in qua sunt multe pustule.

² Lat. Pruna similiter est pustula. The translator read: prima.—Phillips. "*Pruna*, a burning or live Coal; also a Carbuncle, Plague-sore, or fiery Botch."

⁴ *malum nostre domine*; This name, given to *Erisipelas*, is due to the miraculous cures of this disease by intercession of the Holy Virgin. They are first reported by *Hugo Farsitus*, a canon of Saint Jean des Vignes, in Soissons. In his book, *De Miraculis Maria Suessionensis*, he relates the miracles, as seen by himself in the year 1128, and mentions several instances where women suffering from a severe skin-disease have been cured by the help of the Holy Virgin. Further account of a plague known under the name "*mal des ardents*" and of cures by the help of the Holy Virgin, is given by *Gautier de Coincy*. See G. d. C., ed. *Foquet*, p. 138.

The same disease is also called *fuoco di Sant Antonio*. See Tomm. Dict., *Maladie S. Antoine* (Godefr. Dict.). The Saints Germain, Main, Othoine and Verain, have likewise given their names to the *erisipelas*. *Quinte Ess.*, 8. 23: "fire of St. Antony, a breunnyng siknes clepid þe fier of helle."

vlceratus is in .ij. maners: oon comeþ of malancolie rotid, & bi- Cancer non
vlceratus
 gynneþ for to wexe in þe mychilnes of a fecche or of a pese. &
 þanne it¹ wole wexe alwei in a maner brennyng; & euere as þe [1 lf. 131]
 4 matere wexiþ, so wole þe brennyng¹ wexe forþ. & it¹ wole haue It has
variously
coloured
veins,
 veynes of diuers colour. & sum colour þerof wole be ledi, & sum
 wole be purpur, summe þerof wole be grene. & þan þis is ful of
 colerik matere corrupt. & it hap greet akyng, & if þou pressist
 8 it¹ with þi fyngir, þe malice þerof wole be miche more / þis passioun
 comourly wole wexe in placis þat ben glandule / þis maner en-
 postym comeþ ofte in a mannes pies & in a wommans brest & in
 oþere placis / Cancer vlceratus. Alle þe signes þerof ben tofore
 12 seid in his propre chapitre /

Now alle þe signes of enpostyms ben seid, go we to þe curis / Treatment of
apostema.
 þou must take kepe, wheþer þe enpostym come of causis wiþout-
 forþ or wiþinne / If þe enpostym comeþ of causis wiþinneforþ, Nota.
 16 þanne þou must purge þe matere or þou leie þerto ony repercussijf
 or ony maturatif or ony resoluynge þing / forwhi a repercussijf² mai
 not do awei al þe matere, þou; it somewhat aswage þe akyng in þe
 firste bigynnyng / neþeles itt makip þe matere hard, & aftirward þe
 20 patient³ schulde haue þe more penaunce / A resoluynge in an vnclene [3 lf. 131, bk.]
 bodi drawiþ more matere þerto þan it resolueþ. ¶ A maturatif
 makip þe enpostym to wexe more, if his bodi be vnpurgid, & makip
 þe matere of þe enpostym feruent / In what maner þou schalt
 24 purge diuers maters, in þe chapitre of allopucia þou schalt fynde it,
 & in þe chapitre de doloribus iuncturarum, þat schal be seid here
 aftir / þou schalt worche in enpostyms þat fallip in a mannes bodi
 wiþoutforþ. If þou wost wel þat his bodi is replet, þis schal alwei
 28 be þin entencioun, for to drawe þe matere awei in þis maner: / If
 þe enpostym be in a mannes mouþ, þan þou schalt make him no
 gargarisme;⁴ & if it be in his ers, þan þou schalt make him no
 laxatif medicyn / & if it be in a wommans maris,⁵ þan þou schalt
 32 zeue hir no medicyn for to make menstrie; saue þou schalt alwei
 go to þe contrarie herof: as if enpostyms be in partijs aboue, þan
 þou schalt zeue catarticum / If þe enpostym be bineþe, þan zeue When the
causes are
external use
a contrarious
medicine, i. e.
.Nota.

² MS. repercussist.

⁴ gargarisme, a gargle. Vigo, Chirurgery, Interpretation: "A gargarisme is when we cause water to bubble in our throtes, not sufferynge it to go downe."

⁵ maris, Lat. matrix, O.Fr. marris. Sloane 2463, fol. 194 bk.: "The moder is a skyn, þat þe childe is enclosed in his moder-wombe. And manye of þe sekenesses that women haue, comen of greuaunces of this moder, that we clepen þe marice."

an emetic,
when it is in
lower parts.

[¹ lf. 132]

Repelling
medicines
must not be
used in the
following
cases:

- 1.
- 2.
3. 4.
- 5.

6. 7.

8.

9.

10.

In case of a
blood-apos-
tema use
a repelling
followed by

[⁶ lf. 132, bk.]

a solvent
medicine,

In case of
suppuration
apply a
maturing
medicine.

Open the
abscess when
it is ripe.

1.
Take care
not to cut,
if the abscess
is near a
joint,
looke
well upon
thes
Rulles

him medicyns for to caste. ¶ Whanne þe matere is purgid, þan bigynne we curis of hoot enpostyms / þou must¹ be war of reper-
cussiuus in ten maners. ¶ þe j. cause is þis, if his lodi be replet /
as it is aforseid. ¶ þe .ij. is, greet fume of humours & venymous. 4
¶ þe .iiij. is gretnes² of humours rotid. ¶ þe .iiij. cause is, if
apostym wexe in a noble lyme as in a mannes eere, or in a wommans
tetis, or in þe rigge abouteforþ. ¶ þe .v. cause is: if þe enpostym
be in þe þrote, or nyȝ þe brayn, or in any place nyȝ þe herte, or nyȝ 8
ony lyme þat norischeth / ¶ þe .vj. cause is in a child. ¶ þe .vij.
cause is, if it be in an oold man. ¶ þe .viij. cause is if it be in a
man þat risiþ vp of sijknes. ¶ þe .ix. cause is if it be apostema
creticum.³ ¶ þe .x. cause is, if an enpostyme be in a noble 12
membre, & be putt fro þat place to anoþer. ¶ In noon of þese .x.
causis, þou schalt make noon repercussif in hote enpostyms as þou
schalt fynde þe maner in þe antidotarie of repercussifs / ¶ To
enpostyms of blood, þou miȝt do medicyns repercussifs & dis- 16
solutiuus sotilly, so þat þe firste bigynnyng⁴ repercussifs ouercome
þe mater of enpostym myche, & in þe stat⁵ of þe enpostym lasse, &
in þe ende þerof þou schalt vse clene resoluyng þingis / If þou
miȝt not wiþ repercussiuus do awei þe enpostym ne resolue him, 20
saue he bigynneþ to quytture, þan þou schalt do þerto medicyns
maturatiuus, til it be wel quitturid. ¶ Of repercussiuus resolutiuus
maturatiuus & þe manere of worching þerof þou schalt fynde in þe
antidotarie. ¶ Whanne þe enpostym is quitturid & sufficiently 24
rotid, þis þou miȝt knowe whanne þe akyng is al aweie, & whanne
þe matere is neische þerof, & þan opene þe enpostym, þat þou seest
moost competent // Saue or þou opene ony enpostyms, þou must
be war of þus manie þinges: ¶ þe j. is, þou schalt opene noon 28
enpostym or he be perfitli rotid, but if þe enpostym rotid ony opir
lyme, or þat he were nyȝ ony noble lyme, or nyȝ ony ioynct // In
opere causis þou schalt abide til he be perfitli rotid. & in þe
kutting þou schalt loke where þe skyn is most þinne and moost 32
hangyng, & þere þou schalt opene þe enpostym.⁷ ¶ þe .ij. enten-

² gretnes, grossities.

³ creticum, Lat. criticum.

⁴ þe firste bigynnyng, determination of time denoted by accusative. Add. 10,440, fol. 20: "and be war, þat þe tyme of chaungynge of þis medycyn þou take it not away with violence."

⁵ in þe stat, Lat. in statu. Add. 27,944, fol. 98: "whan þe posteme is in state."

⁷ Lat.: facias apertionem ubi materia magis dependet, et ubi pellis est magis tenuis.

- cioun is þis, þat þou schalt be war, whanne þou openest¹ an enpostym, þat þou hurte no senewe, ne no veine ne noon arterie. ¶ þe .iiij. cause is, þat þou schalt not avoide al þe mater at oon tyme, & principali whanne þer is myche matere, & þe enpostym is greet // ¶ þe .iiij. is þis, þou schalt alwei opene þe enpostym in endelong þe lyme & not ouerþwert. Whanne þou hast opened þe enpostym, þan þou schalt cure him vp² as it is aforseid in þe cure of vlcus virulentum. þan þou schalt fille þe wounde þerof with oold lynnen cloof þat is whizt, anoon to .iiij. daies [wip] mundificatiuis of zelkis of ciren & mele, aftir .iiij. daies wip vnguentum apostolorum³ & oon of þe mundificatiuis þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, & wip regending þingis & drijng þingis. ¶ A colerik enpostym comeþ late to rotyng, but if it be rotid wip ony mater leid wipout-forþ; þou schalt cure þis enpostym in þe same maner as þou schalt enpostyms of blood, saue þis mote haue coldere medicyns / Car-bunculis schulen be curid as antrax, & þe cure herof schal be seid hereafter. ¶ Vdimia schal not be smiten yn wip repercussiu⁵ saue it schal be waastid awei in þe firste bigynnyng in þis maner. þou schalt purge him with trocis⁶ de turbit, or wip anoper medicyn þat purgip fleume. þan stewe⁷ þat lyme wip a decoccioun of absinthij, abrotane, sticados, & squinanti. & take aischis of a vyne or of an ook, & make þerof lie & wete þerinne lynnen cloþis & leie hem vpon þe place hoot, & binde hem streite þerto þat it hile al þe enpostym, & in þis maner þe matere þerof schal be drawen awei // If it so be þat þere be ony blood medlid þerwip, or if þer hap be leid þerto ony maturatif so þat þe mater þerof be rotid, þan opene it. Whanne it is opened, it mote haue stronger mundificatiuis þan ony oþer for þe hardnes of þe quittance & þe greetnes þerof / þis is a mollificatif þat rasis made & A. R. bdellij, galbani,⁸ opoponae
- ¹ If. 133.
² not to injure a blood vessel.
³ to evacuate the pus slowly.
⁴ to cut in the direction of the limb.
⁵ Choleric apostemas ripen slowly.
⁶ Nota.
⁷ Carbuncles
⁸ [* If. 133, bk.] Udimia (Oedema) shall be treated with purging medicines.
Apply compresses.
A softening plaster used by Rasis Auicenn.

² cure him vp. Compare Sloane 277, fol. 1 b.: "be it flesched vp wip powdres & oynementes incarnatifes."

³ Phillips. "Apostolorum Unguentum, a cleansing Ointment, so call'd, because it is made of twelue Drugs, according to the Number of the Apostles."

⁵ Lat. vdimia proprie non repercutitur.

⁶ trocisce, Lat. trociscus. Sloane 277, fol. 1 b. (xvth cent.), "a trosce of þe trosces maad azens scrophules." Vigo l. c. "Trochiscos in Greke is a lyttle whele. Amonge the apothecaries, it is a confection made of sondrye powders and spices, by the meane of some lyquoure. In latine they call it Pastillum."

⁷ stewe, Lat. evapora.

⁸ "Galbanum, a kind of strong scented Gum issuing out of a Plant call'd Fennel-Giant, which grows in Syria." Phillips.

ana, & make hem neische with oile of lilie in a mortar, & grinde hem wel togidere. & þan do þerto fenigrecum & lynseed as myche as alle þe opere & medle hem wel togidere, & herof¹ leie an enplastre vpon an hard enpostym wiþ þis oonly, or medle þerwiþ fatte ¹figis 4 & leie þis enplastre þerto til it be resolued & maad neische / þis medicyn makip an hard enpostym to bicomme neische & resolueþ him wiþout ony swellynge / þer ben opere manye medicyns þat ben mollificatif & resoluynge þat þou schalt finde in þe antidotarie // 8

a watri empostym must be treated like oedema.
a windi empostym
 A watri apostym schal be curid as vdimia, saue it schal haue drier medicyns, & þou schalt cure him in þe same maner as it is seid in þe chapitre, whanne a mannes lyme is to gret, for to make it smal // Ventosum apostema, þat is apostym þat is ful of wijnd. þou 12 schalt cure it wiþ medicyns þat consumeþ wijnd wiþinne & wiþoute / wiþinneforþ as of vsyng of comyn & carui, & he mote be war of growel² & metis þat swelliþ; wiþoutforþ wiþ oilis þat consumeþ wijnd, or with þis oile, R̄. rue, cimini, seminis fenicli, anisi, carui, 16 ameos³, apij, ana .ʒ. ſ., cold oile li. ſ., do alle þes in a viol of glas, & do þat glas in a vessel wiþ water, & make þe water seþe & kepe wel þe glas þeron þat it breke not, & wiþ þis oile anoynte þe place hoot / Item .R̄. calcem and ⁴distempere it wiþ swete wijn, & make 20 þerof as it were an emplastre & leie þervpon / R̄. olii anetini⁵ .ʒ. ij., cere. ʒ. ſ., ysope þat it be drie & poudrid. ʒ. j., & make herof a plastre. ¶ Herisipilades⁶ or flegmonides schulen be curid in þe same maner þat ben herisipulam & flegmon / Of glandulis & scrophulis, 24 we wolen speke in her propre chapitre //

Treatment of Anthrax.
 First remove the evil matter by bleeding and purging,
 if the patient is strong,

¶ Antrax schal be curid wiþ avoiding of noious matere, & wiþ pinges þat comfortiþ þe herte & þe vertu. Neþeles at þe firste bigynnyng her vertu failiþ, & summe þat ben late blood or purgid 28 ben lost / þerfore manie men ben agast for to lete hem blood or zeue hem ony medicyn laxatif / Ech mesel⁷ if þe pacient be strong, I wole lete him blood adai, & in þe same nyȝt I wole zeue him a medicyn laxatif // Saue herof þou schalt take kepe if he be feble, 32 & his herte quake, & his pous falle, þan it is folie for to lete him

² growel, Lat. legumina. See *Prompt. Parv.*, "Growelle or grewelle, Ligumen."

³ ameos. See *N. E. Diet.*, s. v. ammeos.

⁵ oleum anetinum, oil of Fennel.

⁶ Phillips. "Erysipelatodes, a Swelling like the former [Erysipelas], the Skin being of a darker Colour, and the Symptoms more gentle: a Bastard Erysipelas."

⁷ ech mesel, Lat. ego vero. Compare *schwyly*, *Prompt. Parv.*

blood or zeue him ony medicyn laxatif, saue take þe cure oonly in
 goddis hand // ¶ I wole telle an ensample þat bifel in þe citee of
 mediolanensis þat it mowe be ensample to þee & lernyng / þer was
 4 a man of xxx. wynter oold, ¹ & an antrax come vpon him in þe riȝt-
 side of his necke, & he was so greet woxe aboute his necke & his
 prote, & he was so swollen, þat þere was but litil difference bitwixe
 þe gretnes of hise schuldris & his necke. & nepeles I fond his vertu
 8 strong. & I wiste what sijknes it was bi a bladdre þat satt þer
 vpon, & was in þe riȝt side of his necke, & þat was þe firste bigyn-
 nyng of his sijknes / & nepeles þer is manye lechis of greet name
 þat cowde not knowe þat passioun / Also I lete him blood in boþe
 12 his armis, & drowe out blood ynow³. & þo I dietide him as a man
 þat hadde a feuer agu. & amorowe I ȝaf þe colature of fruit of
 mirabolani citrini,² þe which þou schalt fynde in þe chapitre of
 allopucia / Vpon þe enpostym þere þe bladdre was, I leide scabiose
 16 grounden wiþ grese. I foond neuere bettere medicyns in þis caas þan
 þese ben / For þe man was al dissolued of his sijknes of þe bren-
 nyng & of þe akyng, saue þe place þat was to-swoollen, was not
 þe lasse, & þe man was not þe more feblid for his laxatif, ne for no
 20 medicyn þat he hadde / & on þe morowe I lete him blood in his
 oon arm, ³ & ȝaue him a medicyn laxatif in lasse quantite þan I dide
 rapere, & þan þe swellynge aswagide miche, & in þe place þere þe
 bl[a]ddre was I fond a maner cruste as it were a þing þat were
 24 brent with fier & was of þe brede of iij. ynchis. & wipinne a fewe
 daies þe cruste was arerid vp, & þe patient felide no greet greu-
 aunce. & in þe same place þere þe bladdre was, þere was a deep
 vlcus. & þoruþ þe greet hole I siz þe prote & þe greet veines, & I
 28 putte yn myn hond / & I ȝaf þe patient good norisching metis, &
 I made hool vlcus wiþ mundificatiuis, til he was al hool bi þe help
 of god //

and leave the
 cure of a
 feeble patient
 in the hands
 of God.

The author
 relates how

[1 lf. 135]

he cured a
 man, who
 had a big
 anthrax on
 his neck;

first he bled
 him,

then he used
 several
 medicines.

Nota

[3 lf. 135, bk.]

A scab
 appeared
 on the part,

and under-
 neath a
 deeply-rooted
 ulcer, which
 he cured with
 cleansing
 medicines.

¶ Pustule þat comeþ of humours corrupt as ignis persicus⁴ &
 32 miliaris,⁵ & ⁶ formica⁷ schal be purgid wiþ medicyns þat purgiþ colre

Ignis per-
 sicus, Miliaris
 and Formica

² MS. inserts *hinc*, referring to another chapter.

⁴ *ignis persicus*, Herpes zoster (Dunglison). Phillips: "a Gangrene, it is also taken for a Carbuncle or a fiery Plague Sore."

⁵ De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 61, Add. 27,944: "*amonge auctoures þis eucl is i-clepid herpes milii oþer graunlesus, an eucl ful of graynes. But swiche bleyues bep litil and smale as greynes of mylie.*" Phillips: "*Herpes Miliaris*, or *Pustularis*, a sort of yellow Bladders or Wheals, like Millet-Seed, that seize the Skin, cause much itching, and turn to eating Ulcers."

⁶ MS. ¶ instead of &.

⁷ MS. *ffornica*. Vigo Interpret. "Formica is a little excrescence, or

are treated
with purging
medicines.

& malancolie. & þat same medicyn schal purge humours þat be
brent, as fumus terre, cuscute, lappacium acutum, cene,¹ absinthium
& opere mo / Also þou schalt voide þe matere wiþ medicyns þat
comforten þe herte, & kepib þat þe venym ne smite not to þe
herte; þan þou schalt cure þe place with pingis þat makib cold vpon
þe place. & whanne vlcus is þeron þan it is no nede, saue drie it
vp as it is aforseid in þe cure ²of vlcera. Saue abouteforþ þou
schalt leie colde pingis til þe cure be perfittli do / & þere come ony 8
bifalling þerto,³ þan alwei zeue him medicyns for to comforte þe
herte, þat ben forseid in antrace // Sumtyme tofore alle pinges
pruna⁴ ben good / And formicam þou schalt brenne / fforwhi a
cauterie drawib out al þe matere þat is corrupt & waastib it awei. 12

[2 lf. 136]

Strengthen
the patient's
heart.

herpes esti-
menes cura

¶ Herpes esthiomenus⁵ is curid after þe purgacioun of þe matere,
þat þou schalt algatis take hede for to do / if his vertu be strongt.
& þou schalt algate aboute þe sijknese⁶ leie a defensif of bole &
terra sigillata & oile of ro. & vinegre / þis defensif, as seiþ .A., & I 16
haue ofte preued it, þis defendib eueri lyme fro corrupcioun, & þis
wole not suffre þat þe matere schal make noon vlcercioun ne no
fretynge. & vpon þe place þat is corrupt & deed, þou schalt leie an
hoot iren, & do awei alle þe partis þat ben corrupt. & þis þou myzt
do with a medicyne corosif, saue an hoot iren is bettere / Whanne
þe rotid matere is aweie, þanne make clene þe place wiþ a mundi-
ficatif of iuys of ache, & do þerto a litil mirre. & whanne þe place
is wel clensid, þan do þerto a medicin ⁷for to regendre fleisch, & 24
þanne drie it vp /

Auicen

Apply a
medicine
which pro-
tects the
limb from
corruption,
and cauterize
the slough.

[7 lf. 136, bk.]

Of empostyms of þe heed //

¶ ii^o co

THow³ we han maad a general tale of enpostyms, neþeles apostym
in eueri lyme haþ diuers curis / þerfore I wole make to euery 28

outgrowynge in the Skynne, somewhat brode aboute the botome, which when
it is scratched causeth as it were the styngynge of an ante, or pismare, and
therfore it is also called in greke myrmecia."

¹ cene for sene.

³ Lat. si praua superveniunt accidentia. . .

⁴ Lat.: Aliquando super omnia adiuuat prunam et formicam urere. The
translator misunderstood pruna (name of the disease) for pruna (plums).
Compare page 208, note 2.

⁵ Vigo Interpret. "If the substaunce be grosse, and aygre it vlcereþ
the skynne vnto the fleshe, & is called herpes esthiomenos, that is eatynge
or gnawynge herpes."

⁶ Lat.: sed ponendo supra locum sanum iuxta ægritudinem defen-
sium. . .

- enpostym a diuers chapiter // ¶ I seie þat in þe skyn of a mannes heed ben diuers enpostyms / If þere be¹ enpostym þerof sutil fleume, ful of fleume as it schal be seid heraftir in þe chapitre of
- 4 *bocium*² / þis maner sijknes is engendrid bitwene þe skyn & the fleisch, & it is su[m]what holow³, & ben clepid testudines for þe lijknes of a beest þat is clepid so, & ben engendrid of hard fleume, & ben, as it were, hard knottis þat were maad fast to þe scolle, as it
- 8 were hornis / For I seie a man came to me, & he hadde in his heed vij. suche maner þingis in diuers placis, & summe þerof weren as longe & as scharp as it were a gotis horn or þe lenkþe of a mannes bombe, & þei weren greuours to þe man, & I hadde miche wondre
- 12 þat þer were noon vlcera in þe skyn / Whanne I siz wel þat þei hadden her bigynnyng of þe scolle boon, I ⁴wolde not entermete þerwith of þe cure, & I counseilide him þat he schulde putte him into no mannes cure for to cure him, for it þouȝte to me impossible.
- 16 ¶ þe curis of al þe enpostyms in þe heed, ben pese / If it be of neische matere or of rotid matere, þan þou schalt not take hede for to drie it wiþ mollificatiuis, þouȝ I seide so in enpostyms of fleume in þe general chapitre; for þat myȝte schende⁵ þe scolle wiþ
- 20 liquid mater or corrupt matere. & if þe matere þerof is hard, make it neische wiþ maturatiuis, saue lete þou not it rotie to myche. & or it be rotid to miche, opene it in þe maner of a triangle þus; for þis empostym of þe heed for þe gretnes of þe skyn, and for it is ful
- 24 of pooris, it mai not wel be clensid, but if þe woundis were so miche þat þe mundificatif myȝte come to þe botme. Whanne þe enpostym is kutt in þe forseid maner, þanne awoide þe mater & fille þe place al wiþ pecis wet in oil of *rosis*, & sugre molten þeron, &
- 28 alym & leie þis in þe botme þerof til ⁶þe place be wel maad clene. [¶ 1f. 137, bk.] Aftirward wiþ vnguentum apostolorum & opere þingis þat engendriþ fleisch, cure him as it is forseid in þe cure of vlcers þat ben olde //
- ¶ *Nodus* is curid wiþ kuttyng of þe skyn endelongis vpon
- 32 þe place & drawe him out wiþ alle hise rotis. & if þer leueþ ony rote of him, þan leie þeron þe poudre of *affadillorum*, or of *sum*

The Testudines are between the skin and the flesh, and are like hard knots.

*3*reta mirabilis

A man came to Lanfranc, with seven such knots situated on his skull.

[¶ 1f. 137]

Lanfranc thought the cure impossible.

Treatment of Apostemas on the head.

If the swelling is hard, soften it with maturatives, open it,

and cleanse the wound.

.Nodus. must be removed by cutting and by the use of a Corrosive.

¹ *be*, above line.

² This passage is corrupt. Lat.: *Nam fiunt ibi apostemata a subtili phlegmate vel ab alia phlegmatis specie ut mucilaginosi et pulmosi et est sicut cancerosi bocii erit dictum.*

³ *Vigo* Chirurgery transl. Traheron, fol. 5: "The sayde Rhete mirabile is like a nette, and is therefore called Rhete, for thys pannicle is compounded onely wyth Arteries, as Guido hath declared."

⁶ *schende*. Lat.: *quia sic posset cranium inficere liquida materia.*

Water in a child's head is fatal, when within the skull;

when outside the skull, it may be cured, with ointments, and caustics.

This affection occurs owing to the

[³ lf. 138]

particular position of the child in the mother's womb.

lyzt corosif or vnguentum viride, þat þe rotis þerof mowe frete awei þerwip; & þan regendre & þan drie it vp // Watir þat is gaderid in children hedis,¹ ouper it is wipinne þe scolle or wipoute þe scolle / If it be withynne þe scole, it semeþ to me so perilous, 4 þat I wole bitake þe cure to god / If þe watir be withoutforþ, it mai be curid wip anointing of oile of camomille & solfre grounden togidere; & þanne make him .iiij. cauterijs: oon a litil aboue þe forehead, & oon bihinde þe nolle in þe welle² þerof, & oon aboue þe 8 hindere celle. þese cauterijs wip þe forseid anoyntingis drieþ & waastip þe matere of þe watir // ¶ þe water þat comeþ in children hedis, is engendrid in þis manere / whanne³ þe maris of a womman is watri, & þe child þat liþ þerine liþ foldyng adounward his heed 12 vpon hise knees. & þan þe moisture fallip adoun & fyndip a void place in þe childis heed & entrip þerinne / & þis passion makip a child deed ofte, or he haue ony age for to be holpen /

/ Of enpostyms of þe rootis of a mannes eeris // 16

¶ .iiij. co

An apostema on the roots of the ear occurs sometimes, when the patient is feeble.

It is often fatal.

[⁴ lf. 138, bk.]

Begin the cure with mitigatives,

apply oil of bitter almonds.

A Postyme þat comeþ in a mannes eere or in þe rotis of a mannis eeren. & þis comeþ sumtyme in die cretico, whanne þat a mannes kynde is not so mizti for to putte out þe gretnes of þe mater bi sote ne bi noon oper avoiding, & þan kynde worchip 20 what it mai, & driueþ þe matere an hiz to þe heed & abidip in þe rotis of þe eeren, & þere it engendrip apostym. & in þis place it is perilous, for it is so nyþ þe heed & veynes & arterijs & neruys / þis manere enpostym ofte sleep a man whanne þe matere comeþ 24 violently // þe matere of þis enpostym, ouper it is colre, or blood, or fleume, or malancoli; & alle þe signes herof ben aforseid / þe cure of⁴ þis enpostym mai not bigynne with repercussiuus, saue it mote bigynne wip mitigatiuis, & with þingis þat puttip out þe 28 matere / Waische þe place wip a decoccioun of camomille soden þerinne / & þanne affir þat anoynte þe same place with oile of camomille, & þan wete wolle in þe same oile & leie þervpon, & bi no maner leue þou not þat þou leie in his eere oile of bittir almaundis, 32 for it is a greet help // ¶ If þe mater be deep & it be hard for to drawe it out, þan it were good to sette vpon þe place a drie ventose

¹ Hydrocephalus and its cure is treated at some length by most of the ancient physicians. See *Paul. Aegineta*, ed. Adams, vol. II., p. 250. Our author's description is abridged from *Gulielm. de Salic.*, lib. I., cap. 1.

² *nelle*, Lat. fontinella.

for to helpe to drawe out^t þe matere, & aftir resolute þe matere &
 leie þerto mitigatiuis for to do awei þe akynge / ¶ If þe matere wole
 not^t be resolved in þis maner, saue it^t bigynneþ to be quittance þeron, If pus is
 formed, open
 the apostema,
 taking care
 not to injure
 a blood-vessel
 or a nerve.
 4 þan wiþ tempere maturatiuis þat^t ben not to hote, make þe enpostym
 quittance / Whanne þe place is wel rotid abide þou no brekyng^t of þe
 enpostym, saue opene þe place sotilly wiþ an instrument^t þat is com-
 petent^t þerto / & þou muste be wel war þat þou touche no veyne, ne
 8 noon arterie, ne no senewe, for þerof^t miȝt come ¹myche perel, for [1 lf. 139]
 þere ben nerues in þe same place, if þei were kutt^t or prickid, þe
 patient^t miȝte lese his vois for euere / & if þere were ony veyne
 kutt^t þerof, þer miȝt come greet^t perel þerof. & whanne þe place is
 12 opened, þan make þe place clene wiþ mundificatiuis, þat^t schulen be Then cleanse
 the wound.
 seid in þe antidotarie / & whanne þe place is perfitli clene, þanne
 make þe fleisch wexe & do þe cure perfitli / For bi yuel curyng^t in
 þis place miȝt engendre a festre, þat^t ofte tyme comeþ of an
 16 enpostym /

Apostyms of þe necke and of þe þrote /

A Postyms þat ben in þis place, or it^t is wiþoutforþ in þe ¶ v. c.
 senewis, or in þe braun, or it^t is wiþinneforþ bi þe place þat^t
 20 a mannes mete goiþ doun, or bi þe þrote, or it^t is bitwixe þe .ij.
 placis in a place þat^t is clepid ismon.² & comounli þe enpostyms
 þat^t ben in þis place, comeþ of blood, or of fleume, & ful seelden it^t
 comeþ of colre, & more lattere of malancoli. þe humours þat^t ben Apostemas of
 the neck or
 the throat,
 are either
 external or
 internal.
 24 in þe cause,³ þou schalt^t knowe bi signes aforseid / If þe matere be In the former
 case, an out-
 [1 lf. 139, bk.]
 in þe braun of the necke wiþoutforþ, þat þou miȝt knowe ⁴bi schew-
 ing^t of þe enpostym wiþoutforþ. & bi þese signes þou schalt^t knowe ward swelling
 will be seen,
 but the swal-
 lowing and
 breathing will
 not be af-
 fected.
 28 þere þe mete schulde go adoun, & if wijnd be not^t stoppid, þan þou
 miȝt wite wel þat þe enpostym is wiþoutforþ, & also bi þe schew-
 ing^t þat^t is outward / And if þe enpostym is wiþinne, þan þe
 patient^t schal not^t swolowe adoun his mete, ne drawe wel his breen / If the apos-
 tema is
 internal,
 swallowing
 and breathing
 will be diffi-
 cult.
 32 If þe enpostym þat^t is wiþinne swelle greetly, his iȝen wolen swelle
 þerwiþ, & he schal not^t suffre his tunge in his mouþ, & he ne schal

² ismon. *Sinonom. Barth.*, p. 26, "Ysinon est inter ysosagum et tra-
 cheam arteriam." Read *Ysmon*. From *ισμός*, neck, narrow passage. See
ισμός in *Stephanus Thesaur.* De propr. rer., lib. V., cap. 24, Add. 27,944,
 fol. 49 bk.: "& it happiþ þat þis euil matere is sentyme al i-gedred wiþ-
 inne þe skynne þat departiþ þe weye of þe breen from þe weye of þe mete &
 drynke, þat hatte isophagus & bredeþ squynancye, þat sleep in on day."

³ See page 194, note 8.

Some physicians
'break' this
apostema
with a piece
of wood,
but that is
dangerous.

First, bleed
the patient
either from
the Vena

[3 lf. 140]

Basilica or
Mediana,

on the next
day from a
vein under
the tongue,

then give
a gargar-
isme,
mixed with
the excre-
ments of a
sparrow, hen,
dog, or a
child.

The patient
shall drink
barley-water

[8 lf. 140, bk.]

Rx

and eat a pre-
paration of
wheat-bran.

not speke, & þer wole go out miche spume of his moup / þanne
summe lechis þat ben hardi wolen putte a smal tree in his prote &
breke þe enpostym, & in þat maner þe pacient mai be delyuered ;
saue þis maner worching¹ is not sure, for in þis maner manie men⁴
dieþ, & þe deef comeþ not of þe sijknes, saue it is defaute in þe
leche¹ / þis maner sijknes þat is so hid wipinneforþ, it mai be helid
wel in þe bigynnyng² in þis maner² / If þe enpostym be hoot, þou
schalt lete him blood in þe veine þat is clepid basilica, & if þe⁸
patient hap had þe³ sijknes longe or þou come to him, þan þou
schalt lete him blood in þe middil veyne of þe arm þat is clepid
mediana, & he schal blede so longe til he swoune almoost, & prin-
cipali if he be strong¹ & ful of fleisch / In þe .ij. dai þou schalt¹²
lete him blood in þe veines vndir þe tunge / & loke þat þou do no
þing¹ aftir her counseil þat seien þat in þe firste bigynnyng¹ þou
schalt lete him blood in veines vndir þe tunge, & after þat in þe
heed veine or in sum opere place. For in þis manere letting¹ blood,¹⁶
if his bodi were replet, he miȝt liztli be achekid// ¶ Whanne þou
hast lete him blood as it is aforseid, þan make him a gargarisme
wip a decoccioun of ro., sumac,⁴ balaustiarum, lentium, & galla-
rum wip þe which be distemperid þerwip diameron,⁵ or tordis of²⁰
a sparow, or of an hen, or þe tord of an hound þat etip manie
boonys & noon oper mete,⁶ or a childis tord dried while it is souk-
yng¹. ¶ Also take an houndis tord þat etip oonly boonis & of
hennis, satureye⁷ ana, & make þerof poudre & distempere it wip²⁴
water & hony, & make þerof a gargarisme, & he schal drinke water
of barley, & he schal no þing¹ ete, saue a þing¹ maad of wheete-⁸ bran
in þis maner⁹ / Take newe bran of whete & caste þeron hoot water
& hele it & lete it stonde so an hour, & þanne grinde it in a mortar²⁸
wip a pestel & cole it, & þanne sepe it wip a litil salt & ȝeue it þe

¹ it is defaute in þe leche, Lat. medico imputatur.

² Much of our author's treatment is borrowed from *Avicenna*, Lib. III., Fen. 19, Cap. 11, ed. Ven. 1527, fol. 188.

⁴ *sumac*, Fr. *Sumac*; Arab. *Summāq*. "*Sumach* or *Sumack*, a kind of rank-smelling Shrub that bears a black Berry, made use of by Curriers to dress their Leather." Phillips.

⁵ *diameron*, *διαμώρων*. *Vigo* Interpretation, "*Diamoron*, a confection made of mulberries."

⁶ By this kind of food the *album græcum*, the white dung of a dog is produced.

⁷ *satureye*, savory. Wr. Wül. 609, 80 (xv); sauereye.

⁹ Lat.: nihilque comedat nisi candarusium factum de furfure in hunc modum. *Matth. Sylv.*: "*Candarus* vel *candarusium*—est ordeum cui non est cortex," from *χόνδρος*, grain, groat.

- patient / & do þeron penidis.¹ & if he mai not swolowe it adoun,
 þanne sette a lital ventuse in þe welle of his necke² with fier & þan
 he schal swolowe, & anynte al his necke tofore & bihinde wiþ oile
 4 of camomille. & vpon þe anyntyng³ leie wolle vnwaischen,³ &
 make a sutil plastre of a nest⁴ of irundinis, & is good for þe
 squinacie,⁴ & is maad in þis maner / Take a nest⁴ of irundinis &
 boile it longe in watir, & þanne cole it þoruȝ a seue þat þe grete
 8 gobetis moun be cast awei / þan take þe rotis of lilie & seþe hem
 in oþer water & rotis of bismalue, & þe rote of brionie & leues of
 malue & bismalue, & violet, & peritorie.⁵ & whanne þei ben
 boild, grinde hem wel, & medle hem wiþ water of irundinum þat
 12 is forseid, & do þerto leuceyne & mele of fenigreci, & þan do þerto
 oile or grese, & make herof an enplastre / þis enplastre is good to
 resolute enpostym & make it quittance, wheþer it be wiþinne or wiþ-
 16 anointing⁶ is good wiþ oile of camomille medlid wiþ butter þat it
 be oold & not salt, & after þe anyntyng⁶ leie þervpon wolle
 vnwaische // ¶ If þe enpostym be wiþinne, it is good þat me leie
 þerto no repercussiuis, saue vse gargarismis maad in þis manere / R,
 20 ficus siccas, semen malue, semen lini, seþe þese in water & þan cole
 hem, & make þerof a gargarisme; or water of figis medlid wiþ
 butter, þat makip maturatif eueri maner enpostym.

Anoint his neck,

and apply a plaster made from a swallow's nest.

R

Irundines
id est
swalows.How to pre-
pare this
plaster.

[c. 141]

In case of an
inward apos-
tema use a
gargle.

R

¹ *penidis*, Vigo Interpr. "*Penidie* are made of the Apothecaries wyth suggre wrethen lyke ropes." Fr. *penide*; Lat. *penidium*, from *πειον*: spool on which the woof is wound.—Compare *diapenidion* in *Piers the Plowman*, ed. Skeat, 1886, II. p. 77, note.

² MS. *tefore* inserted but deleted.

³ *wolle vnwaischen*, *vn*, in margin. Lat. *lana succida*. Lewis, *Latin Dict.*, gives a reference from *App. Apologia*: recens *lana tonsa succida appellata est*.

⁴ *squinacie*, Lat. *squintia*, quinsy. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 357, note.

⁵ *peritorie*, Lat. *parietaria*; wall-pellitory.

⁷ The passage from lf. 141, l. 5 till lf. 141, bk., l. 8 (p. 220, l. 15), is repeated in lf. 143, with some alterations. The corresponding words from the Latin are quoted to show the independent character of the two versions. l. 18, 19. If þe — manere] It is good if þe enpostym be wiþinne or þe more partie be withynne, & if it mai not be resolved ne do awei wiþ repercussiuis, þan it is good to vse gargarisms, þat ben maturatifs, maad in þis maner. (*Bonum est etiam si apostema fuerit interius, aut maior eius pars, cum tempus prolongatur quod non repercutitur nec resolvitur: uti maturatiuis gargarismatibus ut hoc.*) 20, 21. seþe — cole hem] putte hem in water & seþe hem in water (*coque in aqua*). 21. or] & medle þerwiþ. 21, 22. medled wiþ butter] & butter & wijn. þat makip — enpostym] þis wole make enpostym þat is withynne in þe þrote maturatif (*maturat omne intrinsecum apostema siue in gutture siue in stomacho siue in intestinis fuerit generatum*).

If this apostema shows itself outwardly, it must be carefully opened and cleansed.

Whanne þe enpostym is rotid; þat þou schalt knowe bi þe aswaging¹ of þe akyng, & if þe enpostym schewe wipoutforþ, þanne opene it wip an instrument, & be war þat þou hurte no senewe, ne no veine, ne noon arterie. & whanne it is opened, make it clene ⁴ wip mundificatiuis þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie / And if þe enpostym be wipinneforþ, þan þou schalt not breke it wip þis gargarisme þat is aforseid, saue þou schalt make a gargarism þat haly vside / Take galle, acacie, psidiarum, balaustie, aluminis ⁸ iamini¹ & seþe hem in water & cole it & make ² þerof a gargarism, for þis gargarism wole breke enpostym / Whanne þe enpostym is broke, þan þou schalt bringe out þe mater wip hoot water, & dissolue þerinne butter & oile of violets, & make þerof a gargarism, & ¹² lete him vse þis gargarism til al þe matere be drawe out, & þan after þat make him a gargarism of liquiricie,³ yreos & tamarisci / If þe matere be coold, þan þou muste vse hottere gargarism, & þan þou muste vse mundificatiuis þat per be þerinne mirre, sarcocolle,⁴ ¹⁶ þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie in þe chapitre of mundificatiuis. ¶ It falliþ sumtyme þat for reume þat falliþ adoun of a maznis heed, þer wexiþ in þe rote of þe tunge a maner round þing in þe gretnes of an almaunde, & lett iþ a man þat he mai not wel ²⁰ drawe his breeþ ne ete his mete / & in þis maner þou schalt cure him as it is forseid wip þingis þat voidiþ þe matere & wip resoluynge þingis. ¶ I wole sette in þis place a cure þat bifel in þe citee of mediolanensis of a ladi þat was .L. wynter oold, & hadde a squi- ²⁴ nacie of fleume þat occupiede al hir necke tofore wipinne & wipoute,

Ranula vnder the toung an apostema that affects the breathing and swallowing.

A Lady had an internal and external swelling on her neck,

1, 2. þe aswaging] cesing. and if] if. 2. schewe] be seen. 3, 4. be — — arterie] be wel war of veynes & arterijs. 4. whanne it is opened] þan. 5. and] om. 6, 8. wipinneforþ — — galle] al wipinne & wole not breke wip þe gargarism þat is aforseid of butter & figis & water & wijn, þan þou schalt breke him wip a medicyn þat haly þe abbot vside as wip a gargarism of gallarum. (Si fuerit intra, nec rumpatur: cum gargarismate prædicto de butyro, ficuum aqua et vino rumpatur cum ingenio subtili Haly ab. scilicet cum gargarismate stypticorum sicut decoctionis gallarum.) 9. & seþe — — þerof a gargarism] om. 10. wole breke] brekiþ þe. 11. þan þou schalt bringe out þe mater] drawe out þe quitture. 11, 12. & — butter] & a litil butter þerinne. 12. & make þerof] & herof he schal make. 12, 13. & lete him vse þis gargarism] om. matere be drawe out & þan] quitture be drawn aweī after þat. 14. of liquorice — tamarisci] wip liquoris & thamarisci soden in watir.

¹ *Sinonom. Barth.*, p. 1, "Alumen iamen, A. scissum, Alimen de pluma, idem."—*Matth. Sylv.* "Iamen est prouincia Iameni uel Aliamen."

³ *liquiricie*, lycoryce, *Pr. Parr.*, p. 303. See *lyquoris* in 2nd version.

⁴ *Sarcocolla* "Is the Gumme or liquore of a tree growyng in Persia," *Halle. Table*, p. 109.

- ¹saue wipoutforþ þe swelling¹ was moost¹, & þe womman miȝte not¹ [1 lf. 142]
 speke, ne swolowe in no mete. & þis womman was vndir þe cure of¹ she could
 a ȝong¹ man pat¹ was my scoler, and he cowde not¹ wel fare þerwiþ, neither speak
 4 & þo he was in dispeir of¹ hir lijf¹, I was sent¹ after & foond hir in nor sleep for
 wickide staat,² for sche eet¹ no mete in manye daies tofore, & sche fear of
 durste not¹ slepe for drede, lest sche schulde be achekid. þan I chokinge.
 tastide hir pous, & it¹ was wondir feble, & I tastide þe place of¹ þe
 8 enpostym, & I knewe wel þat¹ sche schulde be rapere achekid þan
 þe enpostym wolde breke wipoute or withynne, for þe matere was
 so greet¹ / & þan I took a rasour, & lokide where þe matere was Lanfranc
 moost¹ gaderid for to engendre quittance, & it¹ was moost¹ able vndir opened the
 12 þe chyn, & I felide þe place wiþ myn hond & tastide it¹ aboute þat apostema
 I miȝte be war of¹ nerues & arterijs, & þere I made a wounde, where it was
 þere I drowe out¹ matere þat¹ was corrupt¹, & it¹ was foul stynkyng most ripe.
 matere, & al miȝte I not¹ awoide anoon. & þo þe pacient¹ hadde
 16 bettere hir breeþ, & hir pous was confortid, ³for þe lungis miȝte take The patient
 yn eir, & þerwiþ þe herte was confortid, & þan I ȝaf¹ hir broþ, & could breathe,
 þat¹ ȝede out¹ þoruȝ þe wounde þe moost¹ part¹. þo I studiende how [3 lf. 142, bk.]
 I miȝte best¹ do, & I lete make a pipe of¹ siluir, and putte it¹ in at but her food
 20 hir mouþ & passide forþere þan þe wounde was, þat¹ it¹ miȝte fulfille went through
 þe place of¹ þe þrote. & þan I leide al aboute hir necke mundifi- the open
 catiuis & maturatiuis for to quittance þe toþer deel of¹ þe matere, & wound;
 so I kepte it¹ til þer come out¹ of¹ þe wounde a greet¹ gobet¹ of¹ Lanfranc in-
 24 viscous matere & stynkyng¹, & was schape as it¹ were a greet¹ gutt¹. troduced a
 & þerinne þe firste matere was engendrid, & whanne þis was oute, silver tube,
 þe stynking¹ wente awei þerwiþ, & þe womman bigan to be stronger, and the gan-
 & whanne þe wounde was maad clene I driede it¹ vp & soudide it¹; grenous parts
 28 & in þis maner þe pacient¹ was maad hool. ¶ Whanne þou fyndist were removed
 coold matere rotid in þe forseid placis, þou schalt¹ not¹ abide til þe by suppara-
 enpostym breke him-silf¹, saue þou schalt¹ opene it¹ as it¹ is aforseid / tion.
 & if¹ it¹ be not¹ rotid, þan make it¹ more maturatif¹, & opene it¹ as it¹ When cold
 32 is aforseid / And þis þou muste wite þat¹ þou miȝte ⁴not¹ abide to matter sup-
 longe wiþ þe openyng¹: for þe herte & þe spirital lymes ne mowe purates, open
 not¹ longe endure wipouten eir. the apostema,
 before it
 breaks by
 itself.

² in wickide staat, in statu pessimo.

/ Of enpostym of subcilio /¹

¶ vj^o. c^o.
If there is a
hot apostema
in the arm-
pit, bleed
from the
Vena nigra
or basilica.
If the apos-
tema is cold,
use mild
medicines,

and open it,
when it is
ripe.

[4 lf. 144]

bubo.
is difficult
to heal.

Galion.

THis maner of enpostym hap no nede of repercussiuus for causis
þat ben aforseid, saue it² is greet nede þat he be avoidid wel
wip purgaciouns / And if þe enpostym be hoot, þou schalt lete him 4
blood in a veyne þat is clepid vena nigra,³ or in þe veyne þat is
clepid basilica in þe arm. & if þe matere be coold, þan avoide þe
matere wip medicyns maad of turbit or sum oþer medicyn þat
falliþ þefore. & as myche as þou miȝt þou schalt take þerto wip 8
medicyns þat haue not to greet drawyng / For if þou leiest þerto
þingis þat ben to strong drawing, þan þe enpostym wole waxe þe
more / þefore þou schalt anoynte him wip oile of camomille, &
leie þervpon wolle vnwaischen. & his dieting schal be sotil. & if 12
þis suffice not, þan leie vpon a maturatif / & whanne it is rotid þou
schalt opene it, & principali if it be of coold matere. Saue if⁵
þere be glandule þeron, as it falliþ ofte, & it be not ouir al rotid,
as in oon place hard an oþir place neische, þan þou schalt haue þis 16
in certein, þat þis passioun schal be clepid bubo, & þe cure þerof is
hard.⁶ For if þou drawist out þe matere þat is neische,⁷ þe matere
þat is hard is yuel to defie. & ofte þer comeþ þerof sceliosis or a
festre, & it wole make a man yuel disposid & feuerous, as G. seiþ.⁸ 20
& þefore aswage þe akyng & þan make rotyng wip maturatiuis;
for þe matere þat is rotid wole helpe to rotie þe matere þat is hard.
& whanne it is al neische þanne opene it / If it so be þat it breke
bi it-silf or it be ful rotid, þan do þerto mundificatiuis, & vpon þe 24
place þat is hard leie maturatiuis, & kepe wel þe place þat is open
fro festrynge. Mundificatiuis & maturatiuis þou schalt fynde in þe
antidotarie pleyulier.

¹ Lat.: De apostemate sub titillico, id est sub ascellis. The translator made *subcilio* out of *sub ascellis*; *titillicum*, arm-pit, from *titillo*, tickle.

² *is*, above line.

³ Matth. Sylv.: "Nigra uena, purpurea, media communis." V. media = V. mediana.

⁵ *save if*, Lat. hoc saluo, si esset . . .

⁶ Lat.: tunc nullam habes viam tutam, quum tunc est bubo, cuius cura est difficilis.

⁷ MS. inserts &.

⁸ Lat.: "totum corpus in mala tenet dispositione febris et doloris; tamquam qui ad suam salutem, si nisi unam habuerit viam, ut dicit Galienus velit nolit, per eam, etsi mala fuerit, pertransibit." A more accurate translation of this passage is given in Sl. 2463 (xv. cent.) in a treatise on Surgery compiled from various authors, in which several chapters of Lanfranc's work are embodied. Ib. fol. 110 b.: "And as Galyene seith, he that hath but oone weye to his hele allthouze þat weye be nat good, he muste holde hit wille he nylle he."

An enpostyme of þe helpers /¹

- T**His enpostym if it be hoot, þan lete him blood in þe arm ¶ *vijo. eo/*
 aforzens, & not in þe same side in þe veyne þat is clepid *In case of an*
 4 basilica, & þan þou muste surely leie þerto repercussiuus, ² & if reper- *apostema on*
 cussiuus suffisen not, þan resolute it & leie maturatiuus þerto, & þan *the arm,*
 abide til it be perfitli³ quitturid, but if þe matere be so violent *bleed the*
 þat it were in poynt⁴ to schende þe lyme, þan opene it & be wel *Basilic Vein,*
 8 war of the braun þat is in þat place / Manie men þat ben vnkun- *[2 lf. 144, bk.]*
 nyng & supposen þat place to be fer fro ony noble lyme,⁵ makip *and open the*
 þeron a deep kuttyng, & supposip to haue gret worschip þerof; & *apostema*
 manie idiotis wolen preise hem⁶ wel þerfore. & þan þe lacertis þerof *when it is*
 12 ben hurt; & whanne þe lacertis ben soudid azen, þan þe lyme þat it *ripe.*
 seruede fore schal be contract, wherfore þe mannes arm mai be lost *Unskillful*
 in sum partie or in al / þerfore whanne þou wolt kutte þis en- *physicians,*
 postym, þou schalt but kutte abouteforþ in þe skyn, & not to depe *in cutting too*
 16 bi no maner wei for drede of þe braun, & of senewis, & of veynes *deep, hurt the*
 & arterijs, & whanne þe place is opened, þan leie þerto mundifi- *muscles, and*
 catiuus. If þe openyng be nyȝ þe elbowe, & þouȝ þe enpostym be *so the patient*
 moost quitturid, þere he wel war þat þou opene not þe enpostym *may lose his*
 20 aboute þe elbowe .iij. fyngris brede, neiȝer⁷ wiȝinne ne wiȝoute. & *arm.*
 also nyȝ þe poynt of þe elbowe it is perilous, for it is gret hap if *[7 lf. 145]*
 it be euere soudid. & þouȝ it be soudid, þe mouyng of his arme *7*
 schal be lost. If þer falle ony enpostym in þis place, & it come of
 24 greet matere so þat his bodi be replet, þan he mote haue greet
 avoidyng wiȝ laxatiuus, & þan resolute þe matere, and worche as it
 is aforseid in þe general chapitre. In þe same maner þou schalt
 cure þe enpostym of his armis & of hise hondis.
 28 ¶ Panaricium⁸ is an enpostym þat is in þe heed of a mannes
 fyngir aboute þe nail / & is swiȝe hoot, & greuous, & reed, & ful of
 fier, & sumtyme it makip a man to haue þe feure, & sumtyme it
 fretip awei al þe poynt of a mannes fyngir / þe firste cure of þis
 32 enpostym is, þat first þou schalt lete him blood, so þat alle þingis

panaricium,
 an apostema
 of the fingers,
 near the
 nails.

Treatment:
 First bleed
 the patient,

¹ Lat. De apostematibus adiutorii.³ *curid*, erased.

⁴ in poynt, Lat.: nisi materia esset adeo violenta quod esset ad corrup-
 tionem membri parata. "And in such poynt the body bileueth." Wright,
Popular Treatise, p. 140.—"Engelond & normandie in god point he broȝte."
Rob. of Glouc., 8868. Compare Fr. embonpoint.

⁶ *silf*, erased. Lat.: & inde laudantur ab aliquibus idiotis.

⁸ Vigo Interpret.: "Panaritium is an aposteme about the rootes of the
 nayles, and it is called in Greke Paronichia; in latyn reduuia." See Dufr.
 s. v. redubia.

If his condition allows, then apply a plaster, compresses or an ointment.

[² If. 145, bk.]

falle þerfore as elde & strenkþe & custum. & þan þou schalt make him an enplastre of vinegre & opium, & vpon þe plastre þou schalt leie a lynnene cloof wet in a decoccioun of psillij, or anoynte it wiþ an oynement þat is coold. & in¹ al maner þou schalt² take hede to 4 do awei þe greet hete & saue his fyngir fro corrupcioun / If þe akinge & þe brennyng go not awei in þis maner, & it be in wei for to quittance,³ þan leie þervpon scabiose grounden wiþ grese & do þe cure þerto, as þou schalt fynde in þe cure of⁴ antrax & carbunculis. 8 & enpostyms þat comeþ in ioynctis þou schalt fynde in her propre place of akyng of ioynctes /

Apostym wiþoutforþ aboute þe spawdis and þe gibbositees⁴ //

12

¶ viij^o. c^o.

If there is an apostema on the shoulders, purge the patient,

and open it when it is ripe.

[⁶ If. 146]

If a ripe apostema breaks by itself, a fistula will arise.

Treat this fistula with mundificatives by means of a syringe, after having widened the hole of the fistula by a tent.

A Postym þat comeþ aboute the spawdis wiþoutforþ, leie þou noon repercussif þerto, saue it is better to drawe þe matere outward. First þou schalt purge him, for it is greet nede in þis place, & þan þou schalt leie þerto resoluinge þingis & maturatiuis; 16 & whanne þe enpostym is rotid þou schalt not abide, to it breke it-silf,⁵ & principali in a coold cause, saue þou schalt opene þe enpostym & drawe out þe quittance, & þan þou schalt leie þerto mundificatiuis, & fulfille þe cure as it is aforseid / In þis place þou 20 schalt take⁶ hede þat oftē tyme whanne þe enpostym is quitturid & is not opened wiþoutforþ, þan it brekiþ inward bitwene þe .ij. ribbis, & whanne it is to-broke, þe pacient felip but litil greuance þerof, & þan þe quittance leueþ wiþinne, & in long tyme herof comeþ a 24 festre. þerfore þou schalt not abide til it breke it-silf outward, saue þou schalt opene it whanne it is quitturid, & þan leie þerto mundificatiuis & cure it vp, as it is aforseid in opere enpostyms / ¶ If it so be þat þere engendre a festre þeron, or it be maad clene 28 & entre inward, þan he mote vse waischingis þat ben mundificatif, & caste it in wiþ an instrument maad in þe maner of a clisterie. & if þe hole þerof be streit wiþoutforþ, þan þou schalt putt yn a tente of þe pip of eldre, or of a sponge, or of malum terre,⁷ or 32

¹ in, above line.

³ in wei for to quittance, Lat. in via maturationis.

⁴ *Gibbositas*, tumour. *Dufr. Gloss.*—"Gibbosity, a bunching or standing out of any part, especially of the Back."—Phillips.

⁵ Lat.: non expecta crepationem per se.

⁷ "*Malum terre*, ciclamen, panis porcinus id. g^e dilnote and erthenote." *Alphita*, p. 107. mal. t. = galluc. *Wr. Wü.*, 133. 20.

- brionie, or gencian, & putte into þe hole of þe festre. & þis wole make þe hole of þe festre to wexe more wide þan it was, þat þe ende of þe instrument mowe be putt þat schal be schape in þe
 4 maner of ¹a clisterie. & þanne þou schalt seþe hony & mirre in [¹ lf. 146, bk.] watir, so þat þer be .x. partis of water, & of hony .ij. partis, & of mirre .ij. partis, & if þou doist þerto ysope & sauge, it wole be þe bettir / Sumtyme it is good for to do wijn in þe stide of watir, &
 8 principali if þe place be wipouten ony hete. & þis decoccioun þou schalt caste into þe festre wip an instrument as it is aforseid, & make þat þe pacient turne hidir & pidir, vpward & dounward, þat it mowe waische wel þe place þere þe quittance is. & þan make þe
 12 patient turne & ligge vpon þe hole of þe festre, & make him cowþe þat al þe quittance mai goon out wip þe decoccioun. & whanne it is al oute, þan þou schalt make him a tent & anynte it in oile þat þe
 16 wounde close not tegidere. & þus þou schalt worche, til þou se þe waisching come out of þe festre withoute ony quittance. & whanne
 þe festre is al clene, þan þou schalt fulfille þe cure with oynementis þat wolen regendre fleisch & fulfille þe cure as it is aforseid / If it
 so be þat þe wei of þe festre þat goiþ in & out ²be bicom hard &
 20 callous so þat it be a verri festre, þan þou muste hete an hoot yren þat it be as greet as þe hole of þe festre & brenne al þe hardnes þerof, & aftirward make þe cruste falle awei with buttir & opere pingis, & þanne make it clene, & þan drie it & soude it.
- 24 ¶ Also it bifallip þat children han grete bocchis in her brest, & þat comeþ of cowþinge þat puttþ out þe matere, & also it comeþ of greet wynd þat puttþ out þe matere / þe cure herof in þe firste
 bigynnyng is in þis maner for to aswage cowþing, as almaundis
 28 grounden wip penidis & temperid with a decoccioun of fenel, & þis he schal vse / Also take swete almaundis .ij. partis, dragaganti,⁴ semen citoniorum⁵ ana, oon parti, Iulip quod sufficit. & make herof a souping medicyn,⁶ þat it be as picke as hony. & whanne
 32 þe cowþinge is aswagid, þan make him a baþ wip rotis of altea, &

Keep the wound dilated until it is perfectly cleansed.

When the passage of
 [2 lf. 147]
 the fistula is callous, use the hot iron.

Mitigatio³
 Tussis

Children have apostemas in their chest in consequence of coughing and of wind in their body. Allay the cough,

and apply a lotion.

³ MS. *Metegacho*.

⁴ Vigo Interpr.: "*Dragagantum*. *Tragacantha* is a brode, & a woddy rote appearyng about the earth, wher-oute manye lowe braunches sprynge, spreading themselues al about. There cleaueth to thys rote, a gummy liquour of a bright colour, & somewhat swete in tast, which they cal comunly *dragagantum*."

⁵ *citonium* = *Cotonea malus*, *Cydonea*, "Quince." Wr. Wü., 13, 19. "*Citonium*, goodaepel."

⁶ a souping medicyn, Lat. *medicina sorbillis*.

leues of malue, & fenigrec, & lyne seed soden in watir, & þis schal
 be cast vpon þe enpostym wip a vessel holden an hize þere from /
 [1 lf. 147, bk.] þanne aftirward þou schalt¹ dissolue þe matere & make it neische
 with medycyns þat ben forseid in hard enpostyms, & þan cure it vp 4
 as it is aforseid in þe enpostyms of wijnd. ¶ A greet boch þat
 comeþ of þe passioun of þe riggeboon, whanne þei ben of þe ioynct,
 is incurable whanne it is confermed /

Of an enpostym apperinge in þe mouþ of þe stomac / 8

¶ ix^o co
 If there is an
 Apostema at
 the stomach,
 the liver, or
 the spleen,
 strengthen
 the affected
 part,

apply re-
 solving
 medicines,
 but beware
 of repellents.

[3 lf. 148]

This apos-
 tema easily
 gets indu-
 rated, and
 causes
 dropsy.

WHanne þere schewip an enpostym in þe mouþ of þe stomac
 & aboute þe regioun of þe lyuer & of þe splene: þou
 summen wollen take hede to þe contrarie, bi my general rule² it is
 good & profitable to comforte þe place wip oile of mastice, & oile of 12
 spica, & oile of lillie, & wip cold enplastris of rosis, & of absinthio,
 squinanto, ciperio, citonijs wip mele of barli & opere þingis. & þou
 schalt be wel war of repercussiuus, whanne þe enpostym is ny; ony
 principal lyme, saue þou schalt leie þerto resoluyng³ & maturatif 16
 þingis. & loke þat þei be not medlid wip no þingis þat ben reper-
 cussif; for if þou leidist repercussiuus vpon þe stomac, or 3 þe
 lyuere, or þe splene, þei wolde be enfeblid þerwip, & to al þe accioun
 of þe bodi wolde be enpeirid; for þese lymes serueþ principaly for 20
 to norische al þe bodi / þerfore þou schalt not vse in þis caas pure
 maturatiuis, ne pure repercussiuus, ne colde þingis / What schalt
 þou do in þis caas? þou schalt awoide þe matere, & þou schalt com-
 forte þe place with stiptikis, & tempere attractiuus, & do awei þe 24
 matere. & if þou miȝt not, þan resolute þe matere, for it is greet
 perel⁴ of þis enpostym, for it wole liztli turne in to sclirosym, &
 þan it wole be hard to resolute, & aftirward it wole be cause of þe
 dropesie / þerfore if þou seest⁵ þat þe enpostym bicometh hard, þan 28
 þou muste leie þerto mollificatiuis & wip comfortatiuis. & þou muste
 be in þis caas ful wijs. & whanne þe enpostym is maturid, þan
 opene it as it is aforseid, & leie þerto mundificatiuis & cure vp þe
 enpostym as it is aforseid. 32

// Of an enpostym þat comeþ in iguine .id est þe gryndis

¶ x. co/
 [3 lf. 148, bk.]

APostym comeþ often time in iguine for vlcera of þe ȝerde & of
 þe feet, for 6 þe place is discending⁴ adoun of humours to þat 36

² rule, above line.

⁴ perel, above line.

⁵ seest, in margin.

place,¹ & þan it is not so greet drede² þerof.³ Saf if his bodi be
ful of wickid humours, þan it is greet drede þerof / þis matere þou
muste resolute in þis maner. Take oile of camomille & anointe þer-
4 wip þe enpostym, & leie þervpon wolle vnwaische, & if it resolute
not in þis maner, þan leie þerto maturatiuis, as it is aforseide. ¶ If
þe matere be hoot, þan lete him blood in þe veyne þat is clepid
sophena. & þou schalt sotille⁴ his dieting, & leie þerto resoluynge
8 þingis þat ben not to strong, & þat þei drawe not to harde. &
whanne þe cours of humours ceessiþ, þan leie þerto stronge resolu-
ynge þingis. & in þis caas þis is good þerfore: lie of askis & of
vryne, & wete þerinne stupis & leie vpon þe enpostym, for þis
12 makip maturatif & waastip it sotilly & driep it / If þou myzt not
resolute it, þan leie þerto maturatiuis & opene it, & þan leie þerto
mundificatiuis & hele it vp as it is aforseid /

Apostemas in the groins are caused by ulcers of the yard or the feet.

Ry

Apply resolving medicines; if the matter is hot, bleed from the Vena Saphina.

Ry

Of an enpostym of þe haunche & of þe cox.

16 I N þis place ofte tyme engendriþ an enpostym, & þou schalt
fynde⁵ þere þe curis þerof in þe chapitre of dolour of ioynctis;
saue if þe enpostym be without þe haunche in þe hipe, or in þe leg,
or in þe foot, þan þou schalt do þerto þe same cure þat is aforseid
20 in þe enpostyms of þe arm. Saf herof þou schalt take kepe, þat
oftetymes an enpostym gaderiþ in a mannes hipe al wipinne in þe
depnes of it, þat a leche schal not knowe it, but if he be þe more
wijs / þerfor ypo[cras] seiþ: in placis þere enpostym is, and þe quit-
24 ture schewe not out, it is perilous / þerfor þou muste taste it wip
þi fyngris, & loke where it is moost maturid, & opene it, and
drawe out þe quittance, þan leie þerto mundificatiuis, & þan fulfille
þe cure as it is aforseid /

¶ xj. cº.

[5 lf. 149]

Apostema on the legs are treated like those on the arms.

A deep apostema in the hip must be opened.

ypocras.

¹ Lat.: Sæpe prouenit apostema in inguine propter vlcera virgæ et pedum: propterea quod locus est descensus humorum ad illa loca. The translator mistook "descensus" sb. for descensus part.

² drede, above line.

³ Compare Guiliel. de Salic. I. 42. Sl. 277, fol. 5 b.: "This secknesse is cleped bubo or draguncell,^a or aposteme of þe grynde, & it is maad as oftest of cold matere whiche is cast out of þe lyuere to þoo places, & oþerwhile it is hoot. It is maad also, when a man is seek in his zerde for filþehede of nommen or of oþer cause."

⁴ sotille, Lat. attenuare. O.Fr. soutilier. Compare sotilen with the abstract meaning, "argue subtly."—*Piers the Plowman*, ed. Skeat, Gloss.

^a Dufr. Gloss.: "Dracunculus, ulceris vel cancri species."

Apostym of þe 3erde & ballokis /

xij. eo.

A windy
apostema of
the yard
occurs fre-
quently with
children.

[² lf. 149, bk.]

R I3t as enpostyms comeþ in opere lymes, ri3t so þei comen in a mannes 3erde & in hise ballokis, of humours hoot or cold, as bi þese signes þou mi3t knowe. Suintyme a mannes 3erde swellip 4 with wynd, þat þou mi3t knowe bi enpostyms of wynd þat ben aforseid. & it fallip ofte to 3onge children,¹ & also þis enpostym þou mi3t knowe ²in þis maner, if þe place be hard & heuy & þer is no difference bitwixe þe colour herof & of þat oper partie of his 8 bodi.

A hot apos-
tema of the
yard and the
testes is
treated with
blood-letting,
a suitable
diet,

R
a hot plaster,

R
and dress-
ings.

[³ lf. 150]

¶ In an hoot enpostym of þe 3erde or of þe ballokis, þou schalt lete him blood in a veyne þat is clepid basilica in þe same side, & in þe .ij. dai lete him blood in þe sophene / Also þou schalt forbede 12 him wijn & fleisch & al maner swete metis þat engendriþ blood or colre. þan þou schalt leie þerto medecyns to putt awei þe mater, þat ben maad in þis maner. R7, cortices granatorum, rosas siccas, & lentes & sepe hem in water til þei dissolve, & þan grinde hem in 16 a mortar wip oile of roses & a litil vinegre, & make herof an enplastre & leie it þeron hoot / Also take succi portulace siluestris, & olium rosarum & a litil vinegre, & wete heryn a lynnyn cloof & leie it aboute þe 3erde & hise ballokis / Whanne þe cours of þe mater 20 ceessip, þan do þerto mele of barley & of benis, or distempere þese wip þe zelke of an ey & wip iuys of morel & oile of roses, & leie þeron. & whanne þe enpostym goiþ away, þan leie þeron enplastre of mele of benis ³& of fenigrec & camomille distemperid with gotis 24 talow / If þis enpostym gadere quittance & vlcers, þan cure it as þou schalt fynde in þe chapitre of vlcers of þe 3erde.

A cold apos-
tema of the
testes is
treated with
an ointment
and supposi-
tories.

R
A plaster for
an indurated
apostema.

¶ A coold empostym þat is in þe ballokis schal be curid wip anyoynting of þe matere wip medicyns or wip scharpe suppositorijs; 28 for þis drawip þe mater fro þe ballokis / If it be so þat þe enpostym be woxen hard in þe ballokis, þan leie þerto þis enplastre þat I haue ofte preued / Take bran of whete & grinde it wel in a mortar til it bicomme al poudre, & þan distempere it wip oximel 32 maad of .ij. partis of vinegre & oon partie of hony, & dissolve þerinne gum armoniac & make herof an enplastre & leie it on hoot, & þis schal be remeued ofte. þis is auicens medicyns.

R

¶ If a mannes 3erde be swollen wip wijnd & þe cause be hoot, 36 þan lete him blood; if it be coold, þan leie þerto enplastris, & in þis caas among alle opere þingis þis is good / Take oile of roses iiij.

¹ Add. 26,106, fol. 59 b.: accidit quibusdam iuuenibus calidis.

partis, of wex o part, melte hem togidere & þan waische hem in
 coold water til it bicom as it were a whit oynement, & herwip
 1 anoynte þe place / If it be hoot, þan þou schalt make him caste, [1f. 150, bk.]
 4 & þou schalt 3eue him agnus castus,² & seed of rue & comyn &
 anise & opere pingis þat waastip wijnd, & make an enplaster of
 þese pingis þat distrieþ wijnd / ¶ An enplaster þat gilbert made
 for swellng of a mannes 3erde & it is mitigatif. R7, crummis of R7.
 8 whit breed & grinde hem in a mortar & tempere hem wip watir, &
 þan boile hem til þei bicom picke, & do þerto a litil oile & a litil
 hony, & þan boile hem togidere & leie it vpon hoot // If a mannes
 3erde be swollen wip hete of liggyng bi a womman, þus þou schalt
 12 helpe him / Take leues of wipi & sepe hem in water & baþe his R7
 3erde herynne & binde þerto þe leues // Also sepe lynseed & leues
 of malue & grynde hem togidere & make herof a plastre /

A plaster for
a cold windy
apostema.

A plaster for
a hot windy
apostema.

R7.
A lenitive
plaster of
Gilbert.

The cure of scrophularum & glandulum /³

16 C Ure of glandularum & scrophularum is almoost oon, saue ¶ xiij.
 herof is a difference / Scrophule comeþ þe moost part of
 malancoli & ben worse to dissolue. & glandule comeþ þe most
 part of fleume, & ben li3ter to resolue / In boþe causis it is ⁴neces-
 20 sarie to purge þe matere. & þe medicyn laxatijf maad of turbit is
 good þerfore þat is aforseid in þe chapitre of allopucia, or in þis
 maner as .A. makiþ it / R7 turbit zinzi,⁵ zucare .3. ij, & 3eue þis
 ofte, or trociscus de turbit maad wip diarubarbe, & þou must sotle
 24 his dietyng, & he schal not ete to miche, & he schal drinke no
 water, & he schal holde his heed an hi3, & he schal kepe him fro
 wepinge, & he schal not, whanne he is ful, slepe anoon þervpon, &
 þou schalt anoynte þe place with oile of camomille, & wip oile of

Scrophula is
caused by
Melancholy;
Glandula by
Phlegm.

[4 If. 151]
These apos-
temas are
treated with
purgng.

R7
The patient
shall neither
drink water,
nor weep,
nor sleep on a
full stomach.

² Besides the names given in *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. *Agnus castus*, there are:
 “*Agnus castus*, frutex est, i. bischopeswort.” *Sinon. Barth.*, p. 1. “A. c.,
 toutsayne.” *Wr. Wü.* p. 562, 24 (xvth cent.). “Chastlambe” in *Maplet*. A
 greene Forest, fol. 39. *De Propr. Rer.* (Add. MS. 27944, fol. 216 a): “*Agnus*
Castus is an herbe hoot and dryue and hap vertu to kepe men & wommen
 chaste a plinius seiþ. ¶ Þerfore wommen of Rome vsede to bere wip hem
 þe fruyt of þis herbe in dyrige and service for dede men, whanne þey moste
 nedes lyre chaste for comyn honestee. ¶ Þis herbe is alway grene as dy-
 ascorides seiþ, and platearius also, and þe flour þerof is nameliche y-cleped
 agnus castus.”

³ Sl. 2463, f. 97 (see p. 222, note 8): “Because þat þe cure of scrophules
 & glaundules, as who seiþ, is bothe oone, but þer is a difference be as moche
 as scrophules ben for þe more partie of malancolye . . .”

⁵ MS. ZZ.

.R̃. lilie, & wiþ þis oile þatⁱ is apreued / R̃, radices electerij,¹ radices malue visci,² & kutte hem smal & leie hem in oold oile of oliuarum & do hem in a vessel of glas, & sette þis glas in a vessel of water, & make þe water to sepe, & be war þatⁱ þou saue þe glas fro brekingt. 4
 & wiþ þis oile anointe him, & þan leie þeron wolle vnwaische / And if þis suffise not, make him a plastre of gotis tordis & oximel, or quik lyme & swynys grese þatⁱ itⁱ be freisch / & oold,³ or þis medicyne / R̃ staphisacre, seminis lini,⁴ farini orobi, resine⁵ albe & 8
 make herwiþ an enplastre wiþ ole & vinegre / Also anoþer þatⁱ is swiþe good. Take radices lilij, & seminis lini, ana,⁶ boile hem in wijn til þei dissolue, & þan do þerto of culuer tordis & make it a picke plastre, & þou schalt putte þerto culuer toordis more or lesse 12
 as þou seest þatⁱ þe mater resolueþ more or lesse, as þou seest þatⁱ it nedip. ¶ Also diaculon⁷ rasis, & diaculon Iohannes Mesue þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, ben good for to resolue scrophulas / Whanne þou resoluest þe mater & sum þerof goiþ awei, & sum 16
 þerof leueþ hard, þan þou schalt do þerto sumtyme mollificatiuis & sumtyme resoluynge þingis //

Use one of the following plasters. One prepared with goat's-dung.

.R̃. [5 lf. 151, bk.]

R̃. Another prepared with dove's-dung.

Glandula and Scrophula must be opened when they are quite ripe.

¶ Glandule & scrophule ben parti of douce fleume or of blood ; it is ful hard to make hem clene, for sum partie þerof wole leue 20
 hard & wole not bicomematuratif. þou schalt [not]⁸ haste to opene hem saue þou schalt leue if þou miȝt, til it be al rotid, & þan open it & leie þerto mundificatiuis / & in þis place it is good to leie þerto vnguentum apostolorum & poudre of affodille & opere 24
 liȝt corosiuis. & þou schalt in no maner leie þerto realgar,⁹ ne noon violent¹⁰ þingis, & leie þeron a mundificatif in which be medlid rotis of lilie wel soden, for þis mundificatif makip clene & also quitturiþ þe remenaunt of þe matere / þou must take greet dili- 28
 gence for to make clene glandulas & scrophulas, for þei ben ful hard

[10 lf. 152]

¹ Lat. elaterium, ἐλατήριον. *Alphita*, p. 53, "Elacterium succus cucurbite agrestis idem. sed electerides sunt cucumeres agrestes tam fructus eorum quam ipsa herba." *Vigo Interpr.*: "Elaterium is the iuice of a wild cocomber."

² *malua viscum* = *Althæa officinalis*, marsh-mallow.

³ Some words omitted. Lat. : cum axungia porcina, sine sale antiquo.

⁴ MS. *staphisacre seminis. nitri*.

⁶ *partes æquales* om.

⁷ "Diachylon, a Plaister made of the Mucilages or pappy Juice of certain Fruits, Seeds, and Roots, whose Office is to ripen and soften." Phillips.

⁸ not om. Lat. : Non ergo festines in earum apertura.

⁹ *realgar*, Arab. See Skeat, *Et. Diet. Alphita*, p. 156, *Realgar* vel *risalgar* est uena terre." *Vigo Interpret.*, "Realgar is made of brimstone, vnslaked lyme, and orpimente. It kylleth rattes."

to make clene, & ofte *per* engendriþ *perof* festrís / ¶ If þou desirist¹ In extirpating the apostema take care not to injure a blood-vessel.
to cure glandulas & scrophulas wiþ kutting, loke wher glandula or
scrophula be neische, & be war of veynes & senewis, & loke þat
4 þer be no veine þere nyȝ. þan take him vp wiþ þi lift hond &
drawe him vp as hiȝe as þou miȝt & kutte þe skyn endelongis þe
necke, & be war þou touche not þe clooþ þat he is folde þerinne, &
þane score¹ him & drawe him out al hool with þe clooþ, & if þer
8 leue ony þing þerof, caste þeron poudre of affodille or sum oþer list
corosif, & þanne regendre fleisch & soude it vp / If it so be þat
glandula or scrophula be closid with veynes or wiþ arterijs, þan
kutte him not in no maner, for þer miȝt come greet perel þerof.²

12 // Þe cure of þe cancre not vlcerid & his cure /

CAusis & difference þou hast herd of a cankre³ & in what
maner þou schalt cure cancrum þat is not vlceratus / Rasis^{¶ xiiij. co.}
seip, & it is soop, & I haue seen ofte tyme, þat whanne ony man
16 touchip a cancre wiþ iren or wiþ ony medicyn corrosif, but if þei
kutte him away clene wiþ alle his rotis, ellis þei makip þat þe
cancer is vlceratus / & for to make a cancre vlceratum, it ne fallip
for no goodnes, saue it makip þe patient haste þe fastere to his
20 deop, & schortip his lijf & bringip him in turment // ¶ þerfore if
a cancre be in a place þat he mai be kutt awai wiþ alle hise rotis,
whanne he is kutt awai, þan þou schalt breȝne þe place wiþ an
hoot iren or wiþ gold, & þan þou schalt fulfille þe cure as it is
24 aforseid in þe chapitre of a cancre þat is vlceratus.⁴ ¶ If it so be
þat þe cancre be perfit & greet, þan þou schalt touche him wiþ
noon iren ne wiþ no medicyn corrosif, saue þou schalt kepe þe
patient wiþ good dieting, & he schal ofte tymes haue medicyns for
28 to purge malancolie wiþ gootis whey & with epithimo, & sumtyme
lete him blood, & þou schalt anoynte þe place wiþ vnguentum rasis

[³ If. 152, bk.]

Rasis

Unless a non-ulcerating cancer is removed thoroughly, it becomes an ulcerating one.

Use the hot iron after cutting.

A large and fully developed cancer shall neither be cut nor cauterized.

¹ score. Lat. discarnare.

² Sl. 2463, fol. 98: "But if þe glandule or þe scrofula be intrikes^a with veynes, arteries oþer synewes, so þat þei cleue oþer be faste knytte to hem, for nothing þou schall nyȝe hem noþer with Iren noþer with noone other corosyue medecyne."

⁴ A different opinion is expressed in Sl. 2463, fol. 115: "The cure of þe canker is done in two maners. The tone cure is for to kutte away all þe membre þat þe canker is inne, with all þe syknesse; and þis is an yuell cure and may be done, but it is not plesaunt." Ibid., fol. 115 b.: "And yf þer be noon oþer remedie but for to cutte hit away with alle þe rotes, me thenkith hit is more honest to leue hit þanne to do hit."

^a Lat. intricata.

[1 lf. 153]

Many patients would live a long time if they were not treated by unskilful physicians.

de thutia, þat is ^{1 2}aforseid in cura cancri vlcerati. & þou schalt leie þeron colde leues, & alwei þis schal be þin entencioun, for to kepe þat þe cancre wexe not ne rotie not / I haue seen ful manye lechis þat hadden greet name in cirurgie þat founden cancris in men, and 4 wexe not, & þe cancris were not vlcerati & miȝte ful long tyme haue lyued if he hadde be kept afir my teching in þis book; saue vnkunnyng cirurgians wenep þat in kutting of a cancre þei schulde finde quittance & ben disseyued, & so disseyuen hem-silf & also þe 8 patient, & þan whanne þei han kutt þei fynde nouȝt saue fleisch corrupt wiþout quittance in þe maner of a sponge, wherfore þe lippis of þe wounde wole come aȝen worse þan þei were tofore & more stynking. & wiþ þe greet stynkinge þe spirit is schent, & makip þe 12 patient þe rapere drawe toward þe deef / & if þe cancre were not vlceratus þe patient miȝte lyue longe þerwith.

Bocium þat comeþ of humours corrupt.

¶ xv° c°. "Bocium" is caused by corrupt phlegm, [3 lf. 153, bk.] or arises from hot apostemas.

BOcium is a postym þat comeþ of humours, & principali it is 16 engendrid of fleume corrupt / Sumtyme it comeþ of ³hote enpostyms, as whanne þei ben rotid & not opened. & þou þe subtil mater be drawen out, þat opere part bi comeþ hard & leueþ 20 þere longe tyme / & sumtyme a rume⁴ fallip adoun of his heed into his necke & makip þe matere wexe more / þis maner enpostym haþ manie diuers signes / Sum maner þerof is lijk as it were cley, & summe is lijk schellis. Summe is as it were chese, & summe is as it were drastis of oile, & so þis enpostym in his corrupcioun takip 24 manie diuers colouris /

This apostema is treated with drawing and caustic medicines.

.Ry.
A caustic medicine.

þis enpostym schal be helid wiþ drawynge þingis & wastynge þat schulen be taken bi þe mouþ & leid to wiþoutforþ / þou schalt 3eue him bi þe mouþ a medicyn for to purge fleume, & þan þou 28 schalt 3eue him a medicyn for to waaste þe matere & is maad in þis maner / Ry paruum plantam nucis a terra cum suis radicibus extirpatam id est take a litil plauntein of a note & take it vp of þe ground wiþ alle hise rotis, & grynde it wiþ greynes of peper, so þat if þer be 32 of þe notis .3 iiij., þan do þerto of peper 3 j, & þis þou schalt boile

² In later hand at the bottom of the page: *contra fetorem cancri. R pulueris corticis quercus ffarine sileginis ana succi appii mell ana succus & mell inspissentur decoque super ynguem cum puluere ffarina. Item decoque puluerem corticis quersini in aqua et inde tepide laua canserem a fetore paliando.*

⁴ rume, rheum, O.Fr. reume.

- in a quart of wyn ¹ of paris til it come to þe half, & þanne cole it, [¹ lf. 154]
 & herof þe patient schal take euery dai 3 ij. // ¶ Enplastris þat A caustic plaster.
 wastiþ ben enplastris þat enpostyms of fleume be wastid þerwith /
 4 If þou desirist for to cure it wiþ kuttyng, þan þou must loke, wher
 þe matere þat is wiþinne be neische or hard. & wher it be among
 veynes & arterijs, þou schalt touche it wiþ noon iren in no maner /
 If it so be þat þe mater be neische & if þou miȝte kutte it for
 8 perels þat ben forseid, þan kutte it & drawe out þe mater, & leie
 þerto mundificatiuis, & alle þingis as it is aforseid in þe general
 chapitre / If þe mater be hard & þe enpostym be hangyng & be
 fro veynes & arterijs, þan kutte þe skyn endelongis aboue, & be war
 12 þat þou touche not þe bagge þat bocium sittip þeron & scarre² it
 al abouteforþ & drawe him out with al his skyn. & if þer leue
 þeron ony þing of his skyn, þan caste þeron poudre of affodille, &
 make it clene wiþ poudre of sum liȝt corrosif þerwiþ—vnguentum
 16 viride,³ & þan regendre fleisch, & þan drie it vp as it is aforseid /

⁴Of þe akyng of ioynctis.

[⁴ lf. 154, bk.]

- N**OW it is seid pleyulier of alle enpostyms, now speke we of ¶ xvjo c.
 passiouns þat comeþ in ioynctis. & þis passioun is myche Diseases of the joints are similar to apostemas,
 20 lijk to enpostyms in causis & signes & curis, & also it diuersip
 niche fro opere enpostyms / For þou þe place be greet to-swollen,
 it comeþ but late or neuere to quittance. Swellyng & akyng of but they rarely terminate in sup-puration.
 ioinctis, þis passioun is vnknown to manie kunnyng lechis þat han
 24 greet name. Bi þe cause þat cirurgians ben clepid algate to þis
 manere passioun, þerfore I haue studied to make a general chapitre
 of passiouns of ioinctis. & I haue take miche þerof þe bokis of
 Rasis & of myn owne worching þat I haue proued. ¶ þe causis Pains in the joints are caused by an evil condition of the limbs or the body,
 28 þat makip akyng in ioynctis: or it comeþ of yuel complexioun of
 lymes, or it comeþ of hoot complexioun þat hetip, or it comeþ of
 coold complexioun þat cooldip / Drie ligaturis of ioynctis con-
 streineþ & makip akyng,⁵ & moistnes makip neuere akyng wiþ-
 32 outen oper⁶ mater / Mater þat makip akyng of ioynctis is ofte tyme [⁶ lf. 155]
 haboundaunce of blood, & ofte tyme it is raw fleume, & moost
 principali colre or blood medlid with fleume / & it comeþ ful seelde
 of fleume, but if it be medlid wiþ ony oper þing as colre / In what

² scarre. Lat. scarnare.³ vnguentum viride. See Notes.⁵ Lat. sicca (complexio) ligamento junctarum astringendo dolorem aliquando generat.

and frequently by phlegmatic humour.

The physician can easily be in error, and apply wrong medicines.

[² If. 155, bk.]

Treatment, when the illness arises from a bad condition of the body.

If it is caused by the humours, soothe the pain.

Auicen

and Rasis differ in their treatment.



[⁵ If. 156]

Apply first a lenitive plaster or ointment, or give a medicine,

then let blood

maner þou schalt knowe which humour be in þe cause of akyng
of ioinctis, þou schalt finde in þe chapitre of allopucia & in þe
general chapitre of enpostyms, if þou takist good kepe of þe signes
of þe forseid chapitris, what humour is in cause of akyng of 4
ioinctis / Saue þis þou muste take hede, þat ofte tyme raw fleumatik
humouris makip akyng of ioinctis as it is forseid, & þan þe colour
of þe lyme schal be but litil¹ chaungid þerfore / & þan a leche but
if he be þe more expert þeron mai be bigilid. & sumtyme a litil 8
quantite of colre wole schewe vpon þe lyme, & þan þe leche wole
leie þerto coolde pingis, & þan þe mater of fleume wole bicom hard,
& so þe greuance wole be worse þan it was / þerfore it is greet
nede þat þe leche be kunnyng² & knowe wel þe ²mater of passiouns 12
of ioyntis.

¶ þe cure of akyng of ioinctis þat comþ of yuel complexioun
oonly, þou schalt remeue with pingis þat ben contrarie to þat com-
plexoun:³ as if þe mater be hoot, þan þou schalt remeue it with 16
colde pingis, & if þe mater be coold, þan þou schalt remeue it wip
hoot pingis, & if þe mater be of drienenes, þan þou schalt remeue it
wip moist pingis, & wip metis & drinkis þat makip fatt, & wip rest⁴
& wip gladnes; for as faste as his bodi bicomþ fatt, he schal be 20
hool of þat passioun / þis passioun þat comþ of humours, is curid
with mitigacion of þe akyng, & I fynde diuers opiniouns þeron /
& þerfore I wole schewe hem in þis chapter / Auicen seiþ: þat
whanne þou wolt worche in þis mater, þi principal entencioun schal 24
be for to do awei þe akyng / And Rasis forbedip þat þou schalt
leie þerto no repercussiu, ne noon resolutiu but if þe mater be
avoidid tofore / -For to do away þe akyng: saue avoide þe mater,
or leie þerto a repercussif or a resolutif. & þan Rasis seiþ þat 28
þou schalt avoide him, & auicen for⁵bedip þat / In what maner
schulen we worche þanne, whanne þou fyndist a man þat hap greet
akyng? / First þou schalt leie a plastre to þe lyme þat it be
mitigatif or an oynement þat be mitigatif, & þe difference herof 32
schal be aftir þat þe mater is // Also þou mizt zeue him sumwhat
bi þe mouþ for to aswage þe akyng. & þou schalt fynde greet
plente in þis chapitre of defensiuis & mitagatiuis to defende þe
mater / And whanne þe akyng is perfiztli swagid lete him blood 36

¹ A second *litil* deleted.

³ Lat.: Cura doloris iuncturarum quæ ex mala complexionem sola est, non est nisi cum contrariis complexionis malitiam removere.

⁴ MS. *rost*.

if þe cause be of blood. & if it be of another cause avoide it. & from the sound limb,
 if þou letist him blood, þou schalt do it in a lyme aforzens. & if
 þou wolt avoide þere matere, loke þat þou knowe þe cause / for þis or evacuate any evil matter:
 4 is ful necessarie for a leche to kunne / Whanne þe mater is avoidid
 & þe akyngge ceessid, þan þou schalt bigynne wiþ resoluynge medi-
 cyns þat ben forseid. ¶ Also in curis of akyngge in ioyntis be wel and attend to the patient's appetite and digestion.
 war þat þou feble not his appetit, for þis sijknes cometh moost of
 8 humours þat ben vndefied. & þerfore þou schalt in as miche as
 þou miȝt make him haue good ap'petite & good digestioun / If þou [1 f. 156, bk.]
 fyndist oonly þe mater coold, þat makip ful seelde ony gret akyngge,
 saue it makip þe lyme heuy. þis þou schalt wite þat in a coold
 12 cause þat makip akyngge in ioinctis, þouȝ it be hard to do awei,
 neþeles þou schalt ȝeue him no strong medicyn ne he schal not be
 purgid hastili as manie men weneþ, saue it schal be do wiþ a propre
 medicyn þat is sure. & it schal ofte be ȝeuen, so þat þou mai Therefore do not give a strong purgative, but a mild one in several doses.
 16 algate kepe his appetit, for þer is noon so strong medicyn þat mai
 avoide þe mater al at oonys / And if þou ȝeuest him a strong
 medicyn it wole afeble hise vertues. & þerfor þou must chese a
 liȝt medicyn þat mowe comforte þe stomac & þat it mowe be ȝeue
 20 ofte //

¶ Of akyngge of ioyntis þou hast had general rulis; now we
 mote speke of curis here after. ¶ If þou be sent after to a man
 þat haþ arteticam,² þat is as myche to seie as a goute, first þou Arteticam.
 24 muste loke wher þe mater be hoot or coold, or wheþer he haue
 strong akyngge or liȝt akyngge / & if his akyngge be strong, þan ³leie When gout is attended with [3 f. 157]
 þerto mitigatiuis / In oon maner þou schalt ȝeue him medicyns bi
 þe mouþ þat ben mitigatif for to take away þe akyngge, & enplastris pain, give lenitive medicines, and apply plasters.
 28 þat ben mitigatif, & leie vpon þe place. ¶ A good medicyn þat
 schal be ȝeue bi þe mouþ: Rȝ, glandes & leie hem in vinegre adai & .R.
 anyȝt, & after þat drie hem to þe sunne or in an ouene, & þan kepe
 it / & whanne þou wolt ȝeue it, grynde it & ȝeue þerof ʒ .j. ; þis
 32 medicyn makip blood gret & remeueþ þer from / Also take lentes

² *artetica*, *arthritica*, gout, *Trevisa De propr. rer.*, Lib. VII, Cap. 56 (Add. MS. 27,944, fol. 96 b.). "Arthetica is ache and erel in fingres and tone wiþ swelling & sore ache / and whanne hit is in þe fyngres, hit hatte cyragra, and in þe toone hit hatte podagra, if hit is in þe whirlebones and ioyntes it hatte sciatica passio, and cometh of colerik blood & of fleumatik humours, & cometh most ofte of reumatik cause." The author of the Treatise on Surgery, preserved in Sl. 1736, mentions this disease as a hereditary one. Ibid. fol. 122 b.: "also yt ys often tymes sene þat þis arthetica passio gose by erytance as fro þe [fadyr] to the childur, and so forth to odyr."

A medicine
only to be
given in great
need.

excorticatas, semen coriandri, succum glandulum, hermodactulis¹
wip sugre & coold watir, saue herof þou must take kepe þat þese
medicyns schulen not be zeue but in greet nede, & whanne þe
akyng is so greet þat it mai not be take awei. & þei mai be 4

R þe mater be coold & of greet akyng, þan take hermodactulis, thuris
ana xx. partis, cucumeri partes .x, & zeue þerof 3 .iiij. vpon þe 8
[² lf. 157, bk.]
R place / If þe mater be litil & scharp ²& subtil / R̃, amigdalas,
camphore ana, grinde hem & tempere hem wip watir of roses /

R Also anopir in þe same kinde / R̃, mirre, panis albissimi & subtilis-
simi 3 j, opij 3 f, grinde hem wel & tempere hem wip milk of a 12

R cow, & leie it þeron whanne it is greet nede / Item R̃, opij, cortices
mandragorae ana .3. v, grinde hem & tempere hem wip þe iuys of
portulacae & oile of roses & a litil vynegre / Also an oynement for

R
An oine-
ment þat
sesses
ache

to ceesse þe akyng / R̃, olium rosarum 3 iiij, cere 3 j., melte þe oile 16
& þe wex togidere & waische it with oile of roses, & þan do þerto
citrini 3 j., opij 3 f / If þe mater be myche & be neiþer more in
quantite þan in qualite, & þou wolt defende more þe cours of þe
mater, þan do awei þe akyng.³ R̃, cortices granatoris, sandali⁴ 20
albi, & rue,⁵ & roses, boli armenici, ferrugine,⁶ opij, confice cum
succo mirtillorum vel foliorum salicis, or with a decocciun of hem in

watir wip a litil oile of roses & vinegre & make herof an oynement.
& whanne þe akyng is aswagid, þan dissolue þe mater of blood wip 24

letyng blood. & þat suffisip as it is aforseid. ¶ Colre þou schalt
dissolue in þis maner / R̃, mirabolanorum citrinorum .3. vj.,⁷ grinde
[⁷ lf. 158]
hem & leie hem al anyzt in li f of sirup of viole, & 3 .iiij. of wijn

of pomegarnates þat ben swete, amorowe boile hem alitil & do þerto 28
zuccare .3. f, hermodactylorum .3. f., & zeue it him in þe mornyng.
& if þou wolt make itt more coold, do þerto .3. ij. of musilaginis

¹ "*Hermodactyla*, crawanleac." Wr. Wü. 137, 3.—"Hermodactylus, a round-headed Root, brought from Syria, which is of an insipid Taste; and gently purges Phlegm." Phillips.

³ Add. 26,106, fol. 63: Si uero materia fuerit multa et times plus de quantitate quam de qualitate, et uis plus prohibere materiae cursum quam extingueret . . .

⁴ *sandali albi*, σάνταλον. The d in sandal is explained by influence of Arab. sandal (Devic). Matth. Sylvat. mentions three sorts of Sandal: album, ruffum et citrinum. See *Alphita*, p. 161. *whit saunders* and *reed saunders* are distinguished in Sloane MS. 2463, fol. 155 b (c. c. 1450).

⁵ *rue* for *rubidi*.

⁶ Lat. *foenugreci*.

- psillij or 3 .j. ¶ *¶* pis is a good electuarie *perfore* .R̄, *citeniorum* li .R.
 3. & make hem to gobettis, & leie hem in vinegre adai & anizt / & A good electuary, to purge cholier and to strengthen the stomach.
 þan wrynge hem & grinde hem smal, & do þerto scamonie þat it be
 4 good .3 .j., cardamomi, cubube .3 .iij, spice nardi .3 .j., rosis .3 .v,
 zuccare li ʒ, make herof a letuarie þat purgip wel colre & comfortip
 þe stomac. þou schalt ʒeue herof .3 .iij. & þou mizt scharpe it
 more if þou wolt with a litil hermodactylis. ¶ þese ben good
 8 pelottis for þe same cause / R̄, aloes .3 .iij, hermodactylos .3 .j,
 scamonie .5 ʒ, rosis .3 .j, make herof pelottis with sirupo violarum,
 & þou schalt ʒeue herof .3 .j. Whanne þe passioun bigynneþ to go
 awei with þese medicyns, þan þou schalt leie þerto plastris þat ben
 12 resoluyng: as of malue & bismalue, camomille, mellilotum, absinthium,
 peratorie, semen caulium, aneti, fenugreci, ¹semen lini, furfuris, & swynys grese, & gandrís grese, & hennis grese, & oile of
 camfre, & olium aneti. & whanne þe cours of humours ceessip,
 16 þan þou schalt vse oonly resoluyng þingis & make þerof enplastris /
 Also to do awaye residue of þe akinge, pis is a good medicyn / R̄, .R.
 olium camomille ʒ .iij, cere ʒ .j., seminis aneti & caulium, florum
 camomille ana .3 .iij. & make herof an oynement / Also in anoper
 20 maner / R̄, fenigreci, semen lini, aneti, & tempere hem with iuys of .R.
 caulium. & herof þou must take kepe, þat as ofte as þou wolt vse
 clene resolutiuis, þou schalt algate waische þe lyme þat is to-swollen
 wip a decoccioun of malue & bismalue, & florum of camomille & A lotion for the limb.
 24 melliloti, absinthii & opere mo, & þe lyme schal be waische þerwip
 til it bicomē reed, & þan þou schalt anoynte him / And þis þou
 schalt wite þat as meuyng¹ & baping² greueþ þe passioun in þe firste
 bigynnyng, rizt so þei ben in þe ende rizt greet helping / For
 28 to stuwe & bape doiþ awei þe laste part of þe mater & makip
 a mannys lymes haue her meuyng¹ as þei schulde haue. & also it
 is good whanne þe patient goip out of ²his stue, if hise ioinctis
 akip, þan frote hem wel wip salt grounde / If þe mater be coold þou
 32 schalt dizte him wip diazinþiberis þat is aforseid in allopucia. &
 þan þou schalt dissolue wip trocisco de turbit wip hermodactylis
 maad in þis maner / R̄, diazinþiberis predicti ʒ .j. & ʒ, turbit electi .R.
 .3 .j, hermodactulorum alborum solidorum ʒ ʒ, & viij greines of
 36 anise, & make þerof a gobet wip a litil hony. & þis schal be ʒeue
 in þe mornyng. & þerafter he schal drinke a litil wijn hoot & a
 litil water; or wip þese pelottis / R̄, hermodactylorum, saturionis³ .R.

³ Saturion, iarus. See *Alphita*, p. 158.

sene ana .3 .v, ierapigre¹ þat' entriþ in pululas cochias .3 .x, pulpe
coloquintide, centaurie. ana .3 .v, euforbij .3. ij, turbit² .3 .ʒ., cassie,²
sinapis, piperis, castorij ana .3 .j. & make herof pelottis with hony.
& þou schalt³ 3eue herof .3 j. at' oonys, & þis medicyn schal be 4
3eue manie tymes. & in daies bitwixe he schal take diazinþiberum
of oure makinge þat' is forseid. & if it be in winter, þou schalt⁴
3eue him diatrion piperion³ or anoþer hoot' eletuarie // ¶ Anoþer
electuarie þat' dissoluiþ akyng in ioyntis þat' comeþ of raw mater. 8
.R. Rȳ, camedrios,⁴ centaurie minorum ana. 3 .viij, aristologia longa.
[³ If. 159, bk.] ⁵gencian. ana. 3 .vj, agarici .3. ij, vtriusque spice ana .3 .j, make
A lectuare þat' dysolues hem wiþ hony. þou schalt⁶ 3eue herof þe quantite of a note eerli
Ache in 12 Tunnotes & late. Men þat' ben lene schulen not take þis medicyn // Whanne
þe patient is purgid sufficiently, þan þou schalt⁷ vse enplastris for to
R leie to þe place / Rȳ, oold swynis grese þat' it be freisch li j., &
medle þerwiþ quyk-lyme & make þerof a plastre & leie vpon þe
R place / Also take stercus caprinum & distempere it wiþ vinegre & 16
R hony ana, & leie it þeron / Also Rȳ, aristologia, radices yrios,
elleborus, & piper, boile hem in oile & do þerto 3elow wex & make
þerof an oynement. ¶ Also diaquilon maad of litarge & oile &
iuys of mustard seed. & if þou wolt haue mo remedies, go to þe 20
Rasis. book of Rasis, & þere þou schalt fynde in þe chapiter of ioyntis,
medicyns ynowe þefore. ¶ Also if þou desirist to comferte þe
lyme & do awei þe coold mater wiþ repercussiuus, in þe laste chapiter
of þis book þou schalt fynde repercussiuus & mollificatiuis ynowe // 24

/ Of sciatica passio⁶ /⁷

¶ xvijo. co
[³ If. 160]
Pain in the
haunches

A kyng of haunchis schal be curid wiþ avoidinge of þe mater id
est laxatiuis, for repercussiuus ben not þefore, for þe matere⁸ is
in þe depnes of þe lyme, &⁹ ne mowe not come þerto. Resolutiuis 28

¹ "*Hiera Picra*, a purging Electuary invented by Galen, and made of Aloes, Spikenard, Saffron, Mastick, Honey, &c." Phillips. ² MS. cassif.

³ *diatrion piperion*, a medicine composed of three sorts of pepper.

⁴ "*Chamædrys*, the Herb Germander, or English Treacle." Phillips. Camedreos ance Teterwose. Wr. Wü. 569, 47 (xvth cent.).

⁶ MS. *passis*.

⁷ *De Propr. rerum*, Lib. VII, Cap. 57 (Add. 27,944, fol. 96 b.): "*Gutta sciatica* is an yuel þat comeþ of humours þat falliþ down into þe grete seneve þat is bytwene þe grete braynes of þe hanche as constantyn seiþ. ¶ And comeþ ofte of gleymy humours i-gadred togedres in þe holounges of þe ioyntes & of þe haunche / somtyme of bloddy humours i-medlid wiþ colera & alle þese beþ ofte cause of ache þe whiche ache stretchþ into þe legges & anon to þe hele & also anon to þe litil [too]." ⁹ The subject is: *repercussivis*.

ben not¹ perfore, for þei mai not come to þe depnes of¹ þe mater. & for þe mater is so greet¹, it¹ schulde more drawe to þe place humouris þan dissolue. Saue þou must¹ aswage þe akinge, & þou schalt¹ do

must not be treated with repellent or resolving medicines.

4 awei þe akyng with oile & hony & fatnes þat¹ doiþ awei¹ akinge.

¶ If¹ þe mater come of¹ blood, þan lete him blood in a veyne þat¹ is clepid basilica in þe same side, & in þe secunde dai lete him blood in a veyne þat¹ is clepid sciatica, & principaly if¹ þe mater descende

Use blood-letting, if the illness is caused by the blood.

8 adoun wipoutforþ toward þe foot, for þan it¹ mai principaly be holpen / If¹ þe mater come of¹ fleuma, þan purge him wip pelottis of¹ hermodactilorum / Saue herof¹ þou schalt¹ take kepe þat¹ bifore his purgacioun bineþe forþ² he schal haue a vomet. For if¹ þou make

Purge, if phlegm is the cause, and first give an emetic.

12 him a medicyn laxatif¹ bineþeforþ & no vomet¹ tofore, þan it¹ wole drawe more þe mater toward þe place þan awayward / þerfor first¹ þou schalt¹ make him a vomet¹, & aftirward a medicyn laxatif / And perfore medicyns laxatiuis summe ben propre for akyng of¹ þe

16 haunchis, as colocintida, yrios, sarcocolla, ³centaurea, agaricus, & infusioun of¹ aloes. For infusioun of¹ aloes wole make blood passe fro him at¹ his sege, & þan þe akinge wole go awei & he schal be hool / & whanne he is perfitli maad clene wip medicyns laxatiuis,

[³ If. 160, bk.]

20 þan þou mizt¹ leie þerto enplastris maad in þis maner / R⁷, nasturcij,⁴ peretri,⁵ capparis, grinde hem & tempere hem wip lie maad of¹ askis of¹ a fige tree, & make þerof¹ a picke enplaster as it¹ were hony, & anointe þe place til it¹ be ful of¹ bladdris & þe bladdris ful of¹ water,

When the patient is well purged, apply plasters.

R
A blistering plaster.

24 rizt¹ as þe place were brent¹ wip fier. & þan anynte þe place wip butter, & leie þeron caule leeuës þat¹ þe bladdris soude not¹ togideris anoön; for þe lenger þat¹ þei leueþ þeron, þe bettir it¹ wole be. Eiper anynte þe place oonli with mel anacardi,⁶ & þat¹ makip

28 bladdris. & what¹ maner þou schalt¹ make mel anacardi, þou schalt¹ fynde in þe antidotarie þat¹ techip to make medicyns & cauterijs / Saue herof¹ þou must¹ take kepe þat¹ þou schalt¹ not vse þese medicyns þat¹ makip cauterijs, but¹ if¹ his bodi be wel avoidid wip medicyns

.Nota.

Purge the patient before applying the blister.

32 laxatiuis tofore; for if¹ his bodi be ⁷not¹ purgid, it¹ wole drawe more

[⁷ If. 161]

¹ awei, above line.

² bineþe forþ, Lat. per inferius. See *N.E. Dict.*, s. v. beneath-forth.

⁴ nasturtium, a kind of cress.

⁵ peretrum, Lat. piretrum. Anthemis pyrethrum (Dunglison), "Piretrum . . . pelestre."—*Alphita*, p. 145. "Pyrethrum, Bartram, wild or bastard Pellitory, an Herb the Root of which is very biting and hot."—Phillips.

⁶ "Anacardus. Or after Ruellius *anacardium*: is the frute of a tre, growing in Sicilia, and Apulia, called vulgarly, Pediculus Elephantis. The iuyce wherof is called *Mel Anacardi*, which is a ruptory medicine."—Halle, *Table*, p. 10.

.R.
A plaster of
Avicenna.

mater to þe place þan awayward. ¶ Also azens þe sciatica passio here þou schalt haue an experiment preued of Avicenna. Take gotis tordis & drie hem, & make hem to pouder, & distempere hem wip strong vinegre & made hoot, & make herof a plastre, & leie it vpon as hoot as þou maist suffre, & anoynte þerwip his haunche. ¶ Also a medicyn þat is forseid of camedrios & centaurea¹ is good þerfore, for it wole drawe awei bi vryne / ¶ Item: cauterijs maad in þe nexte welle vnder þe place of þe akinge ben gode þerfor after 8 þe tyme þat his bodi is maad clene with purgaciouns, & tofore þou schalt make him no cauterijs.

Of þe maner of dieting of hem þat han passions in
ioinctes /

12

¶ xvij. 00
A patient
with a disease
of the joints
shall abstain
from wine,

[¶ lf. 161, bk.]

and if there
is hot matter,
from meat
and fish;

and if the
matter is
cold he shall
eat only once
a day.

IN what maner þou schalt diete men þat han passiouuns in iointis. þou schalt wite þat þer is no þing so greuou to þis passioun as is wyn, & it is principali forbede in an hoot cause, & so it schal be in a coold cause; for whanne it is take, it persip liztli to þe iointis, & makip wei to þe mater for to falle þerto / Saue if þe passion be coold, & þe patient mai not wel² defie his mete, þan þou schalt graunte him a litil wijn, & not to miche for þe causis þat ben forseid. ¶ In an hoot cause make him drinke þat is forseid in þe chapiter of dieting of woundis, or he schal vse *vinum granatorum* wip coold water. & þe pacient schal absteine him fro fleisch & fisch & vse *lactucis*, *portulacis* / & if he be gretli feble, þan þou schalt zeue him litil chickenys. & lete þou not him drinke wijn bi no maner if his passioun be hoot / & whoso hap þe coold passioun herof, he schal holde him wel apaied³ for to ete oonys adai & not to miche. & lete him drinke ydromel wel soden / for if he mai suffre hungur & þirst he mai soone be hool. & he schal in no maner ete, but if he haue wil þerto.

¶ The firste teching of egritudines of ygen, ouþer
passioun & anothami /


32

¶ io. 00/

NOW wolen we make a tretice of passioun of lymes þat fallip for no woundis, & curis þerof comeþ ofte to cirurgians

¹ *centaurea*, written above *cauterie*.

² *he schal holde him wel apaied*, Lat. sit contentus. See *N.E. Dict.*, s. v. *apaied*. O.Fr. *apaier*. Compare: *je m'en tieng bien paieez*. (Littré.)

- handis¹ / I wole bigynne of^t sijknes of^t yzen & to speke of anatho-
miam perwip^t pat^t was not^t forseid in þe .ij. book / þou schalt^t fynde
in summe bokis of^t auctoritees pat^t a mannes izen ben maad of^t .iiij. The anatomy
of the eyes.
4 humouris & of^t .vij. cootis. & in sum bokis² þou schalt^t fynde pat^t The eye has
three
[2 lf. 162]
þe izen ben maad of^t .iiij. cotis or of^t .iiij. or of^t .vij. or of^t .x., & alle
þei seien soop. Saue þe .j. coote pat^t maketh þe schap of^t þe ize,
ben but^t .iiij. pat^t scheweth out^t in þe hole of^t þe ize, & perfore me
8 mai seie .vj. & also þre³ / And fro þe brain tofore comeþ .ij. bind-
ingis pat^t ben not^t of^t nerues, saue þei ben of^t þe substaunce of^t brain,
& pat^t oon comeþ out^t in þe rihtside, & pat^t oper in þe listside, & ben
schape as it^t were þe hedis of^t .ij. tetis, wherbi þe witt^t is take.⁴ &
12 after þese .ij. comeþ out^t ij. nerues, & ben fast^t to þe izen, & ben
schape in þis maner:  8 þan pat^t nerue pat^t wexiþ in þe
rihtside of^t þe brayn, whanne he goiþ out^t of^t þe scolle boon & entriþ
into orbitam, pat^t is þe holow place pat^t þe yze sitt^t on, & goiþ to þe
16 ize in þe listside. & bi þes nerues comeþ þe spiritis of^t lijf^t & of^t sizt^t
to þe yzen / Of^t þe substaunce of^t dura matris is engendrid rethina,
pat^t is þe þinne skyn pat^t goiþ without^t þe ize, pat^t is clepid þe vilm
of^t þe ize. And þis serueþ of^t greet^t seruice, & þis vilm was maad
20 swiþe þinne pat^t it^t ne hurte not^t humouris, & pat^t it^t lette not^t þe
meuyng of^t þe ize, and it^t byndiþ in al þe ize, & it^t defendiþ þe ize
fro harmyng of^t þe boon //⁶ Two pro-
cesses reach
from the
brain to the
eyes.

Two nerves,
crossing
each other,
enter the
Orbitam,
and confer
the spirit of
life.

The eye is
enveloped in
the Retina
(film).
[5 lf. 162, bk.]

- ¶ þere comeþ manye sijknessis in þe izen, & summe comeþ of^t
24 causis wipoutforþ, & summe of^t causis wipinneforþ / Wipinneforþ:
as of^t yuel complexiouns, or of^t yuel humouris; wipoutforþ: as of^t
greet^t hete of^t þe eir, or of^t greet^t cooldnes of^t þe eir, or of^t poudre, or
of^t fume, or of^t wynd / And þere ben opere maner sijknes of^t þe ize,
28 & pat^t ben seid contagious: as obtolmia & blere ized, & alle þese
sijknessis comen to cirurgians handis. & obtolmia is clepid a whit^t
welke or a reed poynt,⁷ & icching & scabbe, sebel, vngula, cataracta,

The diseases
of the eyes
have partly
external,
partly in-
ternal causes.

Obtolmia.
Ichinge.
Scabbe.
Sebel.
Vngula.
Cataracta.

¹ Lat.: Volentes tractare de passionibus membrorum particularium, que non sunt vulnera, quæ sæpe veniunt ad manus chirurgi . . . incipimus ab ægreditudinibus oculorum.

³ The passage is corrupt, and the corresponding Latin phrase differs: Tunicae tres quæ in oculi formatione tres præcedunt humores, in ordine causant ex ipsis tres alias, quare dici possunt sex et tres.

⁴ Lat.: quibus sensus comprehenditur odoratus.

⁶ Lat.: Facta fuit ergo retina valde subtilis, ne læderet humores: et ne motum ipsorum in dilatatione comprimeret. Et facta fuit sclerotica: ut oculum totum cum cornea ligaret: et defenderet ab ossis oculi nocumento. The translator omits the description of the Anatomy of the eye. See Notes.

⁷ Lat.: ophthalmia, vlcus, albula, macula simplex, punctus, rubedo. The SURGERY. R

Dilatacio
Pulpe.
15 Inuersacio
Palpebra-
rum.
Ordelus.
Grando.
Nodus.
Pilus.
fistula la-
crimalis

[³ lf. 163]

iiij maner
obtalnia

1. Mild
ophthalmia.
The eyes get
red, and feel
burning, but
there is no
swelling.

Treatment.

R₇

Apply an
eye-wash,

Nota.

a fomenta-
tion, and if
necessary
bleed the
patient.

[⁹ lf. 163, bk.]

2. Severe
Obtalnia.

dilatacion pulpe,¹ inuersacion, palpebrarum, ordelus, grando, nodus, & pilus, fistula lacrimalis. ¶ Also per ben opere manere sickness of þe ize: as blind & hurtinge þat mowe not be curid /

It is forseid what þingⁱ is enpostym in þe general capitulo of 4 enpostyms. & it is forseid þat euery þing þat gaderiþ humour to- gidere & mak iþ swellynge,² schal be clepid enpostym⁴ / In þe same maner obtalmia⁵ is clepid enpostym of þe ize. & pere ben .iiij. maners of obtalmia: as lizt, & strenger, & alþer strong. Litz, as whanne 8 a mannes ize bicometh reed & haþ brennyng þerinne & prickinge, & per is no swellyng þeron. & þis mai come of a cause withoutforþ: as of hoot eir or of coold, or of smoke, or of poudre, or of wakinge, or of traueile. & þe cure herof is but litz; for þis sickness mai be 12 curid in þis maner. Take þe white of an ey & scume⁶ it, & loke þat pere falle no filþe þeron, & leie it into his ize; for þis is þe best medicyn⁷ among alle medicyns þat ben clepid colliries, for it wole make coold his ize & do away þe akyng. & it abidiþ þe lenger in 16 his ize, for it is viscous // ¶ If þe cause be cold,⁸ þan þis cure suffisþ: þanne lete him drynke a litil sutil wijn, & make him a fomentacioun of rosis & flouris of camomille, & fenigrec soden in water. & if þis suffise not, þan⁹ þou muste lete him blood, & awoide 20 awei þe humouris. & þou muste caste into his ize a whit collirium, & it is seid in opere spicis of obtolmia.

¶ Obtolmia þat is strong. þese ben þe signes þerof: greet reednes, & þe veynes of þe ize be ful replete, & þe corner of þe 24 ize schal watri, & he schal haue greet akinge & pricking, & sum- tyme pere cometh in þe first bigynnyng vlcera þeron, as it were

translator mistook this list of names of eye diseases for a definition of "ophthalmia." On the other hand he took the words "Dilatacio, Pulpe, Inuersatio, Palpebrarum" as names for four separate diseases.

¹ pulpe, for pupillae.

² On the bottom of the page: "contra obtalmia Recipe, the inner rynde off the ceritre, sethe yt in venyger, & hold a sponffulle in thy mowthe lucke warme, so do oft in þe day."

⁴ Sl. 2463, fol. 84 b.: "As it is sayd of auctores in þe generall Chapter of enpostumes, þat euery flowyng of humore þat swellith a member ouer his kyndely beyng is an enpostume, ryzt so obtalmia is cleped an enpostume of þe eye."

⁵ obtalmia, med. Lat. form of οφθαλμία, inflammation of the eye.

⁶ scume, despumare. Prompt. Parv., p. 450. "scummyn lycurys, despumo."

⁷ Lat.: quod non dicitur vilipendi. quia est nobilior medicina. Sl. 2463, fol. 85: "and sette not litzly þerby, for it is þe noblest medicyne."

⁸ MS. hoot. Lat. si causa sit frigida. Sl. ibid.: "and yf þe cause be of colde."

white prickis or reed, & sumtyme þer ben noon sich pointis þeron
 þat¹ a man mai se, saue al his iȝe is reed & to-swollen. & he schal
 haue greet² akinge & pricking. & þou; þer be noon vlcera þeron, þe
 4 cure mai be do al in oon maner. ¶ If þe akynge be swiȝe greet³,
 þan accesse þe akynge, & þan lete him blood in þe heed-veyne¹ þat⁴
 sitt⁵ in þe arme & in þat⁶ same side þat⁷ akip. & if he haue passioun
 in boȝe his iȝen, þan þou schalt⁸ lete him blood in boȝe his armys.
 8 & þou schalt⁹ lete him blood þe quantite after his elde & after his
 strenkþe; or sette a ventuse vpon his schuldris, & þat¹⁰ is more better,
 for þe mater comeþ more² of blood þan of colre. & þat¹¹ þou miȝt¹²
 knowe bi þe signes of blood þat¹³ ben forseid // ¶ And if þe mater
 12 come of colre, þat¹⁴ þou miȝt¹⁵ knowe bi greet¹⁶ akinge & scharp, &
 litil swellinge. & þe mater wole be ȝelow aboute hise iȝen. & he
 schal haue but litil reednes. & þan þou schalt¹⁷ lete him blood in
 lasse³ quantite þan⁴ if þe mater come of blood. & blood leting⁵ is
 16 good in þis caas, for þe scharpnes of colre mai be take aweȝ wiȝ þe
 blood leting⁶. & þan þou schalt⁷ purge him wiȝ a decoccioun of
 fruitis with mirabolanis þat⁸ ben forseid in þe chapitre of allopucia.
 & if colre be medlid wiȝ ony partie of gret⁹ mater, þat¹⁰ falliþ ofte
 20 tyme, þan þer is no medicyn so good as cochie Rasis. & first¹¹ he
 schal do þingis þerto for to accesse þe matere / Rȝ, a ȝelke of an eiȝ,
 & as miche of oile of rosis, & as miche of iuys of verueine, & ȝ j.
 of saffron, & ȝ j. opij; medle þese togidere, & make þerof an en-
 24 plastre, & leie it vpon a sotil linnen clooȝ, & leie it on þe iȝe. & in
 his iȝe leie collirium album with wommans milk⁵ þat⁶ noryschiþ a
 maide child; for .G. made þis medicyn⁶ / Rasis made collirium
 album in þis maner, ⁷& it is good þing⁷, for I haue preued it ofte

The symp-
toms are
great pains
and swelling.

Treatment.
Soothe the
pain by
blood-letting

or by cup-
ping.

[² lf. 164]

If choleric
matter is
the cause,
use blood-
letting and
purging.

Purging
Pills.
Cochie Rasis

R
Mitigatum
optimum
contra dolo-
rem in oculis

Colirium
album
Galien.
Rasis.

[⁷ lf. 164, bk.]

¹ vena cephalica.

³ Lat. maiori.

⁴ MS. þat.

⁵ The use of woman's milk for an eye-salve is mentioned by Galenus *De Compositione Medicamentorum*, Lib. IV. Cap. 3.

⁶ The translator has omitted the following prescription preserved in Sl. 2463, fol. 85 b.: and he cleped hit helpyng, for he, þat he made hit fore, was holpen by one leyng therto. ¶ Take iiij. 3. of ceruse sarsed, and distemper hit wit water on a marbull stone tenne dayes, and kepe hit enermore covered þat þer falle no powder þerinne; thanne take ij. 3. and an halfe of gomme arabik and putte hit in þe water, to þat hit be molten in þat water, and þanne cole hit and medele yt as well as þou may wit þi forsayd ceruse; and whane þis medecyne is made liche paste, adde therto these thynges sotilly powdered and sarsed tryes or thryes thoruz a sotyll linnen clothe. Take amidum iiij. 3. sarcocolle, safran, opium ana þe iiij. partie of a .3. grynde hem all wel togeder longe tyme, and make smale pillules and reserue hem, to þat þou haue nede, and whanne yt ys nede dystemperc one of hem with (fol. 86) romannes mylk and administer yt.

R
A Collyrium
used by
Rhasis.

'pulis
citrinus

The patient's
diet:
He shall take
neither meat
nor wine;

[3 lf. 165]

he shall lie in
a dark room,

and take a
bath, when
the matter
has gone.

Bathing is
noxious,
when there
is a pustule.
Maturative
medicines:

Colirium
thuris

tyme. Take ceruse waische .x. partis, sarcocolle greet .iiij. partis, amidi .ij. partis, draganti¹ .j. parti, opij .j. ʒ / Grinde alle pese togidere & tempere hem wip rein water, & make þerof² pelottis as gret³ as it were a pese & kepe hem / & whanne þou wolt worche 4 þerwip, tempere oon þerof wip wommans milk þat it be as picke as it were must,² & leie þerof in hise izen þre sipis in þe dai. þis collirie accessip þe akinge. & in sumtyme it curip obtolmiam in oon dai as I haue preued itt manie tymes. & whanne he hap slepe, if⁸ hise izen cleue togidere, þan he schal waische hise izen wip water of rosis hoot, & þan leie in þe corner of his ize puluus citrinus, þat is maad in þis maner / Rʒ, sarcocolle x. partis, aloes, croci, licij ana partes .ij., mirre partem vnam, & make herof⁴ sotil poudre, & leie 12 herof a litil in þe corner of his ize /

& whanne þe reednes & swellyng⁵ of his ize is aweie, he mote be war of his dieting⁶, for he mai ete no fleisch ne drinke no wijn, saue he mote ete colature of bran wip almaunde milk. & whanne 16 he lieþ in his bed his heed mote lie hiȝe, & he schal ligge ʒvpon þe hool side & not vpon þe soor side / & if hoþe his izen ben soor, þan he mote diȝte him as sutilli as he may.⁴ & he mote ofte tyme haue þe sauour of water coold, & þe sauour of wipi & campher, & he 20 mote lie in a derk hous þat he mowe se no liȝt. & whanne þe mater goiþ awei faste & his bodi [is]⁵ þan clene, þan sette him in a baþ of swete water, & lete him be þerin but a litil while⁶ / If it be so þat þe akyng⁷e aswage not wip blood leting⁸ & colliries & laxatiuis, 24 þan it is a signe þat þere is pustula woxe þerinne, & it is nede for to make it maturatif⁹; for þe akinge wole not goon awei, til it be maad maturatif. & in þis caas bapinge is ful noious / For if akinge be go sumwhat awei, it wole come aȝen wip baping¹⁰; þerfore thou 28 schalt attende for to make maturatif.⁷ & putte in his ize a collirie

¹ draganti, Lat. dragaganthi.

² must, Lat. mustum.

³ Sl. 2463, fol. 86: "and yef bothe eyen be sore he schal lye vprward, his hodes muste be wyde." Lat.: caputia vestium non sint stricta.

⁵ is, omitted.

⁶ Sl. ibid.: "And yef it be plesauant to hym lete hym abyde therinne, and lete hym foment his eyen and his heuede. And yf he wexe riȝt hoot in þe bathth, lete hym dwelle therin not passyng an houre, but þenne þe pacient schal be purged ayen. ¶ And in þe laste ende of þe obtalmia yt ys good to take hoot salt water, þat rosen haue be enfusyd inne, and lete hit droppe doune fro an hyȝe vpon þe hornes of his heued, þat yt move passe doune so by the eyen."

⁷ thou schalt attende for to make m., Lat.: ergo in tendas ad maturandum. Compare O.Fr. s'attendre à faire qu. ch.

- of^t thus wiþ al¹ togidere til þe quittance schauwie, for þan þe akinge wole aceesse / For whanne pustula is to-broke, & quittance is gaderid, þan þou schalt putt^t þeron a collirie of leed. & þan þou schalt^t Colirium
plumbe.
- 4 fulfille alle þingis þat^t schulen be seid wiþ vlceribus / A collirie of thus þat^t is maturatif for ²pustulis is maad in þis maner / R̃, thuris [² lf. 165, bk.]
- albi gummosi grossi, partes .x, antimonij, sarcocolle ana. partes .v, croci partes ij, & tempere hem wiþ muscilage of^t fenigrec; & make R
- 8 þerof^t pelottis, & kepe hem for þin vss. & whan þou hast^t nede herof^t, þan tempere a pelot^t with þe forseid licour, & make it^t moist & binde it^t vpon his ize, & lete þis ligge til þe akynges go awe; & putte in his ize colirium de plumbo, þat^t is maad in þis maner / R̃, .R.
- 12 plumbi vsti, antimonij, zucare, eris vsti, gummi arabic, draganti ana partes .viij, opij partem ß., & make herof^t a sutil poudre, & þan tempere it^t wiþ reyn-watir & wiþ water of^t rosis, & make þerof^t pelottis. & whanne þou wolt^t vse hem, distempere oon þerof^t or
- 16 tweyne wiþ water of^t rosis, & binde it^t vpon his ize; for þis collirie soudiþ & gendriþ fleisch / Aftir þe tyme þat^t it^t is soudid, if^t þere leue a litil ampulle,³ þan þou schalt^t cure it^t as þou schalt^t fynde in his propre place. ¶ fleumatik mater makip^t ful seelden ony Apostemas
in the eyes
seidom arise
from phlegm.
[⁴ lf. 166]
- 20 enpostym in þe ize, & malancolie myche latter; neþeles we wolen telle curis of^t hem. ¶ Signes of^t ⁴fleum ben þese: greet^t swellynge & manie teeris, & litil reednes ouþer noon; & þe cure herof^t is to purge him wiþ cochijs or wiþ trocisco de turbit, saue cochie ben
- 24 more better. & þou schalt^t putte in his eere muscilaginem⁵ fenigrec, & putte in his ize zelowe poudre þat^t is forseid. & vpon his ize þou schalt^t leie enplastre maad of^t aloe, mirra, acacia, & croco ana, & distempere hem wiþ mussilagine fenigreci. & in þis caas good wijn In this case
purge and
apply a
plaster.
R
- 28 wole do him good, drunken in mesure / If^t it^t come of^t malancolie, þou schalt^t knowe bi blaknes of^t al þe bodi⁶ & leene, & bi drienes of^t hise izen, & ful litil reednes or noon in hise izen. & þe cure herof^t is for to purge wel malancolie, & baping^t & fomentacion wiþ rosis & violet, & flouris of^t borage & buglossa. & þis þou schalt^t wite þat^t in euery maner of^t obtalmia, in þe ende þerof^t baping^t ben good. Treatment of
an apostema
if Melancholy
is the cause.
Nota.

¹ Lat.: cum coto, donec super cotum sanies apparebit. The translator read "toto." Sl. 2463, f. 86: "with cotoun, to þat þe quytture schene vpon þe cottone."

³ ampulle, a tumour in the skin of the hands or the feet. See Tomm. Dict., s. v. ampolla. The Lat. has *albula*. Matth. Sylv.: "*Albule* id est macule oculi albe."

⁶ MS. & inserted.

⁶ Sl. 2463, fol. 87: "All þe body of þe pacient ys blakkyssh."

If pain and swelling follow an injury, apply blood drawn from a living dove.

¶ If þat reednes of þe ize come of smyting¹ & akyng², & swellunge come þerwip, þan it is necessarie for to haue a zong³ culuer quyk, & lete hir blood in a veyne vndir hir wyng⁴ wip a nedle, & putte it in his ize as hoot⁵ as it comeþ fro þe culuer.¹ Þis 4

[² lf. 166, bk.]

doip awei ²þe akyng², & þe reednes & þe brennyng³.

de vlceribus oclorum.

These ulcers are accompanied with continual pain.

vij maner vlcus
The symptoms of an ulcer are pain and a red point in the eye.

¶ Vlcers ben engendrid in a mannes ize. & þan þer comeþ greet⁴ akinge þerwip & abydyng⁵, & þis mai not be doon awei wip collirium album, ne wip noon mitigatif / And þere ben vij. maner 8 vlcers, & of alle we wolen telle her curis schortli & profitabli, of curis þat⁶ I am expert⁷ of⁸ longe tyme. ¶ The signes of vlcers þat⁹ pustula comeþ þerof¹⁰ ben þese: grete akingis þat¹¹ mai not be swagid wip collirium album, & þer wole in his ize appere a reed poynt¹² or a 12 corn. & if al his ize be reed, þan þe poynt¹³ or corn wole be more reed, & þat¹⁴ point¹⁵ wole make greet¹⁶ agreuance, & greet¹⁷ swellinge, & greet¹⁸ betyng¹⁹, & manie teeris / It is greet²⁰ nede in þis passioun for to sotille his dietyng²¹, & do þerto pingis for to make mitigatif, as 16 colirium album, & lete him blood, & do al þe cure as it is aforseid / If þou mizt²² not defende þe mater wip alle þese remedies ne aswage þe akyng²³, or þer wexe a corn þeron or vlcus, & collirium de plumbo ne wole suffise for to soude vlcus, þan þou schalt²⁴ leie þerto mitiga- 20 tiuis for to do awei þe akyng²⁵. & do in his ize collirium ⁴eliser,⁵ for þat⁶ wole defende þat⁷ þe enpostym schal not wexe, þat⁸ is maad in þis maner / R⁷, antimonij, emathitis,⁶ ana partes .x., acacie partes .iij., aloes partem .j., grinde hem sotilly & tempere hem wip iuys of 24

Treatment:

Apply Colirium album to relieve pain;

and if this is insufficient,

[⁴ lf. 167]

Colirium Eliphur.

R

¹ The use of blood taken from a vein under the wings of a dove is mentioned by Galen: *De Simplicium Medicamentorum medicamentis*, Lib. X., Cap. II. 3. Trevisa translation of *Bart. de Propr.*, Lib. VII., Cap. 16, (Add. 27,944, fol. 84), "Also philosophres telleþ as Constant, seiþ þat þe blood i-drawe out of þe poynt of þe riȝt wyng of a culuer, oþer of a swalowe. oþer of a leprink, & i-doo in þe byggunyng² vpon þat mole, clensiþ hit miztyly / for þe blood of þese foules hetep and dissolveþ strongliche."

³ of curis þat I am expert of, Lat. curam quam sum expertus.

⁵ MS. *elifer*, Lat. *elisir*, the form of Arab. *eliksir* as preserved in Ital. *elisire*. It means in its pharmacological sense an alcoholic liquor, in which aromatic substances are dissolved. Devic (*Dict. Ét.*) states, that the Arabic word is merely a transcription of Greek *ξηρός*, dry. Lanfranc gives a curious explanation of the word in the present passage, which has been omitted by the translator: *collyrium elesir: quod est dicere penetrativum, quod egressum uveae prohibet*. Sl. 2463, f. 87 b.: "*colirium eleser þat is þe seyne persyng, þe whiche defendith þe egression of ruea.*"

⁶ *emathites*, hæmatites, bloodstone. Mentioned as a stiptic and an eye-medicine in *Galen* (ed. Kühn, vol. X., 330); in *Bart. De Propr.*, Lib. XVI., Cap. 39 (Add. 27,944, fol. 199 b), "*Emathites is a reed stoon . . . & is good azeins þe flux of þe bladdre and to sore yhen.*"

- corrigiole,¹ & make perof^t polottis; & dissolue herof^t wip watir of rosis, & binde it faste to his ize. þis collirium fasteneth his ize, & makip þat þe enpostym may wexe no serpere / ¶ Macula² is a wem
 4 in a mannys ize, & summe be white perof^t & sittip vpon þe sizt^t of þe ize,³ & summe bisidis þe sizt^t. & þis cometh of an oold obtalmiam. & herto principali is good collirium album of .G. þat is forseid. &
 þis collirie is good perfore / R7, aloes, croci. ana partes viij, eris vsti
 8 waischen, gummi arabici, opij, ana partes vj., mirre xij. partis, climie⁴ partes iiij., thurus partes .iiij, grinde alle þese sotilly & temperere hem wip swete wijn, & make perof^t pelottis, & kepe hem: & wip þis collirie I temperid collirium album. Galien & I haue curid
 12 wip þese .ij. colliries, & wip cauterijs, & kuttingis of veynes, manye men / & I curide perwip a man þat was clepid sir Reynold Manesyn. & he hadde obtolmiam *id est* postym in his ize longe tyme tofore, & perof^t came manye wemmys in his ize; summe perof^t weren white
 16 & summe perof^t weren reed, & maden þat he mihte not se, & anoper man ledde him. & þou3 þer were leid mete tofore him vpon þe boord, he mihte not se perof^t / & þo I lokide to him; & wipinne a monþe he miht se to pleie at þe tabler.⁶ & I dide awei alle þe
 20 wemmys of his izen, so þat he mihte se as wel as euere he dide tofore / & þere tofore he hadde manie opere lechis, & leiden in his izen stronge collirijs, & algate his sijknes was more & more: & so his sizt^t was binome him þre 3eer. ¶ Collirium .G. is good for
 24 obtolmiam, as I haue apreued manie siþis; & it is good for vlcera þat ben newe & not olde, & for wemmis.

Macula is a white spot on or near the pupil of the eye.

Galien

Colirium album

Galien

A nobleman who had lost his eye-sight
 [5 lf. 167, bk.] was treated by Lanfranc,

and after a month he could play backgammon.

Colirium Galien.

- & sumtyme sich a maner pricke cometh of smytynge, or of greet
 crijnge, or of blood as þoru3 brekyng of a veyne, & makip a poynt
 28 in a mannes ize, & perfore blood letyng is good. & do in his ize

If a 'point' in the eye is caused by an injury, use blood-letting,

¹ "*Corrigiola*. So called of the Apothecaries, and of the Frenche men Corrigiole, is oure common knottgrasse, called in Greke polygonon, in Latine Seminialis and Polygonum mas." Halle, *Table*, p. 29.

² *macula* as a name for an eye-disease is not used by the Latin authors. It occurs in *Bart. de Propr. rer.*, and is translated by *webbe*, *mole*. See p. 248, note 3.

³ *þe sizt of þe ize*, Lat. *cornea*. "The sight of the eye, that is, the hole of the skinne called Ragoides, out of which the vertue visible worketh his operation." Cooper. Compare O.E. *sleo*, f., O.H.G. *seha*, f., the black of the eye.

⁴ *climie*. Matth. Sylv. "*Klimia*, *Cadimia*, *alkimia* *Auicenna*. est fumus seu fuligo adherens superioribus fornacis in purificatione cuiusque metalli. sioria vero est fex descendens ad inferiora."

⁶ *tabler*. Lat.: vide ipsum ludentem in vespertis ad tabulas cum taxillis. "*Tabler*, or table of play or game." *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 485.

and apply the
blood of a
dove and a
woman's
milk.

[² If. 168]
Redness of
the eyes
causes itch-
ing and vice
versa.
Both occasion
scab and
vngula.

Galien

Scabies.
The eye-lids
are full of
pimples.

Collirium
rubeum
R

[³ If. 168, bk.]

Collirium
viride
R

blood of a culuer, & waische his ȝen wip wommans milk warm, as it cometh out of þe tete.¹

¶ Rubedo id est reednes, pruritus id est icchinge, sebel, sca²bies, & vngula, goiþ al in oon cours.³ & oon herof is cause of anoper / 4 For of longt reednes tofore cometh icchinge, & sumtyme icchinge is cause of reednes, & of þese .ij. cometh scabbe in þe ȝe liddis; & if it gadere togidere in þe corner of þe ȝe, þan it is clepid vngula / þerfore þou must first cure hastily þe reednes & þe icchinge of his 8 ȝen, lest þer come ony oper sijknes þerof / Reednes may be curid wip þe white of an ey & with collirium album / Galien seiþ: icchinge may be curid wip whit wijn, in which be grounden aloes, & leid in his ȝe wip soft linnen cloop, & bounden þerto. ¶ Scabies 12 is whanne þe ȝe liddis ben reed & to-swolle, & ful of reed pinplis. & þis passioun maketh greet icchinge & brennyng, & manie teeris / þe cure herof is þis: waische hise ȝen wip wijn in which be resolued grene coperose, þat is clepid vitriolum romanum.⁴ & if 16 þis suffise not, þan þou schalt make collirium rubeum in þis maner / Rȝ, emathitis, vitrioli adusti ana partes tres, eris vsti partes duas, mirre, croci, ana partes x., piperis longi partem f; tempere alle þes wip old ⁵wijn, & make þerof pelottis, & kepe hem; and whanne 20 þou wolt vse hem, distempere hem wip oold wijn, & do it in his ȝe / If þe mater be greet & strong, þan þou muste vse collirium viride, þat is maad in þis maner / Rȝ, floris eris partes tres, vitrioli vsti partes .vj., arsenici rubei, baurac, spume maris, ana partes .ij., 24 armoniacum dissolved in iuys of rue; & grinde alle þe opere sotilli, & medle hem þerwip also & make þerof pelottis, & dissolue oon

¹ Trevisa l. c., Lib. VII., Cap. 17 (Add. 27,944, fol. 84 a), "Also it happith þat blood nooseþ out of veynes & of pipes & cometh to þe ȝzen, & veynes brekeþ or be i-hurt in þe kertil þat hatte coniunctivæ, & þan suche vnhiȝtnes of þe ȝze cometh of blood þat cometh so to þe ȝze. ¶ Culuir blood or turtill blood dissolveth & departeth þis blood þat is so i-ronne as constantinus seiþ, & so doþ nomman melk wip ensens, & so doþ freisch chese i-medlid with honey wip- ouden salt, if it be laide þerto."

³ Trevisa l. c., Lib. VII., Cap. 16, "De lippitudine albugine de panno siue de macula. Another erel of þe ȝzen þat we clepiþ a webbe, & Constantinus clepiþ it albngo, & brediþ in þis manere. ¶ ffirst a rewe renneþ to þe ȝzen, & þerof cometh an yeel þat hatte obtalmia, a schrewed blereynes & ache & aposteme; & if it is erel i-kept þerof leueþ a litil mole & infection, & longtyme turneth & growiþ into a webbe & picke, & occupieth more place þan al þe blacke of þe ȝe. ¶ This webbe turneth into cloop by more þienes & occupieth more place, for it occupieth al þe blake of þe ȝze, & at þe last it turneth into þe kynde of a naile of þe honde."

⁴ Vitriolum Romanum. "The one growyng of it-selfe in the earth by concretion, and is vulgarly called Coppa rosa," Halle, Table, p. 139.

- perof in watir of rue distillid & leid in his ize // ¶ **Sebel**¹ is seid, Sebel, an inflammation of the veins of the eye.
 whanne þe veynes þat ben ioyned togidere in þe ize,² ben ful of blood & wexiþ greet, & sumtyme a clooþ þat is in a mannes ize. For
 4 to cure þis passioun collirium rubeum is good þerfore, or collirium viride þat ben forseid // ¶ **Vngula** sittip in þe corner of þe ize þat Ungula, a web in the eye, sometimes covering the whole eye-ball.
 is next þe nose, & gooþ forþ vpon þe ize til it hile al þe ize; & sumtyme it comeþ of a superfluite of fleisch þat wexiþ in þe corner
 8 of a mannes ize, & wexiþ forþ abrood as it were a clooþ. & þer ben manie maners þerof, & oon is sotil & pinne, & goiþ ouer þe ize. & of sum men þat is clepid a clooþ, & þat oþer maner is more fleischi & picke, & is clepid vngula / þe cure ³herof ben collirium viride & [3 lf. 169]
 12 rubeum, þat ben forseid: & if þis suffisiþ not, þan it mote be kutt away wiþ instrumentis as miche as me mai kutte awei þerof, & afftirward cure him with collirijs / In þe kuttinge of vngulam be war þat þou kutte not þe fleisch in þe corner of þe ize to depe; for
 16 if it were kutt to depe, his ize schulde watre, & be ful of teeris al þe while he lyueþ. ¶ Also in scabbe, sebel, & vngula, purgacioun is good, & blood leting; & þe patient schal absteyne him fro alle swete þingis & scharp, for al þese forseid passiouns comeþ of blood
 20 corrupt. ¶ **Cateracta**⁴ is water þat falliþ doun bitwixe þe .ij. skynnes of þe ize & abidiþ tofore þe place þat is clepid pupilla, þat is þe poynt of þe ize. & þan it defendiþ þat a man mai not se; & it is clepid cataracta, bi þe liknes of an instrument þat is a
 24 mille / & sumtyme þis passioun bigynneþ, & sumtyme it is con-fermed / Signes of þe bigynnyng ben þese / It semeþ to þe patient þat he seeþ briȝt þingis tofore him, & him þinkip þat oon þing is .ij. þingis or þre / & sumtyme it semeþ to him þat þing þat he seeþ
 28 to be ful of holis / & sumtyme þese þingis ⁵mowe come of yuel [5 lf. 169, bk.]

Cateracta.
 Cataract is a water between the two skins of the eye.

At the beginning of the disease the patient sees double.

¹ "Sebel idem quod Serasif i, vene rubee que sunt in albo oculorum." *Sinonima Serapionis*, ed. Venet. 1497. Arab. Pers. zabēl, Dung, a dried gourd, basket. (Johnson.) Fr. sébile, basket.

² Lat.: Sebel dicitur quando venæ conjunctivæ et cornæ, quæ sunt in earum superficie — replentur sanguine. The translator mistook 'conjunctivæ' for 'conjunctæ.'

⁴ **Cataracta.** The Latin authors used this word for 1. waterfall, 2. flood-gate, sluice of a river (Scheller *Dict.*). In its pathological meaning, it is first found in *Platearius*, xiith cent. (*Practica*, Lib. II., Cap. VII., fol. 209 b, Lugd. 1525, quoted by Hirsch, *Klin. Monatsbl. f. Augenheilkunde*, 1869, p. 284). The explanations vary according to the above-mentioned Latin significations. Lanfranc adopts the meaning 'gate.' Lat.: "et dicitur cataracta per similitudinem illius instrumenti, quod est apud molendina: quod quando eleuatur, currit aqua per canalem: quando deponitur nihil currit." *Molendinum*, "a mylle." Wr. Wü., *Voc.*, 596, 27.

This irregularity may arise from a disordered stomach, and then it is easily cured.

When the Cataract is developed, a spot on the pupil of the eye is discovered.

disposicioun of þe stomac, & þan it is not so greet drede þerof; for whanne þe stomac is curid, þese signes wolen go awei / In þis maner þou schalt wite wher it come of þe stomac or of þe ize / If þese signes comen whanne þe stomac is ful, & whanne he is fastynge 4 & þei come not, it is a signe þat it comeþ of þe stomac / And if it is in hise izen contynuelli, þan it comeþ not of þe stomac, but it is sijknese of þe izen / ¶ Also purge him oones wip pululas cochias, & if it is neuer þe bettir, þan þou miȝt wite for certeyn þat þe 8 passioun comeþ of þe stomac. And if þis passioun haþ longe durid in a man, & if þou miȝt no ping se in his ize, þan þou schalt wite for certeyn þat it is a bigynnyng of cataracta / Whanne cataracta is confermed, it schal not be hid to a mannes witt þat is vsid in þe 12 craft. & in þis manere þou schalt knowe it: þou schalt se a maner colour vpon þe poynt of þe sizt of þe ize, þat wole sumtyme be whit, & sumtyme in þe colour of askis, & sumtyme a litil grene: & þis stoppiþ al a mannes sizt //

[1 lf. 170]

The Cataract can be cured by medicines at its early state.

Regulate the patient's diet, purge and apply a Collyrium prepared with the gall of several animals.

R

þis maner siknes¹ schal be helid wip phisie or it be confermed. & whanne it is confermed, it mote be curid wip a mannes hand. þe patient mote absteine him fro sopers² & fro al maner fatte potagis, & from al maner moiste fruitis, & fro al maner fruitis þat 20 engendriþ moistnes / saue he schal vse hote pingis, & he schal ofte be purgid wip pillis cochie rasis, þat is þe beste ping laxatif þat mai be for izen, & þan make a collirie of gallis of beestis þat is maad in þis maner. R, fellis grue, fellis stelionis, fellis hirci, fellis 24 anticipitris,³ fellis aquile & perdicis, & alle þese gallis ben drie, & take herof .x. partijs, euforbie, colloquintide, ana. partem .j, grinde alle þese & tempere hem wip þe iuys of fenigreci & make þerof pelottis. & whanne þou wolt worche þerwip, resolute oon þerof wip 28 water of fenel distillid, & leie it in his ize twies on þe day ./

R

A Collyrium prepared with lye.

¶ Anoþer list medicyn þat is preued / Take askis of vynes & sarce hem & make þerof lie with good whit wijn, & lete it stonde in a glasen vessel, & lete it clarifie þerime. & þis is a good collirie 32 þerfore, for þe more cold þat cataracta is, þe bettir þis medicyn is þerfore / And if cataracta be⁴ so confermed þat it stoppe al þe list, þan it is incurable wip medicyns, & also þer ben manie opere incurable. ¶ And if it so be þat he se not, þan make him close 36 his izen togidere, & frote al softe vpon þe ize lid þat is soor; & if it be in boþe his izen, þan serue so boþe, & þan lete him opene his

Cure of Cataract by operation: Dilate the pupil of the

² *soper*, *cœna*. See Skeat, *Et. Diet.*, s. v. supper.

³ *anticipiter*, med. Lat. for *accipiter*. Duf. Glass.

- 1 izeñ sodeinli anoon, & loke if þe poynt of þe ize bicomē whit,¹ & if eye by rubbing the eye-lid.
 it bicomē not whit, þan it is of .ij. þingis; ouper it is opilacioun
 of þe nerue, þat comē fro þe brain & is holow & defendiþ þe siȝt,
 4 or it is cataracta þat is greet & stoppiþ þe nerue, & stoppiþ þe weie
 of þe spirit þat it mai not come to þe poynt of þe siȝt þat is
 clepid pupilla / If þou frotist his ize as it is forseid, þan lete him
 do vp his ize hastili, & þou schalt se þan vpon his ize a whit þing
 8 as it were a peerle, þan þou miȝt sureli worche wiþ instrumentis of
 cirurgie² / First þou schalt make þe pacient sitte vpon a stool tofore
 þee, & þou schalt sitte a litil hiȝer þan he, & his ize þat is hool þou
 schalt bynde faste þat he ne mowe no þing se þerwiþ, & þan þou
 12 schalt haue in þi mouþ a fewe braunchis³ of fenel, & þou schalt
 breke hem a litil with þi teef, & þan þou schalt blowe in his ize .ij.
 siȝis or iij. þat þe fumē of þe fenel mowe entre into his ize / þan
 þou schalt haue an instrument of siluir, schape in the maner of a
 16 nedle, and it schal sitte in a greet hafte þat þou mai þe bettir hold
 it wiþ þin hand, & þan þou schalt bigynne aforȝens þe lasse corner
 of þe ize, & þou schalt putte in þin instrument anoon to þe corn
 þat is in þe ize, & whanne þou seest þe point of þe instrument
 20 vndir þe corn,⁴ þan lete þe point of þin instrument goon anoon to
 þe water þat is gaderid tofore þe ize / And whanne þou hast
 broken þe place þat þe water was ynne, þan presse it adounward, &
 drawe out al þe watir þerof clene,⁵ & if þer come more watir þerto,
 24 þan þou must reherse pis werk aȝen. & if þer come no more watir
 þerto, þan þou schalt leie vpon his ize a plastre maad of þe ȝelke
 of an eij wiþ þe white, & boȝe leid vpon lynnen clooþ & binde vpon
 his ize, & lete þe patient be in a derk place, & he schal heere no

It will not dilate, if there is an obstruction in the nerve.

In the dilated pupil a white spot like a pearl is seen.

Then, bandage the sound eye,

[³ if. 171]

and pass a silver needle through the eye-ball until it reaches the white corn and the cataractic water.

When you have pressed out this water,

apply a plaster to the eye, and let the patient be in a dark room,

¹ *whit* for *wid*, Lat.: *vide si pupilla dilatatur*.

² Lat.: *quod cum videris manum ullatenus non apponas*. This method of testing, whether a cataract is fit for operation or not, has already been proposed by Galen, as mentions *Paulus de Aegina*, Lib. VI., Cap. 21. We find the same in *Hali Abbas*, Lib. IX., Cap. 28, fol. 279, ed., Lugd. 1523. See Magnus H., *Geschichte des grauen Staars*. Leipzig, 1876.

⁴ *corn*, a mistake; the translator did not know the meaning of "cornea." Lat.: *et impellas instrumentum usque ad corneam: quia tunc videbis illum*. Cum autem instrumentum videbis sub cornea illum impellas vsque ad aquam quæ est coram pupilla.

⁵ *þ drawe out al þe watir þerof clene*, an insertion of the translator. The operation which he describes is the dislocation of cataract by depression. A fuller and more accurate account of it is given by John Vigo, who begins his description with the following words: "And yf the cataractes cannot be healed, when they are confirmed, then we must turne to handy operation. And though we counseyled to leave it to y^e tothdrawers, yet we wyl declare y^e maner therof." Traheron, *Vigo*, fol. 136^b.

and in perfect rest,
for 8 days.
[1 lf. 171, bk.]
An obstruction of the
pupil from
internal
causes is difficult to cure.
pigra Rasis

If the obstruction arises
from external
causes,
let blood

and apply a
plaster.
R

greet noise, & he schal not traueile wipinne .viij. daies, & he mote
be kept so pat he cowze not ¹ & fro wrappe / Sumtyme þe poynt
of þe ize sizt is stoppid wipinneforþ, & þan he schal neuere be curid
þerof; ouper it wole be greet maistrie for to cure it. & if it mai
be curid, þis is þe cure þerof: þou muste purge him with pigra
rasis, & wip pululis cochijs pat rasis made, & þei muste be ofte
zeue, & þou muste do in his izen drijnge collirijs & opere drijng
medicyns / Oupe it mai come of causis withoutforþ as of smitynge
& pat mai liztli be curid / First þe patient schal be lete blood, if age
mai suffre it & opere particlis pat be forseid, for blood letyng
wole helpe for to awoide awei þe enpostym, & þan þou schalt make
him an enplastre wip oon of þese medicyns, & it schal be bounden
þerto softli / R̄, mele of beenis pat be sotil & grinde it wip wipi
leeues smal / Also take mele of beenys & flouris of camomille & þe
rote of altea .3. ij., & also biteine .ḡ. j., absinthium .3. j. & sepe
hem in water & make þerof an enplastre & lete þe patient reste,
probatum est.

Hordeolum is
a swelling in
the eye-lids,
[2 lf. 172]
and affects
new-born
children.

¶ Ordecilus is a litil swellinge, & is long & smal & comeþ to a
child whanne it is bore, & þis passioun wole sitte in ² his ize liddis /
þe cure herof is for to lete hem blood & purge him of humours cor-
rupt, & do þerto þis medicyn: medle aloes with licio³ & make þerof
a poudre / Also þou schalt anoynte him wip storax liquida & anointe
him þerwip / ¶ Also resolue a litil opoponac in water, and make
an enplastre þerof & leie vpon the place, & þe same þing doþ
diaquilon, & or þou leie ony plastre þervpon, þou schalt make a
fomentacioun wip hoot water.

Grando.
A knot in the
eye-lids.

¶ Grando & nodus. Grando is as miche to seie as an hail stoon,
& nodus is a knotte, & þus comeþ in þe ize liddis, & sumtyme it
wole schewe wipinneforþ, & sumtyme wipoute. & whanne it schewip
wipoutforþ, opene it & leie þeron diaquilon & opere þingis for to
consume þe mater. & if þis suffise not, þou schalt take it wip þi
.ij. fyngris & drawe it harde, & þan kutte þe skyn þeron & drawe
him out, & þan þou shalt soude it wip þe white of an eij & opere
þingis pat ben soudinge //

**fistula lacri-
malis**

¶ fistula lacrimalis,⁴ pat is as miche to seie as a feestre wip

³ "Lycium. Is the Juice of a thorny tree, growing chiefly in Capadocia and Lycia, of three cubites heighth." Halle, *Table*, p. 63.

⁴ Sl. 2463, f. 90: "A ffystule in þe wyke of þe eye, hit comyth of concours of rennyng of humores to þe corner of þe eye besyde þe nose, & because of her multitude & gretnesse þey may nat passen out but abyden there & maken an emynence, as hit were a lupyne; & therfore of sume hit is cleped lupinus."

- teeris / þis comeþ in þe corner of þe ize next þe ¹nose, & engendriþ ^[1 lf. 172, bk.]
 þere & makip a þing¹ as greet¹ as it¹ were a pese. & if þese humours <sup>At the inner
angle of the
eye a growth
begins, which
ulcerates,</sup>
 leeu þere longe þei wolen rotie & þei wolen make vlcus þere, & þer
 4 wole come manie teeris þerto, and þei mai not¹ be maad drie, & þis
 mai leeu þere so longe þat¹ þer wole engendre a feestre þerof¹. & <sup>gives rise to a
fistula and
finally affects
the bone.</sup>
 but if þat feestre be curid while it¹ is freisch, it¹ wole rote þe boon,
 & þe lenger þat¹ it¹ wexiþ oold, þe worse it¹ wole be for to cure.
 8 ¶ þe firste bigynnyng of þis cure is for to avoide þe heed wiþ
 cochijs & wiþ pigra, þan do þeron þis collirium / R̄, aloes, thuris,
 sarcocolle, sanguinis draconis, balaustie, antimonij, aluminis, ana,
 floris eris a litil, as miche as wole be þe fourþe part¹ of oon of þe
 12 forseid. & make of alle þes sotil poudre & distempere hem wiþ
 reyn water or wiþ water of roses, & caste it¹ in þe corner of his ize,
 but þe place schal be maad drie first¹. & þan þou schalt¹ do þerto <sup>a cleansing
ointment.</sup>
 oon of þe mundificatiuis þat¹ schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, or
 16 þis medicyn þat¹ is aproued / Take clene mirre .3. ij. & make þerof¹ R̄
 poudre & make it¹ picke wiþ þe galle of a boole, þat¹ it¹ be as picke
 as it¹ were an oynement¹, ²& leie it¹ vpon lynnene cloof & leie þis þer-
 vpon, for þis wole soude þe place & make it¹ clene / ¶ If it so be ^{R̄}
 20 þat¹ it¹ be not¹ curid with þis medicyn, þanne it¹ is a signe þat¹ þe
 boon is rotid, & þan þou muste opene þe skyn & vnþile þe boon,
 & touche þe boon wiþ an hoot¹ iren as fer as it¹ is rotid / & þanne
 leie þervpon buttir or grese þat¹ þe scar þer mowe falle awei, & þan
 24 þou muste reherse þe cauterie agen. & þanne leie þervpon buttir,
 & þus þou muste do til þe boon be clene, & þan leie þervpon oile of
 rosis hoot¹ medlid wiþ zelke of an ey til al þe brennyng falle away.
 & þan drie þe place with drijnge medicyns, & þan regendre fleisch &
 28 soude it¹, & þou schalt¹ wite þat¹ þer is noon so good maner medicyn
 as þis is / For if þou wolt¹ leie þerto ony corosif¹ water, þat wole
 brenne forþere þan it¹ schulde / & also it¹ were greet¹ perel for þe ize
 & þefore it¹ is good for to worche as it¹ is aforseid / ³

³ The end of this chapter, omitted by the translator, is given in Sl. 2463, fol. 90 b.: "¶ Also he^a seyth þat yf þe bone be schauen with Instrumentis þat all þe corrupcion is seldome taken awaye, wherefore þe corrupcion comyth ayen bycause of þe partie whiche leuyth behynde corrupt. ¶ He seyth also þat alþouþ the corrupcion be taken away neuer so well, yet nature departith a litell follikell þerfro aforne þat þe flessch mowe be faste knyted other soudid to þe bone and what tyme þe bone is touchyd with an hoot Iryn, þanne all þat is corrupt disseuerith fro þat ys hoole, and þe complexion of þe place is tempere.

^a Lanfrank.

Of þe passioun of eeris.

¶ ijo. co.

Nerves go to the ear from the brain.

[1 lf. 173, bk.]

The sound is conveyed to the brain through the ear passage.

This passage is curved.

The ear is made of cartilage, that it may both sustain itself and be pliable.

The diseases of the ear belong partly to Surgery, partly to Physic.

[2 lf. 174]

All these diseases may be comprised under "aching of the ear."

Simple aching arising from a hot complexion is treated with oil of roses, and some opium.

If caused by a cold complexion it is treated with hot oil of lilies.

AS it is aforseid þat nerues comen fro þe brain to þe izeu / in þe same maner nerues comen from þe brain & goiþ into þe eris & makij heerynge & ben instrumentis of witt. ¹þe hoolis in a mannes eeris ben maad in a deep holowe boon, & it was bi þis skille þat it schulde vndirstonde sownynge, & þat þe sowne schulde not come into þe brayn anoon, but alitil & alitil bi degree, & also for þis skille þat þe coold eire ne þe hoot eire schulde not sodeinly 8 entre yn; & þe wei þat goiþ into a mannes eere, ne goiþ not riȝt forþ, but hidir & þidir, for if þe weie were riȝtforþ, it wolde þe rapere be hurt of al maner þing / þe eere was maad of cartilaginis þat is hardere þan fleisch & neischer þan boon, þat it miȝte be 12 pliaunt. & if þei schulde be maad oonly of fleisch, þei schulde haue noon sustentacioun for to bere hem vp. & if þei hadden be maad oonly of hard boon, þei miȝten not haue be meued, & þefore itt was moost nede þat þei weren cartilaginous: þat is as miche to 16 seie as maad of gristle þat is neischer þan boon & hardere þan fleisch. To þis lyme þer comeþ manie sijknensis, & summe þerof falliþ for cirurgie as apostimes & vlcera, & summe falliþ to þisik as greet sownynge in þe eeris & sibillus, & ²defaute of heeringe & 20 deafnes.³ Akyng of þe eeris sumtyme is an yuel, & sumtyme harme fallynge þerto / & þefore it is mi purpos for to speke boþe of sirurge and of þisik in þis chapitre. ¶ Alle þe sijknensis of þe eeris moun be take in þis maner, as akyng of eeris. Oþer it ⁴ 24 is apostym & without vlcera, or it is wiþ enpostym & vlcera; þan it is of yuel complexioun & hoot; ⁴ þat þou miȝt knowe bi sharp akyng & reednes of þe place. & þan þou schalt cure it wiþ castynge into þe eere oile of rosis, boylid hoot as he mai suffre, wiþ þe 28 .iiij. part of vinegre / & if þe akyng go not awei in þis maner, þan þou schalt do þeron a litil of opium / And if it come of yuel complexioun þat it be coold, as coold wynd or of coold eire entrid þeron, þis þou miȝt knowe bi greet cooldnes in þe place, & þan þou 32 schalt cure him wiþ pingis þat schal be cast into þe eere, watir of maiorana, or oile of lillie, þat þou schalt fynde þe composicioun in þe antidotarie. & in þis maner hoot oile schal be putt in his eere &

³ MS. *deesires*.⁴ The translation is corrupt. Lat.: aut est sine apostemate vel ulcere aut cum apostemate et ulcere. Si sine apostemate et ulcere: tunc aut est propter malam complexionem calidam — — aut propter malam complexionem frigidam.

- no could ping^r, & þou schalt stuwē þe pacient¹ / Sumtyme it comēþ
 of sum ping^r þat falliþ in his eere as a worme or a corn or a stoon,
 or watir; þis þou schalt knowe bi þe tellinge of þe pacient^r; for if
 4 þer be ony ping^r wipinne, me mai se it. If it so be þat þer be
 falle yn ony stoon, þan caste into his eere oile of *rosis*, or oile of
 almaundis, & if þer be falle yn ony corn, þan þou schalt do noon
 oile in his eere; for it wole make þe corn waxe greet. Make a
 8 litil instrument of tree or of sum oþer ping^r & wete it in terbentyn
 & putte it into his eere, & touche þerwip þe stoon, ouþir þe greyn, &
 þan it wole cleue þerto, & þan drawe it out / ¶ Also smite his eere
 wip þe pawme of þin hand, & bi hap it wole falle out þerwip / Also
 12 sette a ventuse wip fier vpon þe hoole of his eere, for þis sumtyme
 wole drawe out a corn ouþer a stoon.² ¶ If þer entriþ ony worme
 into a mannes eere, þan fille his eere ful of flact watir,³ & þan drie
 it / And if þis suffisiþ not, fille his eere ful of oile of almaundis
 16 þat ben bittir; & if þis suffisiþ not, þan do in his eere iuys of
 calamynte.
- ¶ If þe akyngē come of *humouris gaderid* to apostym, þat þou
 4 miȝt knowe bi greet akyngē, & akyngē of his pous,⁵ & bi þe
 20 swellynge of þe place, þan þou muste bigynne for to aswage þe
 akyngē wip oile of *rosis*, & lete him blood in þe heed veyne in þe
 same side. If it so be þat he mai not be lete blood, for sum cause
 þat lettīþ, þan garse him vpon his schuldris, & putte in his eere oile
 24 of *rosis* wip a litil vinegre. If þee þinkīþ þat þe mater comēþ of
 colre, þat þou schalt knowe bi signes þat ben forseid, þan purge
 him wip a decoccioun of *mirabolanorum* / If þe mater be not
 aswagid, ne þe akinge do awei, þan bigynne for to leie mussillaginis
 28 of fenigrec & of lynseed, & rotis of *altea*, wip wommans milk, &
 do it flat⁶ into his eere / & vpon þe eere leie an enplastre þat it
 hile al þe eere, maad of lynseed, & barli, & rotis of *altea*, & of
 lilie, & medle hem with *gandris grese* & grese of an hen. & þis cure
 32 þou schalt contynueli do, til þe quittance come out of his eere, & þe

[1 It. 174, bk.]
 Aching
 caused by a
 foreign body
 in the ear:

If it is a
 stone, cast
 hot oil into
 the ear;

if it is a grain
 use an instru-
 ment,

or try the
 cupping-
 glass.

If it is a
 worm, apply
 warm water.

If the pains
 are caused by
 an apostema,

[4 It. 175]

bleed the
 patient from
 the Vena
 Cephalica,
 or scarify his
 shoulders;

if this falls to
 soothe the
 pain, apply a
 poultice and
 a plaster,
 until sup-
 puration
 begins.

² The translator has omitted the case when water is in the ear. Sl. 2463, fol. 83 b.: "And yef þe water enterid into þe ere, doo *Galyenys* experyment. ¶ Take a rodde of wilowe othyr a twigge of þe ryne and putte þe tone ende in þe patientis ere, & lappe nex aboute þe tother ende and sette hit on fyre, ffor by þe vertu of þe fyre þe water schal be clene dried vppe."

³ *flact watir*. Lat. *flaccidus*. O.Fr. *flaccide*. N.E. *flat* water. Compare *flaccid*. Skeat, *Et. Diet.*, and *flaisch*, p. 265, note 1, *flasch*, p. 266, note 3. O.Fr. *flasque*, Lat. *flaccidus*, another form of *flaccidus*.

⁵ Lat.: per fortem dolorem et pulsationem.

⁶ *flat*, Lat. *tepidus*. See above, note 3.

akyngc acesse.¹ & þan þou schalt cure it riȝt as vlcera of þe eeris
 ben curid, þat schal be seid here aftir / Also if þe mater þat makip
 þe enpostym come ²of cooldnes, & þat fallip ful seelde, but if it
 come in an old man, & þat þou miȝt knowe bi þe akyngc & bi þe
 cooldnes of þe place, þan þou schalt bigynne to avoide him wiþ
 pillulas cochie & wiþ a clisterie. & caste into his eere oile of lilies,
 & resolute in þe same oile 5 .ss. euforbij oupir .3. j. de turbit, &
 anoynte al aboute his eeris wiþ þe forseid oile of lilies, & leie per- 8
 vpon wolfe vnwaischen, & make him a fumigacioun to his eere wiþ
 hoot water in which schal be soden maiorana & calamynte. & if þis
 suffisip not, leie per-vpon an enplaster or an oynement, & of garleke,
 & rotis of lillie soden to-gidere & grounden wiþ butter, & do þerto 12
 leuayn, & do þerto oile of lillie or of camomille, & a litil vinegre, &
 make an enplastre and leie vpon his eere, for þis enplastre rotip
 coold mater & drawip it out, & if þou miȝt se ony place in þe eere
 þat quittance is gaderid on, þan it is good to opene þat place & 16
 drawe out þe quittance as it schal be seid hereaftir. & þan þou schalt
 cure it riȝt as þou schalt cure vlcera þat schal be seid hereafter.

[3 lf. 176]

If the pain
 arises from
 wind in the
 ear,

instil oil of
 rue.

If the pain
 is caused by
 ulcers in the
 ear,
 a stinking
 pus will be
 discharged.

The mundi-
 ficatives.

.Galien.

A noxious
 ointment.

.Galien.

[5 lf. 176, bk.]

Sumtyme akyngc of eeris comeþ of gret³ wynd & sound in þe
 eere, & noise & wynd þat comeþ of þe heed & fallip into þe eeris.⁴ 20
 þis þou miȝt knowe litzly, for wiþ þe akyngc he schal haue a maner
 noise in his eeris & pipinge / & þe cure herof schal be avoidinge of
 greet humours, & þou schalt caste into his eere oile of rue, & in
 þe same oile schal be dissolved a litil castor, & he mote kepe him 24
 fro al þing þat engendrip wynd.

¶ Also akyngc of þe eeris comeþ of vlcera þat ben wiþinne in
 þe hoole of þe eere, & sumtyme þei comen of an enpostym goinge
 tofore. & þe signes herof ben akyngc & cours of quittance þat 28
 styngip. & þe more stinking þat þe quittance is & þe more departid
 fro whit colour, þe worse it wole be to cure / first þou schalt make
 clene his heed with cochijs & wiþ pigra, & þan þou muste do mundi-
 ficatiuis to his eere & drijng þingis. & be war þat þou worche not 32
 as .G. seiþ þat summe worchip: þei leide þerto an oynement þat
 was good for woundis, & alwey þe patient hadde þe more penaunce,⁵
 & þe sikkenes woxe more & more / & þerfore .G. axip what is good
 þerfore / And .G. seiþ: who þat seiþ þat it schal be curid wiþ 36

¹ *acesse*, O.Fr. *acesser*.⁴ Lat.: Fit etiam dolor auris propter grossam ventositatem ad aures de capite descendentem.⁵ *penaunce*, Lat. *dolor*; *penaunce* usually means "penitence."

drijnge pingis, he seiþ fals; for drijnge pingis constreineþ, & apostym
is constreynnyng^t / And summen han now newe rulis: þat wiþ con-
trarijs contrarie pingis schulen be curid / In þis maner þou schalt

4 worche. Make poudre of mirre, & of aloe, & olibani, & sanguis
draco ana, & take oon tent & wete it in hony, & folde þe tent in
þe poudre, & putte þe tent in his eere anoon to þe botme / & if þe

R^y
for vlcers in
þe eere

tent mai not come to þe botme þerof, þan dissolue þe forseid poudre
8 wiþ watir & hony, & caste it yn / If it so be þat vlcus be swiþe

A powder
that is ap-
plied to the
ear by a tent.

cold, þan þou schalt cure him in þis maner / Take þe rust of iren,
& grinde it smal, & leie it in an erþen vessel with vinegre, & boile
hem togidere, til þe rust bicometh drie. & þus þou muste do ofte tyme.

R^y
A preparation
of rust heals
the ulcer,
dries the
moisture and
allays the
pain.

12 & þan þou muste poudre it aȝen, & seþe it in vinegre aȝen til it
bicometh picke as hony, & þan do þis in his eere, for þis wole hele
vlcera, & þis wole drie þe moistnes þerof, & þis wole do away þe
akyng / And take hony .3. .x., vinegre 3. viij., & boile hem listly
16 at þe fier til it be wel skymed,¹ & þan do þerto 3. ij. of vert de
grece, and ²medle hem wel togidere, & wete herynne a tent, &
putte it in his eere, & þis is good for vlcera þat ben oold.

R^y
An applica-
tion for old
ulcers.
[² lf. 177]

¶ If a man be deaf, þan it cometh of summe of þe forseid causis,

20 & principali of longe akyng; also it cometh of child bering^t, &
þanne it is incurable / Also if it cometh of humours þat stoppiþ
nerues, & þe cure herof is for to purge him wiþ cochijis & pigra, &
caste in his eere oile of bittir almaundis & opere medicyns þat ben

Deafness
resulting
from child-
bearing is
incurable.

24 openynge. & oon þerof is þis / Take pulpe colloquintide .3. .j.,
castor, aristologia rotunda, succi absinthij ana 3. ß, euforbij .3. j.,
costi grana .xv., & make herof smale pelottis, & dissolue oon herof
wiþ oile of almaundis þat ben bittir, & do it in his eere; saue þou

If it is caused
by the
humours,
purge and
instil open-
ing medicines
into the ear.

28 schalt make him a fumigacioun tofore wiþ a decoccioun of sanbuci,
absinthij, sticados / Also take whit oile .3. .j., & grynde hony &
oile togidere / If þe passioun cometh of defeaute of spiritis, þanne

R^y
a fumyga-
cio.

putte herof in his eere, & þanne he schal be bapid & haue reste, &
32 vse metis þat engendriþ good blood, & he schal heere sotil vois for
to make him haue heerynge / & summe seien þat þe fatnes of grene

R^y
If deafness
arises from
a weakness of
the spirit,
strengthen
the patient,

³froggis, þat lyuen among trees; ⁴take hem & seþe hem, & gadere
þe fatnes of hem & caste in his eere, for þis hap vertu for to make
36 men heere. ¶ Also take a litil garlek & make it clene, & do þerto
þe .iij. part of tartre, & grinde hem smal togidere, & boile hem in
vinegre, & whanne it is coold þan coole it, & of þis vinegre leie
hoot to his eere /

[³ lf. 177, bk.]
and apply the
fat of green
frogs.

¹ skymed. Compare *scume*, p. 242, note 6.

⁴ Some words like *is good* are wanting.

Of þe passioun of þe nose & anothamia.

¶ iij. co.
The nose has
two holes
through
which the
brain is
purged.

Air is
gathered in
the "cola-
torium,"
and there is
the seat of
smelling.

The nose has
two bones,

AS we haue bifore seid þat þer ben .ij. hoolis in þe nose þat þe
brayn is purgid þerbi of superfluite. & þe nose is not nervous,
& þe nose is a propre instrument for to smelle. & þese .ij. hoolis in
þe nose ben maad fast in þe scolle. & in þat place is ordeyned a
þing þat is clepid colatorium,¹ & eir is gaderid þerinne þat makip
vertu of smellynge. & þoruþ þat place þe superfluitees of þe brayn
ben pourgid, & þer is oon hoole þerof þat goip toward þe mouþ. & 8
þe nose is maad of .ij. boones in þe maner of a triangle in þis
maner. Δ Δ. þe scharpe eendis þat ben aboue ben ioynnyge wiþ þe
boones of þe igen. & þe boonyes of þe nose þat ben bineþe ben
cartilaginous for þe causis þat ben forseid.² 12

Latin Original.

and three
cartilages.

[In parte vero inferiori vnum quodque illorum duorum ossium
habet quandam cartilaginem propter iuuamenta que sciuiti. In medio
vero habet aliam cartillaginem, quæ nasum in duas partes diuidit, 16
quæ durior et fortior est duabus aliis, quæ sunt in nasi fine. Iuu-
amentum vero illius medie cartilaginis est, ut si vni parti nasi nocumen-
tum acciderit, pars alia totius suppleat iuuamentum. Duo autem ossa
nasi coniunguntur ad inuicem : & fit nasi forma, quæ cum his quæ 20
dicta sunt, plures habet vtilitates. Prima, vt sit tutamen & cooper-
torium superfluitatibus : quæ de cerebro diriuantur. Secunda, vt
aerem recipiat, qui est ad receptionem odoratus necessarius mediator.
Tertia, quod quamuis maior pars aeris que attrahitur vadat ad pul- 24
monem : tamen aliqua eius pars per nasum tendit ad cerebrum.
Foraminis autem quod est inter nasum & os, iuuamenta sunt tria.
Primo vt cum os clauditur, possit aeris fieri attractio ad pulmonem.

The nose
provides the
brain with
air.

The nasal
cavity com-
municates
with the
mouth,
1. that one
may breathe
through the
nose,

¹ *os colatorium*. I could not find this name in the ancient authors, but
it occurs frequently in the Latin translations of the Arab authors. The idea
that it is the function of the nose to purge the brain is an old one. Compare
A. C. Celsus de Medicina Lib. IV. Cap. V., ed. Daremberg : "Destillat autem
humor de capite interdum in nares, quod leve est, interdum in fauces, quod
peius est ; interdum etiam in pulmonem, quod pessimum est." Avicenna men-
tions the "os colatorium" in connection with this theory in his Canon Lib. I.
Fen. I. Doctr. V. Cap. 1., ed. Venetiis, 1527, fol. 9. "Ossa autem porosa
facta fuerunt . . propter additionem necessitatis causa, rei alicuius, que
necesse est ut in ea penetret sicut odor, qui cum aere attrahitur in osse, col-
latorio simili, et cerebri superfluitates, que per ipsum expelluntur." We find
the same theory in the French name for a cold : "rhume de cerveau," and
for the same reason "Hellebore" is called "brain-purging." *N. E. Dict.*,
s. v. brain.

² Three leaves or four are wanting, and I insert the Latin text from the
Editio Argellata Ven., 1546, f. 239, bk., and Add. 26, 106, f. 71.

Secundo, vt per illud cerebri anterior ventriculus expurgetur. Tertio, ad intercisionem adiunget literarum, & voces melius explicandas : quoniam cum in loquendo sit necessarium vocem temperare : literas incidere : syllabas solidare : ad hoc saepe labia clauderentur & dentes : si non esset alia via, per quam posset aer superfluus exalare apud literarum incisionem totus conculcaretur aer, qui literarum incisionem & syllabarum prolationem sua multitudine impediret : & vocem etiam generatam non claram emitteret : facit ergo in verborum & vocis prolatione foramen hoc quod facit foramen fistulae superius,¹ quod in vocum et tonorum modulationem remanet absolutum : quare voces & toni inde magis exeunt absoluti.²

12 In naso vel naribus plures concurrunt egritudines. Nam ibi fiunt pustulae, vlcera, caro superflua, polypus, cancer, fluxus sanguinis, fetor, & olfactus priuatio.

Pustulae fiunt vt plurimum ab adustis humoribus, et sunt cum punctura & ardore. Et cura est phlebotomia & corporis euacuatio, et iniectio albuminis oui cum oleo ros. in simul agitatis. Pustulis fractis, fiat vinctio cum vnguento albo Rasis.

20 Vlcera quoque si calida fuerint, curantur eodem modo. Si frigida, cum lauacione vini et mellis, & cum vnguento apostolorum, et cum vnguento viridi dicendorum.

Caro superflua remouetur cum instrumentis chirurgicis ; si non potest tota cum instrumentis remoueri : remouetur residuum cum puluere asfodillorum & cum vnguento viridi, & apostolorum, & cunctis mundificantibus : & remotis superfluis cum unguentis solidantibus compleatur.

Polypus dicitur a polypo pisce : cuius malitiosa est astutia : quia quando vult piscibus saturari, ascendit saxum quod est in litore maris : & ipsi multum assimilatur, pisces fatigati videntes saxum, non aduertunt de polypo propter similitudinem : sed volentes quiescere, sallunt de mari : polypus illos absorbet : & in eius conuertit nutrimentum. Sic iste morbus cum naso magnam habet affinitatem : quoniam eius materia est catarrhosa frigida grossa descendens a capite : & in via propter eius grossitiem & tenacitatem haeret naso seu substantiae nasi inuiscata : et humores capitis agitatione moti naturae volentes descendere, & exire, materiam ibi recipiunt congregatam :

¹ Add. 26,106, fol. 71 b., on margin : gallice flaute.

² The whole preceding passage about the utilities of the nose, and especially the utility of the "nares posteriores," i. e. the communication between the nasal cavity and the pharynx, is taken from *Avicenna*, l. c. Cap. 4.

quæ humores illos in suam conuertit malam naturam : et ex ipsa quotidie augmentatur. Differentia vero est inter polypum & carnem superfluum : quoniam caro superflua, non habet profundam tenacitatem cum nasi substantia : nec cum ipso naso nimis assimilatur : 4 immo potest de facili segregari : polypus vero firmiter adheret cum naso : & non sine violentia separatur. Quorum scilicet polyporum aliquis est curabilis : aliquis incurabilis. Curabilis est substantiæ mollis & tractabilis : nec nasum reddit durum : nec in colore nigrum 8 seu fuscum : nec est multum supra circa cerebri confinia inuiscatus. Incurabilis vero nasum reddit durum, liuidum seu nigrum : & magnam profunditatem tenet, quam quanto magis videris maiori nigredine maiorque participari duritie, maioremque profunditatem 12 occupare, tanto plus ab eo existima fugiendum : quoniam naturam tunc tenet canceri : quanto plus eum curare niteris tanto plus videbis eius malitiam augmentari.

There are two kinds of polype:

1. The incurable one has the nature of a cancer.

2. The curable one may be treated like proud flesh.

Curabilis vero cura est secundum quod diximus in cura super- 16 fluæ carnis quæ ibi consurgit cum ablatione sive cum instrumentis & cum vnguentis mundificativis : & aliis quæ nouisti : præcedente semper corporis et capitis purgatione : sicut multoties est ostensum. Cauteria quoque secundum quod audies, multum valent ad polypi 20 materiam consumendam. Eius vero quem incurabilem diximus, non assumas curam. Si tamen rogaris nimis, palliatuam curam adhibe : sicut in cura canceri recolimus ostendisse.

De anatomia oris, & contentorum in ore, & passionibus doctrinæ 24 tertiæ tractatus tertii Cap. iii.

The membrane lining the mouth is continuous with the integument of the stomach.

Totam vero oris concauitatem interius circundat panniculus qui continuus est cum meri, & cum stomacho : quare accedit quod multæ res tangentes palatum prouocant vomitum. Ad oris concaui- 28 tatem duæ perueniunt viæ : quarum anatomiam superius habuisti ; in earum summitate est epiglottis : quæ est creata ad perficiendum vocem : et ut seruet aliquid de aere attracto ad anelitum. Hæc epiglottis ex tribus est composita cartilaginibus : vna est eminens 32 ante & dicitur clypealis & a laicis dicitur guttur vel nodus gulæ : alia est posterius cum osse laudæ continua et uocatur nomen non habens.¹ Tertia vocatur cymbalaris siue cooperturalis :² & continuatur cum nomen non habente : & cooperit clypealem : et ista cymbalaris 36 mouetur per eius musculos : quare cum homo comedit, viam claudit

The organ of voice is composed of three cartilages.

¹ Cartilago cricoidea.

² Cartilagines aryænoideæ.

- canne pulmonis: & viam aperit oesophagi. Cum autem homo loquitur, aperit viam canne pulmonis: & claudit viam oesophagi. Quare multoties accidit, quod si homo comedens dicere vellet
 4 aliquid ignoranter: quod aliquid viam intraret canne pulmonis: quare natura moueretur ad tussendum: nec cessaret, donec quod cannam intrauerat, esset ad extra expulsum.] ¹til þat mete be out
 of his þrote, saue algate he schal couze til it be oute. & þan aboue
 8 þis instrument is vuula þat is þe palet² of þe mouþ & helpiþ for to make soun / For þe wynd þat comeþ of þe lungis reboundiþ³ aȝens þe palet & makip þe more soun. In þe holownes of þe mouþ is maad fast þe tunge, þat is maad of whit fleisch, & neische, & of
 12 nerues, & veynes, & of arterijs, as it is necessarie þerfore / And in þe þrote of þe tunge ben .ij. wellis þat spotil is gaderid þeron, & holdiþ alwei þe tunge moist / Also in a mannes mouþ ben .xxxij. teep, & þerof sittip .xvj. in þe cheke boon,⁴ & summen han but
 16 .xxviij. / And for to hile a mannes teep ben ordeined lippis, & ben as it were þe dore of an hous, & helpiþ forto speke & to pronounce wordis / Now to alle þese lymes þat ben forseid: as þe palet of þe mouþ & a mannes tunge & þe teep & þe gomis & þe lippis, alle
 20 þei han diuers passiouns.
- ¶ Vuula sumtyme wiþ cours of humouris sumtime gaderip an enpostym, & sumtyme vuula wexip to long,⁵ & sumtyme apostym of þe ⁶palet comeþ of hoot cause, þat þou schalt knowe bi þe reednes
 24 of þe place & bi brennyng; & þanne in þe cure herof þou schalt bigynne for to lete him blood in þe heed veyne, & purge colre wiþ a decoccioun of fretis.⁷ & herof þou schalt make him a gargarisme, & þerwiþ he schal ofte waische his mouþ: R̄, lentes, balaustias, & þerwiþ he schal ofte waische his mouþ: R̄, lentes, balaustias, &
 28 psidias, gallas, rosas, sumac, & boile þese wiþ .ij. partis of water, & oon part of vinegre, & herof make a gargarisme / Also þou schalt leie to his palet poudre of rosas, & sandalis,⁸ & balaustiarum & a litil of camphre / þis is a good help þerfore whanne þe palet is
 32 woxe long wiþ hoot humouris. ¶ If þer come an enpostym of coold humouris, ouþer þat þe palet wexe long wiþ coold humouris, & þat þou miȝt knowe whanne þe place is not reed, & if þer be

[1 lf. 178]

The mouth contains the epiglottis, the uvula, which helps to make sound,

the tongue, made of white flesh, nerves and blood-vessels,

32. teep.

and the lips, by whose help words are pronounced.

Diseases in these parts.

Vuula.

[6 lf. 178, bk.]

In case of a hot apostema on the palate (uvula) bleed, purge and use a gargle, Gargarismus.

R̄

If cold humour cause the apostema,

² *palet*, palate. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.* The erroneous identification of uvula and palatum is not in the original.

³ *rebound*, O.Fr. *rebondir*. See later references in Skeat, *Et. Dict.*

⁴ Lat.: XVI in utraque mandibula.

⁵ Lat.: Vuula namque propter humorum decursum aliquando apostematur aliquando solum elongatur.

⁷ *fretis*, fruit.

⁸ MS. inserts & *rosis*.

purge and use
a gargle.

R

[³ lf. 179]

A powder
applied by
a Funnel.

If the uvula
gets too long,
remove a
portion.

Be ware
not to cut too
deep.

the tong¹
suffers from
many dis-
eases.

Ranulam.

In case of an
apostema in
the tongue,
[⁵ lf. 179, bk.]
bleed from
the head-vein
and use a
wash.

miche spotil in his mouþ, first þou schalt purge him wiþ cochijs & pigra, & þan make him a gargarisme wiþ þis decoccioun: R̄, aceti partes duas, mellis partem vnam, boile hem togidere & do þerto poudre of mirtillorum¹ & þe seed of rosis & peletre² & zinþibere, & 4 þan make him poudre of pepir³ & sal armoniac, & make herwith a fumigacioun wiþ enbotum.⁴ & if it be greet to-swolle, & þan þou muste make consumynge þingis as diameron & sappa michum⁵ / If þe palet⁶ be recchid along, & if it be so long þat it lie vpon þe 8 tunge, þan þou muste kutte awei as miche þerof as þee pinkiþ good, so þat it be nomore þan it schulde be; & be war þat þou kutte not to myche þerof, for þer miȝte come greet perel þerof: as his vois miȝte be apeirid þe while he lyuede, & contynuely couȝinge, & his 12 lungis miȝte be þe worse þerfore & also his piys.⁶ & þerfore it is greet perel for to kutte a mannes palet.⁷

¶ The tunge suffriþ manie sijknensis as pustulas and swellynge & kuttinge, & ofte tyme a mannes tunge bicometh shorter þan it 16 schulde be. And þer is anoper passioun þat is clepid fili ranulam⁸ & spasmus, & sumtyme a mannes tunge wexiþ to long.⁹ ¶ The curis of pustulis & vlcera schulen be seid heraftir / If þer come an enpostym or ony swellynge to a mannes tunge, & it come of hoot 20 humours, þanne þou schalt bigynne þe cure þerof in þis¹⁰ maner / ffirst lete him blood in þe heed veine, & þanne make him a decoccioun & a waisching as it is aforseid in apostym of þe palet: & he schal holde in his mouþ þe iuys of letuse. & in þe same maner þou 24 schalt cure swellynge of a mannes tunge / If þer come apostym or

¹ MS. over *mirtillorum* is written *mirtelberys*.

² *pelletre*, Lat. *pyrethrum*. "*Pyrethrum*, Bartram, wild or bastard Pellitory, an Herb the Root of which is very biting and hot." Phillips. See *Pelletier* Cath. Angl. and Note *ibid*.

⁴ *enbotum*, Lat. *embotum*. See *Dufr.* = *infundibulum*. Fr. *embut*, a surgical instrument, a funnel.

⁵ *sappa michum*, Lat. *saramitum*.

⁶ *piys*, Lat. *pectus*. O.Fr. *pis*.

⁷ Gulielmus de Saliceto, Lanfranc's teacher, uses a cautery instead of cutting. I give the quotation from an English translation, MS. Sloane 277, fol. 1 (beginning of 15th cent.): "*Be þe grape cutt wiþ a brennynge yren keruyge, & be it putt in by a pipe to þe grape, þe mouþ holden open. Be þe grape receyued in þe hole of þe pipe. Whiche receyued, be putt in þere þe brennynge yren in þe pipe, & be þe grape canteried.*"

⁸ *Ranula*, a tumor, which forms under the tongue. (Dunglison.) See Vegetius, *De re veterin.* 4, 5, 1. Gr. *βάρπαξ*. Fr. *grenouillette*.

⁹ The passage is corrupt. Lat.: *Lingua quoque multas patitur ægritudines, pustulas, inflationem, scissuram, breuiationem fili, ranulam, spasmus et relaxationem.*

- ony swellunge of¹ coold humouris, þan purge him with pillulis þat¹ be forseid of¹ .G[aliens]. makinge. ¶ Ther was a man þat¹ his tunge was so swolle þat¹ it miȝte not be conteyned in his mouþ. & first¹
- 4 I made him purgaciouns & waischingis, & þan I made him consumynge þingis; & in þis maner he was curid. ¶ Scissure is a passioun in a mannes tunge þat¹ is as it were kutting¹. & þat¹ schal be curid wiþ þe iuys of¹ malue soden wiþ psillium & medlid wiþ
- 8 sugre & sode, & herwiþ he schal waische his mouþ. & he schal drinke water of¹ barli, & his mete schal be hoggis feet wel soden, & wiþ þe nerues of¹ þe feet he schal frote wel his tunge. ¶ Also þer is a þreed¹ vndir sum mannes tunge þat¹ he mai not put out his
- 12 tunge as he schulde, & also it lettij him to speke. þe cure herof is for to kutte þat¹ þreed, ² & þan brenne him. & it is better for to make an instrument of¹ goold & brenne it þerwiþ, & kutte also wiþ þe same instrument / ¶ Also þer comeþ an enpostym vpon a mannes
- 16 tunge of¹ fleume³ & also of¹ malancolie, saue of¹ malancolie an enpostym comeþ but selden / þese ben þe signes if it come of¹ malancolie: þe place wole be ledi ouþir blak. & þan do þou no cure þerto / If it come of¹ fleuma, þanne frote wel his tunge wiþ
- 20 salt, til þe blood come out þerof. & if þis suffise not, þan frote it wel wiþ vitriol / If þe spasme come in a mannes tunge þat¹ wole constryne þe tunge inward, þe cure herof is for to holde oile of anete in his mouþ & of¹ camomille hoot as he mai suffre, & make an
- 24 enplastre herof medlid wiþ hoot water, & leie it vpon his heed & vpon his nolle hoot / If his tunge bicomne neische, þan þou muste purge him wiþ pillulis fetidis,⁴ or with trocisco de turbit. & þan do þerto þis medicyn: R̄, grana vij. numero, recentis & lucidi
- 28 euforbij,⁵ & take vij. figis & pare awei þe ryndis þerof & grynde hem wel togidere, & do þerto as miche raw hony ⁶ & medle hem togidere, & make herof þe maner of a letuarie; & herof he schal take as miche as a bene, & leie it vndir his tunge, whanne he were

If the apostema is caused by cold humours use the purging pills of Galien.

"Scissure" is a fissure in the tongue.

Use a wash, and let the patient feed on barley-water and hog's-feet.

When the "frænum lingum" extends too far, cut it with a golden instrument.

[² If. 180]

When the apostema is caused by melancholy,

try no cure;

if it is caused by phlegm, rub the tongue with salt or vitriol.

Against cramp in the tongue use anet-oil and a plaster.

If the tongue becomes soft, use purging pills and an electuary.

R̄

[⁶ If. 180, bk.]

¹ þreed, Lat. filum. Usually filetum. Fr. filet de la langue.

³ Lat.: Ranula quoque fit sub lingua. Sl. 2463, fol. 93: "Ranula is an emynence vnder þe tunge toward þe forther teth in maner of an enpostume, & whane þe tunge is lift vp þer schewith as it were a nother tunge vnder þe tunge."

⁴ pillulæ fetidæ, pills composed from fetid things.

⁵ Halle, Table, p. 35. 'Euphorbium, Εὐφρόβιον: is the gum or teares of a tree called Euphorbia growinge in Lybia, found out (by the testimonye of Dioscorides) in y^e time of Iuba: and was called by that name (as saith Ruellius) of his Phisicien."

fastynge / Wip þis medicyn þe abbot of seint victor was maad hool; for he miȝte not speke, & herwip his speche come aȝen.¹

Toothache

¶ Akinge of teep: sumtyme it comeþ of vijs of þe teep,² & sumtyme of þe gomis, & sumtyme it comeþ of vijs of þe stomac, & 4 sumtyme it comeþ of hoot mete, & sumtyme of coold mete. & if it come of hoot mete, make him holde coold watir in his mouþ, & þat wole cure him anoon. & if it come of coold mete, þan he schal holde in his mouþ hoot oile. & if a mannes teep akip for sour 8 þingis, þan he schal ete chese & portulacas, or he schal gnawe wip his teep hoot wex³ / If it come of vicis of þe heed or of þe gomis, and þe cause come of hete, þat þou miȝt knowe bi reednes of þe place & bi þe hete þerof, & þan þou schalt lete him blood in þe heed 12 veine, & þan þou schalt lete him blood in þe veine þat is vndir his tunge; & þan he schal holde in his mouþ oile of rosis, medlid wip watir, 4 ouper coold watir & vinegre / If þe akyng be so greuous þat it mai not be take awei, þan aswage his akyng wip þis 16 medicyn: R̄, seminis iusquiami albi⁵ opij ana ʒ .j, seminis apij ʒ .j, grinde hem togidere & tempere hem wip vinegre, & make þerof pelottis in þe greetnes of a pece, & leie oon herof vpon þe tooþ, & þis wole do awei þe akinge þerof. & after þe fourþe dai lete him 20 holde in his mouþ oile of rosis, in which is dissolued masticis.

¶ If þe akyng come of coold humouris, þat þou miȝt knowe if þe place be not reed ne to-swollen, þan purge him wip cochijs or wip pigra. & aftir þis he schal holde in his mouþ tiriacam diatesseron.⁶ 24

¶ Also do þis medicyn in his eere in þe same parti þat akip / R̄, olium oliuarum .ʒ ij., aceti .ʒ j., coloquintidae, piperis ana .ʒ j.,

caused by hot meat is treated with cold water, by cold meat with hot oil, by sour things with cheese and purslane.
If it arises from the head or gums let blood.

[4 lf. 181]

To soothe the pain,

R̄

apply to the tooth a preparation of hyoscyamus and opium.

If the pain is caused by cold humours, purge, use an electuary and instil a medicine into the ear.
R̄

¹ Lat.: cum hac medicina fuit restituta loquela dominæ abbatisse sancti victoris ad ultimum, quæ propter linguæ mollificationem non poterat uerbum intelligibile bene loqui; dedi ei hanc medicinam, et cito locuta est expedite.

² of viis of þe teep, dentium vitio. viis is used synonymously with defaute. Sometimes both expressions are used. Sloane 277, f. 12 b.: "These seknesses be maad of vice or defaute of þe norischinge strengþe."

³ This is evidently a way of filling the hole of a tooth.

⁵ Halle, Table, 52. "Hyosciamus. Henbane is called in Greeke Ὑοσκῆμος; in Latin: Hiosciamus, Apollinaris, Faba suilla et Altercum; of Apuleius: Symphoniaca; of others also Fabidum and Fabilonia, and of some Cassilago or Caniculata; of the Apothecaries Iusquiamus. Of Henbane there are three kyndes: the blacke, the yelow and the whyte."

⁶ diatessaron, an electuary into the composition of which entered four medicines. "Among Farriers Diatessaron is taken for Horse-treacle; —. Also an Electuary made of Gentian, Bay berries and Birth-wort, of each two Ounces, all beaten to a very fine Powder, and work'd in like manner with two Pounds of Honey in a Stone-mortar."—Phillips.

- & boile hem in a double vessel, & distille it in his cere flaisch¹ /
 Sumtyme a mannes teef ben frete & ben holow, & pis cometh of
 humours corrupt pat falliþ to þe teef. & in þis maner þou schalt
 4 cure it / R̄, *olium .z̄ j.*, *sansuci*² *sicci*,³ *seminis sicute ana 3 ℥*.
 boile hem togidere, & þan þou schalt haue ⁴a cauterie wiþ .ij.
 pointis, & þou schalt haue þe schap herof herastir, & þou schalt
 make þe same instrument hoot in þe fier, & þan putte it in þe for-
 8 seid oile, & þan putte it in þe hole of his tooþ, & be war pat þou
 touche not his gomys wiþ þe iren ne his lippis : & þis medicyn þou
 muste reherse ofte tymes / þis medicyn wole bringe water out of
 þe teef, & it wole do awei þe akyng. ¶ If þou desirist to drawe
 12 out ony mannes tooþ wiþouten iren : R̄, *cortices radicum mori* &
piretrum ana, distempere hem wiþ vinegre & grinde hem wel
 togidere, & drie hem in þe sunne, & departe liztli þe tooþ & þe
 fleisch of þe gomis & leie of þe medicyn bitwixe þe tooþ & þe
 16 fleisch / Also *lac titimalli*⁵ distemperid wiþ flour of *amidum* / Also
 make poudre of peletre & lete it lie in vinegre in þe somer tyme, &
 kepe it ; þis makith neische, pat þe tooþ mowe be drawe out wiþ-
 outen ony iren / If a mannes teef ben blac, in þis maner þou schalt
 20 make hem whit / R̄, *farinam ordei*, *sal ana*, & leie hem in hony, &
 make þerof past & folde it in paper ⁶or in lynnen cloof, & brenne
 it in a furneis. & þan brenne schellis of eiren, & ciperi, *aluminis*
ana partes duas, *corticum citri siccorum*, *camfer ana partem vnam*,
 24 make herof poudre, and frote þerwiþ his teef & hise gomis, & þis
 wole do awei þe blaknes of a mannes teef /

If the teeth
are hollow

R̄

cauterize the
hole with the
hot iron.

[* 1f. 181, bk.]

To draw
teeth without
using the
iron.

R̄

A powder to
make black
teeth white.

R̄

[* 1f. 182]

Of þe passioun in wommen brestis /

- 28 **G**Od almiȝti made in a womman tetis for þe norischinge of a ¶ v. co.
 child. & a wommans tetis ben maad of fleisch pat is glandu-
 lous, & of veines, & of arterijs, & of nerues, & ben but veines pat
 comen fro a wommans lyuere to hir tetis & þe maris, as it is seid
 here tofore, & in what maner blood turneþ into milk it is forseid.⁷
 A woman's
breasts are
made of
glandular
flesh, blood-
vessels and
nerves,
and the blood
is turned to
milk in them.

¹ *flaisch*, tepidus. See p. 255, note 3.

² "*Samsucus*, maiorana," et cet. *Alphita*, p. 161.

³ MS. *succi*.

⁵ *lac titimalli*. τριτίμαλος, euforbia.

⁷ Lat.: et ad ubera veniunt venæ concavæ a matrice, per quas, ut scivisti, pars sanguinis attrahitur menstrualis, et sicut chylus camellinus veniens a stomacho, cum a hepate recipitur, colorem recipit rubeum: sic sanguis a matrice veniens rubeus albescit. Compare *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. XII., Cap. 1, f. 209. "Nam epar rubificat chilum album et facit ipsum sanguinem. Et mamilla albeficat sanguinem rubeum et facit ipsum lac."

Egidius.

¶ In a wommans tetis comep manie passionus / ffor, as Egidius seip, þat sumtyme þer comep þerto apostym of milk, & sumtyme vlcera / And comounly enpostyms comep of blood þat is drawe to þe tetis & mai not turne into milk, or if a womman haue to miche 4 blood, & it comep of febilnes of vertu as it is aforseid in þe general chapitre of enpostyms. ¶ þe cure of an hoot enpostym in þe tetis / first þou schalt lete hir blood in Basilica, or sette a ventuse vpon hir schuldris. & if þe cause come of retencioun of mensture, 8 þan þou schalt zeue hir medicyns for to bringe out þe mensture, or þou schalt lete hir blood in þe sophene, & anointe þe place wip oile of rosis, & þe fourþe part of vinegre. & if þis suffise not, þan wete a lynnyn cloob in þe iuys of solatri,² & whanne þou hast 12 anoyntid þe place wip oile & vinegre, þan leie þis cloob þervpon. & loke þat alle þingis þat þou leist þerto be flasch hoot;³ for þer schal no coold þing be leid þerto for þe place is neruous, for coold þing wolde greue it. If alle þese medicyns suffisen not, saue þe 16 mater bigynnep to drawe to quittance, þanne leie þerto maturatiuis. & if þou miȝt not do it awei wip repercussiuus ne wip resolyunge þingis, & þou ne miȝt not make it maturatif, þan it is drede lest þe womman bicomme in a passioun þat is clepid Mania.⁴ þan hir heed 20 mote be schaue, & zeue hir confortif þingis for hir heed, & zeue hir sotil dietynge, & sche schal drinke no wijn ne ete ⁵no fleisch. & þou muste worche ful sotilli, ffor I say a womman þat hadde an enpostym in hir brest & come of blood, & so I tauȝte hir for to do ⁶24 as it is aforseid, & þo þer come a lewid cirurgian & repreuede me, & he leide þervpon maturatiuis: & þe more þat he leide þervpon maturatiuis, þe more þe mater wexide greet & þe more brennynge. & þe same cirurgian wolde not heere my counseil / & þe wommans 28 freendis took more hede to þe lewid cirurgian þan to me, & wipinne .iij. daies Mania come to hir and was oute of hir witt, & so þe frenesie fil on hir / & þis pronosticacioun I seide in þe bigynnyng, but þei wolde not leue mi wordis⁷ / If it so be þat it make quittance, 32 þan opene it & do out þe quittance, & þan leie þerto a mundificatif,

² Halle, *Table*, p. 119. "Solanium hortense, which doubtlesse Lanfranke meaneth by Solatrum, doth Galen also call Esculentum."

³ flasch hoot, tepidus. See p. 255, note 3.

⁴ De propr. rer. lib. V. cap. 34. Add. 27,944, fol. 53 b.: "ypocras seip þat in rommen in þe whiche superfluyte of blood turned to þe pappis, it bodeþ madnes."

⁵ do, above line.

⁷ Lat.: mea tamen prognosticatio multum exaltata extitit.

Apostemas are caused by blood in the breast, which cannot be turned into milk.

Treatment of a hot apostema.

[¹ If. 182, bk.] Use blood-letting and cupping.

In case of retention of the menstrual blood, bleed from the Saphena: use an ointment and a compress, which must be lukewarm.

If suppuration is imminent, apply maturatives, and if they fail there is danger of Mania.

Shave her head,

[⁵ If. 183] and let her abstain from wine and meat.

A woman with an apostema in her breast was treated by an unskilful surgeon, with maturatives, in three days she fell into Mania and frenzy, as I prognosticated.

If it suppurates, open it.

- & be wel war þat þou putte þerinne no greet tent ne long, as manie foolis doon; for a wommans tetis ben ful of nerues, & if þe nerues were pressid wip ony tent, it wolde make gret akyng, & wolde
 4 lette þe cure þerof. ¶ Also þer ben manie foli lechis, whanne þei fynden ¹in a wommans tetis fleisch þat is glandelous, þan þei wene þat it be wickid fleisch, & ben þerabout for to drawe it out, & þan þei schendiþ al þe substaunce of þe brest. þou schalt worche
 8 wiseli & þou schalt remeue noon herof, for as it is aforseid, al þe fleisch of þe tetis is glandelous. & whanne þat is clensid wip mundificatiuis þan þou schalt regendre fleisch, & þan þou schalt drie it / If it be so, þat cold mater gadere to enpostym in a wommans
 12 brest, & þat comþ ful selde, loke if þis mater come of fleume, & þan anoynte þe place wip oile of camomille, & oile of lilie, & oile of anete, & a lital vinegre medlid þerwip. & if it be ony nede first make hir a purgacioun, & if it resolute not, þan leie þerto matura-
 16 tiuis, & þan do as it is aforseid / & if it so be þat þe mater turne to hardnes & blak or ledi, þan þou muste be war þat þou leie þerto no medicyns þat ben to hoot, for þer mai engendre a cancre þerof ful liztli. & if it be so, þan be þou not þerabout for to make it
 20 maturatif, & do þou no cure þerto. & summen seien þat a womman mai be curid for ²to kutte off al þe brest, & þat is al fals. Saue þou schalt kepe þe place wip vnguentum de tutia, & sche mote ofte be purgid, þat sche mowe lyue þe lenger. ¶ I-leue þe wordis þat I
 24 seie; þouȝ I haue curid manie men of diuers empostyms, I miȝte neuere cure a verri cancre, but it were in a fleischi place þere I miȝte kut al awei wipouten ony hurtyng of senewis & of veines³ /
 & a wommans brest is ful of senewis & veynes & arterijs. ¶ Vlcers
 28 þat ben in a wommans tetis schulen be curid as it is aforseid in þe general chapitre, saue herof þou muste be war þat þis lyme may not suffre so harde corosiuis for þe greet tendirnes þerof, saue þou schalt do þerto medicyns þat ben mundificatif & drynge / It fallip
 32 to summe wommen þat þe point of hir tete ne goiþ not out, but ben al hid in þe tete so þat a child mai not take it in his moup for to souke / In þis maner þou schalt helpe it / Take þe cuppe of an acurne, & þat is lyk to þe point of a wommans tete, & do þeron
 36 terbentyn or pich, & make it hoot & leie it vpon þe point of hir tete & binde ⁴it þerto faste, & þis wole drawe out þe point of hir

Be ware
not to use a
great tent,
as many
fools do.

Many foolish
physicians
[1. 16. 183, bk.]
remove the
glandular
flesh, mis-
taking it for
corrupt flesh.

If cold matter
gathers into
an apostema,
apply an
ointment

and matura-
tives.
If the matter
becomes
hard, it may
easily become
a cancer.
In case of
cancer,

[2. 1f. 184]

operation
does not help;
but apply an
ointment
and purge to
prolong
the patient's
life.

I have only
cured a true
cancer in a
fleshy part.

Ulcers in a
woman's
breast are
treated with
mundificative
and drying
medicines.

If the nipples
are hid in the
breast draw
them out with
an acorn-cup.

Ry

[4. 1f. 184, bk.]

³ There is no condition mentioned in the Latin original, under which the operation might be performed. Roy. 12. C. XIV. fol. 54 b.: de uero cancro nunquam curare potui, licet pluries cum meis uiribus laborauerim.

In case of
enlargement
of the breast
apply

R₇
the powder of
a whet-stone
and vinegar,

or a plaster
of cumin with
honey and
vinegar.

If the milk
becomes
hard, anoint
the breast
with oil
and apply a
solvent.

[² If. 185]

R₇

tete. ¶ Also it bifallip to maidenen þat her tetis bicomēþ more þan þei schulde be bi resoun, & þou schalt helpe hem in þis maner / Take stonys þat me whettip knyues on, & frote þese .ij. stones togidere in vinegre longe, til þe vinegre bicomē þicke þerof, & make 4 it hoot & anoynte þer wiþ hir tetis, & þan binde hem / þis medicyn defendip þat þei schulen not wexe, & make hem bicomē litil til þei come to her owne propre schap. ¶ Also take comyn & make poudre þerof, & medle it wiþ hony & vinegre; and it worchip þe 8 more strongli if þou medle þerwiþ bole armoniac & terra sigillata; grinde hem & tempere hem wiþ vinegre, & make a plastre þerof & lete it lie þeron .iiij. daies, & þan þou schalt waische it wiþ coold water / And a womman be war herof þat sche haue no sich 12 medicyn, if hir brest schal wexe ony more.¹ ¶ If þat milk be gaderid hard in a wommans brest for hete, þanne þou schalt anointe hir brest wiþ oile of rosis & vinegre, & þou schalt make an en-plastre as ²of solatri, portulace, for þese herbis han propirte for to 16 dissolue. ¶ þis is a plastre þat wole dissolue mylk þat is congelid hard, and it wole make þe mater of an enpostym maturatif / R₇, mice panis, farina ordeï, fenigreci & seminis lini ana. 3. j., radicis malue visci & herbe veruce.³ ana. ℥. j.; seþe wel þese .ij. laste, & 20 þan stampe hem wel alle togidere & tempere hem wiþ oile, & make þerof a plastre & leie it vpon flasch hoot /

ffor brekyng of þe siphac & of his laxyng.

¶ vjo co/

If the
"siphac"
protrudes at
the navel or
the groins,

use a ligature
and a plaster.

[⁴ If. 185, bk.]

If the siphac
is broken a
gurgling
sound is
heard, on the
application
of pressure.

¶ Nothamia of þe siphac is aforseid / & sumtyme siphac is kutt, 24 & sumtyme it recchip along, & sumtyme it to-brekip wiþ lepinge, & sumtyme for greet wepinge, & sumtyme for greet crijnge, & sumtyme for greet traueile. ¶ If siphac be recchid aboute þe nauele ouper aboute þe heeris, þat þou myzt knowe in þis maner: þe place 28 wole be to-swolle an hiz as it were an enpostym. & whanne þou touchist it wiþ þi fyngir, it wole goon yn azen. & sumtyme it wole come azen, & it wole make noon gurgulacioun / þe cure herof is but 32 lizt, & is wiþ a ligature & wiþ enplastre þat schal be seid in þe brek-inge ⁴of þe siphac. & if siphac be to-broke, þou mizte knowe bi þe greet noise, whanne þou lest þin hond þervpon for to putte hem yn

¹ The translator has omitted the following passage: *Caueat etiam illa quæ non vult suas ingrossare mamillas: ne illas tangat vel tangi permittat.*

³ *herbe veruce*, Lat. *herbæ erucae*. *Brassica eruca* L., white mustard. The translator mistook it for *Verrucaria*.

azen.¹ ¶ þe cure herof is hard in an oold man. þan make him a braccal² *id est* a boond þat it be þe brede of .iiij. fyngris. & it mote be maad of lynnē clop maniefoold,³ & þou muste make a plate of iren, 4 as brood as þe brekyng⁴ is, & þat mote be fooldid manie foold in þe forseid ligature, & it schal not be round, but plain. & þou muste ordeyne þerfore fastnyngis tofore & bihinde & in hise flankis, þat it mowe be holde algate in oon place, and þou schalt make an enplastre 8 for to leie vpon þe same place vndir þe bindinge in þis maner / R̃y, glutinum piscium vel carte .ʒ. .iiij, picis grece .ʒ. .iiij, picis naualis armoniaci ana. ʒ ij, kutte pese alle to smale gobetis, & do hem in ʒ. ij. of vinegre, & ʒ. .iiij. of oile of mastice & lete hem lie þeron 12 adai & anyȝt, & þan melte hem in a panne & cole hem. & heron medle poudre mastic & thus, & boli armoniaci, mummie, sanuinis, draconis, dragaganti, farine fenigreci ana ʒ ʒ. medle hem longe togidere / Oupir take ⁴scropholarie⁵ þe rynde þerof & grinde it 16 wiþ grese, & make þerof an enplastre, & of þe same rotis make poudre, & ʒeue him þerof eueri dai .ʒ. j. & ʒ. wiþ wijn / Also ʒeue him eueri dai .ʒ. j. & ʒ. of poudre maud of þe rotis of valarian temperid wiþ wijn. ¶ And if hise guttis falle adoun into his 20 ballok lepir,⁶ þe cure þerof schal be seid in þe nexte chapitre //

Apply a bandage and a plate of iron firmly fastened on the place;

and beneath the bandage apply a plaster.

R̃y

[4 ff. 186]

Of hernia⁷ of þe ballokis //

THis siknes mai be seid in manie maners / In oon maner whanne ¶ vij. cº /
 a mannes bowels falliþ into his ballokis leperis, & þan it is
 24 clepid hernia intestinalis / Or þer falliþ watir into þe same place as

Scrotal hernias

¹ The distinction made between a simple protrusion and a rupture of the siphac is, in fact, one between a less or more developed hernia. The "gurgling sound" has already been noticed by *Avicenna Canon*, Lib. III., Fen. 22, Tract. 1, Cap. 3.

² *braccal*, Lat. *brachale* = *cingulum coriaceum* Dufr., from med. Lat. *bracæ*. See *breeches*, *N. E. Dict.* The use of the "brachale vel lumbare" is mentioned by Gulielm. de Salie, *Chirurgia*, Lib. I., Cap. 43. De crepatura in inguinibus. Engl. transl., Sl. 277, fol. 6 b. "Wipoute cuttyngē moost children & opere in whiche þe guttes comen not down to þe ballock codd, & whiche þat hadde but litel schenwyngē wiþ a lumbare or a bandrike, & oure plastre & poudre manye in my tyme I curede þe lumbare or bandrike oweþ to be maad of lynnē clop þrefold." Sl. 2463, fol. 123 b. says: "The cure without inscicion . . . is don with a gyrdell made for þe rupture, þe whiche a man may fynde to sylle."

³ *maniefoold*, Lat.: multis duplicationibus facta.

⁵ *scropholarie*, *scrophularia*, water betony, *medewort* written above. See Wr. Wül. *médwurt*.

⁶ *ballok lepir*, *testiculorum bursa*.—*Cath. Angl.*, p. 211. Ledyr; *birsa*. Sl. 2463, f. 123 b.: þe purs of þe ballokes.

⁷ MS. *hernio*.

Hernia
intestinalis,
hernia
aquosa,
hernia
ventosa,
hernia
carnosa,
hernia
varicosa.
1.

Either the
Zirbus or the
[1 lf. 186, bk.]
bowels fall
into the
enlarged
Didymus.

2. They fall
through a
rupture of
the Siphac
into the
Scrotum.

This latter
case can only
be cured by
operation.

Many unskil-
ful men dare
to try these
cures,

[2 lf. 187]

whereas some
wise men are
afraid of
doing so.

These two
kinds of
Hernia must
be dis-
tinguished.

1. The bowels
fall out sud-
denly
through the
broken
Mirac.

2. The bowels
descend
slowly,
with a gurg-
ling sound.

[3 lf. 187, bk.]

it were a dropesie, & þan it is clepid hernia aquosa / Oupir þer
comeþ wijnd into þe same place, & þan it is clepid hernia ventosa.
And sumtyme þer wexiþ fleisch aboute & is greet, & þan it is clepid
hernia carnosia / And sumtyme þer ben veynes þereaboute ful of
malancolious blood & wele be gret as it were notis, & þan it is
clepid hernia varicosa / The firste cause comeþ in þis maner: Din-
dimus, þat anathomia þerof is ¹forseid, wexiþ wide for sum moistnes
þat falliþ þerto, so þat zirbus, ouper þe bowels falliþ adoun in þe 8
same place; and þis maner is ofte seen. Ouper siphac is to-broke
in þe flank wiþ oon of þe forseid causis in þe chapitre tofore / &
þoruþ þe same brekingi þe bowels falliþ adoun oupir zirbus, & bitwixe
dindimus & mirac þei fallen adoun into þe ballok leperis. & þis 12
maner falliþ ful selden. þis laste maner is incurable wiþ ony
medicyns, but wiþ kuttinge it mai be curid & sewid. & who þat
vsiþ sich maner boondis aforseid, but if it be in children & in newe
causis, it is al traueile in idil, & þe patient haþ greet penaunce þerwiþ 16
wiþouten ony profit. ¶ The firste may be curid / & þe .ij. maner
is ful hard for to cure, & þefore it is ful necessarie for a cirurgian
for to knowe alle þe maners herof & anathamiam as it is forseid
lest he falle in errour. ¶ þer ben manie men þat ben hardi for to 20
entermete of þese curis þat knowen not þe maner of þe sijknis ne
þe diffence þerof, & þefore þei falliþ al dai in errour. & þe lasse
good þat ²þat þei kunne, þe rapere þei wole entermete of sich an
hard cause. & þis cause is ful perilous / I haue seen manie wise 24
men þat coude do þis cure ful wel, & zitt þei wolde not entermete
þerof / þefore þou muste take consideracioun sotilli, where þe
bowels falliþ adoun þoruþ þe brekyng of siphac oupir þoruþ dindi-
mum, & þat þou schalt knowe in þis maner: ¶ In þe firste caas þe 28
bowels or zirbus falliþ doun sodeinli wiþ agreuauce, & þan þou
miht fele his bowels or zirbum in þe botme of þe ballok lepir, & þan
þer is but oon skyn to-broke, & þat is mirac. & whanne þou wolt
putte yn þe bowels azen, þou miht fele in what place þei goon in. 32
& whanne hise bowels ben ynne, þan lete þe patient stonde vp, &
hise bowels wolen falle out sodeinli azen, & þan þou miht fele in
what place þei comeþ out / In þe .ij. caas zirbus or þe bowels, or
þope comen adoun altil & altil, & makip miche gurgulacioun, & þe 36
wei þat þei comeþ out is algate sumwhat greet in dindimo, & þat
wole not be put yn whanne þe bowels ben putt yn, saue ³wiþ greet
penaunce & in longe tyme. & whanne þe bowels falliþ þoruþ dindi-
mum, he makip þe ballok lepir neuere þe lengere, & þis is a good 40

- knowinge: whanne þou hast take kepe of alle þese priuities, þan þou miȝt wite wherof þe cause is. ¶ Whanne þe bowels falliþ adoun þoruȝ a fissure, *id est* þoruȝ a brekyng, þan þou schalt not
- 4 traueile forto worche wiþ plastris & wiþ boondis þat ben forseid, but if it be in children & in causis þat ben newe. & if þe brekyng be but litil, þan þou miȝt make .v. cauterijs vpon þe skyn wiþoutforþ, so þat þe cauterie perse mirac, for þat wole make an
- 8 hard drowing vpon þe brekinge / & it wole not suffre þat þe bowels schulen not falle adoun þoruȝ þat place, so þat þe brekinge be but litil. If it so be þat þe bowels falle adoun þoruȝ dindimum, þan men haueþ diuers curis. Summen leien a corosif vpon þe ers wiþ
- 12 dindimum, a medicyn corosif, til þe skyn wiþout be frete, til þou mai se dindimum, & þan aftirward he fretiþ dindimum; & summen drawiþ awei a mannes ballokis, and ¹summen drawiþ not awei, but bi þe wei of þe corosif þe ballokis wolen rotie afterward / ¶ Also
- 16 summen maken punctual cauterijs in þe maner of a cros vpon dindimum, & þan aftirward heliþ it vp / Summen kutten þe hiȝer skyn wiþ a cauterie,² & þei streyneþ dindimum, & þei bindiþ it wiþ spago³ / Sum worchith in anopir maner: first, þei kuttiþ þe skyn
- 20 aboue, & þan þei makिþ cauterium aboue vpon dindimum in summe partie, & in sum parti þei leueþ hool. & þis maner is lasse worse þan þe toþer þat ben forseid / Summen ficchiþ .ij. nedlis in dindimum wiþ double þreed & crossiþ þe nedlis togidere, & þan þei takiþ
- 24 þe þedis & leiþ þervpon martencium,⁴ til-al þe skyn þat was take wiþ þe nedelis be rerid an hiȝ. & oþer men han diuers werkis þat I hadde not certeyn, for alle maners þat I heere þerof ben disseynable / For sumtyme whanne a man haþ miche traueilid þoruȝ, þingiþ
- 28 þat he haþ do brekiþ aȝen, & þan it wole be worse þan it was rapir. & among alle þe maners þat ben, þat is worst þat is doon wiþ medicyn caustica, for medicyns caustica for þe grete venym & malice
- ⁵þat it haþ, makिþ greet akyng, & is cause to make an enpostym in
- 32 dindimo, and þoruȝ þe agreuauance þat dindimo haþ, siphac mai be agreued & diafragma. & fro diafragma it mai go⁶ to þe brayn, þat is þe welle of alle nerues, & so þe man mai falle in a spasme, & þan he is but deed. ¶ O þou wrecchid leche, þat for a litil money

When the bowels fall through a rupture apply bandages only in case of children. If the rupture is small, cauterise the skin above the *Mirac*.

If the bowels fall through the "Didymum," different ways of treatment are proposed. Some physicians use a Corrosive, [1 ff. 188] some remove the testicles, some use cauteries, some tie a string round the Didymus.

All these cures are uncertain, *Nota.* a relapse may occur.

Caustics are dangerous,

[3 ff. 188, bk.] they may affect the Diaphragm and the brain.

A bad leech, for a little sum

² *wiþ a cauterie*, error for *wiþout cauterie*. Lat.: *Alii sine cauterio superficiali cutem incidunt*.

³ *wiþ spago*, cum spago; med. Lat. spacus, thread. See Diez. s. v. spago.

⁴ *martencium*, Lat. martentinum. Name of a cautery?

⁶ *go*, above line.

endangers a man's life, which is worth more than any gold or silver.

The author's advice is, not to cut, but apply the above mentioned bandage and plaster.

He treated in this way a patient who was sixty years of age.

[3 lf. 189]

He wore the bandage during two years in perfect health.

Another patient who was forty years old, was cured by similar treatment.

The patient shall always [4 lf. 189, bk.] wear his bandage, shall abstain from vegetables and new wine,

shall not leap, cry, or run,

puttist^t a mannes lijf^t in perel of^t deep / for þe lawe seip, it^t is better þan ony gold or siluer, for þou for a litil money makist^t him in perel of^t deep / For a man mai lyue vn-to þe tyme of^t his ende for þis passioun. & þerfore I wole counseile to kutte no man / Saue bi my 4 counseil þei schulen make a ligature as it^t is aforseid in þe brede of^t .iiij. fyngris of^t lynnen clooþ or of^t sendel,¹ as I haue tauzt^t hertofore. & make þat^t enplastre þat^t is forseid, & teche him good regimen & good dietyng / & þou³ he be not^t curid wiþ þis medicyn he schal 8 lyue neuere adai þe lenger, ne þe lasse while þerfore / ¶ I say .ij. men þat^t hadden þe passioun, & þat^t oon was .lx. winter oold, & his bowels fel out^t as it^t is for seid, & it^t was ful hard² to bringe hem in 3 azen, & I made him sich a boond as it^t is aforseid & a plastre, & 12 tauzte in what^t maner he schulde diete him-silf^t. & I seide to him if he louede his owne lijf^t he schulde go to no man to kutte him. & he was glad of^t my counseil, & he bar þe forseid bond & þe enplastre .ij. 3eer contynueli, dai & nyzt^t, & wiþinne þat^t tyme he was hool, & 16 3itt^t I wiste not^t wher he schulde be hool or no / & þat^t oþir man was .xl. wintre oold, & þer fel so greet^t plente out^t at^t his bowels, þat^t þei miȝte not^t be putt^t in azen, til þe pacient^t were sett^t in a bap. & þo I putte hem in azen / & I toolde of^t þe perel of^t kuttinge, & 20 he bad me make sich a boond, & I made him oon & þe enplastre þat^t is forseid. & I tauzte him how he schulde kepe him-silf^t, and how he schulde diete him-silf^t. & wiþinne a litil tyme he come to me, & seide þat^t he was almost^t hool, & þat^t he wolde were his boond no 24 lenger. & þo I repreuede him, & seide þat^t he schulde not^t be hool, but^t if^t he weride it^t lenger / In þis maner þou schalt^t teche him for to kepe him-silf^t: he schal algate were his boond & his plastre, saue if^t he haue greet^t penaunce ⁴þerwiþ whanne he goiþ to his bed an- 28 euen he mai vndo it^t / And he schal in⁵ no maner ete no growel ne raw fruit, ne no mete þat^t makij^t inflacioun / And he schal drinke no newe wijn, & he schal ete no greet^t saule,⁶ and whanne he hap ete þan he schal reste him-silf^t. & he schal not^t arise, but^t if^t his 32 ligature be faste bounden, & he schal not^t lepe, & he schal not^t crie ne renne, & he lepe vpon an hors softli. & whanne he sittij^t at^t

¹ *sendel*, Lat. *sinclon*, *σινδών*, a fine Indian cloth, muslin; *sendel*, O.Fr. *cendal* is derived from *sinclon*. See Diez, s. v. *zendale*. See *sendalle*, *sendylle*, in *Cath. Angl.*, p. 329, and note *ibid.*

² *hard*, in margin.

⁵ *in*, above line.

⁶ Lat.: *ne comedat ad plenam saturitatem*. *saule*, O.Fr. *saoulce*, from *saoul*, Lat. *satullus*.

priuy he schal not streyne him-silf to harde, & he schal ete no mete þat wole make him costif. & if he wole ony þing traueile, he schal do it þe while he is fastynge. & if he wole holde alle þes *and avoid constipation.*
 4 preceptis he mai be hool / & þis medicyne is certeyn, for he schal herfore lyue neuere þe lasse while. *Nota*

¶ If *hernia* be watri, þis is þe signe þerof, þat his ballok wole be heuy & schynynge, & if þou pressist it wip þi fyngr þou schalt *Watery hernia. The scrotum is heavy and shining,*
 8 fele watrynes þeron / ffirst þou must loke wher it be litil or mychel — & þan medicyns þat ben consumynge & drynge suffisiþ / *the water is felt on pressure.*
 þerfore þat þou schalt fynde here aftir in þe chapitre of þe dropesie. *Use drying medicines,*
 ¶ If the ²mater be greet, þan awoide awei þe mater wip kuttynge & *[² If, 190] or evacuate the matter with cutting and cauteries.*
 12 wip cauterijs. But if þou make cauterijs, þe watir wole come azen þerto, & þe cauterijs wolen lette þat þer schal no more mater come þerto. ¶ If þe mater be of wynd: þat þou myzt knowe bi inflacioun þat is not ledi colour³ & bi felynge wip þi fyngr, if þou felist *Hernia ventosa*
 16 no watrynes þeron, ne heuynes; þe cure herof is with *electuari* maad of greynes of lauri & opere þingis þat schulen be said in þe chapitre of þe dropesi in tympanido.⁴ ¶ If it be superfluite of fleisch, þat þou myzte wite wip þi fyngr, it wole be hard,⁵ þe cure herof mai not be *is treated with an electuary.*
 20 do, but if þou kutte þe skyn þat is wipoute & drawe out þe mater, & þan soude it, & if it be in þe oon part hard & callous, & in þat oper part neische, þan it is better þat þou sette noon hand þeron, & principali if it be blac & ledi. ¶ *Varicosa* schal be curid wip *Hernia Carnosa.*
 24 gotis whey, & with epithimo, & wip purgaciouns of malancolious blood, & þan leie þerto þingis þat ben wastynge / *Cut the skin and remove the matter.*
Varicosa.

¶ Of a stoon in þe bladdre & reynis /⁶

28 **A** stoon in a man is engendrid of plente of ⁷grete humouris ¶ *vii^{jo}. co.*
 wipinne a man, as we moun se an ensample wipoutforþ of *[⁷ If, 190, bk.]*
 opere þingis, in þe maner þat men brennen tilis in a furneis. þei A stone in the bladder or the reins arises from a superfluity of the humours and great heat, as tiles get hard in the fire.
 maken first þe tilis of strong cley þat is viscous, & whanne þei han schape it as þei wolen, þan þei leie it in þe sunne to drie / &
 32 þan þei doon hem in a furneis wip fier. & þe stronger fier þat þe

¹ Some words are wanting. Lat.: *quæ si sit parua, sufficit tibi medicamen consumens.*

³ Lat.: *Ventosa cognoscitur per tumorem non lucentem.*

⁴ Lat.: in hydropisi tympanite. See p. 282.

⁵ Lat.: *Signum hernie carnosæ est . . . quod sentis, cum tangis, testiculos dura carne circumvolutos.*

⁶ Compare *Celsus Medicina*, lib. VII., cap. 26. The later authors followed more or less closely.

tilis han, þe stronger þei wolen be, & riȝt so in a mannes bodi, whanne a man haþ miche viscous matere in his bodi & mai not be putt out for febilnes of expulcioun, & þan scharp hete specialy in þe reines falliþ to þat mater & makith it hard, & in þis maner 4 engendriþ þe stoon in þe reynes. ¶ Also in children a stoon engendriþ in her bladdre; for þe reynes of a child ben not so hote as a mannes / In þis maner þou schalt knowe wher þe stoon be in a mannes bladdre or in his reynes¹ / If þe grauel of his vrine be 8 whit: þan þe stoon is in þe bladdre / And if þe grauel be reed, þan it is in his reynes² / ¶ Summen þat ben hardi wolen asaie for to cure a man wiþ kuttinge þat haþ þe stoon in his reynes; for þei knowiþ³ not þe perel of woundis þat falliþ in þe reynes þat I haue 12 aforseid, & þan þei doiþ no more saue bringe þe pacient to his deef. ¶ Now I wole teche in what maner a man schal kepe him þat is disposid to haue þe stoon, he schal ete no metis þat ben viscous ne to scharpe, & tofore alle þingis hard chese gaderiþ viscous 16 mater & hard. & he schal ete no beef, ne no fleisch of a goos, ne no grete briddis þat swymmeþ in þe water, & he schal ete no fleisch of an hert, & he schal ete no swete breed,⁴ & al maner mete þat is maad of swete past, & he schal ete no whete soden, & he schal ete 20 no maner þing þat is maad of milk saue þe whey, & he schal drinke no coold watir, & he schal ete no fruitis þat ben of greet substantunce, as applis, peris, & he schal drinke no newe wijn, ne no wijn of greet substantunce, & he schal ete no þingis þat is to myche 24 salt, & he schal absteyne him fro alle þingis þat engendriþ scharpe humours & grete, & he schal not ete to greet sauly⁵ / In þis maner he schal diete him-silf, he schal ete breed þat is wel leuened / &

Nota

The position of the stone is detected by the colour of the urinary sediments.

[3 17. 191]

Rules of dieting for a man, who is disposed to get a stone.

He shall abstain from sweet things, milk, cold water, apples, pears,

new wine, salted things.

He shall take well-fermented bread,

¹ Barth. *De propr. Trevisa*, lib. VII., cap. 54, indicates another symptom. Add. MS. 27, 944. fol. 96. "And if þe ston is in þe reynes hit is i-knowe by slepinge of þe fote and in þe ioyntes of þe lift side, and if it is in þe bladder þe ache is in þe schare and þe twist bitwene þe genetras and þe hole at þe rigge bones ende."

² The translator omits the passage about the causes of stone in general, about the stone in the reins and its treatment. The following sentence, *þat I haue aforseid*, refers to this omitted part. The author says that he will speak about the causes and treatment of the stone in the reins, although it does not properly belong to surgery. Lat.: Ego vero, licet liber iste meus de cirurgia dicatur, et ad instrumentum cyrurgicum de lapide renum tractare non pertineat, tamen quoniam multum assimilatur in causis et curis, quamvis dissimiletur in signis et curis. Et quum ad curas lapidum renum multotiens sum vocatus, propter gratiam scholarium modum quo usus sum in utriusque lapidis curatione, causas, signa, et differentias ponere non postponam.

⁴ Lat.: a pane azymo. ἄζυμος, unleavened.

⁵ Compare p. 272, note 6.

- his breed wole be þe¹ bettir for him if^t it^e be medlid wiþ poudre [¹ lf. 191, bk.]
 maad of fenel-seed & persil, & he schal drinke sutil wijn & cleer, mild wine,
 medlid wiþ fair cleer water / And if^t his reynes & his bowels weren
 4 hote, þan he mai drinke coold water þat^e be fair & clene, & he mai
 ete fleisch of capouns & hennes & chickenes, & partrichis, & of^t meat of
 alle opere maner of briddis þat^e mouen in feeldis, & of hem þat^e chickens,
 woneþ in watir he schal not^e etc. & he mai ete pork & motoun & pork, mut-
 8 principali of beestis þat^e ben gildid, & he mai ete fleisch of^t .iij. ton, gelded
 daies poudringe,² & he mai ete feel,³ & he mai ete eiren þat^e ben beasts and
 neische soden; fisch þat^e haþ no schellis & þe substaunce of him be veal.
 greet & hard, he schal not^e ete þerof / Alle maner fisch þat^e haþ Fishes with
 12 manie schellis, is better þan he þat^e haþ no schellis / And of erbis: scales are
 he schal ete fenel, ache, persil, sperge, attriplicem,⁴ spinochia & better than
 boraginem, erucam, melones, cucumeris, & he schal be war þat^e he those with-
 ete no substaunce of caul, & he schal ete no mustard / And he mai out.
 16 ete þese maner fruits: almaundis, auellanes, figis, notis, vuas bene The herbs
 maturas. & he schal not^e traucile to miche⁶ aftir mete, & he schal and the kind
 bere noon heuy birþuns, ne he schal not^e be girt^e to streite, & he of fruit he
 schal not^e slepe vpon his reynes. & if^t his reynes ben to hote, þan may take.
 20 he schal anoynte hem wiþ oile of rosis, medlid wiþ vinegre, & he
 schal anointe his reynes wiþ a lynnene cloof wet in iuys of colde
 erbis, & he schal absteyne him fro wommen, & he schal touche no
 womman to make him haue appetit^e þerto / for greet medlynge wiþ
 24 wymmen wiþ greet^e traueile achauit^e a mannes reynes & consumeþ
 her natural moistnes / Who so euere vsiþ þis regimen, he schal haue
 no drede of engendringe of þe stoon / Who so vsiþ þis regimen⁷ & If a stone be-
 is disposid for to haue þe stoon, with medicyns he schal do it awei gins to form,
 28 or it^e be confermed. He schal vse sirupis durentikis⁸: as oximel use a diuretic
 diureticum & squilliticum,⁹ or he schal vse a sirup þat^e auicen syrup.
 made / R, aquæ li. x, aceti li. ß, medle hem togidere & boile hem
 wiþ ʒ. iij of rotis of ache, & rotis of fenel ʒ. iij, and fenel-seed &

Nota

He shall
anoint his
loins and ab-
stain from
women.

R

² *fleisch of iii daies poudringe.* Lat.: porcos trium dierum salitos. Compare *Liber Cure Coc.*, p. 6. To powder befe within a nyȝt.

³ *feel*, vitulus. O.Fr. veel.

⁴ *Attriplex*, *Chenopodium vulvaria*. *Alphita*, p. 16. "Attriplex agrestis, crissolocanna idem ang. mieldē." O.E. *melde*, Leechd. III. Gloss. Compare Germ. *Molten*, *Milten*. Dessen.

⁵ *not*, above line.

⁷ Lat. Qui vero tali non utitur regimine.

⁸ Traheron translation of Vigou's *Chirurgery*. Interpret.: "Diuretike. Diuretyke prouokyng vrine, or that hath vertue to prouoke vrine."

⁹ Traheron, *ibid.* "Squyllitike vinaygre is made with the rootes of the greate oynion, called sqylla, or Seylla dryed, and with vynaygre."

ache ana ʒ. j, sepe hem alle togidere til þe .iiij. part be consumed
 awei, & þan cole hem & do þerto li. x of sugre, & þan clarifie it &
 [1 lf. 192, bk.] sepe it¹ & kepe it for þin vss // The vss of þis sirip wole suffise for
 to do it awei; but if þe mater be þe more greet, & þan þou miȝt do 4
 þerto if þou wolt oximel squilliticum, or þou miȝt ordeine þe sirip
 wip modicis² erbis diureticis. ¶ þer is no þing so good for to
 The best way
 to purge the
 kidneys is
 vomiting.
 R̄ purgē mater of þe reines as is castynge / for whi castinge curiþ
 vlcera of þe reynes / In þe somer þou schalt make him oonys in þe 8
 moneþe sich a maner of vomēt / Take þe seed of raphani & make
 it clene & kutte it ouerþwert in rollis, & lete þis lie in þe forseid
 sirup .ʒ. iiij. adai & anyȝt / & þan lete þe pacient ete diuers metis,
 as chese, oynouns, salt fisch & þingis þat mai make him drinke 12
 wel; & lete him drinke diuers wynes, saue the while he is fastinge,
 and first a
 preparation
 of radish with
 syrup,
 then put
 compresses
 on his eyes
 lete him ete 3 notis of þe forseid rollis of raphani þat lay in þe
 forseid sirup, & whanne he hath ete his saule & drunke, þan binde
 vpon his ȝen neische lynet or flex, & streyne þou not it to harde 16
 but meneli. & þan take watir in which has been soden anetum
 til it bicome reed, & take þerof li. j., & medle it wip þe sirup þat
 [3 lf. 193]
 and give an
 emetic.
 radix raphani lay þerinne, & make him³ drinke vp al togidere, &
 þan he schal caste vp al his mete & al his drink, & manye wickede 20
 humours þerwip. & þan make him gadere out þe foul mater of his
 nose, & waische his moup & his teep; þis medicyn wole do awei þe
 mater of þe stoon & purge wel his reynes, þis is þe best medicyn
 þat mai be, for to kepe a man fro þe stoon. 24

¶ If þe man be not hool in þis maner, saue þe stoon is con-
 fermed fast, þan þe cure þerof mai be in .ij. maners: þat oon is for
 to aswage þe akyngē, & þat oper is for to breke þe stoon & putte
 him out // Whanne a man haþ greet akyngē in his reynes & in his 28
 bladdre, & þou wotist wel it ben signes of þe stoon, first þou schalt
 make him a clisterie wip a decoccioun of herbis þat ben mollificatif
 & durentik: as malua, violae, bismalue, fenigreci, paritaria, apij,
 fenicli, petrosilij scolopendrie, spergi, brusci,⁴ sauine, ebuli, sambuci. 32
 & if it be in winter do þerto calamentum, pulegium, origanum, se-
 men fenicli, apij, petrosilij, carui, aneti, leuistici,⁵ dauci, milij solis,⁶
 [7 lf. 193, bk.] eruce, quatuor semina frigidorum, & impone mel, ⁷sal, oleum camo-

² MS. *modin's*.⁴ *brusci*, *Ruscus aculeatus*, wild myrtle.⁵ *Alphita*, p. 98: "Leuisticus, keisim idem angl. loueache."⁶ MS. *solus*. *Alphita*, p. 117, "*Milium solis*, granum solis, cauda pecorina idem. g°. et a°. gromel." Phillips: "*Milium solis*, the Herb Gromwell."

- mille*, & scharpe it wip *benedicta*,¹ and make perof a clisterie, & þe patient schal holde it wipinne him longe tyme, & after þis clisterie do him in to a particular baþ, & lete him sitte þeron anoon to þe
4 nauele, & in his baþ schulen be soden leeuës of malue, peritorie, viole, senacion, scutella panici pistati & cortice mundati; þis maner baþ as I haue ofte preued, it aswaged akinge / & whanne he goiþ out of his baþ, make an enplastre of mele, oile & watir, as þou
8 schalt fynde in þe antidotarie in þe c°. of maturatiuis, & leie vpon þe place þere þe passioun is / If þou knowist wel þat þe stoon
falliþ adoun of þe reynes toward þe bladdre bi þe weie of þe vrine, sette þan vndir þe place þere it akiþ,² *sichiam*³ wip fier wipout ony
12 kuttynge, for þis wole drawe adoun þe stoon. & as þe stoon discendiþ adoun to *sichiam* to sette it lower til he come anoon to þe bladdre, & þan al þe akynges wole go awei. ¶ Tofore alle þingis
fildonium⁴ is good, þat þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie of auicen, The best medicine is the Philonium.
16 for þat is a sure medicyn in þis caas. ¶ Anoper medicyn þat auicen made, & I haue preued it, and it⁵ doiþ awei akynges þat is in vlceribus renū. R̄, *seminis iusquiami albi* .3. ℥, opij, grana .iiij, *seminum citruli*, lactuce, portulace, ana .3. j., medle al togidere Another medicine of Avicenna.
20 & 3eue herof .3. ij. wip sugre. ¶ And þis þou muste wite þat þou schalt 3eue þe patient no þing for to make him pisse whan his
akinge is strong, & whanne his vrine is stoppid; for þat wole make þe more akinge / It is perel of þis passioun, for þe akynges is so
24 greet sumtyme þat þe patient haþ þe spasme þerwip & is deed þerwip, saue þou schalt do awei his akynges wip bapinge & enplastris
& anoyntynge, & þane aftirward þou schalt make him medicyns for to breke þe stoon & putte him out wip þe vryne / R̄, *cretani*
28 *marini*,⁶ *scolopendrie*, *capillis veneris*, spice celtice, ana .3. ij., *radix fenicli*, apij, *petrosilij*, *spergi*, *brusci*, *cicore*, *graminis*, *filipendule*, *genciane*, *saxifrage*, *squille*, *asse*, ana .3. j., *iiij^{or} semina frigidorum*, *seminum fenicli*, apij, *coriandri*, *scariolē*,⁷ *granorum iuniperi*, *nucleum*
R̄

One must not give diuretic medicines to the patient.

A medicine to break the stone.

¹ *benedicta*. Lat. cum *benedicta Nicolai*.

² MS. *makip*. Lat. sub loco doloris.

³ *sichiam*. Lat. *syciam* G. *σικνος*, the common cucumber. "A figuræ vel formæ similitudine Cucurbitæ vel cucurbitulæ medicis dicuntur vascula illa, quæ cuti cum flamma affigi solent, cum vel sine scarificatione." Castelli, Lex. medicum.

⁴ *fildonium*. Lat. *philonium romanum*. Matth. Sylv.: "Filonium i. nouus amicus & est confectio quedam sic uocata." Galen, ed. Kuehn, vol. xvii. B. 331, *φάρμακον φιλώνειον*. An electuary with Opium, so called from Philo of Tharsus.

⁶ *Crithmum maritimum*, L.

⁷ Sin. Barth.: "Scariola, lactucella, lactuca agrestis idem, an. sowe-thistel."

cerasorum, milij solis, ana . $\bar{3}$ Ω . fiat sirupus cum duabus partibus
 zucari, & *tercia mellis squillitici*, & it¹ schal be take wip a decoccioun
 [1 lf. 194, bk.] of *tribulorum* & *cicerum rubeorum*, pis eletuarie is ¹ of auicen
 R⁷
 A medicine
 made of
 Avicenna. makynge / R⁷, *cineris vitris*, *caulis*, *cineris leporis combusti*, *cineris* 4
scorpionis, *cineris testi oui*,² *lapidis spongie*, *lapidis iudaici*, *sanguinis*
hirci sicci, *gummi nucis acori*, ana .3. j. *seminis petrosilij*, *dauci*,
pulegij, *gummi arabici*, *seminis albi piperis* ana .3. j., *auri* .3. iiij.,
balsami .3. Ω , *muscati* .3. j., make alle pese wip good hony pat it⁸
 be whit & clene, & pou schalt zeue .3. iiij. perof, & .iiij. tymes in
 pe woke. ¶ Also a good medicyn for pe stoon pat is comen to a
 mannes reynes & in his bladdre / Take a litil hare pat bledde
 R⁷
 The ashes of
 a hare burnt
 alive. neuere blood, & do him in an erpen vessel³ wel glasisd wipinne wip a 12
 couerle of pe same mater, & stoppe it faste, pat per mowe come out
 perof no fume, wip good lute or wip past, & sette pis vessel in a
 furneis til pe hare be bcome al aischis, & pan grinde it & kepe it,
 & zeue him perof .3. j. whanne he goip out of his bapinge pat is 16
 forseid, wip a decoccioun of *tribulorum*, & hony. I have preued
 pat pis medicyn is good, & also pou mizt medle wip pis poudre,
 triacle / And pis schal be pin entencioun for to zeue him medicyns
 pat ben not strong for to breke pe stoon, as saxifrage & cantarides 20
 [4 lf. 195]
 as it might
 hurt the
 kidneys. & opere strong medicyns pat pilip pe reynes. & if pe patient
 haue drie reynes & he be leene of bodi, pan in pis caas .3. j. of
 Rasis makynge is good / R⁷, *semina melonum mundatorum* .3. xxx,
 A medicine
 of Rasis. *seminis citruli*, *seminis portulace*, *seminis cucurbite*, *seminis papau-* 24
 R⁷ *eris albi* ana .3. iij, *seminis iusquiami albe* .3. ij., zucari *pondus*
omnium,⁵ saue I do perto pe double weizte of sugre /

The patient
 suffers from
 strangury,
 if the stone
 is in the
 neck of the
 bladder.

Remove the
 stone with
 the finger as
 with a
 syringe.

If pe stoon be in his bladdre, pan pou schalt worche in pis
 maner / First pou schalt take kepe wher he haue stranguria. pat 28
 pou mizt wite if he makip watir droppynli & a litil at oonys, &
 hap greet penaunce in his bladdre. pan pe stoon is in pe necke of
 pe bladdre; pan pou schalt make him a clisterie mollificatif pat pou
 mowe avoide his bowels, & pan pou schalt frote his noseprillis with 32
 watir,⁶ & pou schalt presse litzly pe place of his ars pereaboute pat
 pou supposit pat pe stoon sittip. & if he remeue not in pis maner,
 pan pou schalt putte in *siryngam* litzli in pe condijt of his zerde til
 he come to pe stoon. & if pou myzt not putte it awei in pis maner, 36

² *testi oui*. Lat. *testæ oui*.

³ Lat.: pone ipsum vinum in olla terrea.

⁵ Lat. ad pondus omnium.

⁶ Lat.: faciendo egrum leuare nates. The translator read: lauare nares.

- þan putte þi fyngir in ¹his ers, & þere þou schalt fele þe stoon, & [1f. 195, bk.]
 helpe wiþ þi fyngir for to putte it away. Whanne þe stoon is
 remeued, þan þe pacient mai make watir, þan his akinge wole ceesse,
 4 & þan þou schalt go to þe cure. First þou schalt make him a When the stone is removed into the bladder, try to break the stone with an internal treatment, a bath,
 clisterie of duritikis / in which schulen be medicyns þat haue pro-
 priete for to breke þe stoon, & þan sette þe pacient in a baþ þat is
 forseid. & a litil tofore or he go out of his baþ, ȝeue him of þe
 8 poudre of þe hare þat is forseid. & whanne he comeþ out of þe
 baþ, leie þis enplastre vpon þe place þat is clepid pectinis.² Rȝ, foli-
 orum nasturcij aquatici,³ & foliorum apiȝ .ana. M j, & grinde hem and a plaster.
 wel wiþ grese. & whanne þei ben medlid togidere in þe mortar, þan
 12 hete hem a litil ouer þe fier & leie it vpon, & eueri dai in þre daies
 contynuely þou schalt sette him in þe forseid baþ, & leie vpon þe
 forseid plastre, & ȝeue him of þe forseid poudre. þis cure is good
 & I haue preued it //
- 16 If alle þese medicyns availiþ not, þan þou muste drawe out þe If these medicines do not avail, operate.
 stoon wiþ kuttynge or þe patient falle into etikis.⁴ & if þou wolt
 drawe ⁵out a stoon of þe bladdre wiþ kuttynge, þan þou muste ap-
 paraile⁶ alle þingis þat ben necessarie for þee: as sirupis & ligaturis,
 20 & þan þou schalt binde his hipis & his leggis faste, þat he mowe
 not meue, for to lette þee whanne þou wolt kutte him. & þanne
 þou schalt anoynte þi longist fyngir of þi lift hond & þi pombe wiþ
 oile, & þou schalt putte hem in þe pacientis ers, saue first þou schalt First use a Clisterie,
 24 avoide him wiþ a clisterie mollificatif, & þou schalt sette⁷ þi riȝt
 hond vpon his ers, and grope softli, where þe stoon be, & putte him
 to þe hedis of þi fyngiris. & whanne þou myȝt take þe stoon wiþ þi
 .ij. fyngiris, þan þou schalt putte him to þe necke of þe bladdre feel for the stone, hold it between the fingers,
 28 toward þe ballokis as myche as þou myȝt. & þan þou schalt fele þe
 hardnes of þe stoon bitwixe his ers, & þe ballokis þat is in þe necke
 of þe bladdre. þan þou schalt wiþ þi riȝt hond take a rasour, & then cut out the stone with a razor.
 kutte faste by þe preed þat goiþ bitwixe þe ers & þe ballokis ende-
 32 longis, saue þou schalt take þe stoon wiþ þi .ij. fyngiris þat þe stoon
 mowe come out. & þanne ioyne wel þe lippis of ⁸þe wounde to-
 gidere, þan þou schalt sewe [not]⁹ oonly þe skyn aboue, but þou

² Lat.: supra locum pectinis. Os pectinis, the share-bone.

³ Nasturtium aquaticum, watercress.

⁴ etikis, Lat.: antequam æger incurrat hecticam. O.Fr. étique. Med. Lat. Ethica uel Ethica febris. Dufr.

⁶ appaile. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. apparel, v. 1., to make ready, prepare.

⁷ sette, above line.

⁹ not, wanting. Lat.: et labia vulneris optime jungas non solum in superficie.

[8 1f. 196, bk.]
and sew the wound.

Nota
Children who
are fourteen
years old, are
most fit for
this treat-
ment.
Younger
children and
old men are
not fit,

although
some people
say the con-
trary.

If the stone
cannot be
brought to
the neck of
the bladder,

you must
first break
it before
cutting.

Beware.

Do not cut,
if the stone
is small.

[c. 11. 197, bk.]

schalt^t sewe al þe depnes of þe wounde togidere, & þan þou schalt
springe þeron poudre þat^t is aforseid to woundis. & þan þou schalt^t
binde it^t with boondis & lynt^t til þe wounde be perfitli hool / In þis
caas þou muste take kepe of manye þingis / First^t þou muste take 4
kepe of þe age of þe pacient, for children þat^t ben xiiij. wintir oold
ben moost^t able for þis cure,¹ for her lymes ben tendir ynow³, & in
þat^t elde þei ben strong^t ynow³ for to be maad hool, & her com-
plexioun is hoot^t & moist^t. Jonge children & olde men ben not^t able 8
to be kutt^t, for in þe kuttinge of hem enpostyms wolen engendre
hastili, & þat^t wole lette þe vrine & make more akyng, & so þei
mizten falle in-to þe spasme, & so wiþ þe spasme þei mizt^t be deed /
Summen seien þat^t olde men ben able to be kutt^t, for her blood is 12
miche laskid² & her hete, & þerfore þei ben not^t able to take an
enpostym; þerfore þei ben moost^t able to be kutt^t of þe stoon /
Summen seien þat^t her lymes ben to drie & her vertues ben to feble /
[c. 11. 197] 3 & þerfore þei ben not^t able to be kutt^t, & herwiþ I acorde / þese .ij. 16
þingis: engendrynge of an enpostym, & if þe place þat^t is kutt^t
wole not^t soude, þese .ij. bringiþ perel of deep / Also þou muste
take kepe of þe schap of þe stoon, & what^t quantite þat^t he be, for
if þe stoon be .ij. forkid⁴ or cornerid, or so greet^t þat^t he may not^t 20
be brouzt^t into þe necke of þe bladdre, þan þou schalt^t in no maner
kutte him, but^t if þou mizt^t first^t wiþ þin hond breke þe stoon. &
þan if þou mizt^t not^t bringe it^t out^t at oonys, þan in diuers tymes
þou schalt^t gadere him out^t.⁵ ¶ And if þe stoon be so greet^t þat^t he 24
mai not^t be brouzt^t into þe necke of þe bladdre, þan þou schalt^t in no
maner kutte him, forwhi he mai not^t be brouzt^t out^t, but^t if þou
woldist^t kutte þe substaunce of þe bladdre & þat^t were mortal; but^t
þou schalt^t put^t him to þe botme of þe bladdre wiþ instrumentis, & 28
teche þe patient for to kepe him in þat^t maner þat^t þe stoon falle not^t
into þe necke of þe bladdre / Also if he be so sutil þat^t he mai not^t
be felid wiþ þin hond, þan þou schalt^t not^t kutte him neiper. & if þe
[c. 11. 197, bk.] patient mai be hool in ony⁶ maner, [n]or kutt^t wiþouten passioun, it^t 32

¹ De propr. rer. Add. 27,944, fol. 96: " & somtyme þey schal be take to surgerye and namelich children and þan zongelinge. For in elde kernynge is perilous, for aftir fourty zere þis euil is incurable as it is i-said in amphor.:"^a aftir fourti zere he þat hap þe ston is nouzt i-saned."

² Celsus Lib. VII. Cap. 26, ed. Daremberg, p. 307: "As neque omni tempore, neque in omni ætate, neque in omni vitio id experiendum est: sed solo vere; in eo corpore, quod jam novem annos, nondum quatuordecim excessit."

⁴ ij forkid, diffurcatus.

⁵ Lat.: "pluribus vicibus educatur."

^a Rhazes, Aphorismi.

- is better þat¹ he be nouȝt¹ kutt² þan he be kutt². for men þat¹ ben so kutt¹ schulen neuere gete children, but if it be þe more hap³; & also it is perilous for to kutte / & þerfore I rede þee take þat¹ wyn-
 4 nunge⁴ to opere cirurgians. ¶ Ful ofte tyme men leie me to scorn, for I wolde not entermete me of sich curis, & seide þat¹ I lefte siche maner curis, for I coude not do it, & þe same þei seide of men þat¹ weren filme broke,⁵ & of men þat¹ weren in þe dropesie. & I lefte
 8 þe curis þerof for perels þat¹ miȝte folowe / ffor if a kunnyng man entermetid him of sich a cure, & if þer fil ony yuele happis to þe patient, þan wolen vnkunnyng lechis seie þat¹ þei han do þat¹ cure ful ofte, & so he mai be brouȝt into an yuel looss þerbi; for blame
 12 & for perels I wolde not vse kutyngis / þese ben yuele happis þat falliþ to a man þat¹ is kutt¹: as greet akyng vnder þe nauele, & hise lymes bicomith coold, & atach of þe feure,⁶ & greet akinge in þe place þat¹ was kutt¹, alle þese signes ben signes of deef / Good signes
 16 herof ben þese: strenkþe of vrine, & þat¹ he mowe go to priuy wel & þat¹ he haue good appetit to mete. ¶ Sumtyme it falliþ bi strenkþe, þe stoon is putt into þe ȝerde. & þat¹ I say [in] a man, þat¹ his vryne was stoppid .v. daies in þe same maner, & I drowe
 20 him out wiþ instrumentis wiþouten ony kutyng. & if þe stoon sitte in þe canel of þe ȝerde, & þou maist not bringe him out wiþ þi fyngris, þan þou schalt binde his ȝerde bihinde þe stoon, þat¹ þe stoon mowe not go into þe bladdre aȝen. & þan grope þe stoon softli
 24 wiþ þi .ij. fyngris, & kutte endelongis, as it is aforseid, a litil hole, as miche as þou miȝt drawe out þe stoon, & þane cure þe wounde as it is aforseid /⁸

People who are operated upon, never get children.

I was often scorned because I would not undertake these cures.

A good physician may get a bad reputation by some mishap.

Fatal symptoms after operation are: great pain, coldness of the limbs and fever.

Good symptoms are a [7 ff. 198]

strong urine, a good appetite.

Sometimes the stone is removed through the Urethra.

ffor to drawe out watir of men þat han þe dropesie /⁹

- 28 **T**Houȝ þis book be maad oonli of cirurgie, ȝitt it is myn enten- ¶ 20. 00.
 cioun to speke of þe dropesie, & princpaly þat¹ ben wrouȝt

¹ MS. þan.

² & if þe patient . . . þan he be kutt, an insertion.

³ Lat.: "Considera quoque quod sæpe per loci nominati incisionem generatio prohibetur."

⁴ þat wyngunge, Lat.: sed aliis cupidis chirurgis dimitte illa lucrari. *Cath. Angl.*, p. 420, "Wynninge, Emolumentum, lucrum."

⁵ of men þat weren filme broke, Lat. de ruptorum incisura.

⁶ atach of þe feure, attack of fever. See later references in *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. attach, sb.

⁸ The translator has omitted one chapter: De clauso hermaphrodito & additione panniculi mulieris doctrinæ tertie, tractatus tertii, Cap. IX.

⁹ The four kinds of dropsy are mentioned in *De propr. rerum*, Lib. VII., Cap. 52, Add. 27,944, fol. 94 b.: "De firste dropesye hatte leucofleuma, and

The dropsy is a compound disease, caused by superfluity of matter.

[1 lf. 198, bk.]
The men of Salerne distinguish four kinds of dropsy.

The Arabs only three:

yposarca,
Aschites,

Tympanites.

There is cold matter in all these kinds of dropsy, the exciting cause may be heat or coldness.

When the liver is diseased, cold phlegmatic matter is produced.

[5 lf. 199]

The Salernitanians say that dropsy is caused by a debility of the liver, the stomach, or other organs.

Some physicians say that the urine will be red if there is a hot cause,

wiþ mannes hond. ¶ I seie þat þe dropesie is a sjuknes compound in which superflue mater þat is coold swellip þe body / Men of salerne seiden þat þere weren .iiij. maner spicis of dropesie, & .iiij. maner dropesies. But auctours of arabie acorden alle at ¹oonys,² 4 & seien soop þat þer ben but .iiij. maner dropesies,³ & þat oon comeþ of rawe blood, of raw fleume medlid wiþ blood, & is bore into al þe bodi, & swellip al þe bodi, & is clepid yposarca. þat oþer is of mater of ȝelowȝ water & fallip into þe holownes of þe wombe, 8 & is clepid aschites / þe .iiij. is engendrid of greet wynd resolved of coold mater, & fallip into þe holownes of þe wombe, & is clepid tympanites. Of þis ydropesie summen iugiþ liztli, & seien þat yposarca comeþ of coold alwei, & tympanites comeþ sumtyme of 12 wynd & of hete, but moost comounli of cooldnes / Aschites comith moost of hete, & ful selden of cooldnes / but for to seie þe soþe, alle þe spicis ben medlid with coold mater, & þerfore he seiþ soop þat clepip eueri ydropesie coold mater,⁴ for euery spice of þe dropesie 16 mai come of hete or of cooldnes goynge tofore. ¶ þer is no þing þat defendip, þat whanne þe lyuere is hoot out of hir propir hete, or if al þe bodi is distemp[er]id in hete, as in feueris, þe patient mai so miche be feblid þerwiþ, þat it may engendre coold mater & fleu- 20 matik / Ful ofte I haue had þis caas / ⁵þerfore auctouris seien þat þe dropesie comith of þe febilnes of þe lyuere / þerfore men of salerne seien þat it comeþ of defeaute of digestioun of þe lyuere. & it comeþ of takinge of yuele metis & drinkis, & of febilnes of 24 oþere lymes, as of þe stomak, & of þe reynes, & of þe maris, & of þe lungis, & of diafragma. & whanne þese lymes ben enfeblid, þan þe lyuere enfebliþ // Therefore it is necessarie for a leche to wite⁶ wher it comeþ of causis goinge tofore hoot or coold / And summe 28 lechis halden hem paid for to haue a sizt of þe vrine, & iugiþ þe dropesie hoot & coold bi þe sizt of þe vryne / for if þe vrine be reed, þei wolen iuge þat þe cause is hoot, & in þis maner þei ben

comeþ of distemperaunce of coldnesse and drinesse, & haþ þat name of white fleume for leucos is white. ¶ Þe secounde hatte yposarca opir anasarca, and comeþ of distemperaunce of coolde and of drynes. The þridde hatte aschites and comeþ of distemperaunce of hete & moisture. Þe ferþe hatte tympanytes & comeþ of distemperaunce of hete & drinesse."

² acorden alle at oonys, Lat. in una convenient. Comp. Reliqu. Antiqu. I. 233, accorde in one. (N. E. Dict., s. v. accord v. 5.)

³ Lanfranc follows Avicenna, Lib. III, Fen. 14, Tract. 4, Cap. 4, ed. Ven. 1527, fol. 238 b.

⁴ Lat.: omnem egritudinem ydropicam appellat materialem frigidam.

⁶ to wite, above line.

disseyued / ¶ Forwhi, in what maner so þe lyuere be enfeblid of
 coold cause or of hoot, it wole make his vrine reed / For sumtyme
 a man mai not ȝeue a discrecioun¹ of blood fro vrine, for a litil
 blood colourid miche vrine, riȝt as a litil saffron colouriþ miche
 water / þerfor of what cause so it be þat his lyuere be enfeblid,
 his vrine mai schewe reed. ¶ Also þe signes of yposarcha & aschites
 & tympanite ben open ynow³. ²In þis maner þou schalt knowe hem / [² If. 199, bk.]
 8 In yposarcha al þe bodi swellip, as his face, & his armis, & his rigge-
 boon, & his necke, & alle his lymes, so þat in what partie of his
 bodi þat þou pressist þi fyngir þere wole be a pitt. & whanne þe
 fyngir is aweie it wole arise aȝen / & it is a greet maistrie for to
 12 knowe wheþer yposarcha come of coold cause tofore goyng or of
 hoot cause / If it comeþ of coold goinge tofore, þan his ȝen wolen
 be discolourid as it were þe colour of askis, or pale³ / If it come of
 hete goinge tofore, þan his ȝen wolen be ȝelow³ or sumwhat reed /
 16 & þou muste wite, wheþer he had a feure tofore or haue þe feure
 fortis þerwip / or if he hadde þere tofore an hoot enpostym þerwip,
 ouþer he haue enpostym þerwip / þese ben þe propre signes of
 aschites, þat his face, & his necke, & his brest, & his armis
 20 bicomit^h smal, & his vois schal bicomme smal, & his wombe schal
 oonli swelle. & sumtyme in þe firste bigynnyng⁴ his feet & his
 leggis wolen swelle in þe firste bigynnyng^e, for þe greet strenkþe of
 þe mater þat makip it falle adoun. & if þou ⁴smite his⁵ wombe, he
 24 wole sowne as it were a touȝt leþer ful of wynd⁶ / þese ben þe
 propre signes of tympanites: his wombe & þe regioun of his stomac
 schulen oonly be to-swolle, & alle his opere lymes, boþe his feet, &
 his leggis, & his necke, & his armis wolen bicomme smal, & if þou
 28 smitist him vpon his wombe, it wole soune as it were a tympan /
 & in þis passioun þer is lasse agreuance þan in aschite & more
 swellynge. & if þou pressist his wombe, þou schalt fynde it streite
 as it were a corde. & þou schal fele no meuyng of water, whanne
 32 þe pacient turneþ him from o side to anoþer / Curis herof þou schalt
 fynde ynowe in bokis of phisik / For I nyle telle but fewe medicyns
 þerfore, I haue longe tyme vsid.

¶ Whanne þou wolt ordeine regimen on yposarcha, ȝeue him

¹ ȝeue a discrecioun, discernere.

³ Lat.: conjunctiva oculi est valde discolorata, cinericia vel pallida.

⁵ MS. his, twice.

⁶ Lat.: auditur quasi sonus vtrius de corio vino pleni.

but a little
blood colours
much urine.

Signys of
yposar-
ca are a general
swelling of
the body.

If the cause
is cold, the
eyes will be
pale;
they are
yellow or red,
if there is a
hot cause.

The signs of
ascites are
a wasting of
the limbs and
a swelling of
the belly.

[⁴ If. 200]

Signes of
tympanites.
They are the
same as in
ascites, but
there is less
pain and
more swell-
ing.

Make the patient who suffers from Hyposarcho sweat, in summer in hot sand or on a sunny hill,
[³ lf. 200, bk.] in winter in a hot-house.

R̄

Prescription, how to make the decoction.

R̄

How to make the troches.

R̄

The Agaric-pills.
Treatment of Ascites.

The disease is almost fatal, if the cause is hot.

[³ lf. 201]

If there is a cold cause, and if the patient is strong,

give him rhubarb-pills;

trociscus de lactea¹ cum apozimate² de radicibus fro þe firste dai to þe .iiij., & zeue him pelottis de agarico. & whanne þe swellinge bigynneþ to go away, if it be in somer, þan þou schalt hele al his bodi in hcoþt gravel þere þe sunne mai zeue greet hete, or lete him 4 sitte vpon an hiȝ hil þere þe ³sunne schineþ hoot, þat he mai swete wel, & þat his bodi mai wexe hoot wipoute & wipinne. & if it be in winter, putte him in a drie stewe, so þat þe watir come not niȝ him. þus þou schalt make apozima of rotis / R̄, corticis fenicli, 8 apij, [ana drac.]⁴ .x., seminum [apii] squinantum, ameos, ana. 3 .v., rosarum rubiarum, spicenarde ana .3 .iiij, seþe hem in li .ij. of watir til þei come to li .j., cole hem & kepe þe colature. & if þou doist þerinne a litil hony it wole be þe better / Trocisci de lacte ben 12 maad in þis maner / R̄, rubarbe, lacte, ana [drac iii.], seminis apij, spice, ameos, amigdalum amarum, masticis, squinante, seminis iunip[er]i, costi amari,⁵ rubee succi, eupatorij,⁶ aristologie rotundæ, gencian ana .3. ß, make herof gobetis, þe weiȝte of 3 .j., & he schal 16 take oon þerof wip .5 .iiij. of þe forseid pelottis de agarico / R̄, agarici .3 .x., succi eupatorij, rubarbarum, aristologia rotundæ ana 3 .ij, ꝓcare albe .3 .v. & make herof pelottis. & þou schalt zeue herof .3 .ij. 20

If þou seest þat þe cause þat zede tofore þis passioun was hoot, & he make litil vrine & reed, & if his vertu be feble of þe hete, & þou hast dispeir of him,⁷ & if he haue þe feuere þerwip, it is so 8 myche þe worse // If his vrine schewe þat þe cause is coud, & if 24 þe patient be strong ynow, loke if his wombe be hard. & þan make him vse sirup acetose maad wip seedis & sugre, & zeue him þe pelottis of rubarbe þat ben maad in þis maner / R̄, rubarberi, succi eupatorij, seminis endiuie ana. 3. iiij, agarici 3. v., make þerof 28

¹ *lactea*, Lat. lacta. "Lacca, a red transparent Substance made as some say, by winged Arts; as Hony by Bees, and gather'd from a Tree of that Name, in Bengala; Malabar &c. Also a kind of red Gum issuing from certain Trees in Arabia, of which the best Sealing hard Wax is made; often us'd in Painting and Varnishing." Phillips.

² *Apozima*. "Apozeme, a Physical Decoction, a Diet-Drink made of several Roots, Woods, Barks, Herbs, Drugs, Flowers, Seeds, &c., boil'd together." Phillips.

⁴ MS. ß.

⁵ Two kinds of *costus* are mentioned in *Alphita*, p. 46: c. indicus, and c. arabicus.

⁶ *eupatorium*. Add. 15,236, fol. 3 b. (cc. 1300), "*Eupatorium. salvia agrestis idem. G. eupatorie. A. wyldeſage. i. hyndeſale.*"

⁷ þou hast dispeir of him, Lat. de tali ægri salute desperes. Comp. þou schalt neuere þe lattere be in despeir of canteris. Lat. nec propter hoc desperes, p. 311, note 3.

pelettis wip þe iuys of endiue. þou schalt ȝeue him herof at oonys .3 .ij., & euery wike þou schalt ȝeue it oonys / If it so be þat he be feble, & if he mai not take so miche, þan in þe place of þese

if the patient is feble, goblets,

4 pelottis he schal take gobetis þat ben maad in þis maner / R̄, seminis endiue 3 .x., esule,¹ succi eupatorij, agarici, ana. 3 .ij., & .3 .j., rosarum, seminis citrulorum, ana 3 .ij., & make herof .x. gobettis wip a decoccion of fenel in water: ȝeue him oon þerof wip sirupo

R̄

8 acetoso de seminibus. Enplastre² his wombe wip enplastre maad wip .ij. partis of oxis dounge, & oon part of gotis dounge, boli armoniaci, sulphuris, & salis, & distempere hem wip strong vinegre /

and apply a plaster on his belly.

þis is þe cure of tympaniti þat is ful selde curid / & specialy whanne it is entrid into diafragma & is conformed þere / first þou

Treatment of Tympanitis.

12 schalt make him electuari de baccis lauri, & þou schalt make him suppositorijs for to distrie⁴ wynd, & he schal suffre hungir as miche as he mai, & he schal absteyne him fro þingis þat engendriþ

[3 lf. 201, bk.]

16 wijnd, & þou schalt frote his wombe ofte wip a scharp cloof / Electuari de baccis lauri / R̄, foliorum rute .3 .x., ameos, seminum,⁵ nigille,⁶ leuistici,⁷ petrocilij macedonici,⁸ origani,⁹ carui, amigdalorum amarum, piperis longi, mentastri,¹⁰ dauci, acori, baccarum lauri,

Give an electuary R̄

20 castore ana .3 .iiij., serapini .3 .iiij., appoponac .3 .iiij., make herof a lectuarie wip .iiij. so miche of hony, þis electuarie wip consumeþ.

¶ þus þou schalt make suppositorijs for to distrie wijnd / R̄, ciminum, foliorum rute viridis¹¹ ana. ℥ .j., radiceis brionie, radiceis mali

and suppositories. R̄

24 terre, radiceis rafani ana .3 .ij., sal nitri .3 .j., & make herof suppositorijs wip hony. ¶ Whanne þou knowist wel þat þe dropesie is of hoot cause, þan þou schalt not forgete to helpe þe side þat is hoot; & also if þe mater be coold, þou schalt helpe him wip hote þingis.

Suppositorijs.

¹ "Esula, quedam species est titimalli, gallice yesele." *Alphita*, p. 50.

² enplastre, Lat. venter enplastretur. O.Fr. emplastrer. Sl. 277, fol. 1: "be þe place emplastred wip a plastre maad þus." Comp. plasteren, Prompt. Parv.

⁴ distrie, Lat. dissoluere, destroy.

⁵ Lat.: cimini.

⁶ nigilla. Add. 15,236, fol. 10, "Nigella i. lolium. G. neel. A. cokel," fennel flower.

⁷ Ibid., fol. 4 b., "Leuisticum. G. luuache," lovage. See *E. P. N.*, p. 43, *luvestiche*, *luvesche*.

⁸ *Alphita*, p. 108, "macedonia vel macedonicum, petrocillinum idem, g^e alisandre, a^e stamerche."

⁹ Add. 15,236, fol. 5 b., "Origanum. G. Origane. i. pulegium. A. puliol reale." See *Alphita*, p. 150, "Pulegium. gallire puliol, a^e Brotheruurt."

¹⁰ Ibid., fol. 7 b., "Sisimbrium. mentastrum. G. mentastre. A. hors. minte."

¹¹ Ibid., fol. 7, "Ruta bissara. puganum vel pucanum. hermola idem. G. Rue. A. smalrede."

If the cause
is hot,

[1 lf. 202]
give a decoction
with
chickens,
and a syrup.

R₇
Prescription
for the syrup.

To be given
twice a week.

A plaster is
put on the
region of the
liver.

Finally use
a bath.
[3 lf. 202, bk.]

Take care in
using drying
medicines
that the
patient does
not get con-
sumption.



Operation
should not
be performed
on all sorts
of people;

patients
who are not
strong, and
old men, are
not fit.

One cannot
trust in the
strength of
an old man.

[4 lf. 203]

¶ His ping^t is necessarie for to zeue a man þat^t haþ þe hote dropesie,
a decoccion of solatrum & endiue; & in þat^t watir he ¹schal seþe
chikenys for to ete, & first^t he schal drinke sirupum acetosum wiþ
seedis / And I wole telle þee a cure, þat^t I cūride in my tyme .ij. 4
men þat^t weren in aschite of hoot^t cause, þat^t it^t mowe be ensauple
to þee / I made hem a sirupe of platearie² in þis maner / R₇, succi
scariole li .ij., succi apij & petrosilij, ana. li .j., & boile hem wiþ
.3. iiij. of esule, masticis, seminis fenicli, apij, ana. 3. ß, seþe hem in 8
watir til þei come to .li .ij., & þan cole hem & do þerto .li .j. zucare,
& boile hem til þei be perfit. & whanne þow doist^t adoun fro þe
fier, do þerto rubarbe .3. ß, & lete it^t boile a litil, & þan kepe it^t for
þin vss. & þou schalt^t zeue it^t him in þe morowe wiþ a decoccion 12
of fenel seed, .ij. in þe wike. & þou schalt^t enplastre al his wombe,
saue þe regioun of his lyuere, wiþ þe forseid plastris & dounge &
vinegre. & vpon his lyuere leie an enplastre maad of .3. .ij. of
barli mele, & rosis, & sandalis albi & rubei ana. 3. ß, camphore 16
.3. .ij., & distempere hem wiþ water of rosis & wiþ vinegre. & if
he haue not^t þe feure, þan zeue him gotis milk fasting^t. And whan
þe patient bicometh smal in his wombe, þan sette him in a baþ, þat^t
be soden þerinne sulphur ³& salt, & he schal be þerinne but a litil 20
while. ¶ Herof þou muste be war: whanne water is dried in a
man wiþ drijnge wiþ medicyns, þan his lymes leueþ swiþe drie;
wherfore þei falliþ in etik & dien. þerfore þou muste in alle þes
pingis be wel war / 24

þe cure þat^t is wiþ iren falliþ oonli in aschite, þat^t manie men
doon hardili, & takij no kepe of þe particularis þerof, for þei
knownen not^t þe science, for þei doon al oon maner to zonge & to
olde, to stronge & to feble; þei kuttij þe skyn vnder þe navel, & 28
alle men þat^t þei kutten ouþer þe mooste weren perischid / Saue þou
schalt^t take kepe of kunnyng, & worche bi resoun / for þow schalt^t
take kepe wher he be strong^t or no; & if he be not^t strong^t, þou
schalt^t do no cure to him. ¶ Also þou schalt^t do no cure to olde 32
men þat^t ben to-broke, for þou schalt^t not^t leue þe strenkþe of an
oold man, for it^t is impossible for to fynde an oold man strong^t,
whanne þe dropesie is confermed on him / If it^t so be þat^t he be
zong^t & strong^t, þan þow schalt^t haue good trust^t for to helpe him. 36
¶ Thanne þou muste enquere sotilly wher ⁴þe principal vijs be of

² Matthæus Platearius belonged to the school of Salerno about the middle of the 12th century. He wrote: "Liber de simplici medicina," commonly called "Circa instans."

- þe lyuere, for þan þou muste kutte him in þe splene side / And if it
 so be þat þe splene be þe principal of þe dropesie, þan þe kuttinge
 muste be in þe riȝt side. And if þe cause come of lymes aboue, as
 4 of þe stomac or of diafragma, þan þou muste kutte him vpon
 pecten. & if it be in a womman, & come of þe vijs of þe maris,
 þan þou schalt kutte hir aboue þe nauele. Whanne þou knowist in
 what place þou schalt kutte þe pacient, þan þou schalt opene þe
 8 place of þe pacient, & þou schalt presse his wombe adounward as
 miche as þou miȝt, & make him ete a litil of breed tostit¹ vpon
 coolis, & wet in wijn; & þan lete him sitte tofore þee bitwene a
 strong mannes armys, þat mai holde him faste, þat he mowe not
 12 meue in þe tyme whanne þou wolt worche. And þan þou schalt
 take þe skyn þat is clepid mirac, wiþ þi lifthond in þe place þere þou
 wolt make þi kuttinge, & þat skyn þou schalt peerse endelongis
 wiþ an instrument þat is competent þerfore / And be wel war þat
 16 þou touche not siphac in no maner; and whanne þou hast kutt þe
 skyn aboue & mirac, þan opene þe place þat þou mowe se siphac.
 & þan þou schalt peerse a litil hole in siphac & sette þerto a canel,³
 & drawe out þerof as miche watir as þou seest good for to saue his
 20 vertu / & þan drawe out þe canel, & lete þe skyn þat is clepid
 mirac goon ouer þe openyng of siphac, for þat wole suffre no þing
 to go out / In þe morowe opene þe same skyn aȝen þat was kutt
 first, & putte in þe canel, & kepe his vertu as miche as þou miȝt.
 24 & þus þou schalt do til þou haue drawe out þe watir; saue þou
 schalt not drawe out al, for þou schalt consume it afterward with
 propre medicyns / Herof þou schalt take kepe in þe tyme, þe whilis
 þou drawist out þe water, as it is forseid: þe patient schal ete good
 28 metis, & drinke good drinkis & swete, þat mowe engendre in him
 good spirits & good blood: as good broþis maad of hennys & of
 capouns. & diȝt wiþ swete þingis, for eueri avoidinge laskiþ miche
 þe spiritis; & whanne þe spiritis falliþ, þan a mannes vertues
 32 failen /

The place of
the incision
depends on
which organ
—the liver,
spleen, sto-
mach, or
uterus—is
affected.

Let the
patient be
held by a
strong man;

cut the skin,
called *Mirac*;

[2 lf. 203, bk.]
pierce the
siphac,
and draw out
the water by
a cannula at
repeated sit-
tings.

Strengthen
the patient
during this
treatment
with good
food.

⁴Of ficus, & cancre, & vlcer in mannes⁵ ȝerde /

[4 lf. 204]

Ficus is a maner wexyng þat arisiþ vpon a mannes ȝerde tofore.
 & sumtyme it wole be neische, whanne it is engendrid of
 36 fleume / & whanne it is engendrid of malancolie, it wole be hard;

¶ xj^o. co.
Ficus is a
growth on a
man's yard;
it is either
soft or hard,

¹ breed tostit, Lat. panem tostum. *Prompt. Parv.*

³ canel, Lat. cannula. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. canal 1.

⁵ MS. manner.

and may
become a
cancer.

Ulcers arise
either from
hot pustules

or from inter-
course with
diseased
women.

The figus
must be
removed by
a thread or
with cutting,

with mollifi-
catives;

[⁴ If. 204, bk.]
the surest
way is the
hot iron.

A cancer
must be re-
moved with
all its roots.

Nota.
If there are
ulcers in the
fore-skin,
remove the
growth.

Rj
be gren
water

[⁶ If. 205]

& if it rotie, it wole turne into a cancre. ¶ A cancre cometh in a mannes zerde, right as in opere lymes of a man, & vlcera cometh of hote pustulis þat cometh þeron, & aftirward þei brekeþ it.¹ Oupher þei cometh of scharpe humouris, þat makith vlcera in þe same place; 4 oupir it mai come of a womman þat a man, þat hadde þe same passioun,² hadde leie by hir tofore³ /

þis is þe cure of figus þat comith of fleume: þou schalt binde him wiþ a þreed, ouper kutte him al awei; & þan þou schalt soude 8 it as it is aforseid in opere placis / If it come of malancolie, it mai be curid or þat it rotie, wiþ tempere mollificatiuis, as it is forseid in þe cure of sclirosis in þe general chapitre of enpostyms: þat whanne he is maad neische, þan þou schalt take him awei wiþ 12 alle his rootis / saue it is more sure take awei it wiþ ⁴an hoot iren, & þan leie þervpon butter, & zitt þou muste touche him wiþ an hoot iren azen; & þan leie buttir þervpon. & þus þou schalt do oftetye litil & litil til it be al wastid awei / If it be a cancre, it 16 wole not be curid but if it be kutt awei wiþ alle his rotis. And þer is no wei so sure to take him awei as fier / Alle þe rotis of him musten be brent awei, & þan leie þervpon a mundificatif of apium, & aftir þis þou muste leie þerto drijnge þingis / & in þis place þou 20 schalt not forzete to leie a defensif vpon þe place þat is hool, for þis defensif schal defende þe place þat is hool fro swellynge. ¶ Vlcera þat cometh in a mannes zerde: as whanne þe skyn þat is tofore in a mannes zerde bicomith greet, & þis mai not be curid 24 but if þat greetnes be doon awei. & þis medicyn is good þerfore / Take whit wijn, & of verte grece .3 .j., auripigment .3 .ij; grinde þes .ij. sotilli, & leie hem in þe whit wijn, & meue hem ofte, & kepe hem for þin vss. & þe more cold⁵ þat þis medicyn is, þe better it 28 wole be. & þan þou schalt wete a lynnen cloop in þis medicyn, ⁶& leie vpon þe zerde / For þis þing wole soude woundis & defende þat

¹ Lat.: que postea crepantur.

² MS. inserts *þat*.

³ Lat.: Ulcera veniunt . . . ex commixtione cum feda muliere, que cum egro talem habente morbum de novo coierat. *Hæser*, III, p. 230, gives a list of references, showing the early knowledge of venereal diseases in the mediæval ages. The earliest quotation is from Richardus Anglicus, *Micrologus* MS., xiith cent.: "Ulcerantur utraque, virga scilicet et testiculi, tempore menstruorum, ex coitu ex salsis humoribus et acutis et incensis, quod satis ex colore cutis et pustularum vel saniei, et ex pruritu et punctura et ardore perpenditur." Richardus gives the same preventative, which is mentioned by Lanfranc: "Ablutio cum aqua frigida et continua abstersio — et maxime si post ablutionem cum frigida aqua fiat roratio loci abluti cum aceto."

⁵ MS. *cold*. Lat.: quanto plus antiquatur tanto melius.

per mai wexe no cancre / If it so be þat a mannes 3erde be skynned, In case of
& be noon oper passioun þeron saue þat, þan þou schalt leie þer- a simple
vpon vnguentum album, ouþer leie þer vpon a linnen cloof wet in exoriation,
4 watir of rosīs. Also poudre maad of cucurbita & aloes is good apply an
þerfore / If a man wole saue þis lyme algate fro corrupcioun, ointment or
whanne he haþ leien bi a womman, & he haue ony suspicioun of compresses.
vncennes, þan he schal waische his 3erde wiþ coold water medlid
8 with vinegre /

Of Emeroidis & fistule in þe ers /

- E** Moroides ben veines þat endip in a mannes ers & ben .v.¹ ¶ xijo. co.
þese veines sumtyme openeþ & sumtyme þei ben enpostymed. There are five
12 Whanne þe blood þat is in þe same veines falliþ adoun & mai not hæmor-
out, þan it engendriþ apostym. & if þe blood is gret & fleumatik, rhoidal veins,
þan it wole engendre ficus, & if þat blood be greet & colerik, þan they are
it wole engendre moralem.² And if þe blood be greet & malan- sometimes
16 colius, þan it wole engen[dre] condilomata / Sumtyme þer comeþ open, some-
perto ³so manie diuers humouris, & makip diuers enpostyms in þe times they
same maner as it falliþ in opere lymes, & ofte tyme of þis enpostym form tu-
comeþ a festre, but if it be þe bettir holpe; þe blood þat comeþ to mours.
20 a mannes ers bi veynes þat ben clepid emoroides is grettere blood The blood in
þan ony blood of his bodi / & if it so be þat a man haue þe flux these veins is
of blood of þe emoroidis, þou schalt not stoppe it, but it blede so the thickest
myche þat it make þe pacient feble, saue þou schalt kepe him wiþ in the body.
24 good regimen, & he schal vse no metis ne drinkis þat engendrith Nota
scharp blood & greet // For bi þe flux of blood a mannes bodi mai Hæmor-
be kept from malancolious blood, & it wole kepe a man fro lepre & rhoidal flux
fro mania, & fro al sijknis þat comeþ of malancolie / Also if a shall not be
28 man is woned to haue hem & þei be stoppid, þan þou muste 3eue stopped,
him medicyns for to bringe hem out / And if it so be þat a man as it keeps a
haue so greet flux of hem þat his lyuere be enfeblid þerwiþ, þan man from
he myȝte falle in a dropesi þer þoruȝ, for to miche flux of blood leprosy mania
32 mai be cause of a dropesie / þerfore if þou ⁴seest þat þe flux be to and other
greet, þan þou schalt constreine blood wiþ medicyns þat ben diseases.
strictif, & þou schalt fynde medicyns þerfore in þe ende of þis
chapitre / Wexingis þat ben clepid **emoroidis**, summe þei falliþ **Emeroides**

¹ De propr. rer., Lib. VII., cap. 54. Add. 27,944, fol. 95 b.: "Emorydis ben fyve veynes þat strecheþ oute at þe ers, of þe whiche veynes comeþ diuers passiouns and euelis, as boluyng & swellinge, withholdinge and flux."

² *moralis*, a mulberry form of tumour.

(piles) are
internal or
external.

ficus
can be tied
away.

Moralis
consists of
many small
swellings,
like a mul-
berry.

[³ lf. 206, bk.]
Bleed from
the Basilica
and the
Saphena,

relieve the
pains with a
medicine,

R̄

apply an
ointment,
or tent.

R̄

An ointment
to ripen an
apostema.

[⁶ lf. 207]

R̄

wipoute þe hole of a mannes ers, & summe wipinne / Also summe
wexip in þe for side of þe ers, & summe in þe hyndir side. Sum-
tyme it wexip in þe forside toward þe rote of þe ballokis, & þan þei
makip greet akinge / for sumtyme þei letten þat a man mai not⁴
make vrine. If it be *ficus*, þat þou miȝt knowe, for it wole be
wipoute hete¹ & neische, & þe cure herof is but liȝt. þou schalt
take a stronge preed & knitte þere aboute, & euery dai þou schalt
streine it more & more, til he falle awei, & þan wip driyng⁸ medi-
cyns þou schalt drie it vp. ¶ *Moralis* makip greet akinge & hap
manie smalle swellingis as it were mora celsi, & þe colour þerof wole
be reed & sumdel² purpur, & but þis haue help for to acese þe
akinge, it wole engendre an enpostym. þe cure herof is to lete him¹²
blood in þe veyne þat is clepid³ basilica & sophena al in oon dai,⁴
& in þe same side þat þe passioun drawip mooste þerto. If he is
wont to haue þe same passioun, þan make him haue þe same flux
of blood. & if he is not wont to haue it, þan þou schalt zeue¹⁶
him no medicyns for to make him haue þat flux, & þan þou schalt
acese þe akyngē wip þis medicyn, & is good for thenasmon⁵ & for
alle þe passiouns of þe ers / R̄, thuris, mirre, licij, croci, ana partem
.j., opij partes duas, grinde hem & medle hem with zelke of an eij²⁰
& wip þe iuys of psillij, & ole of roses, & make þerof an oyme-
ment / & if þe akyngē be wipinne in his ers, þanne anointe a tent
& putte into his ers, & if it be wipoutforþ, þan leie vpon lynnē
cloof & leie it vpon þe place. ¶ Also a medicyn of Haly þe²⁴
abbot / R̄, ceruse .3. v., litarge .3. iij., iusquiami albi .3. ij., mas-
ticis, grynde hem & tempere hem wip þe zelke of an ey & oile of
violet & make herof an oynement. & þis oynement is good
whanne þe akinge is wip an enpostym, for þis wole resolue & make²⁸
it maturatif, & doiþ away þe⁶ akinge / R̄, foliorum malue, florum
camomille, Melliloti⁷ ana .℞. j., fenigreci, seminis lini ana .3. iij.,
lenticularum excorticarum .3. x., seþe alle þes in water til þei
resolue & þe water consume awei, & þan putte hem in a morter &³²
grinde hem wel, & þan do þerto .ij. zelkis of eiren & oile of violet,

¹ Lat. : sine colore. The translator read "calore."

² *sumdel*, altered in a different coloured ink from *sumdei*.

⁴ Lat. : cura est flebotomia basilice lateris eiusdem in uno die, in alio de saphena eiusdem lateris.

⁶ Vigo, Traheron Interpret. : "Tenesmos is whan a man hathe greате pro-uocation to the seege, but can do nothyngē. It commeth of tissein, whych signifieth to stretche."

⁷ Add. 15236, fol. 5 : "*Mellilotum. Corona regia. idem. G. mellilote. A. hunisoke vel redclaire.*"

& make herof^t an oynement. ¶ If it so be þat^t in þis place of þe
 forseid þingis come an enpostym & gadere to quittance, þou schalt^t
 not abide til it breke him-silf^t, for þan it wole make a greet^t hole

When an
 apostema be-
 gins to sup-
 purate, open
 it quickly.

4 ynward toward þe guttis. þerfore þou schalt^t opene it^t hastili, or it
 wexe to miche ynward / If þe place of þe emeroide make no greet^t
 akyngne ne noon enpostym, & if þou wolt^t drie hem & waste hem,
 þan þou miȝt^t worche in .ij. maners, do þerto mel anacardi &
 8 vnguentum ruptorium,¹ or touche hem wiþ an hoot^t iren þat^t is
 bettere / If he be a delicat^t man or a feble, drie hem with fumy-
 gaciouns maad of pulpa coloquintida & seed of mirtillorum, & þe
 leeuës & þe ryndis of capparis, mirra, nux cipressi, & gallis, & make
 12 him a decoccoun of þese þingis in water ²& ³lete him sitte þeron, [¶ 1f. 207, bk.]
 for alle þese þingis maketh þe emeroidis blak & makip hem falle
 away / I nolde neuere leie in þat^t place corosis^t medicyn /

Nota

To dry hæ-
 morrhoids,
 use a corro-
 sive oint-
 ment, the hot
 iron,

and for a deli-
 cate patient a
 fumigation.



If the veins
 are replete,
 provoke flux
 of blood.

If þer be greetnes of veynes ful of blood wiþout ony enpostym,
 16 & þe patient haue gret^t akyngne þerwiþ, & principaly if he was wont
 to haue þe flux of emeroidis wiþ blood, & he hadde it^t not longe
 tyme tofore, þan þou schalt^t zeue him medicyns to haue þe flux of
 blood, & þat^t þou schalt^t do in þis maner anoon, wiþ þe iuys of a
 20 strong^t oynoun, or wiþ ius of lekis, ouþer if þou makist^t supposi-
 torijs of hem & frotist^t þerwiþ þe place, & þis wole opene þe veynys
 of þe emeroidis / Also þe rotis of maluis wet in þe gall of a bole /
 Also take hony .ij. partis, & vert de grece oon part^t, & medle hem
 24 togidere, & herwiþ anointe a suppositorie maad of lynnen cloof &
 putte it yn / If it so be þat^t þe patient blede to miche & he bicomēþ
 feble þerwiþ, þan helpe him with trociscus de carabe⁴ þat^t ben gode
 for to restreine flux of blood of emeroides. & it is good for to

If the patient
 loses too
 much blood,
 stop the flux.

28 restreyne menstrues. R̄, carabe, gummi nucis, balaustie, lacte, succi
 barbe yrcine⁵ ana .3. v., thuris .3. ij., opij .3. iij., make herof^t
 gobettis wiþ muscillagine psillij, & make euery dai a gobet^t þe
 weiȝte of .3. ij., & þou schalt^t zeue oon þerof^t wiþ sirupo stiptico,
 32 & þou schalt^t make fumigaciouns of drynge þingis: as gallis,
 balaustie, psidiorum & opere mo þat^t ben forseid / R̄, nuces cipressi,

R̄

[¶ 1f. 208]

Use a fumi-
 gation.

R

¹ vnguentum ruptorium. Vigo Interpret.: "Ruptorie: that, that hath
 strengthe to breake."

³ At the bottom of the page, in later hand: *contra emeroides vell bubo
 vell tenassmoun: R mer 3 ij, olibani, ameos ana 3 j, oppij 3 fs, gosium
 gres et [?], fiat decoctio cum mell vell cum pestello ellido et nido, fformetur
 suppositorum.*

⁴ Matth. Sylv.: "Caraba i. Karabe. Electrum." Fr. carabé Arab.
 Kahrabâ Devic Dict. Amber.

⁵ Alphita, p. 20: "Barba yrsina . . . a° buckestonge."

A wash.

cupularum glandulum, corticas granatorum, kutte hem a litil & sepe hem in good wijn. & wip þis wijn waische þe place an euen & a morowe / Also a fumigacioun maad of tapsi barbasti¹ is good þerfore /

4

The great bowel is often pierced by an apostema and a fistula is formed.

It falliþ ofte tyme þat after þe flux of þe emeroidis, ouþer if enpostym be to longe maturatif in þat same place vnopened, þan it falliþ ofte tyme þat þe grete bowel² is peersid. & sumtyme it makip a greet hole³ in þe same place, & þoruþ þat hole comeþ out 8 wijnd & sumtyme egestioun,⁴ & þis hole is cleped a festre of þe ers.⁵ Of þis cure manye men ben hardi & knowen not þe perels þerof, & makip þe same medicyns in þis place for a festre as þei doon in opere placis / But þou schalt take good hede of þis maner 12 enfestre; þou schalt asaie if þe hole of þe festre go to hiþe þat it touche þe place of þe lacertis of þe ers, þan þe festre is incurable, & þan a man schal not holde his egestioun, þat it nyle go out alwei / Also þou muste loke wher þere go out miche quittance ouþir 16 litil of þe hole of þe festre, or wheþir þe quittance þerof be whit or reed / Also þou muste take kepe wher he haue greet penaunce þerof or no / And aftir alle þese diuers þingis, þou muste diuerseli worche. For as it is aforseid, first þou muste acese þe akyng & þe swell- 20 ynge, þan þou schalt asaie wher þe festre go to þe lacertis; þat þou schalt knowe in þis maner / Putte þi fyngir as fer as it wole go, into his ers, & þan putte a pliaunt tent in þe feestre. & loke in what place þe tent mette wip þi fyngir, & þan say þat þe patient streyne 24 his ers, & þan þou miht wite wheþer þe festre go aboue þe braun or no. If þe festre go aboue þe braun, þan þe patient schal lete go out wijnd & egestioun at þe hole of þe festre. 7 þan þou schalt in no maner touche þe festre wip no medicyn corosif ne wip noon 28 hoot iren; but þou schalt teche him for to vse a waisching wip water & hony & mirre, & wip sum mundificatif, and in þis maner he schal kepe him þat þe malice of þe festre wexe nomore. ¶ O mi briþeren, manye lewid lechis haue I seen þat coude on ruptorie, 32 & þei supposide þerbi for to cure cancris & festris, & al maner crepa-

and great pain.

Try with a probe and the finger, how far the fistula reaches.

If the fistula passes above the brawn,

[7 lf. 209]

apply no corrosive, but only a wash.

Many unlearned surgeons,

¹ *Alphita*, p. 182: "Tapsus barbatus—g^o. molayne, an. catesteyl, uel feldwrt."

² *intestinum*, inserted in later hand.

³ *callid. festula testium*, inserted in later hand.

⁴ "*Egestion*, a casting forth, avoiding: In the Art of Physick, the discharging of Meat digested through the Pylorus, or lower Mouth of the Stomach, into the rest of the Entrails." Phillips.

⁵ *festula*, inserted in later hand.

turis, & þei supposiþ bi þis maner ruptorie¹ for to surmounte *Galien* knowing only
 in worchinge / And men þat han þis opinioun, in þe mo errouris apply it in
 þat þei falliþ, þe more wroop þei wolen be, & þe more þei wollip vse every case.
 4 her ruptorijs / And þerfore þis mai be ensauple to pee: if a man *Galien.*
 haue no drinke but eysel, and haþ indignacioun for to fecche ony They do like
 oper but halt him þerto, & zeueþ þerof to men þat ben aþirst. & a man who
 if þe drinke agreue hem, & þei speke ony þing þerof, he wole be if he had
 8 wroop þerfore, & he nyle noon oper drinke fecche, but algate zeueþ if he had
 hem of þe same til her spirituals bicomme drie / And if þe same² man wine, he
 hadde wijn ynow³ & knew wel þe vertu þerof, he wolde zeue no would not
 man eysel for to drinke nomore / þerfore þou schalt vse medicyns give vinegar.
 12 þat ben appreued, & do awei al medicyns þat ben false, & holde
 þee apaid of þe medicyns þat ben aforseid /³

Of þe cancre⁴ and þe mormole /

CAncrene ben rounde vlcis þat falliþ in a mannes leggis, & ¶ xiijo. co /
 16 malum mortuum also, & þei falliþ boþe in oon place, þerfore I
 wole make difference þerof / ¶ Cancrene ben round vlcera & ben Gangrene is a
 foule & cometh of dedinge of þe skyn,⁵ for þe natural spiritus comen mortification
 not þerto, & þerfore þe place is corrupt / & if þe corrupcioun go of the skin.
 20 anon to þe boon, þan it schal not be clepid cancrenum, but it
 schal be clepid aschachiles.⁶ & if þe corrupcioun occupie al þe
 lyme, þan it schal be clepid herpes esthiomenus, þat is as miche to If the bone is
 seie as etyng him-silf. ¶ þe signes of cancrenarum ben blac affected it is
 24 vlcera, & þe fleisch þerof wole be foule & of ledi colour, & þe lippis called
 þerof wolen be gret, & þe fleisch þat is in þe middil⁷ of vlcera wole aschachiles
 be corrupt. & it be miche lik to a cancre þat is vlceratus, but if the whole
 þis is þe difference þerof þat a cancre cometh of corrupcioun of herpes es-
 7 of dedinge of þe skyn. Lat.: de cutis mortificatione. tiomenus.
 The symp-
 toms of Gan-
 grene are
 black ulcers
 [7 lf. 210]
 similar to an
 ulcerated
 cancer.

¹ MS. *ruptorie*.

³ The translator omits a short passage about "Fissure of the Anus."

⁴ *cancre*, a mistake. Lat. De cancrenis. Med. Lat. cancrenum, cancrena, is derived from Lat. canceroma, cancrema, canchrema, and has very early been confounded with Lat. gangrena, γάγγραινα. Vigo. Interpret. "Cancrena. Gangrena is when some parte of the body thorow great inflammation dieth, but is not yet perfittly dead; when it is perfectlye dead, and wythout felyng: it is called sphacelos in greke, whyche they have turned to ascachillos, sideratio in latine. Some saye, that Gangrena is whan a membre is apte to putrefye. Ascachillos, when it is putrified, but hath not all partes of putrefaction. Esthiomenas, when a membre hath al degrees of putrefaction."

⁵ of dedinge of þe skyn. Lat.: de cutis mortificatione.

⁶ *aschachiles*, the Arab. corruption of σφάκελος. Fr. sphacile.

It is caused
by general
debility.

malancolie, & þis cometh of lesynge of þe spiritis of lijf / Also þe lippis of þe cancre ben more reuersid and more grene, & a cancre fretiþ more / And þerfore þis passioun is clepid of *summen* a deed cancre /

Treatment of
Gangrene:
Purge the
body from
melancholic
matter,

þe cure of þis passioun is in þis maner / first þou schalt avoide his bodi of malancolie, & þou3 it be not his principal cause as it is of a cancre / 3itt þe mater þat falliþ to þe place is greet / þerfore it is good for to clense his blood of malancolie; for it is good þing in 8 vlcera þat ben olde, & principali whanne þei ben in parties bineþe-

bleed from a
vein between
the last two
toes,
use daffodil-
powder.

forþ / & whanne he is clensid, þan lete him blood in þe veyne þat is bitwixe þe leeste too of his foot & þe too next þerto, in þe same leg þat þe passioun is on. & vpon þe place þou schalt caste powder 12 of affodillorum, ouþer remeue awei al þe deed fleisch / If þou wolt worche more surely & bettere, make him a cauterie, þat 1it be

[1 lf. 210, bk.]

The best
method is,
to cauterize
the place with
the hot iron.

myche & long as þe place is þat [is] corrupt, & wiþ an hoot iren make a cros vpon þe middil of þe passioun as depe as þe deed fleisch 16

Then apply a
plaster,

is. & þan þou schalt leie þeron a plastre maad of whete mele & iuys of ache, & þan cure it vp as þou doist opere vlcera, as it is forseid / And in þis caas þou schalt not forzete in no maner for to leie aboute þe place a defensif of bole & terra sigillata; for þat 20 wole suffre no wickide mater to renne to þe place, & it defendiþ þe hool place fro corrupcioun. ¶ Malum mortuum is a maner scabbe,

and a defen-
sive.

**Malum
mortuum**
is a kind of
scab,

& cometh of grete humouris brent, & falliþ to þe place. & sum part þerof leueþ in a mannys flank, & engendriþ glandulas & 24

and is treated
with purging,

swelliþ / þe cure herof is to avoide his bodi of greet humouris, þat ben brent; & lete him blood in basilica, in þe same side; & lete

blood-letting,

him blood in þe foot, as it is forseid / & þou muste dissolve glandulus, as it is forseid in þe chapitre of glandulus & scrophulis; 28

and an oint-
ment.

[2 lf. 211]

R̄
an ointment
of tithymal.

& þan þou muste anointe þe place wiþ drijnge medicyns. þou 2 schalt anointe al þe place with psilatro,³ til al þe heeris falle awei

wipouten ony violence / Take þe grete titimalle & þe smale, & boile hem in vinegre & in oile, & do þerto a litil sope, & make þerof þe 32

maner of an oynement; & wiþ þis oynement þou schalt anointe þe place harde agen þe fier / R̄, olei aceti ana. 3 .ij., saponis mollis & saponis duri ana. 3 j.; medle hem togidere, & do þerto iuys mali terre ouþer brionie .3 .ij.; boile hem alle togidere, & anointe 36 þe place þerwiþ, & þou schalt fynde oynementis in þe antidotarie þat ben gode in þis caas //

R̄
An ointment
of soap.

³ *Sinon. Barth.*, p. 35: "Psilotrum, depilatorium idem."

Of varices, *pat ben veynes*, and *elephancia*.¹

U Arices ben clepid veynes, *pat ben grete*, & grene, & purpur, & ¶ *xiiiij. c.*
 sittip aboute a mannes leggis. and þei comen of greet Varices are
 4 malancolious² blood, *pat fallip adoun*. & also it comep of grete enlarged
 metis & of greet traueile, or it may come of greet fleume; & it veins in the
 wole make a mannes feet & his leggis al grete, & sumtyme his feet Elephantia
 also³ // þe ⁴cure of varicium is in þis maner: þou schalt purge him attacks the
 8 wiþ gotis whey & wiþ epithimo, for þis purgacioun is propre in þis feet.
 caas, or purge him wiþ pelottis of epithimi. & lete him blood in [¶ 1f. 211, bk.]
 þe veyne *pat* is clepid basilica, of þe arme in þe same side, & also The general
 in his foot. & he schal absteyne him fro metis *pat* engendrip treatment
 12 malancolie / þis passioun þow myzt⁴ cure in þese maners⁵ / þis is þe consists in
 first⁶ maner: loke in his hamme, vnder his knee. þere þou schalt purging,
 se a greet veine; & alle þe grete veynes, *pat ben bineþe* in his leg, and in bleed-
 comep out⁷ þerof. þan þou schalt take vp þe same veyne wiþ a ing from the
 16 nedele. & loke *pat* þou peerse not þe veyne, & knytte hir wiþ a Basilic vein.
 þreed. & þe brede of þi fyngir aboue *pat* place, putte yn þi nedele
 azen, vnder þe veyne as þou hast do heretofore, & knitte in þe same
 maner wiþ a þreed; & þan þou schalt kutte þe skyn ouer þe veyne
 20 endelongis; & þan take vp þe veyne & kutte hir bitwixe þe .ij. Local treat-
 bindingis, & þan þe ende of þe veyne *pat* is aboue schal be brent⁸ 1. Apply a
 wiþ an hoot iren, & þe neþir side ⁹of þe veyne schalt be vnknit. double liga-
 & presse out¹⁰ þe blood bineþeforþ of þe veyne, as myche as þou ture on the
 24 myzt. & þanne þe remenaunt þou schalt drawe wiþ medicyns *pat* popliteal
 ben consumynge. & þe fleisch þere þou madist þi wounde, þou vein,
 schalt touche wiþ an hoot iren also; & þan þou schalt leie to þe
 place mundificatiuis, & þan soude as it is aforseid.⁷ ¶ Also anoþer
 28 maner cure: lete him blood oonli in þe same veyne, & take out¹¹ of
 þe blood as miche as þou miȝt, & purge him ofte, & make him



cut the vein
between the
two ligatures,

[¶ 1f. 212]

and press the
blood out
from the
lower part of
the vein:
after removal
of the liga-
ture.

2. Use blood-
letting and
purgings.

¹ Lanfranc follows the description given by *Avicenna*, Lib. III, Fen. 22, Tract. 1, Cap. 15, ed. Ven. 1527. *Avicenna*'s list of the occupations that are predisposing to this illness reminds us of the fact that he was a courtier himself. *Ibid.*: "Et plurimum quidem accidunt cursoribus, & viatoribus, & onera portantibus & coram regibus astantibus."

² MS. *humour*, deleted.

³ Incorrect translation. Lat.: "Elephantia dicitur quædam carnis augmentatio, in qua crus vltra mensuram debitam augmentatur cum pede toto, et fit ex grosso fleumate vel ex grossa melancolia non corrupta."

⁴ Lat.: Locus autem tribus curatur modis.

⁷ This mode of operation is the same as has been described by *Paulus Ægineta*, Lib. VI, 82, ed. Fr. Adams 1844, 2nd vol., p. 406, and by *Avicenna* l. c., Cap. 18.

3. Do not try a perfect cure, but purge and bleed several times a year.

[1 lf. 212, bk.]

Elephancia can be cured at the beginning of the disease.

Use purging, blood-letting,

keep the legs bandaged before an exertion, use an ointment.

enplastris aboute his leggis wip drijnge þingis, & diete him as it is aforseid. ¶ Þe .iiij. maner is þis : þou schalt go to no perfit cure þerof, but þou schalt lete þat blood falle adoun, & þan a fewe tymes in þe zeer þou schalt purge him ; & þou schalt laske his greet blood wip blood-letyngis, þat ben forseid, & leie enplastris vpon þe place þat ben drijnge. & þus þou schalt do til al þe swellynge be goon away / & þis laste medicyn is þe beste for hem þat haue had þis passioun longe, & for hem þat ben olde / For if þou kutte a 8
veyne in hem, ¹þan þer wole engendre manie sicknessis aboue, & make þe pacient deed þe rapere / For I siz men þat her veynes weren so kutt þat weren algate sijk aftirward, & wipinne a litil time aftir þat þei diede. ¶ Elephancia² is incurable whanne it is confermed ; 12
but bifore þat it is confermed, it mai be curid for to purge þe humouris þat ben in þe cause wip blood-leting, þat ben aforseid. & he schal absteine him fro grete metis, þat engendriþ greet humouris ; & þan he schal not go ne ride, but if his leg & his foot be bounden 16
wip a boond faste, & speciali in þe ioynet / But first þou schalt anoynte his leggis wip epithimo maad of acacia, mirra, aloe, ipoquistidos,³ & alym with vinegre. & whanne þe swellynge bigynneþ to goon awei, þan make him a stuwe, & lete his leggis be þerinne 20
longe ; & be it maad of askis of vines & caul-seed, sticados arabici, lupinorum, mirre, stercus caprini, fenigreci. Also anointe him, & binde him, as it is forseid. & in þis maner I haue curid men, þat ne weren not confermed þeron //

24

Of wertis in handis and in feet /

[4 lf. 213]

¶ xv. co /

⁴ Porri⁵ ben engendrid of fleume þat is greet, & ben white ; veruce⁶ comeþ of malancolie, & ben blake, & han mo rotis / Scissure⁷ comeþ of malancolie brent, & makiþ as it were kutyngis ; 28

² The disease which Lanfranc describes is the Elephantiasis Arabum, commonly known as Barbadoes leg, quite different from the Elephantiasis of the Greeks, a general term for severe leprosy.

³ *Sinon. Barth.*, p. 25 : "Ipoquistidos est succus fungi qui nascitur ad pedem rose caninæ." *ὑποκιστίς, ἰδος, ἡ*, a parasitic plant which grows on the roots of the *κιστός*, *Cytinus hypocistis*. (= Holly Rose, *Gerard*, p. 1281.)

⁵ "Porrus, a Leak, also a kind of Wart." Phillips.

⁶ "Verruca, (Lat.) a Wart, a little hard brawny Swelling, which breaks out of the Skin, and breeds in any part of the Body." *Ibid.*

⁷ "Scissure, a Cut or Cleft, a Rent or Chap." *Ibid.*

- & if þei comeþ of cooldnes, þan þei schulen be clepid muge.¹ ¶ þe Treatment of
cure of *porrorum* is for to elense his bodi wip trocisco de turbit, & *porrorum*.
þan frote þe place wip medicyns þat ben consumptif; & frote hem Apply a cau-
stic medicine.
- 4 wip poudre maad of a gotis toord, & tempere wip þe iuys of mirti
& wip þe ryndis of capparis / Veruce schulen be curid wip a *veruce*.
purgacioun maad of epithimi & gotis whey, & wip summe opere Use purging
medicyn þat is propriid for malancolie, & þan þou schalt vse stronge and a strong
oynementis / as *vnguentum ruptorium*, ouþer mel anacardi or sum ointment,
opir corrosif, ouþer in þis maner is better / garse it al aboutforþ & or tie the
binde it wip a strongi þreed, & streine wel þe þred & drawe him growth.
awei wip þe þreed, & þanne touche þe rotis of him wip a cauterie
- 12 punctual. ¶ Scissure. It is nede in þis passioun for to purge his *Scissure*.
bodi of humouris þat ben brent, & make ²him a baþ of swete Use purging,
water. & þan þou schalt waische his lymes wip a decoccioun of [2 lf. 213, bk.]
bismalue in watir, & a litil oile þerwip; & lete him vse metis þat a bath,
a wash,
- 16 makiþ moist & engendrid good blood, & þan anoynte him wip þis an ointment.
oynement / *R̄*, *olium rosarum*, *cere citrine*, *adipis anatis colatus*, *R̄*
Isopi humide,³ *muscellagine seminis citoniorum*, *amilum*, *draganti*,
ana, make herof an oynement / ¶ Muge schulen be curid wip oilis *Muge*.
- 20 & oynementis / first þou schalt aswage þe akinge wip oile, & þan Relieve the
leie þerto a mundificatif þat schal be seid in þe antidotarie, & þan pain;
soude it wip mirre / If þou seest it at þe first bigymnyng, þan apply a mun-
dificative,
- 24 & þou schalt make þat he vse [not]⁴ streit schoon, & he schal and an oint-
anoynte his feet, & principali hise heelis wip þis oynement / *R̄*, ment.
olium de lilie 3 .vj., *cere* 3 .ʒ., *resine* 3 .ij., *armoniaci* 3 .j., *farine*
fenigreci 3 .ʒ., *thuris*, *masticis*, *ana* 3 .ij., & make herof an *R̄*
28 oynement / ⁵

¹ *Matth. Syluat.* : "Perniones vel rasulæ, sunt excoriationes quæ fiunt in nimio frigore in calcaneis, quæ *Mugæ* vulgariter dicuntur," probably allied to *mucus*, *mungere*, *μύξα*.

³ *isopus humida*. Sloane 2463, fol. 159 bk. : "The fyfte, whiche is nother properly oynement nor enplastre, but atriwe two, & is cleped ysopus humida. Take rolle that is bytriwe the thyes and the iowes of schepe, as moche as þou wilt, and put as moche water therepon as may covere hit, and lete hit stonde so aday and anyzt, and þanne boile hit with a lente fyre, and lete hit weze cold, and coile hit; and thanne boile hit eftesones in a tymed panne with a lyzt fyre, and thanne lete hit weze cold, and coile hit: butt loke thou stere hit euermore with a spatule of tre till þat it be thikke as oynement."

⁴ not, wanting. Lat. : iube ne calciamenta portet stricta.

⁵ Gulielm. de Saliceto, *Chirurgia*, Lib. I, Cap. 57. Sloane 277, fol. 19 : "For cold in rynter þe leche may haue two consideraciouns to þe heclynge

Of blood-letyng //

¶ xvj

[1 lf. 213*]

Blood-letting
belongs to
a surgeon's
craft.

Nota.

Learned
physicians
leave it to
unlearned
men and
women.

One ought
to be both a
physician and
a surgeon.

Blood-letting
is used to
keep a man's
health, and
to remove
sickness.

[4 lf. 213*, bk.]

Bleed those
who eat
and drink
much, and
have little
exercise.

Bleed in order
to prevent a
disease.

Blood-letyngⁱ is a craft^t for to laske a mannes blood þat^t is in his
veynes / ¹And þis þou schalt^t wel wite, þat^t it falliþ for oure
craft, þouȝ we for pride take it^t to barbouris & to wommen; & 4
blood-letyng falliþ principali for cirurgians / O lord, whi is it so
greet^t difference bitwixe a cirurgian & a phisician, but^t for philoso-
phoris bitoken þe craft^t into lewid mennes hondis / or as manie men
haue dedignacioun for to worche wiþ her hondis / & zitt^t mani men 8
wenep þat^t it^t is impossible þat^t oon man to kunne boþe þe craftis² /
But^t þou schalt^t knowe wel þis, þat^t he is no good phisician þat^t can
no þing^t in cirurgie / And also þe contrarie þerof^t: a man mai be no
good cyrurgian, but^t if he knowe phisik. ¶ Blood-letyng is vsid 12
bi cause for to kepe a mannes bodi hool, & to remeue awei sijknessis
fro a mannes bodi / But^t þus manye þingis þou muste take kepe in
blood-letyng^t: tyme, & hour, & eir, & disposicioun of þe sike man /
& þou muste take kepe þat^t þou lete no man blood but^t if he mowe 16
endure itt^t // ¶ First^t a man schal be lete blood for to kepe him-silf^t,⁵
& principali hem þat^t etip good fleisch ⁴& drinkiþ good wijn, & etip
metis for to engendre myche blood, & traueiliþ but^t litil, & princi-
pali þe while a man is ȝong^t, & also in eelde if^t he be myche vsid 20
þerto / Also þou schalt^t lete hem blood þat^t ben wont^t to haue
akyng^t in her ioyntis, ouþer a feure þat^t is clepid sinocha⁵ or þe
squincie, ouþer pleureses / Alle þese, tofore þe tyme þat^t þei ben
woned to haue her passioun, þou schalt^t lete hem blood or her 24
passioun come, þat^t it^t mowe go away þerwiþ: & þis maner is clepid
preuisius. ¶ Þe iij. maner: whanne a man haþ greet^t akyng^t in

*of swiche maner seknesses: oon of partie of defense þat it come not, &
another of þe partie of remeyng^t of þe seknesse i-made. By þe reson of
defense that it come not, leue þe patient wiþ all his witt streit schoynge, &
haue he dombleschoos & large, & anoynte he every nyȝt þe heele with an
oynement þus maad."*

² Lat.: "aut quum operari ut dicunt quidam cum manibus dedignantur,
aut, quod magis credo, quum operationis modum quod apud scientiam est
necessarium non nouerunt; et hæc abusio tantum valuit propter antiquam
dissuetudinem, quod apud quosdam de vulgo credatur impossibile, quod unus
hoc possit scire magisterium utriusque."

³ Lat. pro sanitate conseruanda.

⁵ Laufranc, *Chirurgia Parua*, Cap. X, Add. MS. 10,440, fol. 25^a (xvth
cent.): "blood þerfore, ȝif it ouer haboundep vpon al þe body, & it is hett
with hete enflammyng^t or brennyng^t þe herte, & is corrupt, & neþeles it is
not roten, þerof is maad a feure clepid synocha continua. And ȝif he
is roten, þenne is maad þerof a feure clepid synochus continuus."

- his heed wipouten¹ a feure, or a squinantes plureses, periplumonia, apostema calida, & eueri sijknēs *pat* comeþ of to miche blood. In alle þese causis þou schalt lete him blood; & þis maner is clepid
- 4 curantes.² ¶ Now I wole telle alle maners in what maner a man schal be leten blood / ffirst, who schal lete þee blood / þe .ij., whanne it is necessarie for to be lete blood / þe .iiij., in whiche veynes a man schal be leten blood for diuers passiouns, & in what maner þe
- 8 veyne schal be kut. ¶ A man *pat* schal be letere blood schal be 3ongt, & he schal be no child, ne noon oold man, ne he schal not quake, & he schal haue a good scharp sizt; & loke *pat* he kunne knowe veines, & *pat* he kunne knowe hem from arterijs; & he schal haue
- 12 manie diuers tool⁴ for to lete blood þerwip, & þei schulen be clene and cleer, & not rusti; & summe of his tool schulen be longe, & summe schorte, for to peerse aftir *pat* þe veyne is greet þerto / Also children schulen not be lete blood, but if it were greet nede, & he
- 16 were so replet of blood *pat* he schulde be achekid þerwip; *pat* þou mizt knowe bi þe streitnes of his breeþ & fulnes of his veynes, & bi reednes of his face. þan it is necessarie *pat* he be leten blood; but it is ful greet drede for to lete a child blood, þerfore I wyle
- 20 3eue no counseil þerto. & if it so be *pat* he be in perel of deep, þan lete him blood / Now þou art war of þis perel, do as þou seest *pat* it is to do; & þou schalt warne þe childis fadir & his modir of þe perels *pat* ben aforseid, & saue þee fro blame. ¶ Also olde men
- 24 schulen not be lete blood, & 3itt summe olde men ben strengier of vertu þan summe 3onge men; & þan þou schalt take hede to þe rule in þis maner: *pat* þou schalt not lete hem blood whanne þei arisiþ out of her sijknēs / ¶ Also wommen wip childe schulen not
- 28 be lete blood, & speciali not in þe .iiij. firste moneþis, ne in þe laste monþe / Also 3onge men *pat* ben white & pale, & haueþ fewe heeris in her browis, & haueþ smale veynes & priui, ne ben not couenable to be lete blood; ne men *pat* han manie humours & litil blood, for
- 32 blood *pat* is in hem is tresour. ¶ Ffrench men doon hem-silf miche harme in þis caas; whanne þei ben ful of coold humours & corrupt þei letiþ hem-silf blood, & þan þei seen her blood corrupt &

Bleed in those diseases which are caused by abundance of blood.

.1.
.2.
.3.

1. The operator must have the proper age, know the blood-vessels, and have good instruments.

2. Children ought not to be bled except in urgent cases; it is always dangerous,

and the parents must be warned.

Do not bleed old men, [3 lf. 214, bk.]

nor pregnant women,

nor young men who are pale and have sparse hair and small veins.

Much harm is done in France by too much blood-letting.

¹ The Latin editions of Lanfranc read: "Tertio cum dolor fortis adest capitis siue febres fortes squinantes pleuresos," ed. Ven. 1498, fol. 201 bk., Ven. 1546, fol. 249, but Add. MS. 26,106 (xivth cent.), fol. 88, shows the correct reading, which corresponds with the translation: "Tercio cum dolor fortis adest capitis sine febre, cum fortes squinantes, pleureses."

² Lat. curatius.

⁴ tool, a survival of the O.E. tōl, N.A. plur.

foul, & þan þei supposen þat þei han wel doon þat þei haue lete out
 þat blood, & þe barbour wole seie þat he mote hastili be lete blood
 azen / It were wel better to him þat he hadde kept his blood, &
 þat þe corrupt humours hadde be voidid awei in oþer maner / 4
 ¶ Blood-letynge is not good for a man at þe firste bigynnyng of
 cataracta, ne noon ventuse is not good for him / but in causis as it
 is forseid, blood-letyng is good // And ¹if a man etip miche fleisch
 & drinkip miche wijn, for þis wole engendre miche blood / And 8
 þan but if a man lete him blood, þan þere wole engendre diuers
 sijknis þerof, & ofte tyme sodeyn deef / Also men þat haue þe
 gout of blood, he schal be lete blood tofore þe tyme þat he
 supposip to haue his passioun; for ofte tyme þis wole take away 12
 his akyng. & in alle sijknissis þat comen principali of blood, it
 is good for hem to be lete blood / Also men þat haue synocham,
 blood-letynge is ful necessarie to hem, til þei swowne. & þis wole
 do awei þe feure, or it waastip so miche þe mater; & þan he muste 16
 be holpen wiþ oþere medicyns, þat þou schalt fynde in bokis of
 phisik² / If he be not lete blood, þan þe blood þat is in him wole
 boile vpward to þe brest, & gadere togidere in the brest, þat þe
 pacient schal be ful nyȝ stoppid.³ & sumtyme a veine wole breke 20
 in þe piyse or in þe lungis, & þan þat veine mai not be streyned ne
 stoppid, & þan þe patient schal die þeron. ¶ In þis chapitre it is
 myn entencioun forto speke oonly of openyng of veines ⁴þat ben
 in us,⁵ & what vertu þer is þerinne. In boþe armis of a man þer 24
 ben .iiij. veines þat ben in us for to be lete blood þeron / þe .i. is
 clepid cephalica, & is þe hizeste veine of þe arme, & sitt next þe
 elbowe⁶; & þis veine mote be kut large, & not to depe / If þat
 veine be kut streit, þan ofte tyme it makip an enpostym / & also 28
 þou muste be wel war þat þou touche no synewis / For þe same
 cause þou miȝt lete a man blood vpon þe hond, bitwixe his pombe
 & þe nexte fyngir þerto // Basilica sittip adoun aforzens þe elbowe,
 vndir þe arme, & þis veine sittip ful nyȝ þe gret arterie: & þerfore 32
 a man mote be wel war þat he touche not þe arterie veyne. & for
 þe perel of þe arterie it is good for to lete him blood bitwixe þe
 litil fyngir & þe fynger next þerto. & þis blood-letynge is good for

Nota
 Do not bleed
 at the be-
 ginning of
 cataract.

[¹ If. 215]
 Blood-letting
 shall be used,
 if a man eats
 and drinks
 too much,
 in case of
 gout—before
 the illness
 is quite de-
 veloped—

in case of
 synocha,

else the blood
 may boil into
 the breast,

and a vein
 may break.

Nota

[⁴ If. 215, bk.]

The veins on
 which phle-
 botomy is
 practised are
 1. **Cephalica.**

which is cut
 either near
 the elbow,
 or between
 the thumb
 and the first
 finger.

2. **Basilica.**
 is cut either
 in the fold
 of the arm,

or between
 the little
 finger and the
 ring finger.

² *þan he muste be holpen—bokis of phisik*, inserted. Lat.: “aut omnino phlebotomia febrem tollit, aut adeo materiam minuit, quod in putridam de cetero non mutatur.”

³ Lat. quod patiens suffocatur.

⁵ Lat. quæ sunt in usu.

⁶ Lat. prima cefalica que in duobus minuitur locis prope cubiti plicaturam aliquantulum supra.

alle þe placis vndir þe brest, & for þe lyuere. ¶ Of þis veine þat is clepid Basilica, & of þe veine þat is c[lepid] Cephalica, comþ a veine þat is clepid Mediana / And whanne a man is lete blood in
4 þis veyne, it is perel of ij. grete synewis þat liggip in boþe sidis ¹ of þe veyne. And whanne þou pinkist to avoide al a mannes bodi, þan þou schalt lete him blood in þis veine, & principali for þe herte & for þe brest. ¶ In Basilica, in þe rizt hond, þou schalt lete a
8 man blood for passioun of þe lyuere, & in þe lift hond for passioun of þe splene,² & in þe liftside of þe forheed³ it is good to lete blood for akynge of þe heed,⁴ & principali whanne sijknis is con-
12 firmed in a mannes heed. & þis I apreuede misilf / for sumtyme it doip awei þe frenesi. & I siz a womman þat hadde akynge in hir heed, þat it miȝte not be take awei, & I lete hir blood in hir hond as it is forseid & purgide hir, & þe veine in hir forheed þat was gretter þan ony oþer veine in hir bodi; & I openede þat veine,
16 & anon rizt sche was hool / But whanne þou wolt lete a man blood in þat place, þou schalt streyne þe necke & kutte þe veine endelongis; & þis blood-letynge is good for tynea, þat is in a mannes heed, & for Saphati.⁵ & for demigrania þou schalt lete
20 blood in þe templis of his heed. & þe same blood-letynge is good for passion⁶ of a mannes iȝen / I hadde a zong man in my kepinge þat hadde demigrayn⁷ of hoot cause, & I purgide him ofte & lete him blood, and I knytte þe arterie þat was in þe same side of his
24 heed, & þo he was cured for euermore / Also letynge blood in þe veynes bihinde hise eeris is good for þe-demigrayn & for tineam / Also letynge blood in þe tunge is good for þe squinacie, & for enpostyms, þat ben as it were almaundis, & for brancis;⁸ but he

3. Mediana. is selected for general bleeding. [1 lf. 216]

A vein in the forehead is cut against headache and frenzy;

as the author did in the case of a woman.

Blood-letting on the temples is good against megrim, [6 lf. 216, bk.] and an eye disease.

Cut the veins behind the ear against megrim: bleed the tongue against squinacy.

² *Regimen sanitatis Salerni*, transl. by T. Paynell (1530), fol. h. iiii.: "*Saluatella* is þat veyne betwene þe myddell fynger and the ryngge fynger, more declynyng to the myddell fynger. Hit begynneth of *Basilica*. This veyne is opened in the ryghte hande for opilation of þe lyuer, and in the lefte hande for opilation of the splene. There is no reason why it shuld be so, as Auicenn saythe, but experyence: whiche Galen founde by a dreame, as he saythe. He had one in cure, whose lyuer and splene were stopte, and he dreamed that he dyd let him blud of this veine, and so he dyd, and cured the pacient."

³ MS. inserts *for*.

⁴ Lat. in capite flebotomatur vena frontis propter capitis egritudines.

⁵ MS. *sanaci*. The editions of Lanfranc read *saphati*, Add. MS. 26,106, fol. 89: *saffira*. *Matth. Sylv.*: "Saphiros, Sephiros idest apostema durum cui non associatur sensus." *Vigo Interpr.*: "Sephiros is an arabike word, and it is called in Greke scirros, in latyne durities, that is hardenes."

⁷ *demigrayn*, Lat. emigranea. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, s. v. megrim.

⁸ *brancus*, med. Lat. Dufr., a throat-disease. *Isid.*, Lib. 4, Cap. 7: "branchos est præfocatio faucium a frigido humore." The editions of Lanfr. read: brachiis.

Bleed from the jugular vein against suffocation, from a vein in the lower lip,

from the 3 veins in the leg,

1. a vein under the knee,

[⁴ lf. 217]

2. a vein in the hollow of the foot called

Sophena.

3. the sciatic vein.

If you intend to let blood more than once from the same place,

make a larger incision.

[³ lf. 217, bk.] If by blood-letting, you wish to draw the matter to the opposite part of the body, bleed repeatedly.

schal be lete blood tofore in þe heed-veyne. & it is good for þe
 1izen, & it is good for icching & for pustulis in þe nose, & for
 scotomia þat cometh of blood / Sumtyme a man is lete blood in
 veynes in þe necke, þat ben clepid gwide,¹ for drede of suffocacioun² 4
 of blood; & sumtyme in leprous men, þat schulen be lete blood in
 her lippis bineþe.³ & þis is good for hote enpostyms in þe mouþ, &
 for hote passiouns of þe gommys. ¶ In a mannes foot ben .iiij., þat
 ben profitable to be lete blood for manie passiouns / And þer is oon 8
 veyne in a mannes hamme vndir his knee, þat is good to be lete
 4 blood for passiouns of þe maris, & for to bringe out menstrue: &
 it avoidip al þe bodi. ¶ Also þer is anoþer veine, þat sittip bitwixe
 þe holowe of þe foot wipinneforþ, & is clepid Sophena; & in þis 12
 veyne wommen ben leten blood for passiouns of þe maris, & men
 ben lete blood in þe veine of þe same place for enpostyms of þe
 ballokis. ¶ þe veine þat serueþ for þe scie, is wipoute bitwixe þe
 heele & þe holowe of þe foot wipoutforþ, & blood-letynge in þis 16
 veine is good for scia[tij]cam passionem, as it is aforseid in þe cure
 of sciatica. ¶ Herof þou schalt take kepe. If þou þinkist for to
 lete a man blood in .ij. diuers times, & not al at oonys, þan þou
 schalt do in þis maner; & in þis caas, whanne þou wolt lete a man 20
 miche blood, and ne darist not do it al at oonys; þan whanne þou
 letist him blood, þou schalt make þe inscicioun of þe veine þe more
 long, þat it soude not hastili; & þan þou schalt binde his arme, &
 smite þe place þere þou wolt lete him blood wip þi fyngir, & make 24
 him blede more, as myche as þou seest þat good is / ⁵¶ Also
 whanne þou wolt wip blood-letynge make þe mater go to þe place
 aforzens; whanne þou hast lete out þe .iiij. part off blood þat he
 schal blede, þan þou schalt sette þi fingir vpon þe wounde, & make 28
 him stonde vp & remeue⁶ him-silf, & lete him sitte adoun, & do
 awei þi fyngir & lete him blede more. & þus þou schalt do .iiij.

¹ Lat. vene guidegi.

² Phillips: "*Suffocation*, a suffocating, stifling, etc., a Stoppage."

³ This statement is due to a wrong interpunctuation in the Latin original. Add. 26,106: "Aliquando flebotomantur uene guidegi colli cum suffocatio ex sanguinis timetur multitudine. & aliquando in quibusdam leprosis uene quæ sunt in labiis inferioribus interioribus minuuntur propter acola calidum in ore — —." A full stop ought to be between leprosis and uene. Compare *Liber Rasis ad Almans*, Tract. VII, Cap. 21, ed. Ven. 1506, fol. 32 bk.: "Sed due uene que dicuntur guidegi sunt flebotomande, cum anhelitus in lepre principio maxime angustatur." "Vene itidem, que in labiis sunt inciduntur cum in aliquo multiplicantur alcola et ulcera in ore et gingivis."

⁶ *remeue him-silf* has the sense of M.E. *remuen*, O.F. *remuer*, to move, stir.

- sipis or .iiij., for in þis maner þe blood drawiþ more to þe partie aforþens, & þe vertu of þe pacient schal þe better be kept. ¶ Also if a man is wont to swowne in blood-letynge ouþer falle down, þan
- 4 lete him lie & be lete blood / Also or he be lete blood, lete him ete a schiuer of breed toostid & leid in wijn of *granatorum*. ¶ Alle maner veynes in blood-letinge schulen be kutt^t endelongis / And whanne þou wolt lete a man blood in þe partijs aboue þe necke, þan
- 8 þou muste binde þe veine,¹ til þe veyne arise þat þou wolt lete him blood on / And whanne þou wolt lete a man blood in his arme, þan þou muste binde his arme þe brede of foure fyngris aboue þe place; & þou muste ²be wel war þat þou streyne not to faste, as manie
- 12 men doon / Manie men binden so faste a mannes arm, þat he mai not fele his arm / Veynes of a mannes feet & in his hondis, if þou wolt lete a man blood þeron, þan þou muste sette hem in hoot water, & lete hem achaufe þeron an hour; & þan þou muste binde
- 16 his foot ouþir his hond aboue þe ioinct wip a boond, & algate his foot or his hond mote be in þe watir as longe as he schal blede /

Give the patient a slice of bread and wine before the operation.

Before operating cause the vein to swell, by bandaging the limb,

[² lf. 218]

and by a warm foot-bath.

Of kuttyngis and bledyngis //

- S**iccia is sett^t sumtyme for kuttynge & sumtime wipoute kuttynge, ¶ *xviij. co.*
- 20 and sumtyme wip kuttinge.³ Wipout^t kutting^t as vpon a mannes wombe or wommans / ffor akyng þat comeþ of wijnd, & it is good for to waste wijnd / Also it is sett^t vpon þe wei of þe stoon þat falliþ adoun of þe reynes, & þan it schal be sett^t a litil bineþe þe
- 24 akyng þat it mowe drawe þe stoon lower & lower til it come to þe hole of þe bladdre / Also it is sett^t vndir a wommans tetis for to restreyne þe blood of þe nose & of þe maris / Also it is sett^t vpon þe region ⁴of þe wombe for fallinge of þe maris, þat is clepid dislo-
- 28 cacioun of þe maris: as if the maris falle adoun in þe rihtside, þan it schal be sett^t in þe liftside / And if þe maris falle in þe liftside, þan it schal be sett^t in þe rihtside / Also it is sett^t vndir a mannes eere for to drawe out a greyne or a stoon of þe eere þat is falle yn /
- 32 Also it is sett^t vndir a mannes ers to drawe out þe emeroidis þat sittip hid fer yn / And it schal be sett^t in eueri place þere þou wolt make a greet attraccioun / Also it is good for to be sett^t vpon þe bitynge of a wood hound, & vpon þe biting^t of a venymous beest.

The Sycla is used against flatulence,

to draw the stone from the kidneys towards the bladder,

to restrain flux of blood in case of falling of the womb,

[⁴ lf. 218, bk.]

to draw a stone out of the ear,

to draw out internal piles,

on the bite of a mad dog.



¹ Lat. opus collum stringi donec appereant.

³ Add. 26106, fol. 89, bk.: "Siccia aliquando ponitur sine incisione aliquando cum incisione." The printed editions omit this passage.

Cupping with previous scarification is used instead of blood-letting, if the patients are either very old or very young.

[² *l*f. 219]

Scarify on the head, for eye-disease, skin-diseases, and tooth-ache.

Scarify between the shoulders for swooning.

It schal be sett¹ peron wip scarificacioun, also in causis pere pou lettist¹ for to drawe blood for febilnes, or for elde, or in children; & hem after .iiij. 3eer oold we moun garchie, whanne blood leting¹ is forboden hem, & speciali whanne we purposen for to drawe awei mater 4 pat¹ is vndir þe skyn / Also we moun garse a man bihinde in þe nol of þe heed — —¹ & for greuauce of þe izen, & vpon þe .ij. corneris of þe heed for tinea & for pustules pat¹ ben in þe heed vnder ²a mannes chyn, for wennys of þe face & for vlcera pat¹ ben in þe 8 mouþ & in þe lippis & for akyng of þe teep / Also if it be sett¹ bytwixe þe .ij. schuldris for swownynge & for quakinge of þe herte, & for hem pat¹ han to miche blood in pat¹ place. þis maner letynge blood avoidid a mannes bodi miche & makip him feble³ / 12

watir lechis

Bad leeches have big heads and live in foul water.

Also watir lechis⁴ drawip more blood þan þese / In þis maner pou schalt¹ knowe whiche ben gode watir lechis & whiche ben nouzt¹. þei pat¹ han blac colour medlid wip diuers colouris, & þei pat¹ haueþ grete hedis & ben in foule styngynge watris & han miche spume on 16 hem ben nouzt¹ / And in þis maner pou schalt¹ knowe whiche ben gode : þei pat¹ han reed wombis & litil reed rewis in þe rigge medlid wip grene, & whanne þei haueþ litil hedis & smale tailis, & whanne þei ben in good watir pat¹ ben manie froggis yn. & or pou sette 20 hem vpon a man, þei schulen be kept¹ al adai fastynge. & þan pou schalt¹ 3eue him a litil scharp blood for to ete, & þan pou schalt¹ waische hem wip cleer water; & þan vpon þe ⁵place pat¹ he schal be

Good leeches haue red wombs, small heads, live in pure water.

Keep them fasting before use.

[⁵ *l*f. 219, bk.]

¹ Some words are wanting. Lat. : propter grauedinem capitis.

³ The sentence to which this statement refers is omitted. Lat. : "Que vero in poplitis plicatura valent ad egritudines renum, et matricis, testiculorum et omnium membrorum nutritiuorum ex sanguine."

⁴ Rhasis, *Continens*, Lib. XV. Cap. 6, ed. Brix, 1486, fol. CC. 3, bk., gives an interesting description of different kinds of leeches : "Sanguisugarum vna est venenosa, que est nigra vehementer ad modum antimonij, habens caput magnum & squamas ad modum piscium quorundam & habens medium viride, etiam alia, super quam sunt pili, habet magnum caput et colorem diuersum ad modum iris, in cuius colore sunt linee ad modum lazuli : que quotiens mordet, inde accidet apostema cum sincopi, febre, ebrietate, et laxitudine articulorum ; tamen bona ipsarum est, que assimilatur colori aque in qua erit viriditas, habent super se duas lineas ad modum arsenici ; sed blonde rotonde & ad colores epatis apte, que veloces sunt ad attrahendum sanguinem subtilem & que assimilantur caude muris, habentes odorem horribilem & similes locuste parvule et tenui & habentes ventrem ruffum cum nigrore & dorsum viride, sunt meliores ; sed peiores erunt in aqua mala valde stabili, in qua sunt ranule multe, tamen bone sunt in aqua bona & optima." This account is copied by Avicenna, Lib. I., Fen. 4, Cap. 22, ed. Ven. 1527, fol. 62, bk. He differs in one point : "illas elige, que in aquis colliguntur, in quibus morantur rane. Neque attendas illud quod quidam dicunt, quod si sunt in aquis ubi morantur rane, sunt male."

sette þe place schal be wel frotid tofore, þat it bicomē reed, & þan sette þervpon a ventuse for to drawe þerto blood. & þan anynte þe same place wiþ blood, & þan sette þervpon þe watir leche. & whanne he is ful & þou wolt do him awei, blowe vpon þe place baurac, ouþer askis maad of paper. & whanne he is falle awei, þan sette þervpon a ventuse azen to drawe more blood to þe plase. & þan sette þervpon anoþer watir leche, if þere gaderiþ þerto miche mater. & þis maner is good for al maner blood þat is rotid, for it draweth it out /

Draw the blood to the place with cupping, before the leech is set on,

and use again cupping, when the leech has dropped.

Of cauterium or brennyng of large & streite.¹

CAuterium is seid in ij. maners, þat it is to seie large & streit. & cauterium is seid propurli a brennyng wiþ gold or wiþ sum oþer instrument þat is hoot, ouþer wiþ watir or wiþ oile, ouþer wiþ medicyn caustica, ouþer wiþ herbis / And þer ben manie medicyns, for to make cauterijs, whiche þou schalt fynde pleyulier in þe anti-dotarie / A cauterie is clepid streit,² whanne it is maad wiþ an hoot yren, wiþ gold, or wiþ siluir // Cauterijs þat³ ben maad wiþ medicyns þat han vertu for to brenne / þer is seid a cauterie po[tentia]le whanne it is not hoot in felinge / & þat cauterie preuailiþ wiþouten brennyng as herbis / þer is anoþer maner cauterie: actual, for so miche as it brenneth in dede / Of þis cauterie auicen⁴ spekiþ & seiþ, þat it is a medicyn, miche helpinge for to defende, þat mater schal not departe into al þe lyme; & it wole comforte þe lyme, & bringe it into good complexioun azen, & it wole dissolue mater þat is corrupt, & it wole streyne flux of blood. & auicen seiþ, þat a cauterie is oon of þe beste pointis of cirurgie / for þingis þat mowe not be fulfillid in long tyme, wiþ cauterie þei ben fulfillid / As it is seid phisicians leueþ þis craft to cirurgians. & þerfore it is greet wondir if þer be ony good cirurgian founde, for þei ben alle lewid men. & if a lewid man schal worche with cauterijs, þan he knowiþ not þe difference bitwixe a cauterie þat is clepid actual & potencial. & also þei knowe not in what place of a mannes bodi þei schulen make hem. & þis is so reþreud þat it is almoost out⁵ of vss / Also summen maken cauterijs in vnclene bodies þat ben ful replet of

¶ xvij co
A Cautery is any substance used for burning.

In a narrower sense it is the hot iron, gold or silver.

[S. 1f. 220]

A caustic medicine is called potential cautery.

The actual cautery is really burning.

The effects of cauterization.

Auicen praises the cautery.

The physicians leave its use in the hands of surgeons, who are all unlearned, and cannot distinguish the

Cauterium actuale [S. 1f. 220, bk.] and Cauterium potenciale.

¹ The translator misunderstood the meaning of the Latin, "large et stricte," in the following passage: Cauterium dicitur duobus modis, large & stricte.

² See the preceding note.

⁴ Lanfranc mentions Avicenna, who has a short chapter about cauterization, Lib. I., Fen. 4, Cap. 29; yet he chiefly follows Gulielmus de Salic., Lib. V., Cap. I., but with many additions and alterations.

Some cauterize a patient, who is full of bad humours, wherof a cancer may ensue.

Some use Cantarides.

Auicē says, the cautery is the best consuming medicine, if properly applied, and if there is not too much matter.

[1 lf. 221]

As a little fire has no effect on a large quantity of wet wood, so the cautery is inefficient, if the patient is too full of humours.

The patient shall not bear the cautery longer than three months.

Particulars about cauteries, [4 lf. 221, bk.] and the shape of the instruments:

1. Nodulum, an iron plate with a hole,

through which the red-hot iron is applied.

yuele humours, & þan cauterijs wolen do litil profit to passiouns þat^t ben forseid, but^t þer wole falle þerto so manie humouris, & make þe place of þe cauterie to swelle, & litzly engendre a cancre. & þan men þat^t ben vnkunynge ben agast^t herof^t & ben not^t hardi for to 4 make no mo cauterijs. & if^t þe patient hadde be purgid of grete humours tofore, þan it^t wolde not^t haue fare so. ¶ And summen vsen cantarides for to make cauterijs þerwip, & leggen it^t vpon men þat^t han hote complexioun & drie; & þis is contrarious & fallip 8 greet^t agreuance þerof^t, & þan þei seien þat^t cauterijs ne ben nouzt^t worp / But auicē seip, þat^t a cauterie is good tofore alle medicyns for to waaste & consume mater / if þe cauterie be sett^t in place þere it^t schulde be, but^t if^t the mater be so miche þat^t þe cauterie mai not^t 12 consume it^t, as þou mizt^t se an ensample herof^t: þat^t fier ouercomeþ alle þingis / but^t if^t þou doist^t a litil fier among^t miche wet^t wode, þer wole come smoke þerof^t. & the fier^t mai not^t ouercome to waaste þe wode, for water þat^t is in þe wode is more þan þe fier / In þe same 16 maner it^t fariþ of a cauterie þat^t is in a mannes bodi, if^t he be ful of humouris, þanne þe cauterie mai not^t worche. & þerfor þou schalt^t purge him wip laxatiuis tofore þe cauterie as it^t is aforseid / Also þou schalt^t make no cauterijs in a man þat^t is ful of gode humours 20 as of blood, for þan oonli blood-letyng^t suffisip / but^t if^t þe patient be strong^t & þe mater on him be coold & moist^t, þan a cauterie is good for to driue awei þe mater. & a man schal not^t bere a cauterie, but^t .ij. moneþis ouþer .iij. at^t þe mooste. ¶ Now I wole telle þee 24 a good rule / If^t þou fyndist^t in a mannes body a lyme in wei of corrupcioun²: as herisipula, or herpes estiomenus, ouþer formica, or in yuel disposicioun of a wounde þat^t bigynneþ to encancre,³ & for al oper corrupcioun, þan sette a cauterie in þe nexte welle to þe place, 28 for þe cauterie wole defende þe place fro corrupcioun. ¶ Now speke we of particlis of cauterijs þat^t fallip in diuers placis of a mannes bodi, & wip diuers instrumentis þei schulen⁴ be maad, whiche þou schalt^t se portraied⁵ tofore þe, & her signis forþwip. ¶ þe .i. instru- 32 ment^t þat^t is comoun & moost^t in vss, is clepid nodulum,⁶ & is an instrument^t maad in þis maner / Take a brood plate of iren & make þeron an hole, & leie þat^t plate þere þou wolt^t make þi cauterie. & þan þou muste haue an iren maad long^t & smal & maad hoot, & 36 putte it^t in þat^t hole of þe plate / þis plate wole saue þe place þat^t þe

² Lat.: si membrum invenis in via corruptionis.

³ encancre, med. Lat. incancreire; Dufur., Ital. incancherare.

⁵ The figures are omitted.

⁶ Lat. anodulum, adnodulum.

- cauterie schal be nomore but² as þou wolt / & þat iren þat þou schalt make þi cauterie þerwip, schal haue a litil round knap tofore. & þat iren schal be maad hoot³ til it bicometh reed / & þerwip þou
- 4 schalt make þi cauterie, & whanne þou doist awei þin iren, þere wole be vlcus. & þan þou schalt leie þeron butter or oold grese, or grese stampid wip caul-leues, & þat is þe best of alle, & leie it þerto, til þe cruste falle awei þat þe hoot⁴ iren made. & þan þou
- 8 schalt do þerto a litil pelot⁵ maad of lymmen cloof round & hard. & þat pelot schal be anoyntid wip oile, & vpon þe place leie a caul-leef, or an yue-leef, or a vine-leef, & in þis⁶ maner þou schalt holde it open as longe as þou wolt. ¶ The .ij. cauterie is clepid **round**, &
- 12 hap no knap at þe ende, but it is schape long, & whanne þou makist þi cauterie, þou muste be war þat þou touche no nerues ne veynes. & þis instrument schal be maad in þis maner, þat it make a cauterie in boþe endis, after þat þou desirist, greet or smal. ¶ The
- 16 .ij. cauterie is clepid **punctuale**, & is ful necessarie whanne þou wolt make a streit cauterie. & is maad in þis maner. ¶ The .iiij. is clepid **radiale**, & is smal & scharp, & is good for children, & is maad in þis maner⁷ / ¶ The .v. cauterie is maad in þis maner, & is swiþe
- 20 comoun & is clepid **calcellare**.⁸ & þis wole make a long brennyng as ouerþwert þe heed, & whanne þou wolt make vlcera long þat ben rounde, þan þou schalt worche wip þis cauterie. ¶ The .vj. is clepid **subtile**, & is good for festriss þat sittip in þe corner of a mannes eye, & it is good for yuel fleisch þat growip in a mannes eye, & is maad in þis maner / þis sotille⁹ cauterie schal be maad hoot & putt in a canel in þis maner // The .vj.¹⁰ is clepid dactilare, for it is schape as it were þe stoon of a date. & herwip þou schalt make cauterijs in þe
- 28 haunche. & þere schal be an instrument schape as a table, & schal be leid to þe haunche in þis maner, & hap .vj. arisynge þeron as hap a stoon of a date.¹¹ & oon þerof is in þe myddil, & .ij. aboue, & .j. bineþe, & oon in boþe sidis in þis maner / Whanne þis instrument
- 32 is hoot, it schal be putt vpon a mannes haunche, & a table bitwixe maad of iren. & þis table schal be coold, & þer schulen be .vj. holis

After this operation an ulcer is left, on which cabbage-leaves are applied.

[1 ff. 222]

2. The round cautery can be used at both ends.

3. punctuale.

Radiale is used for children.

4. Calcellare makes long burns.

5. Subtile, used for a fistula in the corner of the eye.

[4 ff. 222, bk.]

6. Dactilare, used to cauterize the haunch, is an iron instrument of two parts, one a table with five holes, the other with five eminences fitting into the holes.

² The description of the Cauterium radiale is an insertion of the translator. Lat.: "tertium cauterium punctuale, seu radiale, & est necessarium ubi valde strictum uolueris facere cauterium, & est sic factum." Gulielm. de Sal. Sloane 277, fol. 45, bk.: "þe fifþe is clepyd cauterium minutum, or radiale or viduale þat is a comoun instrument to children."

³ Add. 26106, fol. 98, bk.: "cutellare," printed ed. "cultellare."

⁵ The translator, forgetting that he counted the "radiale" as a separate cautery, follows again the numbers of the original.

⁶ Lat.: et habet v. eminentias sicut ossa dactilorum factas.

peron, schape after þe cauterie þat haþ .vj. arisingis out as it is afor-
 seid. And þou schalt make .v. cauterijs vpon a mannes haunche,
 & .ij. þerof schulen be aboue þe ioynct, & .ij. bi þe sidis, & oon
 vpon þe ioynct, & .j. tofore þe ioynct. ¶ Þe .vij. is clepid triangu- 4
 lare, & þerwiþ þer mai be maad .iiij. at oonys. & þis cauterie is good
 for þe haunche also, & is maad in þis maner / ¶ The .viij. cauterie
 is clepid actuale,¹ for sumtyme it is maad wiþ a nedle, & it is good
 for to make cauterijs þerwiþ in þe browis, & is maad sutil as a 8
 nedele. ¶ The .ix. cauterie is clepid linguale, & it is schape as it
 were a tunge of a litil brid in þis maner. & it is good for to make
 cauterijs vpon a mannes browis / ¶ The .x. cauterie is clepid ceton,³
 & is maad triangulis holowid.⁴ & in þe hole þerof þere may entre a 12
 scharp instrument þat haþ a fenestre⁵ as it were a nedele, & it
 schal be holde with coold tenaculis, also þe place þat þou wolt
 make þi cauterie on. þou schalt take vp þe skyn wiþ tenaculis, &
 putt in þin hoot iren þoruþ þe hole of þe tenaculis, & brenne þe skyn. 16
 þan þou schalt make a corde of wollen þerne & wete it in blood, &
 drawe it þoruþ þe holis, & þan þou schalt knytte þe .ij. endis to-
 gidere, & in þis maner þou schalt holde it open as longe as þou wolt.
 þis is a comoun cauterie, & þis cauterie mai be maad in þe mouþ of 20
 þe stomac, & vpon þe lyuere & þe splene, & vpon þe ballocke-leþeris /
 Now þou knowist alle þin instrumentis, for to make cauterijs with, &
 her names / Now telle we in what maner & in what place þou schalt
 make hem / In oold heed-akyng, ⁶whanne purgaciouns & laxatiuis 24
 & gargarismis & snesyngis⁷ & clisterijs & opere maner of avoid-
 ynge, & wiþ enplastris & wiþ anyntyng, whanne þe akyng of a
 mannes heed wole not go awei wiþ alle þese, ne þe epilencie,⁸ ne
 noon passioun þat comeþ of þe heed, ne passiouns of þe izeen, & 28
 passiouns of þe eeren, & of þe noseprillis, & oold couze, & flux of
 þe wombe þat comeþ of þe reume. ¶ For alle þese passiouns þou
 schalt make cauterie þat is clepid cultellare in þe welle of þe heed⁹

The skin is
 lifted up with
 pincers, a
 hole is burnt
 through, and
 some threads
 of wool put
 in.

[⁶ lf. 223, bk.]

When all
 other medi-
 cines are
 inefficient to
 remove a
 chronic head-
 ache and
 other diseases
 arising from
 the head,

use the
 Cauterium
 Cultellare.

¹ *actuale*, a mistake for *acuale*.

³ *ceton*, med. Lat. seto, sedo; Fr. séton; Ital. settone, "seton." Add. 26, 106, and the printed ed. read: dicitur ad sectionem.

⁴ Lat.: fit cum tenaculis perforatis.

⁵ *fenestre*, Lat. fenestra; "la fenestre de la cannule," Paré; see *Littre* *Diet*.

⁷ *snesyngis*, Lat. sternutationes.

⁸ *epilencie*, O.Fr. epilence. Plinius: epilepticus. See Dufr. Matth. Sylv.: Epilepsia .i. morbus caducus.

⁹ Lat. in capitis fontinella. Phillips: "Fontanella, or Fonticulus, a little Well, or Spring: In Surgery, an Issue, or little Ulcer, made in sound parts of the Body, to let out bad Humours, and to Cure, or prevent Diseases. In

- bihinde. & first^t schaue awei þe heeris, þere þou wolt^t make þi cauterie as it is aforseid *with* an hoot^t iren, & herof^t þou schalt^t be ware þat^t þou lete not^t þat^t iren be þere to longe, but þou schalt^t hastili make it^t, & hastili do awei þe iren, & þan þou schalt^t do
- 4 awei þe cruste þerof^t wip butter, or wip oold grese, or wip leeuës of caul, as it^t is aforseid. ¶ þis cauterie schal be holde open wip litil pelottis as it^t is forseid as longe as þou wolt^t, til þe patient be hool / But^t or þou make þi cauterie, þou muste be wel ware, as it^t is afor-
- 8 seid, þat^t þin iren lie not^t to longe, ¹but^t hastili take it^t awei, for if^t it^t were þere longe his brayn myzte be harmed þerbi. ¶ Wip þis cauterie I helide a womman þat^t hadde passiouns in hir heed manie diuers, & I mizte not^t make hir hool *with* no purgaciouns, ne wip
- 12 noon anoyntingis, & wip þis cauterie I made hir al hool. ¶ Also þou muste make a round cauterie & touche oonly þe skyn þerwip, & do þerto seto. þis cauterie is good for passiouns of þe izen, & for epilenciam, & for opere sijknëssis of þe heed; but^t þis cauterie is
- 16 not so good as þat^t oper tofore. ¶ Also þou mizt^t make a cauterie in a mannes necke bytwixe þe boonys & þe skyn aboueforþ²; þis cauterie is good for þe spasme. ¶ Also whanne a man is woundid in þe heed, þis cauterie is good for drede of þe spasme; for herwip
- 20 þe mater schal be consumed, þat^t nerues ben redi for to take.³ ¶ Also in þe welle vnder þe eeris & bihinde þe eeris þou schalt^t make cauterijs for passiouns of izen and for akyngë of þe teep. ¶ Superfluite of fleisch þat^t is vpon a mannes browis, þou schalt^t do
- 24 awei wip a cauterie þat^t is clepid lingual, ⁴schape as it^t were a tunge of a brid. & þou schalt^t make þerwip cauterijs vpon his browis, but^t þou muste be war þat^t þou touche not^t þe natural substaunce of þe browis. & þou schalt^t make cauterijs pervpon *with*
- 28 cauterium punctuale, & for to do awei superfluite of fleisch þat^t is in þe corner of a mannes ixe. ¶ Superfluite of fleisch þat^t is in a mannes nose, it^t mai be remeued awei wip cauterium acutum ouþer punctuale, for to touche þerwip þe fleisch a litil & a litil til al þe
- 32 superfluite be take awei. & if^t þis superfluite be fast þeron & be fer yn, þan þou muste vse a sutil cauterie, & putte it^t in þe nose-þril

The iron must not be too long on the head.

[1 If. 224]

The round cautery is good for passiouns of þe izen.

A cautery applied on the neck is good for spasm.

The cauterium linguale [* If. 224, bk.] is used to remove a growth on the eye-brows.

A growth in the nose is removed with the Cauterium acutum.

Anatomy, the mould or root of the Nose." It was further a name for the place where these ulcers were produced, especially for a place between the sutures of the skull. Compare *Sowd. of Babyl.* 2951: [*he smote hir*] *ouer the founte throughout the brayn.*

² Lat.: cutem superficialiter tangendo.

³ Lat.: nam materia per hoc consumitur, per quam neruorum inhibitiio expectatur.

The round cautery is applied beneath the chin for skin-disease.

A cautery applied on [2 lf. 225] the arms is used against lethargy.

A cautery on the fingers is used for chiragra.

Cauteries are used for asthma,

empyema,

for diseases of the rib-bone,

the stomach,

[8 lf. 225, bk.]

the liver, and the spleen,

they are best made with a Seton.

þoruþ þe canel, þat þe hete ne mowe not harme þe substaunce of þe nose, but oonly breñne þe superfluite of þe fleisch. ¶ Also þou schalt make a round cauterie vnder a mannes chyn. & þis cauterie is good for wennys þat ben in þe skyn of his face, & for þe place,¹ 4 & for þe palet, & for sijknys in a mannes moup, & in þe gomys, & in þe teep. ¶ Also þou miȝt make .ij. cauterijs in boþe a mannes armys, wiþoutforþ þe arme, in þe welle þat is vpon þe grete braun a litil² bineþe þe schuldre. & þis cauterie is good for sijknys þat ben 8 in þe partie bihinde of a mannes brayn as for þe litarge,³ & also it purgip wel þe nerues of þe necke / Also þou miȝt make anoper in þe welle vnder þe grete braun, and is good for þe brayn wiþinneforþ as for scotomia & vertigine, & for water þat fallip adoun fro a mannes 12 heed to hise izen, & it is good for al passiouns of a mannes izen / Also þou schalt make a cauterie cultellaria⁴ bitwene a mannes fyngris / And þese cauterijs ben gode for passiouns ciragra / Also þou schalt make cauterijs in þe brest wiþ a round cauterie, and is 16 good for asma⁵ / Also þou miȝt make a cauterie toward þe forke of þe brest aboue for disma⁶ / Also þou miȝt sumtyme make cauterijs in þe brest, þat ben clepid cultellaria, bitwixe þe ribbis, & þese cauterijs been good for empima,⁷ *id est* apostyme wiþinne / Also þou 20 miȝt make cauterijs punctualia in þe rigboon for gret akinge þat a man haþ in þat place / Also þou miȝt make cauterijs wiþ a round instrument vpon þe regioun of þe stomak, for long febilnes þat a [8 lf. 225, bk.] man haþ had in his stomak / Also þou miȝt⁸ make cauterijs vnder 24 þe nauele & vpon þe lyuere & vpon þe splene, ffor colicam passionem & for þe sijknys of þe lyuere & vpon þe splene & for dropesie. And alle þese cauterijs wolen be maad best wiþ seton / Also þou miȝt make .ij. cauterijs in þe haunchis as it is aforseid / Also þou 28

¹ place for plague? Lat.: saphati et pustulas.

² litarge, lethargy. Compare *Lecchd.* I., p. 200: "wiþ þa adle ðe man litargum hateð, þat ys on ure geþode ofergytulnys creden."

⁴ Lat.: "Fiunt cauteria cutellaria superficialia inter digitum et digitum in cyragra. De propr. rer. Lib. VII., Cap. 29, Trevisa, Add. 27,944, fol. 87 a: "Difficulte & hardnesse of breþinge hat asma & cometh of double cause of drynes þat streyneþ þe lungen."

⁵ asma, med. Lat. asma, ἀσμα.

⁶ disma, Add. 26106, fol. 89, bk.: "propter disimiam." Dufr., "dyspnia, ἐύσπνοια." Simon. Barth., p. 18: "Disma est species asmatis, sed disma fit ex siccitate, asma ex humiditate."

⁷ empima, Lat. empimia. Simon. Barth., p. 19: "Empima, i. sputum saniosum ex pulmonis infeccione proveniens." De propr. rer. Lib. VII., Cap. 30, Add. 27,944, fol. 87 a: "empima is a passiou, whan me spetiþ quittir."

- miȝt make .ij. cauterijs vndir þe knee, for þe akynge of þe knees & of þe ballokis & of þe maris. Also þou miȝt make .ij. cauterijs vndir þe kne, wiȝoutforþ for remedie of al þe bodi, for it avoideþ
 4 wel alle partijs of a mannes bodi / & I haue seen manie men þat han maad cauterijs in þat place, or his bodi were purgid, & humouris fel so myche þerto þat his leggis & his hipis to-swollen al greet. & if he hadde be purgid tofore, he schulde not haue fare
 8 so. & aboue þe ancle ben maad cauterijs for sijknis of þe ballokis. & also it is good for wommen / Also bitwixe þe toos ben maad cauterijs for þe potagre¹ / Also if þou purgist a man or a womman wiȝ medicyns laxatiuis, & þan makist a cauterie as it is aforseid.
 12 & if þe passioun go not awei at þis oon doinge, þan þou schalt neuere þe lattere [not]² be in dispeir of cauterijs,³ but þou schalt bigynne to purge⁴ him aȝen & make him a cauterie aȝen. & if it so be þat he be miche feblid herwiȝ, þan þou schalt restore aȝen wiȝ
 16 gode metis & drinkis þat engendriȝ good humours. & whanne he is restorid aȝen, þan þou schalt bigynne & purge him aȝen, & þan make hise cauterijs aȝen, & in þis maner þou schalt worche wiȝ þi cauterijs. ¶ ffor manie men makij oon cauterie or .ij., & if þei seen
 20 þat it profitij not, þan þei leueþ of & worchij nomore. & manie men contynuede þeron til þe pacient be brouȝt al down & liȝtli deed / & in þis maner ne schulde not a leche worche / ffor G. seiȝ: it is a feble leche, þat can not helpe þat is able to be holpen. &
 24 defaute herof is þis: þat manie lechis ȝeueþ medicyns, & ne makij no space to bringe þe patient into good staȝt aȝen⁵ / Alle þese rulis þat G. seiȝ þou schalt attende in þis maner: if þe patient be maad feble wiȝ medicyns laxatiuis & wiȝ cauterijs, þan þou cesse of þi
 28 medicyns & ȝeue him comfortatif metis & drinkis for to releue him aȝen, & þan þou miȝt worche wiȝ þi medicyns aȝen. & þus þou miȝt do perfitly þe cure / And heron manie men erriȝ þat ben holden ful kunnyng⁶ / & þerfore I haue sett it in þis place þat it mowe be
 32 ensaunple to þee / Also þou schalt make a cauterie vpon rotid fleisch, til þou haue take awei al þe corrupcioun þerof. & in þis caas we mowen vse hoot feruent oile for to springe vpon þe corrupcioun,

Cauteries on the knee are used for the genital organs of men and women.

The patient must be purged before being cauterized.

If the disease is not cured at once,
 [* If. 226]
 repeat the purging and cauterizing.

Many surgeons use the cauteries wrongly.

Galien.
 Allow the medicine time to work.

Galien.

[* If. 226, bk.]

Cauterize corrupt flesh with hot oil.

¹ *potagre*, Lat. *podagra*. *Hamp.* 2984: "for sleuthe als þe potagre and þe gout." De propr. rer., Trevisa, Add. 27,944, fol. 96, bk.: "Arthetica is ache and evel in jingres and tone wiȝ swellinge & sore ache, and whanne hit is in þe syngres hit hatte cyragra, and in þe toone hit hatte podagra."

² *not*, omitted. Lat.: nec propter hoc desperes.

³ See p. 284, note 7.

⁵ Add. 26,106, fol. 93: si plus dant, non interponunt spacium nutriendi.

so þat it ne touche noon hool¹ place, & þis maner is ful good to take awei corrupcioun of fleisch, & it is bettir þan medicina caustica / Whanne þou wolt worche with medicyns caustica, þan do as it schal be seid in þe antidotarie of þis book /

4

Of þe cure of brennyng wiþ fier ouper with hoot watir or with oile.

¶ xix. c.º / Burns and scalds are treated with cold medicines, before blisters are formed,

with styptics in case of ulceration.

[3 lf. 227]

Simple medicines applied in the first case.

Medicines applied in the second case.

R̄

A Mannes lymes ben brent wiþ fier, watir, oupir wiþ oile / In þis caas þis is þe firste entencioun : or þe place bigynne to 8 bladdre,² þou muste haue medicyns þat ben colde / And if it so be þat þe place be vlceratus, & þou were not at þe firste bigynnyng, or if þe brennyng be so miche þat þou miȝt not defende, þat vlcera ne come not þeron, & þan þou must haue medicyns þat ben 12 lasse coold, & medicyns þat ben clepid stiptica not fretynge / þese ben symple medicyns ³in þe firste caas / Take marbil stoon & grinden smal, & alle þe sandalis,⁴ & solatrum, & watir of rosis, & watir of cucurbita, & water of virga pastoris, & of alle þese þingis make 16 a þing for to leie þeron / Also oile of rosis, & þe zelke of an ey ben good þefore / Also bole armoniac temperid wiþ vinegre is good þefore. And it muste ofte be remeued & ofte leid to aȝen, for þe cooldnes of ofte remeuyng schal defende it fro bladdring / 20 Naturel medicyns þat ben gode in þe secunde caas : / But vnguentum de calx maad in þis maner / R̄, calcis viue bene cocte þat ben maad of an hard stoon, and waische it wiþ coold watir til it lete al his scharpnes, & þan wiþ oile of rosis & wex make an oynement / 24 Also vnguentum album Rasis þat is maad in þe antidotarie is good þefore / I nyle for þis cure sette no mo medycyns. þoruȝ þe grace of god almiȝty þe þridde tretis is fulfillid //

Here endiþ þe þridde book, and bigynneþ þe fourþe 28 book // Of brekyng of boonis,⁵ & sumtyme of brusyng of boonys, and a general techyng for alle //⁶

¹ MS. *hoot*, Lat.: quod loca sana ulterius non attingat.

² *bladdre*, vesicari.

⁴ Lat. omnes sandali.

⁵ MS. *bookis*.

⁶ Lat. heading: "Explicit tractatus tertius huius libri. Incipit quartus, qui est de algebra, et continet duas summas. Summa prima tractatus quarti septem continet capitula. Capitulum primum summæ primæ tractatus quarti, de fractura ossium sermo generalis." The translator has kept the heading of the first chapter, but left out the chapter itself. His first chapter,

- 1 **A** Mannes nose is sumtyme to-broken,² & sumtyme pressid adoun. & if he be hastili holpen his nose mai be restorid
 4 azen, & if it be longe or he haue ony help, þanne he schal be maymed for euermore³ / If þou comest at þe
 firste bigynnyng þou schalt do in þis maner / putte yn þe fingir of þe lifthand anoon to þe brekyng, þi leeste fyngir or what fyngir wole best yn, & wip þi riȝthond presse vpon þe brekyng, & arere
 8 vpward wip þi fyngir *withinneforþ*, & presse wip þin hond wipoutforþ & bringe it as it schulde be. þan make a strong tent & so longe þat he mowe passe aboue þe brekyng, & þan þis tent schal be diȝt wip a litil wex hoot & a litil sotil poudre of mastik &
 12 sandal, & schape þerof in þe maner of a candel, & þan putte it into his nose, wipoutforþ leie of consolidatiuis þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, & abouteforþ þou schalt leie a defensif, & þou schalt binde his nose wip boondis,⁴ & leie sutil linnen cloof in boþe sidis
 16 of his nose as it is aforseid in þe chapiter of woundis in a mannes face / If þou miȝt not putte yn þi fyngir in his noseþrel, þan make a tent of tre & hile it wip linnen cloof þat it be oold & neisseche, & þan anointe þis tent wip oile of rosis, & putte þis in his noseþrel
 20 in stide of þi fyngir, & þerwip arere vp his nose wipinneforþ,⁶ & wip þin hond wipoutforþ make his nose euene til þe boon be brouȝt in his propre place þat is to-broke. ¶ Of his dietyng, & bloodletyng, & ventusis, & clisterijs, ouþer suppositorijs, do as þou seest
 24 þat it is to do, & as it is aforseid.

¶ If a manes cheke-boon⁷ in þe liftside be to-broke, þan putte which has no heading, is Lanfranc's second one: *Capitulum secundum summe prime de fractura ossium faciei.*

² Compare: *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI., Sect. xci., ed. Adams, vol. II., p. 443, and *Aricenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. v., Tract 3, Cap. 3, ed. Venet. 1527, fol. 365 b.

³ Gul. de Sal., Sloane 277, fol. 34: "*Thow schalt wite þat þe boon of þe nose is operwhile depressyd & operwhile broken, & ȝif sopely it be depressyd, þat is to sey born down or broken withoute wounde, anoon in þe firste visitacion, be þe seknesse restoryd, whil it is newe, for ȝif it were hard, ouþer þer schal dwelle euermore fnattyddesse or eucl schapp.*" *fnattyddesse*, translates med. Lat. *simitas σιμότης*, snubbiness.

⁴ MS. *broondis*.

⁶ Gul. de Sal. Sloane 277, fol. 34: "*And ȝif þou may not do þat wip þi fynger, putte in þe hole of þe nose on þe hurt syde a softe rownd sticke maad euene & semely, & anoynted with oyle of rosis . . . and þou maist also lappe þilke sticke in a clene linnen clout & anoynte þe clout wip þe same oile, & þanne þe sticke schal be þe more tretable.*"

⁷ *Avic. Lib. IV., Fen. v. Tr. 3, Cap. 2, ibid.*: "*Si frangitur mandibula dextra, tunc intromitte indicem, et medium manus sinistre in os infirmi, et cet.*" Gul. de Sal. Lib. III., Cap. 2. Sl. 277, fol. 34 b: "*ȝif sopely þe boon of þe vppere chawel or of þe neþere were maad withoute wounde, putte þi ryȝt hond in þe moup of þe seeke.*"

▲ Sl. 6. fol. 115 b, broken.

[1 lf. 227, bk.]

¶ i. e. of
A broken
nose, unless
soon re-
adjusted,
remains de-
formed.
Restore the
nose by mani-
pulation.

Plug the nos-
trils with a
strong tent.

[5 lf. 223]

Take care of
the general
treatment.

If the cheek-
bone is
broken,

re-adjust it by manipulation, and hold it in position by tying the teeth together,

[1 lf. 228, bk.]

and by applying a bandage.

The patient shall only take meat fit to be sipped.

yn þi strongist fyngris of þi lifthond tweyne & bringe þe boon in-to his propre place azen, & presse wiþ þi riȝthond wiþoutforþ; & if þe cheke-boon be to-broke in þe riȝtside, þanne putte yn .ij. fyngris of þi riȝthond, and bringe þe boon to his propre place azen, as it is afor-seid. & whanne þe boon is brouȝt as it schulde be, þat þou miȝt knowe if his teef sittip euene as þei schulde do, & þan binde hise teef wiþ a strong¹ preed wexid¹ & bounden bitwixe his teef, & leie þervpon oon of þe consolidatiuis & binde him in þe same maner, þat þe boond be maad fast bihindeforþ in his necke. & þan it schal be turned azen to his forheed, & þou schalt binde him wiþ þi boond manyfoold, þat þe boon þat is to-broke mowe be holde in his propre place / And þe patient schal ete no metis but pingis þat he may soupe / For if he chewide, it wolde make þe boon falle out of his place azen, & in .xx. daies þis boon mai be restorid azen //

ffor brekyng of þe forke of þe prote and of þe brest //

¶ 1jo. 60.

The upper jaw-bone is immovable, for three reasons.

The cheke-boon aboue meueþ not, & þat is for .iiij. causis: oon is þat þe cheke-boon bineþe is more lizt & more able þerfore, þe .ij. cause is þis: þe cheke-boon is niȝ noble lymes, & if þe cheke-boon aboue meuede, þe noble lymes miȝten be enpeirid þerbi. þe .iiij. cause is þis: if þe cheke-boon aboue meuede, þere nolde be noon strong¹ coniunccioun bitwene hem / þerfore þe cheke-boon aboue is fast maad to þe boonys of þe heed, as it is aforseid in anothomiam.

[3 lf. 229]

The lower jaw-bone consists of 2 bones; joins with the upper jaw-bone by ligaments.

Nerves convey the motor phenomena from the brain and spine.

¶ The cheke-boon bineþe is maad of .ij. boonys ioyned³ togidere in þe chyn. & þis boon is maad fast with þe cheke-boon aboue wiþ² ligaturis þat ben stronge & recching¹ & wiþ lacertis, & maketh þe cheke-boon meue whanne a man wole, for summe þerof comeþ adoun fro þe boonys of þe heed, & ben ioyned wiþ partijs of nerues of þe heed, & of nuche, & closip togidere þe cheke-boon. [Summe² comeþ⁴] bineþe aforzens þe brest, and ben medlid wiþ nerues of nuche & openeþ þe cheke-boon, & summe comeþ fro þe sidis, &

² Lanfranc divides the fourth book into two "doctrines," the one dealing with fractures, the other with dislocations. The scribe of the present translation omits this division and the first chapter of each doctrine. He also puts the chapter on dislocation of the jaw-bone, which was originally the 2nd chapter of the 2nd doctrine immediately after the chapter on fracture of the jaw-bone, still retaining the heading of the 3rd chapter of the first doctrine: "*ffor brekyng of þe forke of þe prote and of þe brest.*" The two tables of contents show the same order as the original.

⁴ *Summe comeþ*, wanting. Lat. Add. 26106, fol. 96 bk.: "*alii veniunt ab inferius versus pectus.*" The prints differ.

meueþ þe cheke-boon round, whanne a man couwid.¹ & þis cheke-boon bineþe mai be brouȝt of þe ioynet fro þe cheke-boon aboute in .ij. maners: ouþer it¹ goiþ of þe ioynet bihindeward, & þan þe teeþ þat¹ ben in þe cheke-boon bineþe goiþ wiþinne þe teeþ of þe cheke-boon aboute. & þan he may not opene his mouþ, & it¹ goiþ out of þe ioynet forward, & þan þe teeþ þat¹ ben in þe cheke-boon bineþe goiþ forþere out þan þe teeþ aboute. & he mai not close his mouþ togidere² / These signys ben certeyn whanne þe boon is out of his ioynet / It is greet nede for to helpe a man hastily in þis caas; for if þe ³cheke-boon be out of ioincte longe, þere ben manie nerues & lacertis & arterijs & veines aboute þat¹ place, & for þis cause it¹ wexiþ hard aȝoon. & þis place wole soone take enpostym for divers humours þat¹ wolen falle þerto. & if þer falle an enpostym in þis place, þan, for þe brayn is so niȝ, þer comeþ a frenesie þerof & ofte tyme dieþ / & þerfore if he be hastili holpen, þe boon wole liztly into þe ioinct aȝen. & þerfore þat¹ ioinct¹ haþ lizt¹ meuyng / ffor eueri ioinct¹ þat¹ haþ hard meuyng, & he be out of þe ioinct, it¹ wole be hard for to bringe yn aȝen / If it¹ so be þat¹ þe cheke-boon be out of ioinct hindeward, þan þou schalt take þe boon first wiþ þi .ij. hondis, & lete a man holde his heed & drawe þe boon forþward.⁴ & if it¹ so be þat¹ his mouþ be closid togidere, þan þou schalt opene his mouþ wiþ þin hond or with sum oþer instrument, & þan take faste þe boon & drawe it to his place aȝen. & in þis maner þou schalt knowe whanne it¹ is in his propre place aȝen, if his teeþ sitten euene, & if he may opene his mouþ / ¶ If þou miȝt not bringe þe boon to his propre place in þis maner, þan þou muste take a strong boond, & sette it vnder his chyn, þere þou settist⁵ þi fyngris, & anoþer man mote drawe þe boond strongly & euene, & wiþ a wagge þou muste opene his mouþ. In þis maner

The dislocation of the lower jaw is either backwards

or forwards.

Help must come soon, [3 lf. 229, bk.] or the place gets indurated, and an apostema may be formed.

If the dislocation is backwards, draw the bone forwards,

if necessary by means of a strong bandage. [5 lf. 230]

¹ Lat.: in mastieando.

² Gul. de Sal. Lib. III., Cap. 18. Sl. 277, fol. 42 b: "The tokenes of þe dislocation inreard ben þat þe mouþ leueþ opene, & þat þe tē of þe neþere chanel goon tofore þe tē of þe ryppere chanel. ¶ The tokenes of þe dislocation outward ben þat þe mouth is schut & in no manere may be openyd, & þe seeke may not chere & þe tē drawe vp toward þe palett, & þer schewiþ in þe vttere party in þe place of þe dislocacion an opene outberyng out of mesure, & þe speche is bynomen hym."

⁴ Gul. de Sal. Sl. 277, fol. 42 b: "The dislocacion knowe, wheþer it be to þe innere party or þe vttere, a ryse leche oweþ to putte his pumbes wiþinne þe mouþ of þe seeke, & festene hem vpon þe wange-tē of þe neþere iowe of þe seeke, & wiþ þe oþere four fyngeres he schal take þe iowe dislocate fro þe vttere, & þat tyme he schal haue a mynystre, which schal holde fast þe heuyd of þe seeke."

pou openynge his mouþ, & he drawing^t wiþ þe boond as it is afor-
seid, al at oonys wiþouten drede þe boon wole come into his ioyne^t.¹
¶ If it be out^t of þe ioyne^t forward, þan pou schalt sette a strong^t
boond vpon his chin, þat it hile al þe chin, & lete a man stonde
bihinde him & halde þe boond in hise hondis, & he schal sette his
knees vpon his schuldris, & he schal drawe þe boon to him wel &
euenly. & pou schalt putte a wegge in his mouþ, & whanne he
drawiþ þe boon pou schalt opene his mouþ wiþ þe wegge al at oon 8
tyme, & in þis maner þe boon schal falle into his ioyne^t. Whanne
þe boon is ynne, þan binde it faste wiþ a ligature & with enplastre,
& lete him haue souping^t metis, & he schal chewe no mete til þe
place be al fast / ¶ If it so be þat pou were not at þe first bigyn- 12
nyng^t, & þe place is enpostymed, & he haue þe feuere & akyng^e of
his heed, þan schaue his heed & anynte it wiþ oile of rosis & a
litil vinegre medlid þerwiþ. & pou schalt ²anynte his heed with
sum mollificatif, or wiþ dokis grese or wiþ hennys. & pou schalt 16
worche as miche as pou miȝt for to acesse þe enpostym, & for to
cure þe feuere, & for to comforte his heed, þat þe frenesie ne come
not to him / Whanne þe feuere & þe frenesie & þe enpostym be
remeued awei, þan cure him as it is aforseid //

If the disloca-
tion is for-
wards,
let an assist-
ant draw the
bone back-
wards,

and open the
mouth by a
wedge.

In case of
apostema use
ointments

[² If. 230, bk.]

to remove the
apostema and
the fever,

and then
reduce the
dislocated
bone.

ffor brekyng of þe forke of þe prote and of þe brest //

¶ iij. co.

The cure is
easy if no
part of the
broken bone
is pressed in.

THe forke of þe prote is clepid of summen patena, & of sum-
men cathena.⁴ Sumtyme it is to-broke & nouþer part^t of þe
boon ne is not ypressid yn, & þan þe cure þerof is liȝt ynaw. 24
But if þat oon ende of þe boon be pressid adoun vndir þat oper,
þan it is ful hard for to bringe it yn aȝen. Whanne nouþer partie
is pressid adoun, þan it is noon oper nede for to haue no medicyn
but stupis wet in white of eiren; & leie it vpon þe brekyng^e of þe 28
boon, & binde wel þe place wiþ ligaturis; & his arme of þe same
side mote be hongid to his necke, & in his arme-pitt^t pou schalt leie
a bal of lynn^e cloop. & pou muste binde his arme þat he mowe not
meue his arm ⁵toward þe forke of þe bre^t, & in þis maner he mote 32

Apply band-
ages and tie
the arm on
the injured
side to the
neck.

[⁵ If. 231]

¹ Add. 26106, fol. 97: ita quod tu aperiendo et minister trahendo vna hora locum suum intrat, quia sic sine dubio restaurabis.

³ *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI., 93, ed. Adams, vol. ii. p. 447. *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. 5, Tract 3, Cap. 4, ed. Ven. 1527, p. 365 b.

⁴ *patena*, *cathena*, names for the *furcula*, as it seems peculiar to Lanfranc. The *furcula*, taken to be one bone, comprises the sternal bone and the clavicles. "Catena," chain, is synonymous with "clavicula;" and *patena*, med. Lat. = plate, is a proper denomination of the sternal bone.

be kept^t til þe boon be al hool. ¶ If it^t so be þat^t oon ende of^t þe boon be pressid adoun, þan a man mote drawe his oon arme, & another man his oþere arme, & þou schalt wiþ þin hondis drawe þe boon to his propre place. þan þou muste haue a medicyne consolidatif, & wete þerinne a lynnene cloof, & hile al þe brekyng^t of þe boon þerwiþ, & leie þervpon faldellas¹ wiþ white of an ey, & þan binde him as it^t is aforseid, and his arme to his necke, & in þis maner he schal be kept til he be hool.

If one end of the bone is pressed in, replace it, and apply a medicine.

¶ Of brekyng of rigboonys /²

Rigge boonys for her schortnes & for her strongnes ne ben not to-broke, but if it^t be wiþ greet smytyng^t, & sumtyme þei ben brusid, & þat^t makip greet akyng. Also þer fallip manie perels of þe boonys of þe necke if þei ben hurt, lest nucha be hurt also, & þan it^t is perel of þe brayn as it^t is aforseid / If þou seest yuel signes in þat^t caas, go awei þerfro. & if þou seest noon yuele signys, þan anointe þe place wiþ oile of rosis hoot & leie þervpon wolfe, and þanne³ terberntine medlid wiþ a litil mastic, & þis medicyne þou schalt vse til þe place be al hool /

¶ iiii. co. If the rig-bone is broken, there is danger that the spine be hurt.

Flee in case of evil symptoms, else apply an ointment. [3 lf. 231, bk.]

¶ The noumbre of a mannes ribbis is aforseid in þe another thaimie / A mannes ribbis ben to-broke sumtyme wiþ smytyng^t or wiþ fallyng^t / Also þei moun be plied inward & not to-broke. ¶ In þis maner þou schalt knowe wheþir a mannes rib be to-broke or no / Sette þi fyngris vpon þe place & grope softli & presse a litil vp & down, & if his rib be to-broke, þou schalt heere hym sownie, & he schal haue couzinge & akinge in his side. ¶ It^t is ful hard for to restore a rib þat^t is to-broke, for sumtyme þat^t oon parti pliep inward, & þan it^t is hard for to bringe him into his propre place azen / And summen seien þat^t þe pacient schulde ete metis to swelle him þat^t engendrip wijnd, & wole make þe rib goon into his propre place azen. & summen seien þat^t me schulde sette a ventuse, & wiþ

One knows that a rib is broken by the sound which is heard on pressure.

Some men propose that the patient should take food which produces wind,

¹ faldella, med. Lat., diminutive of faldia, thread.

² Lat. de fractura spondilium et costarum.

³ Gul. de Sal. lib. IIL, Cap. 5. Sl. 277, fol. 36: "3if it happe þe rybbis to be broken in oo place or in two þat þou schalt wite by touchyng, for þei þat of pristynge down of þe hond vpon þe place or places, þou schalt heere a sown & with þat þe seeke schal suffre penaunce or lettyng of breþ, & principally þe tyme of drawyng of reynd." The sound, "crepitus," produced by pressure of the hand on the injured place, as a test whether a rib is fractured, is already mentioned in *Paul. Aegin.*, Book VI., 96, ed. Adams, vol. ii., p. 452.

others propose cupping.
Both are wrong.

[1 lf. 232]

.1.

.2.

Bleed the patient from the Basilic vein,

readjust the broken rib,

let the patient cough.

Apply a bandage.

[4 lf. 232, bk.]

If there is strong fever, readjust the rib by operation.

þe drawing^t þerof^t þe rib wole rise vp azen into his propre place / But I suppose þis wole more make agreuauunce þan helpe þe patient / ffor þe .j. wole engendre an hoot en^lpostyme / The .ij. it^t wole drawe to þe place manie humours / If þou wolt^t take þis cure, þou schalt^t do in þis maner : / ffirst^t þou schalt^t lete him blood in þe side aforzens in þe veyne þat^t is clepid basilica, & þan in þe same, & þan anoynte þin hond wiþ terbentine. & loke if^t þou mizt^t take vp þe rib þat^t is pressid adoun. & þin oþer hond þou schalt^t sette vpon þe place þat^t is not^t pressid adoun. & wiþ þin hond þat^t is anoyntid arere vp his rib. & loke þat^t þe .ij. endis of þe ribbis þat^t is to-broke come euene togidere, & þan make þe patient to couze, for þis þe beste maner for to bringe him yn² / If þou dredist nouzt greet^t replecioun of his bodi, þou mizt^t opene a ventuse whanne þe rib is ioyned. & þan þou schalt^t binde wiþ a boond, & vndir þe boond þou schalt^t leie lynnet or sum oþer neische þing^t. & þou schalt^t binde him in sich a maner þat^t þe rib þat^t is to-broke ne mowe not remoue ne falle adoun azen. & þe patient schal vse lizt mete as pultes de caudarasio,³ de amido, de tritico, wiþ penides, & he schal drinke swete wijn temperatli, & þou muste defende⁴ him fro wrappe & fro crijnge, & fro alle þingis þat^t wolen make a man to couze. ¶ If it^t so be þat^t þe akyngce acceese not, & þou ne mizt^t not bringe his rib as he schulde be, & if^t he haþ greet^t cowzyngce & acces of þe feure,⁵ whanne þou hast^t lete him blood, þan þou muste kutte þe skyn aforzens þe rib þat^t is to-broke, & vnhile þe same rib of al his fleisch, & þan wiþ instrumentis & wiþ þin hond þou muste drawe vp þe rib, & bringe him in his place as he schulde be. & þan þou schalt^t cure þe wounde as it^t is aforseid // His dietyngce schal be as of plureticci til þe feure & al þe passiouns ben goon awei //

Of brekyng of þe helpers of þe rigboon.

¶ v. co.
Fracture of the arm bone near the joint is dangerous.

A Diutorium is to-broken ful ofte ouerþwert wiþ breking^t / þe nere þat^t it^t be þe ioynct, þe more perilous it^t is, & þe worse for to cure / In þis place I wole telle þee in what maner þou schalt^t knowe a brekyng^t, & in what maner þou schalt^t restore it^t azen, þat^t

² Gul. de Sal. Sl. 277, fol. 36: "make hym eft couze sadly, & vpon þe place prist down or broken, þou schalt putte a gret ventuse wiþout cuttyngce."

³ Sim. de Janua: "Caudarusium, Spelta, genus frumenti, quod quidam allicam dicunt, quidam Caudarusium."

⁵ acces of þe feure, Lat. si febris accideret.

it mowe be an ensample to þee in þe breking,¹ if a mannes arme & his leggis & his hiþe-boon ben broken / In þis maner þou schalt knowe : / Lete a man holde his arme ²wiþ .ij. hondis faste bi þe

Symptoms :

[² If. 233]

4 schuldre, & he mot' holde him in þat' maner þat' he mowe nott' meue him-silf; & þou schalt stonde tofore him, & take his arme faste bi þe elbowe, & meue his arme hidir & þidir liztli til þou heere sownynge of þe boon, & whanne þou knowist' þe place þat' it' is

The sound heard on moving the arm.

8 to-broke.³ & þis maner asaiyng' is good whanne þe brekyng' is so priuy þat' no partie of þe boon goiþ in no side out / Whanne þou knowist' where þe breking' is, or þou bigynne ony þing' for to worche þeron, make redi alle þi necessarijs þat' ben gode for þe bindyng'.

First prepare all that you require :

12 ¶ First þou schalt make stupis þat' ben euene, & wete hem in hoot water in winter, & in coold water in somer, & þan wrynge out' þi stupis þerof & dizte oile of rosis & a defensif' of bole, & .ij. longe boondis þat' þei be .iiij. fyngris brood, & lynnen clooþ þat' mowe go

the oil, the bandages,

16 aboute al his arme, & a strong' corde ; & þe corde wole be þe better if it' be playn, & not' round. & þou muste dizte smale 3erdis of drie tree, þat' be strong' & sotil. & whanne þou hast dizt' alle þese

a strong cord, and splints. Reduce the fracture,

20 þin hond wiþouten greuauunce. & þan take ⁵oold soft' lynnen clooþ, & wete it' in oile of rosis, and wijnde it' aboute his arme. & vpon pis leie a clooþ wiþ medicyns consolidatif, þat' schal be seid in þe antidotarie for brekyng' of boonys ; & þerfore þese .ij. lynnen

[⁵ If. 233, bk.] apply soft linen,

24 cloþis moten be large for to hile al þe brekyng' / And þou muste haue cloutis in .ij. sidis of þe place þat' is to-broke, & þervpon þou muste leie faldellam in boþe sidis euene, & wet' in gleire of an ey. & alle þese þingis þou schalt binde wiþ þi boond, þat'

two clouts and wadding,

28 schal be þe brede of .iiij. fyngris, & long' þat' he mowe goon aboute manifoold. & sewe þe foldyng' of þe boond þat' he mowe not' vndo / Vpon pis ligature þou schalt leie faldellam maad of stupis, & he schal oonly be wet' in water & leid vpon. & hervpon

tie a bandage round the limb,

¹ MS. has a full-stop between *breking* and *if*. Lat. : ut sit tibi exemplum in ruptura brachii, crurium et coxarum.

³ Lat. : et cum tactu locum fracture cognoueris manifeste. Gul. de Sal., Sl. 277, fol. 37 : "When þe adiutorie, or þe boon fro þe elbowe to þe schuldre is broken, it schal be knowe to þe touchyng' in þis : The leche schal drave þe hurt place wiþ boþe his hondes, & putte þat oon hond vpon þe place hurt, & þat oper wiþinne. ¶ And haue he a mynystre, whiche schal bere vp togidere þe elbowe wiþ þe arm. And þanne þe leche, meuyng' softly his handis, schal heere þe soun of þe broken boon, or he schal feeþe þe disseuerynge of þe parties of þe broken boon."

⁴ Some words are wanting. Lat. : quantumcumque potes leuius operando.

and splints
secured by
a cord,
which shall
be strained
but moder-
ately.

[² lf. 234]

A tight ban-
dage may
cause spasm,
and prove
fatal.

Nota.
Keep the limb
so bandaged
for 10 days;
then look if
the bone is
adjusted,
and bandage
it again.

[⁵ lf. 234, bk.]

Sometimes
one or both
the bones of
the fore-arm
are broken,

or the bones
of the fingers.

pou schalt leie pi splentis¹; & wiþ a corde þat be brood, & not round, þei schulen be bounden þervpon. & þou schalt streyne middilly,² & not to faste / Herof þou muste be war, þat streynynge þat is in þis place & in opere placis ne schulen not be so harde þat 4 þe place bicomme blak, ne þat he mowe fele his lyme / Ther ben summen þat streynen so faste a manys lyme, þat þe spirit of me³uynge, ne þe spirit of lijf mai not come þerto. & þan þei seep þat þe place is to-swolle, & askiþ of þe patient wher he haue miche akyng. 8 & þei supposen to do awei þe akyng wiþ þe greet binding, & in þis maner þe lyme wole rotie, & in þis maner þe patient mai falle into a feuer & þe spasme, & manye men dieþ þeron / But þou schalt worche in þis maner / Whanne þou seest þis caas, vnbinde þe lyme, 12 & as miche as þou miht do awei þe swellyng & þe akyng. Aboue þe brekyng towardis the schuldre leie a defensif of bole // If þer come noon akyng ne swellyng, þan þou schalt lete it sitte so boounde .x. daies in winter, & .vij. daies in somer / & þan vnbinde 16 it softly þat þe lyme ne meue not / & loke þat þe boon sitte wel; & þan binde it al togidere azen as þow didist first. Whanne þe boon is wel soudid, þan þou schalt take stupis & wete hem in good wijn hoot,⁴ & leie þervpon. ¶ Whanne it is soudid, if þer leue 20 ony þing of hardnes in þe same place, þan do it awei aftir þe teching þat þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie /

Sumtyme þe boonys of a mannys arme ben to-broke ⁵boþe, & sumtyme þat oper. & whanne þei ben boþe broken, it is þe more 24 worse / If it so be þat þer be to-broke but oon boon, þan it is no nede for to do but astellas,⁶ for þe boon þat is hool wole saue þe ligature wel ynow; / The boonys of a mannes fyngrs ben sumtyme to-broke, þan þou schalt sette euene þe boon, & binde him wiþ 28 astelles þat ben wel maad þefore. & þou þe fyngr ne be but a litil lyme, ȝitt þou muste haue good kunnyng & good witt for to dizte it wel / Dietyng in alle brekyng of boonys schal be first sotil, & aftirward more greet, as it is aforseid //

Of breking of þe boon of þe coxe.

vjo. co /
In case of
fracture of
the hip-bone
or any bone
of the leg,

WHanne þe boon of þe coxe is to-broke or ony boon of þe foot, þan þou schalt worche in al maner þingis as it is aforseid in þe chapitre of adiutorie & of þe fyngrs / But þis þou

¹ MS. *spletis*.

² *middilly, mediocriter.*

⁴ Lat.: in bono vino calido.

⁶ Lat.: non est tibi necessarium astellas ponere.

muste adde more *perto*, þat whanne þou hast brouȝt yn þe boon of
 þe leg, þan þou muste make an instrument, þat is clepid *albiolum* apply a splint
 formed to the
 shape of the
 leg.
 ouȝer coutelle; & it schal be schape in þe maner of a cros.¹ &
 4 þeron his leg mote be sett, so þat his leg mowe ²bowe to no side / [2 lf. 235]
 Also it is necessarie þat þe patient ligge also stille as he mai
 wiȝouten remeuyng, til þe boon be fast // But þou muste be wel
 war herof whanne þat a mannes leg is to-broke, ouȝer his hipe,
 8 þou muste be war in þe soudyng, þat oon leg be not shorter þan
 þe oȝer / But þou schalt mesure hem algate boȝe lich long, & in þe
 same mesure kepe hem /

Take care
 that the leg
 does not get
 shortened.

Of þe cure whanne a man is smiten in þe rigbon
 12 or ribbis.

IT bifallip sumtyme þat a man is smyten or a man fallip, &
 þan tendre boonys as þe cheke-boon & ribbis, & [in] children
 16 boonys of her arme & of her leggis, for þe tendirnes of þes
 lymes, þei wolen folde & not breke / In þis maner þou schalt
 bringe hem aȝen / In þis maner anynte þin hond wiȝ
 terbentyne, & take þat boon & presse it as it is forseid in þe
 brekyng of a boon.³ & if it be a rib, þan þou schalt presse
 20 him vpward, as it is foreseid. & if it be in þe arme ouȝer
 þe leg, þan þou muste make *ligaturis perfore* & instrument
 of tree, þat be euene, & *perto* his arme ouȝer his leg schal be
 bounden & pressid, for to make him euene. & or þou do þus, þou
 24 schalt make a ⁴vomentacioun of camomille, malue, & bismalue,
fenigreci, seminis lini soden in water; & þan anynte him wiȝ oile
 of lilie, or wiȝ gandriss grese, or hen-grese, & þan presse his arme
 as it is aforseid. Also þou miȝt vse þis medicyn, þat is aproued
 28 ofte tyme / leie a plate of yuer⁵ in þat side þat þe boon is aplyed, &

¶ vij. c. /
 Tender bones,
 especially
 those of chil-
 dren, become
 bent instead
 of breaking.

Straighten
 them by pres-
 sure,

by bandaging
 the limb to
 a wooden
 splint,

[4 lf. 235, bk.]

or lay a plate
 of ivory on
 the limb,

¹ Lat.: in albiolo seu coutella que sit ad modum cruris formata. The translator read "crucis."

albiola, (*alueolus*) *um*. "ventre, panier, benne, flancs d'un navire."—Dufr.

coutella. κοτύλη, anything hollow, the cup of a joint, especially of the hip-joint. It.: cotila. Tomm.

Paul. Aegin., Book VI, Sect. 106, ed. Adams, vol. 2, p. 470, describes the way of arranging a fractured leg by means of "a canal either of wood or earthenware." Adams l. c. gives references from Hippocrates, Celsus and Galen, for the use of these machines.

³ Lat.: Si maxilla fuerit, manum seu digitos in os pone, premens ad extra sicut diximus in fractura, manum aliam termentina uel pice illinitam suauiter ab extra preme et citius eleua.

⁵ O.Fr. yvoyre.

by whose
attraction
it becomes
straight,

þe vertu of þe yuer wole drawe þe boon as it schulde be, & bringe
þe boon into his propre plite /

Of þe greuounes of þe rigboon whanne he is out
of ioynete /

4

¶ iij^o. c^o /
viiij

The liga-
ments on the
neck are
weak,

and the bones
are easily
dislocated.

Dislocation
of the 1st
vertebra—
decollation—

[2 If. 236]
causes death
by want of
breath.

If the 7th and
8th vertebrae
are out of
joint, the
ways of food
and breath
are stopped.

The bone
must be
replaced im-
mediately
after the
accident.

Nota

Treatment:
Press down
the shoulders,
and draw up
the head.

The displace-
ment may be
inwards

[5 If. 236, bk.]
or outwards.

Dislocacioun of þe rigboouns is a greuoun sijknes. It is aforseid
in anathomia how manie boonys ben in þe necke & in þe rigt.
& it is aforseid in what maner / The firste boon in a mannes necke
is bounden with manye feble ligaturis, & þe ligaturis þerof ben 8
recching¹ & feble, þat þei ne schulde lette þe meuyng of þe heed /
þe boonys þat ben in a mannes necke beþ more feble þan ony oþer
rigboouns, & þerfore þei goiþ liztly out of þe ioynete, & it is ful
greet drede þerof / If þe hizeste boon of þe necke be oute of þe 12
ioynct, it is clepid decollacio, & it sleep a man anoon; for þat oþer
boon þerof pressiþ yn & stoppiþ a man²nes breeþ anoon, & in þis
maner it sleep a man anoon / And if þe ioynct þat is bitwixe þe
vij. boon & þe .viiij. be out of ioynete, þan it wole stoppe þe weie 16
of his mete, and it wole lette þe weie of a mannes breeþ also / And
if ony boon of þe rigboon þat is bineþe þe .viiij. boon be out of
ioynete, but if he be þe rapere holpen, he schal lese his meuyng
for euermore³ / And þerfore it is necessarie as faste þat a mannes 20
rigboon is out of þe ioynct, þat it be brouzt yn azen anoon, &
principali þe firste boon of þe necke, for disiunccioun of þat boon
wole sle a man anoon, as it is forseid / If þou be in þe place, take
þe patient bi þe heeris, & sette þi feet vpon his schuldris, & so þou 24
schalt drawe vpward wiþ þin hondis, & presse adoun wiþ þi feet, &
bringe þe boon into his ioynct azen / Whanne þe .vij. rigboon⁴ is
out of his ioynct fro þe .viiij. rigboon, itt mai ful litil tyme lenger
abide. & if it so be þat þis boon be pressid swiþe ynward, it wole 28
sle a man hastily, & it wole ful late be curid / If it so be þat it
mai be curid, þer is noon oþer cure þeron, but presse adoun his
schuldris⁵ & drawe vp þe heed, as it is aforseid / If it so be þat
ony of þese boonys be out of þe ioynct outward, þat falliþ ful 32

¹ Lat.: hec ligatura fuit magis aliis laxa.

² Gul. de Sal., cap. 19. Sl. 277, fol. 42 b.: "And of þe spondiles of þe
brest, for lettyng brouzt in in þe lacertis & muscules kyndely & wilfully
meuyng þe brest, þe lunge is lettid in his meuyng, & þer falliþ hasty wynd
& litel, & rterlyche dep. Of þe dislocacion of þe opere spondiles, þat ben 4,
þer falleþ anoþor greuauance in þe reynes & þe bladdre, & akþe in þoo
membris, & peyne of pyssyng or lettyng of þe weyes of þe vryne, & aposteme
in þe place, & feure, & dep."

⁴ rig, in margin.

- seelde, þan sette þe boonys euene, & drawe his heed & presse adoun
 hise schuldris / If it so be þat ony rigboon bineþe þe .viij. boon of
 þe necke be out of ioyncte, if þe boon go ynward, it nile take no
 4 cure til it sle him / And if it ne be not al out of þe ioyncte, but
 it pressip nucha, alle þe lymes bineþe schulen lese her meuyng / If
 it so be þat þe boon be out of þe ioyncte & go outward, it is in-
 curable, for he schal be euermore gibbosis, *id est* broken-riggid. þis
 8 is þe cure þerof, if it mai be curid / Arere vp þe boon & presse it
 als so miche as þou miȝt, wiþ þin hond, ouþer presse it yn with a
 playn tree, & studie þou in þi witt as miche as þou miȝt for to
 presse it in aȝen; & leie þerupon oon of þe consolidatiuis, & binde
 12 it faste / If it so be þat þere leue ony hardnes after þe tyme þat
 þe place is soudid, þan make an enplastre of mollificatiuis þerto, þat
 þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie; & anoynte him wiþ oynementis,
 þat þou schalt fynde ² in þe same place in þe chapitre of molli-
 16 ficatiuis /

An inward displacement below the 8th vertebra causes either death or loss of motion.

In case of outward displacement, the patient remains hump-backed.

Try to reduce the bone by manipulation.

If some hardness is left, apply a plaster and an ointment.

[2 ff. 237]

Of þe schuldre out of his place.³

- A** Mannes schuldre mai go out of þe ioynct in .iij. maners / ¶ ^{ix} iij.º.ºº /
 Oon maner is þis, whanne þe heed of þe boon of adiutorie,
 20 þat is þe poynt of þe schuldre, fallip adoun vndir þe arme-pitt; &
 sumtyme he goip of þe ioynct forþward, but þat fallip ful selden /
 The .iij.: he goip out of þe ioynct vpward; & bakward he ne mai
 not out of þe ioynct, for þe schuldre boon holdip itt faste in.⁴
 24 ¶ The .j. maner þou miȝt liȝtliche knowe bi touching & bi sizt, &
 þou schalt fele þe boon in his arme-pitt, & þan þere wole be a greet
 pitt aboue. ¶ If he be out of the ioynct forþward, þan his arme
 wole sitte baȝward, & tofore þou schalt se a greet pitt / ¶ If he be
 28 out of þe ioynct vpward, þat þou schalt knowe in þis maner: his
 elbowe ne mai not be drawe along fro his body. & if þou wolt
 drawe him along, þou schalt fynde an obstacle / The .j. maner if it
 be a child, þan þou schalt take his arme wiþ þi lifthond, & sette þi
 32 riȝthond vndir his ⁵ arme-pitt, & drawe his arme wiþ þi lifthond, &
 presse þe boon into his ioynct wiþ þi riȝthond; & in þis maner þou
 schalt bringe in þe boon of a child wel ynow. ¶ If it be a miche

The head of the humerus is dislocated, 1. downwards into the arm-pit; 2. forwards; 3. upwards.

The signs are an outward depression,

and an inability to use the arm.

Treatment: 1. Reduction is effected by extension of [5 ff. 237, bk.] the arm and pressure on the shoulder.

¹ MS. *pressid*.

³ Compare *Paul. Aegin.*, Book VI, Sect. 114, ed. Adams, vol. II, p. 485.

⁴ *Gul. de Sal.*, Sl. 277, fol. 43 b.: "For þe ofteste þe hened of þe adiutorie is dislocate in þe schuldre toward þe place þat is called titillicum to þe for-party, & to þe hynder party anentis þe spawde-boon, it is dislocate in no maner."

Reduction
in a grown-
up man is
effected by
means of a
wooden ball.

Another way
of reduction.

2. The
shoulder is
drawn up-
wards with
[1 lf. 238]
a towel, and
the arm is
drawn down-
wards.

3. Reduction
is effected in
a similar way.

When the
bone is
reduced,

leave the arm
bandaged
through 10
daies.

[2 lf. 238, bk.]
If you come
some time
after the ac-
cident, the
patient must
take a bath
before reduc-
tion is tried.

man, lete him ligge adoun streit, & take a round bal of tree, & folde him wiþ a cloop, & leie it vnder his arme-pitt, & binde him þere faste, & take his hond & drawe it adounward, ouþer lete anoper man drawe it adounward, & helpe þou wiþ þin hond for to 4 bringe yn þe boon, so þat þou schalt presse, & þe man drawe al in oon tyme / If it ne mai not be doon in þis maner, þan ordeine a long perche, & make it fast in .ij. wallis of þe hous, ouþer .ij. postis of þe hous; & in þe middil of þe perche make a pitt, & in þe same 8 pitt leie þe forseid bal, & þe hiznes of þis perche schal be hizer þan a man is long, & þan sette vnder his feet a stool. & loke þat þe same bal sitte vnder his arme, & lete a strong man holde doun his arme and his hond, & take awei þe stool vnder his feet, & in þis 12 maner þe boon wole come into his ioynct / ¶ If it be out of þe ioynct forþward, þan take a strong towail, & leie him vnder his arme, & lete þe oon ende go forþ bihinde his rigge, ¹ & þat oþer ende forþ bi his brest, & lete a strong man holde þe .ij. endis of þe 16 towail, & þan binde his arme wiþ anoper boond aboue þe elbowe; & take it anoper strong man, & lete þese .ij. men holde & drawe al at oonys; þan þou schalt with þi .ij. hondis, whanne þei drawiþ, presse þe boon into his ioynct / Whanne þe boon is in his ioynct, 20 þan þei schulen leue her drawyng softly. ¶ In þe same maner, whanne he is oute of ioyncte vpward, he schal be bounden, & oon man schal drawe him abacward wiþ þe towail, & þat oþer man schal drawe his arme adounward, & þou schalt helpe for to presse yn þe 24 boon wiþ þin hondis. & whanne þe boon is in his ioynct, þan wete a pece of linnen cloop in oile of *rosis*, & þan þervpon leie a medicyne consolidatif, & þan leie þervpon faldellas wet in gleire of eiren, & binde him faste with boondis þat his arme ne mowe not 28 out of þe ioynct azen, & so he schal be bounden .x. daies. And if þer come ony enpostym or icching, þan þou muste vnbinde him azen, & do awei þe icching ouþer þe enpostym, and binde it azen as it is forseid. ¶ If it so be þat ² þou ne were not at þe firste 32 bigynnyng, þan þou muste make þe patient a baþ of malue & bismalue, fenigrec, lynseed. & whanne he is wel baþid in þis baþ, þan anoynte him wiþ an oynement laxatif. & in þis maner he muste be baþid manie daies til þe place be wel moistid; & þan 36 bringe þe boon into his ioynct, as it is forseid. ¶ If it so be þat þou come at þe firste bigynnyng, whanne a boon is out of þe ioynct, þan þou schalt not baþe þe lyme in hoot water in no maner.

¶ A mannes arme wole out of þe ioynct litzlich at þe elbowe,¹

Nota.

& litzly it wole be brouzt into his ioynct azen / But he mai be out of þe ioynct in .ij. maners, as forþward & hindeward, & boþe haueþ
 4 diuers cure / In þis maner þou schalt do whanne he is out of þe ioynct forþward: sette stupis in þe folding of his arme,² & þan binde a boond þervpon, & lete a man drawe þat boond bakward

Dislocation of the elbow may be forwards or backwards. Treatment, of a dislocation forwards,

— —,³ & þan lete a strong man holde adiutorium, lest his schuldre

of a dislocation backwards.

8 go out of þe ioynct. & þan anynte þin hond wip oile of rosis, & lete þe ij. men drawe al at oon tyme, & þan presse yn þe boon into his ioynct wip þi .ij. ⁴hondis, & þan hange an heuy peis at his hond. & if þer leeueþ ony greet þingi, lete it be til anoþer tyme.

[⁴ lf. 239]

12 & þan anynte þin hond & presse it in azen, & þan þou schalt binde him with boondis & faldellis, & oile of rosis & consolidatiuis, as it is aforseid / But of þis caas þou muste be war: but if his arme be brouzt into þe ioynct hastili, þere wole engendre in þe place
 16 an hoot enpostym, & þan aftirward it wole be ful hard to bringe it into his ioynct azen.

If the arm is not soon reduced, an apostema will be formed.

¶ Rasceta, þat is þe ioynct of þe hand / as it is forseid in anathamia, is conteyned of manie boonys & of manie recching

Rasceta has many bones and ligaments.

20 ligaturis,⁵ as it was necessarie for þe grete meuyng of þe hond. þis place wole litzly out of þe ioynct, & litzli it wole come yn azen.

¶ But if a mannes hond be out of þe ioyncte longe, þe place wole enpostym, & þan it wole be hard for to bringe it in azen. ¶ In þe

The wrist-joint is frequently dislocated.

24 firste bigynnyng take his arme wip þi lifthond, & sette þe boon in-to þe ioynct as it is aforeseid, & binde it in al maners as it is aforeseid in opere ioinctis. ¶ Also if a mannes fyngir be out of ioyncte,

it is but litz for to putte it ⁶in azen / In þe same maner þou schalt

Dislocated fingers are easily reduced. [⁶ lf. 239, bk.]

28 binde a mannes fyngir as it is aforeseid in opere placis / Ther ben

¹ The Original says just the contrary: *difficile dislocatur, et ita difficile restauratur*. The translator further leaves out a passage similar to the following one, quoted from the Engl. translation of Gul. de Salic.: "*The dislocacioun or restorynge of þis place is ryzt dredeful, for þe makyng of it. For whi, þer ben smale boones & harynge schapp of a rolle or polyne, to drave with water of wellis, whiche sumtyme, ouþer wip difficulte, or in no manere ben restorid.*"

² Lat.: in curvatura vbi brachium plicari solebat.

³ Add. 26,106, fol. 98: "& fac quod minister trahat stupham seu bindam ad posteriora firmiter et suaviter: et tu manum quam errexeras, plica violenter: vt oppositum tangat pluries humerum: quoniam tunc sine dubio est reducta. Si vero fuerit ad posteriora, fac quod fortis minister teneat adiutorium. et. cet."

⁵ Lat.: multis ossibus composita et ligamentis pluribus tamen laxis coniuncta.

Do not put
the limb in
hot water
at the first
beginning.

manie men þat whanne a mannis lyme is out of ioynet, þei wolen sette þe lyme in hoot water, & seien þat it wole þe better come into his ioynet azen / But þou schalt wite þis, þat hoot watir in þe firste bigynnyng makip þe lyme recche, & febliþ it & drawip þerto 4 manye humours / & þerfore þou ne schalt do in þis maner, but þou schalt comforte þe lyme wip oile of rosis, & sette him into his ioynet anoon, & defende as miche as þou miȝt, þat þere come noon enpos- tym þerto / But if it so be, þat þou ne come not at þe firste 8 bigynnyng, & þe place bicom hard, þan make him a fomentacioun wip a decoccioun of þingis þat makip moist & resolueþ as it is aforseid /

Of the haunche out of his place.¹

12

¶ v^x. c^o.

The hip-joint is subject to four dislocations, arising from internal or external causes.

[2 If. 240]

1. Internal causes.

When too much fluid gathers in the box of the haunch, the thigh-bone is easily dislocated.

The acetabulum is more or less concave, the concavity prevents dislocation.

2. External causes.

Symptoms of dislocation inwards,

[3 If. 240, bk.]

of dislocation forwards,

¶ **A**L þe coniunccioun of þe haunche is tofore seid in þe chapitre of anathamia. And þis place mai go out of þe ioynet in .iiij. maners: as ynward & outward, forþward & backward; & sumtyme it cometh of causis wipinneforþ, & sumtyme of causis without- 16 forþ / ²Of causis wipinneforþ: as humours of longe tyme haue falle þerto, as it is aforseid in þe chapitre of dolour of iointis / Ther is in þis place a greet box, & conteineþ a greet place, þat berip al þe bodi, & it is a place þat takith miche moisture & greet superfluite 20 of humours, & whanne þer fallip manie superfluitees to þat place, & þe pacient is not purgid þerof, & traueilip, þan humours rotip in þat place, & þe ligaturis recchip along, & in þis maner vertebrium goip out of his ioynet / And þis caas in diuers men hap diuers 24 causis / ffor summen haueþ a box in her haunche swiþe holowe, & þat wole not fulliztliche out of þe ioynet / And summen ne haueþ not so holowe boxis, & þan if þe place be ful of yuele humours, þan þe boon wole liztliche out of þe iointe, & it wole liztli into þe 28 ioynet azen, & þan it wole liztly out azen. ¶ Of causis wipoutforþ, as of wrastyng or of smityng or of sum oþer þing þat makip vertebrium goon out of þe ioynet wip violence. ¶ This is þe signe whanne it is out of ioynete ynward: whanne þou myȝt fele þe 32 poynt of þe boon in his flank, & his feet ³ & his knee turned outward, & þe pacient schal not opene his leg ne his hipe // If it goip out of þe ioynet forþward, þan his leg wole wexe miche shorter, & he schal not bringe his hele to grounde, but oonly his toos. ¶ If 36

¹ Compare *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI., Sect. 118, l. c., p. 498. *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Feu. 5, Tract 1, Cap. 24.

it be out of þe ioynct¹ backward, þan his hele wole wexe long¹, & his
toos schorte, & he schal bringe no þing of his foot to grou[n]de,
but his hele //

and back-
wards.

- 4 Ther ben manie maners of diuers menys for to bringe boonys
into her ioynct¹ azen, but among alle I holde þis maner þe beste for
þis place: take a long¹ schete þat be not brood, & do bitwixe þe
patient leggis, & lete þat oon ende go bifore his brest¹, & þat oper
8 bihinde his rig¹, & make þe .ij. endis fast¹ to a post¹, & þe patient
schal ligge vpon a plain place, & þou schalt binde al his hiþe aboue
his knee, & þan þe leg¹ softly adounward, & to alle þese boondis
make faste a corde, & lete þe moost¹ fastenyng¹ be in þe hiþe aboue
12 þe knee, & þan lete oon strong¹ man or ij. drawe þe corde euenlich
& harde withoute ony pluching¹.¹ & þan þou schalt wiþ þin hondis
putte þe boon into his ioyncte. & whanne þe ²boon is ynne, þan
bidde hem lete go þe corde softli azen, & leie hise feet euene togidere.
16 for if hise feet wollen ligge euene togidere, it is a certein signe þat
þe boon is in his ioynct¹. & if hise feet wolen not sitte euene in þe
ioynct¹, it is a signe þat þe boon is not in his ioynct¹ / whanne þe
boon is in his ioynct¹, binde faste his hiþe, & lete þe patient ligge
20 stille til he be al restorid / In alle curis of dislocacioun þou hast
pleiner teching¹.³

The best way
of reduction.
A towel put
under the
thigh is fixed
to the wall
(to effect
counter-ex-
tension),
whilst exten-
sion of the
leg is made.

[1 lf. 241]

- ¶ Dislocacioun of þis place þat comeþ of causis wiþinneforþ, it
is ful hard for to bringe it in azen. & þou þe boon be brougt in
24 azen, wiþ a litil cause it wole goon out azen. & þerfore þer is no
cure þerof, but awoide his bodi, & make him cauterijs as it is afor-
seid in þe chapitre of cauterijs.

There is no
radical cure
for a disloca-
tion arising
from internal
causes.

- ¶ A manns knee is sumtyme out of ioyncte, & sumtyme þe
28 round boon þat is þervpon goiþ out of his place / Signys whanne
a mannes knee is out of ioyncte ben open ynow³. & if þe round
boon be out of his place, þou mihte lýtlich knowe it. ¶ In þis
maner þou schalt bringe a mannes knee into his ioynct¹ azen / Lete
32 a strong¹ man holde faste his hiþe, and ⁴anoper man his leg¹. & þou
schalt wiþ þin hondis presse faste þe boon into his propre place. &
if þe place be enpostymed, first þou muste do awei þe enpostym, &
þan bringe þe knee into his place azen. ¶ If þe round boon be out¹
36 of his place, sette þe boon into his place, & þan binde faste wiþ
boondis, & þan binde his leg¹ faste vp to his hiþe bi an hour, & þan

Sometimes
occurs a
Dislocation
of the knee-
joint, and a
Dislocation
of the Patella.

Reduction
is accom-
plished by
[1 lf. 241, bk.]
pressing the
boon into its
place.

In the same
way reduce a
dislocated
patella.

¹ Lat.: non ductu violenti nec tractu.

³ Add. 26.106, fol. 99: In omnibus aliis curam consequentibus est in precedentibus bene doctus.

vnbinde his leg^r fro his hipe, & þan binde faste þe round boon þat it^r ne moue not^r fro his propre place, & in þat^r maner lete it^r sitte, for it^r wole bicom^e fast^r anon.

Reduction of
Dislocation
of the Ankle-
Joint.

¶ If^r þe ioynct^r of^r a mannes foot^r be out^r of ioyncte or his toos, 4
þou schalt^r do þe cure in þe same maner as it^r is aforseid in þe hond
& in þe fyngris.¹ ¶ þoruȝ þe help of god wipout which is no þing^r
fulfillid, þe .iiij. tretis is fulfillid. ¶ Now I wole bigynne þe .v.
tretis þat^r schal be clepid þe antidotarie of^r this book. // 8

[² lf. 242]

IN þe fifþe tretis clepid þe antidotarie of^r þis book, I þinke to
²putte medicyns boþe symple & compound / þat^r falliþ for
cirurgie & beþ necessarie þerfore / But I ne mai not^r sette alle, for
þer is no man þat^r can telle alle þe noumbre of^r medicyns but^r oonli 12
god / Neþeles I wole sette medicyns in þis antidotarie þat^r I haue
longe vsid, & I lernede hem of^r wise doctouris & of^r philosophoris,
& alle þei ben aproued /

No man could
enumerate all
the medi-
cines, only
God knows
them.

Here bigynneþ þe tretise of repercussiuus // 16

¶ eo jo
Repercus-
sives are used
for hot apos-
temas, espe-
cially if they
are in a noble
limb.

REpercussiuus bifalliþ for hoot apostymes, & principal whanne
it^r bigynneþ in a noble lyme: as in þe herte, oupir in þe
brayn, oupir in þe heed, oupir in þe lyuere, þe splen & þe
stomac, reynes, ballokis, & in þe bladdre // It^r schal alwei be þin 20
entencioun for to putte awei greuous mater fro a noble lyme into
anoþer place. ¶ Whanne þou wolt^r worche wip repercussiuus, þou
muste take hede to .x. condiciouns þat^r ben sett^r in þe iij. tretis in þe
general chapitre of enpostyms / ¶ Repercussif^r is seid in .ij. maners: 24
as large & streit³ / large is seid: as eueri medicyne maad of coold
herbis for to aquenche hoot^r ⁴causis. Streit^r is seid, whanne it^r putt^r
awei þe mater & is not^r swipe coold // Of repercussiuus þere ben
manie degrees of cooldnes / Ther ben summe so coold, þat^r a man 28
mai not^r fele his lyme, & þan it^r is clepid stupefactiu⁵ / & þis þou
schalt^r vse whanne þer is þing^r þat^r greueþ more þan þe mater.
¶ Whanne þou ne dredist not^r hoot qualite oonli, but^r þou dredist
þe mater, þan þou schalt^r vse medicyns þat^r ben coold & drie, þat^r 32
þei mowe tempere þe complexioun of^r þe lyme, & wip þe vertu of^r
stiptica þei wolen comforte þe lyme,⁶ & þese ben propirli clepid
repercussiuus / Whanne þou hast^r entencioun oonly for to make

Repercus-
sives are
understood
in a wider or
stricter sense.
[⁴ lf. 242, bk.]

Some are
very cold,
and are called
Stupefac-
tiu^a.

Some are less
cold but dry:

Stiptica.

¹ MS. repeats this sentence.

³ large & streit. See p. 305, note 1.

⁵ Vigon transl. *Traheron Interpr.*: "*Stupefactiue*. That, that hathe strengthe to astonie, and take away felynge."

⁶ Lat.: et sua stipticitate uirtutem membri confortent.

- coold, þan it is no force þou; þi medicyn be not stiptica / But whanne þou wolt make ony repercussiuus, it is necessarie þat þei be coold & drie. ¶ Medicyns þat ben coold & repercussiuus, summe
 4 ben simple & summe ben compound / Of simple medicyns, summe ben of herbis, & summe ben of trees, & summe ben leeuës, & summe ben rotis, & summe ben seedis, & summe ben flouris, & summe ben greynes¹ of minerals, & summe ben watris, & summe
 8 ben oilis. And summe þerof I wole sette in þese bokis þat ben greetli in vss toward us / And þere ben medicyns coold & moist^[2 If. 243] þat þou miȝt vse for to atempere þe complexioun of lymes þat ben distemp[er]id in hete & drienës. ¶ Malua, capillus³ veneris, psil-
 12 lium, portulaca, atriplex. Mercurialis,⁴ Rapa, cucurbita, Melones, Citruli,⁵ Semen malue, seminis iij^{or}. frigidorum, Semper via, lactuca ortulana.⁶ ¶ Iusquiamus, Mandragora, Papauere, argentum viuum, f. & h. in iij.⁷ ¶ Oilis coold & moist: Oleum violacium, Oleum
 16 nenupharinum,⁸ Oleum de lilijs albis, Oleum mirtinum. Istis⁹ medicinis potest vti quum intendis infrigidare sine expulciōe ut dictum est // þese medicyns þou miȝtist vse whanne þou entendist for to make coold wiþouten expulcioun of þe mater as it is forseid.
 20 ¶ Medicyns þat ben symple coold & drie, þat ben clepid verry repercussiuus ben þese / Solatrum, crassula maior & minor,¹⁰ virga pastoris / vmbilicus veneris, cicorea, Endiua, Gramen, Epatica,¹¹ Ipoquistidos, veruene, Semper via, Corigiola,¹² Sanguinaria, Edera,
 24 Acetosa, Scariola, plantago maior & minor, Nenuphar. De granis

Repercussive medicines are either simple or compound. The simple medicines.

Herbs.

Oilis.

Medicines that are cold and dry, or Repercussives in a strict sense.

¹ The translator misunderstood the Lat. genera mineralium.

³ MS. *capillis*.

⁴ Add. 15,236, fol. 4 b.: "*Linochites, mercurialis, idem. G. mercuria, A. smerewourth.*" Compare *Alphita*, p. 116: "*linozostis g^a mercurie. a^a scandany.*"

⁵ Phillips, "*Citrull*, a sort of Cucumber or Pumpkin of a Citron-Colour."

⁶ Halle, *Table*, p. 57: "*Lactuca sativa*, or *Hortensis*, þat is *gardin letuce*."

⁷ *frigidum et humidum in quarto gradu.*

⁸ *nenupharinum*, Arab. Pers. nūfār, nīnūfār (Littré). *Nymphæa alba*. Add. 15,236, fol. 5 b.: "*Nenufar .i. flos rugule, caballine aquatice A. waterlilye.*" Compare *Alphita*, p. 124; *Barth. Sinon.*, p. 31.

⁹ MS. *istius*.

¹⁰ Add. 15,236, lf. 11: "*Crassula maior G. crassegeline vel orpine. Crassula minor .G. terce de soris .A. stonerop.*"

¹¹ Add. 15,236. Cf. 3 b.: "*Epatica .G. coper .A. liuervort.*" Ibid. lf. 11: "*Epatica .G. epatik vel coper .A. liuervort.*"

¹² Add. 15,236, lf. 3 b.: "*Corigiola. Centinodia. lingua passerina. G. Coriogiola.*" Halle, *Table*, p. 29: "*Corrigiola*. So called of the Apothecaries, and of the Frenche men *Corrigiole*, is oure common Knottgrasse, called in Greke polygonon, in Latine *Seminalis* and *Polygonum mas*."

[² lf. 243, bk.] **seminibus, fructibus.** Ordeum, Silligo¹; auena. ²Spica, Lollium, ffabe, Mirtilli, Berberis, Sumac, Pira, Poma, Sorbe, mespila, Castanea, Glandes, Galle, Maiorana, Mora matura, vua acerba, Capreoli, vitis.³ ¶ **De floribus folijs & corticibus** / Balaustie cortices, 4 Cortices mali granata, Cortices arborum stipticorum⁴; Rosa, Nenufar, flos spine, ffolia pirorum, pomorum, sorborum, rubij, & spine. ¶ **ffolia** / Salicis, Populi, Tremuli, Papiri, Canne.⁵ ¶ **De linis.** omnes sandali. ¶ **De mineralibus & lutis** / Saphirus, Bolus armenicus, Marmor, Alabastrum,⁶ Cathinia, Litargirum, munda⁷ ferri, Ematistes, Corallus, antimonium. ¶ **De lutis.** Terra sigillata, Argilla, lutum⁸ omne, cimolea,⁹ Camfora, Cerusa. **De gummis.** Gumma pruni,¹⁰ cerase, amigdale, Acacia, opium. **De olijs.** Oleum 12 rosarum, & eueri oile þat^t is maad of^t coold þingis & drie, of^t flouris, leeues, & ryndis þerof^t / Also watir of^t rosis, & water þat^t is maad of^t alle þingis þat^t ben coold & drie, and distillid¹¹ / If þou be sent^t after into a cuntre, þere ben noon apotecarijs, þan if þou canst^t 16 make þese medicyns þat^t ben forseid & medicyns þat^t schulen be seid heraftir, þan þou miȝt^t fulfille þi purpos¹² & do þi cure. þou miȝt^t make ¹³of^t þese þingis: oynementis, epithima, cathaplasmata, emplastra, enbrocaciouns, pultes, encatismata. Of^t þese names manie 20 men takith oon for anoper, & þerfore I wole telle þe diuersite of vnguentum. alle. ¶ **vnguentum** is maad of^t .iiij. 3 of^t oile & 3 ß. of^t wex in winter, & 3 j. in somer, & 3 j. of^t þingis þat^t pin oynement^t schal Epithima. serue þerfore.¹⁴ and oynementis schulen be algatis colid. ¶ **Epithima** 24 is þis, whanne þingis ben sotilli poudrid & temperid wiþ water of roses, ouþer wiþ vinegre, ouþer iuys of^t ony herbe, so þat^t it^t be temperid in þe þiknes of^t hony & leid vpon þe place, & hilid wiþ Cataplasma. lynnen clooþ, ouþer wiþ leþer, þis is clepid epithimum. ¶ **Cata-** 28 **plasma** is, whanne herbis ben grounde & soden ouþer raw, & al þe substaunce of^t þe herbe þerwiþ & medlid wiþ mele & grese, & it^t ne schal not^t be hard ne neische, but^t in þe meene, & it^t schal be leid

¹ *Silligo*, a kind of very white wheat.

² MS. *Spata*, *Spleta*. Lat.: Add. 26,106, fol. 109, "*spaca*"; ed. 1498, fol. 207, "*spica*." The preceding words show that *spica* is the correct reading.

³ *Capreoli vitis*, the tendrils of vine.

⁴ MS. *stipticoris*.

⁵ MS. *panne*.

⁶ med. Lat. *alabastrum*.

⁷ Lat.: *murga uel merda*.

⁸ MS. *litum*.

⁹ *cimolea*, a kind of earth, so called after Cimolus, an island in the Cretan sea, where it is found.

¹⁰ MS. *Summa pruna*.

¹¹ Lat.: *omnis aqua ex rebus siccis et frigidis distillata*.

¹² Lat.: *de quo tuum poteris propositum adimplere*.

¹⁴ et 3 .i. pulueris rerum puluerizandarum, que ponuntur in unguento.

flasch hoot vpon þe lyme. ¶ **Emplastrum** is seide, whanne manie **Emplastrum.**
 diuers pingis, as poudris and gummis & fatnessis, wex, talow, &
 oile ben soden togidere til þei bicom hard, & maad in gobetis &
 4 kept. & þan it schal be maad abroad vpon leþir, & leid vpon þe
 place þat þou wolt¹ haue it: as diaculon, apostolicon,² oxirocroce- [1f. 244, bk.]
 um,³ & opere manie. ¶ **Pultes**⁴ & cathaplasma ben al oon, but pro- **Pultes.**
 pirli pultes ben clepid, whanne þer is mele, watir, & oile wiþouten
 8 herbis, & it schal be clepid cataplasma, whanne herbis ben medlid **Cataplasma.**
 þerwiþ. ¶ **Embroma[tio]** is seid, whanne a mannes lyme is putt in **Embroma.**
 hoot watir, wiþouten ony decoccioun of herbis þeron, & þat hoot
 watir schal be cast vpon þe lyme from an hiz, & so it schal be do
 12 longe, & þis is clepid embrocure.⁵ ¶ **Encatisma** is seid in .ij. **Encatisma.**
 maners: sumtyme it is seid for a clisterie, & sumtyme for a par-
 ticuler [þap],⁶ anoon to þe nauele & non aboue þe nauel /

¶ **Medicyns** þat ben compound togidere: Whanne þou entendist² **2. Compound**
 16 for to make a lyme coold, & not putte awei þe mater, þou schalt **Medicines.**
 take iuy of herbis þat ben coold þre partis, olei rosis oon part,
 of vinegre half a part, & medle hem togidere. If þat þou wolt
 þat it worche more strongely, þan do þerto argillam rubeam / til it
 20 be as picke as it were epithima, & leie it to þe place. & herof þou
 must take kepe, þou schalt vse pingis þat ben able for a mannes
 complexioun / In þis maner if þou leist coold pingis to a place, &
 ne hast not þi purpos þerof, þan þou schalt leue þe coold medicyns,
 24 & make medicyns þat ben competent to þe same complexioun / for
 sum medecyne is for peter þat is not good for poul, for þe diuersite
 of complexioun. & al þis teching þou miȝt fynde generalich in þe
 tretis of enpostyms. / þfor if peter be of complexioun hoot & moist,
 28 & poulis complexioun be coold & drie, oon repercussioun wole not
 serue hem boþe in oon point. & for þis cause þou muste diuerse þi
 medicyns; for þis is al dai preued bi experiment as þou miȝt se
 ofte tyme, þat crassula maior is a good repercussif for coold mater,

² See p. 125, note 3.

³ *oxirocroceum*. Lat. *oxiracroeum*. Matth. Sylv.: "*oxirocroceum*, i. *emplastrum compositum ex aceto et croco*."

⁴ *pultes*, Lat. plur. of *puls*, *tis*. This plur. form used as sing.: Add. 10,440, fol. 23: "*be þer soþen a þinne pultes or gruel of barley*." Compare the plur. form *pultesses*, Gasc. Steel Glas 997 (Skeat, *Et. Dict.*). For *poultice*, see Ital. *pultaceo*.

⁵ *embroche*, Traheron Vigo Interpret.: "*Embroke commeth of embrocho, whyche signifyeth to raine*. And it is an embrocation, when we drop downe liquour from a hyer place, vpon some parte of the bodye, and vpon the head." See p. 339, note 1.

⁶ Lat.: *dicitur enim clistere, aliquando dicitur particularis balneatio*.

Choose the medicines [6 leaf 245] according to the patient's constitution.

Some medicine is good for Peter and bad for Paul. **Nota.**

& vmbilicus veneris is coold in þe same degre, & ȝitt' it' is not' so good repercussif' for þe same mater /

A medicine if there is a hot discrasia.

R̃y.

R̃y.

R̃y.

[2 lf. 245, bk.]

If after the use of repercussives, the place becomes livid, apply a cold resolving medicine.

An example how to use repercussives.

Cold matter must be removed with
[3 lf. 246]
hot and dry medicine.

This is a good medicyn repercussif' þere þat' þer is miche discracia hoot' & litil mater / R̃y, sandali albi, spodij, acacie, ana .ʒ. ij, 4 camphore .ʒ. j., opij .ʒ. ʒ, distempere hem wiþ þe iuys of a coold herbe, & oile of violet, & a litil vinegre / Item anoþer. R̃y, ossa sicca & combusta, cerusam,¹ amidum, ana .ʒ. ij., tempere hem as it' is forseid / Item anoþer þat' is comoun þat' is recordid in manie 8 placis. R̃y, boli armenici .ʒ. j., olei ros. ʒ. iij., aceti ʒ. j., þat' is þat' defensif' þat' is aforeseid in manie placis for to kepe a lyme fro corruption. ¶ Also enplastris & epithima, þat' ben forseid in doloribus iuncturarum of hoot' cause ben good. þerfore ioyne hem wiþ þese. 12 ¶ Herof þou muste be war, þat' whanne þou leist repercussiuus to a place, þere þat' þer is miche mater, & if' þe place bicomme ledi, þan þou schalt' contynue nomore wiþ pure coold þingis; but' do þerto iuys of coriandre grene & barli mele, for þis makip coold & resolueþ. 16 ¶ If' þer be no ledi colour but' þe mater is greet', & nyle not' be doon awei wiþ repercussiuus, whanne þe flux of humours is acesid, þan biginne for to medle þerwiþ resolutiuus; ȝitt' þou schalt' contynue wiþ repercussiuus þere þat' þer is greet' akyng / an ensauple 20 hereof / If' þe akinge be in a mannes knee, þan þou schalt' first' leie medicyns vpon þe knee, & þan aftirward þou schalt' not' leie it' riȝt' vpon his knee, but' a litil aboue his knee, þat' þe ende of þe medicyn mowe touche þe firste parti of þe akyng. 24

¶ Coold mater as it' is aforeseid, ne schal not' be putt' awei wiþ repercussiuus, but' wiþ medicyns þat' ben hoot' and ³drie in tempere, þat' þei mowe wiþ her heete chaunge þe coold complexioun, & wiþ her dreines comfote þe vertu of þe lyme, & defende þat' þer 28 come no more mater to þe lyme, & if' þe mater be litil, putte it' awei, & if' þou ne wolt' not' putte it' awei, defende þe place þat' þer falle nomore mater þerto⁴ / And alle þese ben hote wiþ a maner bittirnes: as absinthium, squinantum, abrotanum, polium, sticados, 32 centaurea maior & minor,⁵ aristologia longa & rotunda, mauribium,⁶

¹ MS. *cereſaris*. Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Cerusa. flos plumbi id. G. blonc plome A. wyt lede.*"

⁴ Lat.: "materia ne ad membrum veniat prohibetur et etiam plerumque repellitur si sit pauca, sed etsi non omnino repellitur tamen locum ita deffendit, quod tanta non potest in ipso materia congregari."

⁵ Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Centaurea. fol terre idem .G. centore .A. cristes laddir.*" ? In Britten and Holland's English Plant-names *Centaury* is at p. 96. *E. P. N.*, p. 37: "eorð-gealle." These names refer to *Centaurea minor*, see *Alphita*, p. 37. *Centaurea maior* = *narca* vel *gentiana*. *Ibid.*

⁶ *mauribium*, Corp. Gl. M. 43: "*Marubium. bionryt vel hune.*" Wr.

- mirta, mastix, lupini, oleum de masticis, & de absinthio / Herof¹ pou shalt² take kepe: manie men seien, & it³ wole listly be leued of⁴ lewid men, & pat⁵ is yuel ping⁶ for to leie a repercussif⁷ to ony mater 4 for to driue it⁸ awei, but it⁹ is bettir to drawe out¹⁰ þe mater wiþ enplastris, & if¹¹ þer comeþ out¹² þerof¹³ miche quitture, þei seien þat¹⁴ a mannes bodi is wel purgid þerwiþ, & schal be longe þe holer þerfore / And if¹⁵ þe mater be doon awei wiþ repercussiuus & þe enpostym 8 be defendid, þan if¹⁶ þe same man be sijk aftirward, þan men wolen seie þat¹⁷ it¹⁸ was defeaute in þe leche, for if¹⁹ þe enpostym hadde be maad maturatif²⁰ ¹ & þe quitture drawe out²¹, þan þe man hadde be hool, & alle þese opiniouns ben false / And þou schalt²² wite þis cer- 12 teynli: if²³ þou takist²⁴ kepe of²⁵ þe .x. consideraciouns þat²⁶ ben forseid in enpostyms, & principali whanne his body is maad clene wiþ laxatiuis þat²⁷ ben competent²⁸ þerfore / It²⁹ is bettir to putte awei þe mater wiþ comfortyng³⁰ of³¹ þe lyme, þan lete þe mater conferme / for 16 if³² þou kepist³³ wel þe condiciouns þat³⁴ ben forseid, the mater mai be putt³⁵ awei, & þe man schal not³⁶ be peirid //

Many men say, one ought not to remove bad matter by a repercussive, as suppuration purges the body;

Nota

[1 lf. 246, bk.]

but they are wrong,

for it is better to strengthen the limb by removing the matter, than to allow the matter to gather.

Of þe maner of resolutiuis.

- 20 **W**Hanne oon strong¹, or² manye feble of³ .x. causis lettib⁴ repercussiuus, ouþir whanne þou hast⁵ a repercussif⁶, & þou ne miȝt⁷ not⁸ putte awei þe mater, þan þou muste leie þerto resolutiuis. & as it⁹ is aforseid of¹⁰ repercussiuus, in þe same maner I seie of¹¹ resolutiuis: whanne a man haþ¹² akyng¹³ ouþir greet¹⁴ swell- 24 ynge, þou schalt¹⁵ leie þerto no resolutiuis, or þou haue maad him a competent¹⁶ purgacioun. ¶ fforwhi, as it¹⁷ is aforseid, enpostym ouþer greet¹⁸ akyng¹⁹ comeþ of²⁰ causis wiþinneforþ, þan it²¹ mote ⁴nedis come of²² repleccioun of²³ þe bodi. & þan if²⁴ þou leist²⁵ þerto resolutiuis, þat²⁶ 28 wolde drawe to þe place more mater / for þer is no resolutif²⁷, þat²⁸ ne it²⁹ is hoot³⁰ / & eueri ping³¹ þat³² is hoot³³, is attractif³⁴ / What schal we do in þis caas? ¶ ffirst³⁵ þou schalt³⁶ lete him blood, ouþir make him a medicyn laxatif³⁷, ouþir boþe two, as þou seest³⁸ þat³⁹ it⁴⁰ wole spede / 32 And þan þou schalt⁴¹ bigynne for to resolue wiþ medicyns resolutiuis þat⁴² been hoot⁴³ & sotil⁴⁴ // This is þe difference bitwixe resolutiuis & maturatiuis: ¶ Resolutiuis haueþ tempere hete wiþ sotilnes & open-

¶ co ijo³
If you cannot use Repercussives, use resolvent medicines.

First give a purgacioun.

[4 lf. 247]

Every resolvent medicine is hot and "attractive," therefore use first blood-letting or purging.

Nota bene.

Wü. 136, 12 (XII. cent.), "*harhune*." Add. 15,236, lf. 5: *Marubium prasi- sium idem. G. marole. A. horehune. vel horehound.*"

² MS. of.

³ MS. omits.

⁵ Some passages are omitted, in which Lanfranc quotes from his "*Chirurgia parva*."

Difference between resolving and maturing medicines.

yngē.¹ ¶ Maturatiuis haueþ *tempere* hete wiþ *viscosite* / þerfore it falliþ ofte tyme, þat whanne þou leist^t *resolutiuis* vpon miche mater & greet, it makip þe mater sotil & hoot, & þan þe kindly hete wipinne is comfortid wiþ þe hete wipoutforþ, & it bifalliþ ofte tyme, 4 þat medicyns *resolutiuis* in þis caas makip þe mater *maturatif* / Also if þou leist^t *medicyn* *maturatif* vpon litil mater & sotil it hetip þe mater, & þe natural hete wipinne is comfortid *perwip*, & so
[² lf. 247, bk.] þe heete multipliþ, & in þis maner þe heete ²mai be resolved. 8

Use the decoction, made to prepare the resolvent medicine, first as a wash.

¶ The maner of resoluing^t: Make a *decoccioun* of herbis of whiche þow wolt make þi *medicyn*, & kepe þe watir þat þe herbis ben soden yn, & wiþ þe same watir þou schalt waische þe lyme, til it bicomē reed, & þan leie þervpon þe *medicyn* *resolutif*. ¶ Herof 12 þou muste be war, þat ofte tyme a *medycyn* *resolutif* resolueþ þe sotil mater, & þat þat is greet, bicomēþ hard, & þan þe more þat þou art aboute to resolve, þe more it wole bicomē hard / þerfore þou muste be bisi in þis caas & leie þerto *mollificatiuis*, & þan þou 16 schalt go to *resolutiuis*, & in þis maner þou schalt worche it til it be al resolved. ¶ Of *medicyns* *resolutiuis*, summe ben simple: as, *camomilla*, *Mellilotum*, *paritaria*, *malua siluestris* & alia,³ *volibilis*,⁴ *fumus terre*, *caulis*, *anetum*, *vertica*, *enula*, *borago*, *sambucus*, *kebu-* 20 *lus*, *valeriana*, & alle herbis þat ben hoot in *tempere*,⁵ wiþ sotilnes.

Simple resolvent medicines.

[³ lf. 248]

¶ De *seminibus* / *Semina caulium*, *aneti*, *vertice*, *malue*. *Semina diuretica*: *cantabrum*,⁶ *omne*,⁷ *farina orde*, *orobi*, & *fabe* / *Pinguede porci* & *anser*, *anatis*, *galline*, *aquile*. ¶ De *gummis* / ⁸*Mastix*, 24 *olibanum*, *opoponac*, *asa fetida*, *mirra*, *serapinum*, *armonicum*, *bdellium*, *galbanum*, & alle maner sotil *gummis*: *lapdanum*, *ysopus humida*, *terbentina*, *cera*, *swetyngē* of *bestis*, & *buttir*. ¶ *Medicyns* *resolutif* & *compound* of þe *forseid*, simple þou schalt fynde in þe 28 nexte chapitre here tofore / þis is an oile *resoluinge* / & makip hoot & *aceessip* akyngē / R̄, *florum camomille recencium*, *fenigreci seminis* 4 *ana* .ḡ ij., leie hem in xx .ḡ j. of oile of oliue in a glasen vessel, & lete it stonde to þe sunne .xl. daies in somer, & þan kepe it for 32

Compound resolvent medicines.

A resolving oil.

R̄


¹ Lat. cum subtilitate aperitiua.

³ The Prints read "siue *alba*." Add. 26,106, siue *alba* corrected to *alia*. The correct reading is either *alta* or *alte*. Add. 15,236, lf. 5: "*Malua viscus. bismalua. Altea idem. G. Wymauve A. mersmauve.*" *Alphita*, p. 110: "*Malva silvestris, malva viscus, altea . . . alta malva idem.*"

⁴ MS. *volibilis*. *Alphita*, p. 192: "*Volubilis, corrigiola idem, arbores parvas et herbas ligat. gall. [corrigi]ole, angl. berebinde.*"

⁵ Lat. temperate calida.

⁶ *cantabrum*, bran. Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Cantabrum .i. grossum furfur tritici rel frumenti .G. la grose brene.*" ⁷ Lat.: omne amilum de ordeo.

- pin vss. If þou haddist nede herof & if it¹ were in winter, þan take þe flouris of camomille dried & fenigrec & oile, as it is aforseid, & sette þis glasen vessel in a caudroun ful of watir, & make fier
 4 vndir, & loke þat þe water ne boile not, & so it schal stonde al a dai in hoot water / & whanne it is coold cole it, & kepe þe oile for pin vss / And in þis maner þou miȝt make oile of rosis, if þou hast
 8 nede of // **Anoþer oile** þat is resolutif / R̃, olei antiqui .li. j., Another re-
solving oil. **seminis aneti nouiter in vmbra siccati .ḡ j.,** putte him in a viol R̃
 fourti daies to þe sunne, ouþer sette it in hoot water ²as it is aforseid. [² lf. 248, blk.]
 ¶ Anoþer oile þat is resoluynȝ and makip hoot & accessip akynge, Oil of lilies.
 12 & is good for to achaufe a mannys reynes & a wommans maris, & it is clepid *olium de lilio compositum* / R̃, olij antiqui .ḡ. xx., *florum* R̃
liliorum alborum, & kutte awei þerof al þat is ȝelowe, *cassilaginis*,³
 costi, *masticis*, *carpobalsami ana .ḡ i.*,⁴ *cinamoni ana .ḡ ḡ.*, putte alle
 16 pese in a glasen vessel, & lete hem stonde in þe schadowe al a moneþe, & þan do away þe lilie flouris of þe oile, & kepe þe oile for pin vss. ¶ Anoþer oile þat is clepid *olium mastice*, & is swiþe Nota
 resolutif, & is good for febilnes of þe stomac, & it is good for
 20 akynge of a mannes stomac / R̃, *olium oliuarum mediocriter maturarum* .li. ij., *masticis* .ḡ. vj., boile hem togidere in a double vessel, til þe mastix & þe oile be dissolued, & kepe it for pin vss. ¶ This
 þou muste knowe, þat whanne þou wolt make þat, þat schal be
 24 *repercussif* & coold & comforynȝ for þe lyme, þan þou schalt chese oile þat is not to ripe, as for to make *olium rosis*, *olium mirtinum*, & oþere mo. If þou wolt make oile þat schal be resoluynȝ, ouþer
 persynȝ, þan þou schalt chese oile þat is ripe / And in þis maner Nota
 28 þou schalt ⁵knowe, wheþer þe oile be ripe or no. Oile þat is not [⁵ lf. 249]
 ripe, wole be grene, & þat is ripe wole be whit, & þat þat is in þe How to dis-
tinguish ripe
and unripe
olive-oil.
 meene, wole be meene colour bitwixe þe two. ¶ Oynementis þat
 ben resolutif ben maad in þis maner: of iiij .ḡ of⁶ oile of camo-
 32 mille ouþer of sum oþer oile & ḡ j. of wex in somer, & ḡ ḡ. in 
 winter, & ḡ j. of poudre of seedis of aneti, caulium, flouris of camomille. ¶ Ysopus humida is a good oynement resolutif, & is ysopus hu-
meda.
 maad in þis maner: / **Take** of þe smal wolfe þat is bitwixe þe
 36 schepis leggis, & take þerof a good quantite, & take as miche water,

¹ if it, above line.³ Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Cassilago, Iusquiamus idem G. geliner A. henebel. vel heneban.*" The Lat. has *Cassio lignea*, see *Alphita*, p. 35.⁴ *carpobalsamum*, "balsames blood." Wr. Wü., 199, 41 (X cent.).⁶ MS. of twice.

A resolving
plaster.

R̄

[¹ lf. 249, bk.]

Iohannes
Mesue

R̄

Another
resolving
plaster.

[² lf. 250]

& lete þe wolle ligge in þe watir adai & anyzt, & þan boile hem a litil wiþ lent fier, & þan cole hem, & whanne þei ben coold, wrynge hem þoruȝ a clooþ, & do þe water þerof into a leden vessel, & boile it wiþ lent fier, & algate meeuē it wiþ a spatire til it bicome picke 4 as it were an oynement. ¶ Of enplastris þe beste þat is diaculon Rasis þat resoluē scrophulas & glandulas, & makip carbunculis maturatīf & is swiþe comoun / R̄, olij antiqui de oliuis maturis vncias quinque, litargiri .ḡ j., & þou schalt poudre þe litarge in a morter & 8 do þerto ¹þin oile & medle hem togidere, & þan do hem in a vessel & boile hem togidere, & meeuē hem algatis wiþ a spatire, & do þerto de muscillagine seminis lini, fenigreci, ana .ḡ ij, & muscillaginēm malue visci .ḡ j, & þan boile hem til þei bicome picke, & make þerof 12 gobetis & kepe hem to þin vss, & if þou wolt worche þerwiþ, take þerof as miche as þou wolt, & plane it vpon leþer or vpon linnen clooþ, & leie vpon þe place. ¶ Diaculon Iohannis Mesue is better þan þis / & worchip more strongli. þat þou schalt finde in paruo 16 compendio. ¶ Also anoþer plastre þat is resolutīf / R̄, maluarum siluestrum, paritarie, flouris of camomille, Melliloti ana ℞. j., boile hem in watir til þei be wel soden, & þan stampe hem, & take of þe same watir .iij. partis, & of sum oile þat is resolutīf oon 20 parti, seminis caulium, aneti partem ℞., furfuris, farine ordeī, ana partem j., boile hem alle togidere & make þerof as it were pultes, & þan do þerto of þe herbis þat ben soden as miche as of al þe remenaunt, & leie it vpon þe place þat þou wolt, sumdel hoot as 24 it is aforseid, & seke medicins resolutiuis ²þat ben in paruo compendio, & do it to, & þan þou miȝt haue medicyns resolutiuis ynowe /

Of þe tretis of þe foure maturatiuis.

28

co ij° 3

If resolving
and repercussive
medicines have
no effect,
then bring
the matter to
maturation.

Maturing
Simples:

WHanne þou hast resolved mani daies ouþer leid þerto repercussiuīs, & ne is nouȝt worth, saue þe mater wole bicome maturatīf, þan if his bodi be avoidid as it is aforseid, þan [begynne] ⁴ for to leie þerto maturatiuis / Eueri medicyn þat is maturatīf is 32 hoot in tempere wiþ a maner viscosite þat wole not suffre þe vapour to goon out, but it holdip him wipinne til it be maturid; & ben pese: Malua viscus, branca vrcina, radix brionie, radix lappacii

³ MS. om.

⁴ Lat.: "Quando pluribus resoluisti diebus aut forte repercussisti, nec valet, sed materia desiderat maturari, tunc premissis evacuationibus necessariis vel possibilibus, incipe maturare."

- acuti,¹ baucie² Radix, farine frumenti, semen lini, fenigreci, ficus sicce, & alle þat ben forseid in þe nexte chapitre tofore, if þat þei beþ medlid herwiþ. ¶ This is a good maturatif³ compound of
- 4 manie þingis þat makip hoot mater maturatif. R̄, foliorum malue nigre, id est comoun malue pinguis seu ortolane, brance vrcine, radix brioni, radiceis malue visci ana. ℞ .j., seþe hem alle in watir & stampe hem, & þan do þerto malua visci, & þan take of þe same
- 8 watir a pound³ & freisch grese .ḡ ij., & sotil mele of whete .ḡ iij., [3 lf. 250, bk.] & sotil mele of lynseed & of fenigrec ana .ḡ j. & ℞., medle hem togidere & boile hem perfiztli, & make þerof cataplasma, & þan do þerto of þe foreseid herbis & rootis wel grounde, & medle hem
- 12 togidere, & loke þat þei be not to picke / for it schal be algate þin entencioun, þat cataplasma, þat schal be resolutif or maturatif or mundificatif, ne schal not be hard; for if it be hard, it wole make akyng to þe lyme, & þan it wole anoie more þan profite. ¶ Item,
- 16 if þou dredist woodnes of mater, þan þou ne schalt do þerto no fenigrec; for it is swiþe hoot, & þerwiþ þe mater wole be as it were a feuere.⁴ & þerfore I counseile þee þat þou do no fenigrec þerto / If þou dredist, þat þe mater is swiþe hoot / if þer be wiþ þat
- 20 mater ony gretnes or ony coold mater, þan make of þe forseid cataplasma .ij. partis, fermenti de frumento⁵ partem j., & medle hem togidere. & Isaac seiþ: þat þis is good for mater þat is medlid wiþ hoot cause & coold cause togidere. ¶ Also a good maturatif / Take
- 24 hony & butter ana, & medle hem with mele til þei be as picke as it were pultes. ¶ Item embrocaciouns in resoluciouns & maturacioun, & is good for akyng of woundis of concussioun in þe heed / concussioun is as miche to sie as smiten wiþ a staf / R̄, olij ḡ ij.,
- 28 cere albe ḡ j., cimini, rute, arthemesie ana. ḡ ℞., absinthi, paritarie, brance vrcine, ana ḡ ij., grinde wel þe herbis & þe grese togidere in a morter, & þan do þerto poudre of comyn, & oile, & medle hem wel togidere. ¶ Also pultes þat wole make an enpostym
- 32 maturatif: R̄, foliorum malue, bismalue, paritorie, volubilis maioris, iusquiami ana ḡ ij., seþe hem in a litil watir, & þan presse hem & staumpe hem wel, & þan medle hem wiþ ḡ iij of þe same watir þat þei weren soden ynne, & medle þerwiþ ḡ j. of grese, þat it be cold,
- 36 & barli mele þat suffisip / In þis maner þou schalt make a coold

A compound
maturing
medicine.

R̄

Nota.
Caution
against
Fennil, if
there is any
danger, that
the matter
may get
inflamed.

Isaac.

R̄

[6 lf. 251]

R̄

R̄

¹ MS. *lappa acuta*.

² *baucia*. *Alphita*, p. 21: "pastinaca, angl. widleskirwit."

⁴ Lat.: et cito per illum inflammatur materia.

⁵ MS. *fermento*.

R̄y mater maturatif / R̄y, cepe unum¹ album, item de capitibus allij, & sette hem vndir askis, & distempere hem wiþ þe .iij. part^t of buttir, & do þerto mele of fenigrek, & of lynseed, & make þerof an enplastre. & do þerto .ij. ʒelkis of eiren soden hard, & ʒ j. off⁴ malui visci preparati, & ʒ ij. of fermenti. ¶ Also a maturatif of

R̄y greet^t mater & coold & hard. R̄y, bdellij, serapini ana ʒ j. & ʒ, & [2 lf. 251, bk.] dissolue hem in vinegre / ²& stampe hem wel, & do þerto .ʒ j. of terbentyne, & dissolue hem to þe fier / But loke þat it ne boile S not, & do þerto oile of lilie .ʒ ij., & make it picke wiþ sutil mele

R̄y of lupinis, & of fenigrec / Item ʒ ʒ. of olibani, & fenigrec maad to poudre sotili poudrid, & medle hem wiþ .li. ʒ of hony; þis wole be a good maturatif for coold causis. ¶ Also vnguentum tetrafarm- 12

Basilicum maius. Aūcen. acum,³ & it is clepid of Auicenne basilicon,⁴ & þus manie men preisiþ þis medicyn. Galen, Auicen, Serapion, Iohannes Mesue, & Haly þe abbot; & it makip enpostyms maturatif, & it is good for

Basilicum minus. woundis, & for vlcera þat ben bicom hard / R̄y, cere, resine, picis, 16 cepi vaccini,⁵ ana, & olij quod suffisiþ / Summen in stide of cepum, þei putten buttir, & summen in winter þei doon þerto oon parti of bdellium, & summen taken oonli ceram, picem, & rasinam ana, & olium; & þis is basilicon minus. ¶ Also a good maturatif for 20

A maturing medicine for anthrax and malignant apostemas.

R̄y antracem / & is good for to make a wickid enpostym maturatif, as I haue aforseid in his place / R̄y, ficus siccas bene pingues, numero .vj., vue passe⁶ de corinthio .ʒ j., duas spicas allij mundatas, piperis grana .xij., salis nitri .ʒ ij., stampe alle þese & do þerto oold oile 24

[7 lf. 252]

ʒ ij., aceti ⁷ʒ j., fermenti acerimi as miche as is þe half of alle to- gidere. ¶ Also a maturatif for antracem / but if he be swiþe

R̄y maturatif / R̄y, fermenti acris, lactis mulieris, mellis, vitellorum ouorum ana, medle hem togidere. If þou wolt worche more strongeli, do þerto galbanum dissolved as myche as þe haluendel of oon. & if þou wolt make it more strong^t, for to make it maturatif, 32 & for to make it breke, þan do þerto culueris dounge & of hennis ana, as miche as wole be .iiij. part^t of oon, as it is aforseid / baurac,

¹ MS. *vinum*. Add. 26,106, fol. 103 b.: "cepe unum album."

³ MS. *cetrafarozatum*.

⁴ Phillips: "*Basilicon*, a Royal Ointment or Plaister, otherwise called Tetrapharmacon, because it is made up of four Ingredients, viz., Pitch, Rosin, Wax, and Oil."

⁵ Lat.: *sepi vaccini*.

⁶ *vue passe*, dried grapes, i. e. raisins.

vj. part of oon & ß.; pese .iij. maturatiuis suffisip pee / ¶ Also þis is a rule þat is ful profitable for pee / whanne þou wolt leie ony maturatif to a place: first þou schalt make embrocam¹ to þe lyme
 4 wip a decoccioun of herbis maturatiuis, soden in watir, & wip þat hoot watir þou schalt bape þe lyme til þe lyme bicomē reed, & þan leie þeron a plastre of maturatiuis þat ben forseid oon þerof, for þou hast sufficiently ynowe, & loke þat þe enplastre be not to hard, ²& [2 lf. 252, bk.]
 8 as hoot as he mai suffre it þou schalt leie it þerto / ¶ Thou hast herd sufficientli of maturatiuis, ynow it is nede to speke of mundificatiuis. For whanne an hard matir is maad maturatif, it is nede for to leie þerto mundificatiuis as it is forseid in þe worching of
 12 enpostyms /



¶ Of þe tretis of mundificatiuis /

Mundificatum is as miche to seie as clensyng, & doip awei
 hore. & eueri þing þat doip awei hore in woundis & super-
 16 fluite, may be seid a mundificatif / A mundificatif may be seid in .ij. maners / As a medicyn þat is taken bi þe mouþ, ouþer þat is putt in bineþe wip a clisterie, ouþer wip a pessarie³ for to make clene a mannes lymes wipinne. & of þis kinde ben sirupis maad of
 20 seedis þat makip clene a mannes lymes, & weies of þe vrine / And þer ben summe medicyns þat makip clene a mannes blood as cassia fistula, manna,⁴ tamarindi; & al medicyns laxatiuis mowen be clepid mundificatiuis, & herof is not entencioun in þis caas /
 24 ¶ Anopir. I wole speke of medicyns mundificatif in cirurgie.⁵ & þat is propirli seid a medicyn, þat doip awei greet superfluite ouþer gret greuance⁶ of quittance, ouþer remeueþ⁷ awei harde crustis in woundis, ouþir in vlceribus, & makip clene woundis & vlcera of
 28 þat superfluite / ffor as it is seid in anopir place: In eueri wounde þat is holow, þat is as miche to seie as whanne it hap lost substance of fleisch þeron, þan bi skille⁸ þer schulde be engendrid þeron .ij. superfluites, þat oon schal be greet, & þat oþer schal be
 32 sotil. & pese wollen lette þe souding of a wounde, & þei wolen

A mundifica-
tive medicine,

may either
be taken
inwardly or
applied by a
clyster or
pessary.

[6 lf. 253]

¹ Lat.: prius locum embrocas. Matth. Sylv.: "Embroca id est infusio quam nos dicimus fomentum & embrocatio id est infusio sed quando ab alto infunditur." See p. 331, note 5.

³ Traheron, Vigo. Interpret.: "Pessarie. Pessus is woll tossed, and made rounde after the fassyon of a fynger wherewith medicines are receyued and conueyed into the matrice."

⁴ MS. manei.

⁶ Lat.: Alio modo loquimur de medicina mundificatiua in cyrurgia.

⁷ MS. remeued.

⁸ Lat. necessario.

lette þat þe fleisch mai not wexe. ¶ þan medicyn mundificatif remeueþ greet superfluite. Of drynge medicyns, we wolen speke in þe chapitre next / This maner medicyn schal go bifore regeneracioun & consolidacioun, of whiche we wollip speke hereafter; 4 þouȝ aggregatiua or conglutinatiua come sumtyme for to soude wipouten þat, þat þis medicyns ne goiþ not tofore, as whanne woundis ben sewid & ben maad hool wipouten regeneracioun of quittance. þis medicyn makip clene, & driep sumwhat, as water & hony 8 whanne vlcera virulenta beþ waischen þerwip, ouþir woundis in which agendriþ miche quittance; & sumtyme it is more strong, as
 [1 ff. 253, bk.] whanne þer beþ medlid þerwip poudris corosiuis þat han litil ¹vertu of corosiuis, & helpiþ for to make clene, & whanne corosiuis ben 12 seid for to take away yuel fleisch þat ne mai not be taken awei with medicyns /

Therefore I wole sette medicyns bi rule, & first I wole speke of medicyns þat ben simple / ffor as me seiþ .x. sipis rehersed liketh a 16 man.² ¶ Thou schalt wite þis þat woundis þat ben freisch, þer it is no nede for to engendre quittance whanne þer is noon concussioun, neiþer of nerues, ne of boon, ne prickynge, ne þer is noon akyng þerwip / þan it is no nede for to leie þerto mundificatiuis, but oonli 20 consolidatiuis / But whanne a wou[n]de is chaungid wip þe eir or enpostymed, or greet akyng, þan þou muste leie þerto maturatiuis; & whanne þe akyng & þe opere accidentis ben awei, þan þou schalt bigynne for to leie þerto mundificatiuis as it is aforseid in his 24 chapitre / This is a coold mundificatif for to make clene woundis þat ben freisch in which is good quittance. R̄, mellis rosati colati .ʒ. iij., farine subtilissime ordeī .ʒ. j., & do þerto a litil water, & seþe hem softli þat þei ne brenne not, & algate þou schalt ³meue it 28 wip a spatule, & þan make it abroad vpon a cloof, & leie it vpon

If a wound is fresh and not complicated with any contusion, apply only a consolidative medicine.

In any other case apply first a maturing and then a "mundificative" medicine.

[3 ff. 254]

Nota

R̄ þe wounde / This makip clene & comfortiþ / If it so be þat a wounde be in nerues placis, þan it is good for to do þerto a litil terbentyn waischen, whanne it is doon adoun fro þe fier / for ter- 32 bentyn schal not boile, whanne itt schal be putt into enplastris, for it wole lese his worching in þe boilyng. ¶ Anopir mundificatif þat makip clene duram matrem whanne a man is hurt in þe heed, & whanne dura mater is bicomē blac / R̄, mellis rosati 36 colati ʒ j., oliȝ ʒ ß, medle hem togidere. ¶ Anoper mundificatif

² Add. 26,106, fol. 104: "et quum medicine simplices raro ponuntur ad mundificandum, ideo ponam medicamina composita per ordinem, denumerando medicinas simplices, non curando, quoniam decies repetita placebunt."

- pat makip woundis maturatif pat ben to-swolle & ben not to bren-
 nyng^r hoot, but^r sumwhat toward cooldnes / R⁷, mellis rosati colati R⁷
 .li. fl., farine fenigreci . $\bar{3}$ ij., farine ordeⁱ . $\bar{3}$ j. ¶ Anoper mundifi-
 4 catif for vlcera pat be^r newe in enpostyms / Take $\bar{3}$ elkis of eiren R⁷
 rawe, & medle perwip whete mele as miche as wole suffise ; pis wole
 make clene & do awei pe akyng, & make pe place coold / ¶ Also
 anoper mundificatif pat wole make maturatif perwip, & is good
 8 whanne a man wole ¹kutte an enpostym tofore his tyme. & it is ^[1 lf. 254, bk.]
 a propre medicyn for to make clene antrasem & carbunculo & alle
 maner pustulis pat ben venymous aftir pe tyme pat^r pei ben opened,
 & it is good for to make clene, vlcera pat^r ben oold / R⁷ mellis albi R⁷
 12 boni .li. fl., farine subtilissime tritici . $\bar{3}$ iij, medle hem togidere in
 a panne. & whanne pei ben wel medlid, þan do þerto iuys of
 apium . $\bar{3}$ vij., & þan medle hem wel togidere vpon lent^r fier, & boile
 hem til pei bcome as it were pultes. & þan do hem adoun of pe
 16 fier & stire hem wel, & kepe hem for þin vss / If^r it so be pat^r þou
 dredist^r of a cancre or of a festre in vlceribus pat^r ben oold, & if
 þou wolt make a mundificatif perfore, þan in pe stide of apium do
 absinthium, & it wole be good. ¶ Anoper mundificatif in vlceribus
 20 pat^r ben rotid, & whanne per engendriþ per vpon greet rotyng^r / R⁷, R⁷
 mellis li .j., farine siliginis . $\bar{3}$ iij., farine fenigreci, orobi, lupinorum,
 mirre, ana $\bar{3}$ j., succi absinthij li .j., medle hem alle togidere, &
 poudre þingis pat^r schulen be poudrid, & boile hem sotilli til pei bē
 24 perfiȝtli boild ; & whanne þou doist^r hem adoun of pe fier, þan do
 þerto of terbentyn . $\bar{3}$ iij., ²& medle hem wel togidere / Alle þese ^[2 lf. 255]
 mundificatiuis schulen be maad abrood vpon a cloof of lynnen, &
 leid vpon vleus for to make it^r clene aftir pe tyme pat^r pei beþ
 28 waische, as it is aforseid in pe chapitre de vlceribus / ¶ A poudre
 pat^r is mundificatif of crustis & greet fleisch pat^r is engendrid in
 oold vlceribus, & wipoute greet violence of fretyng^r / R⁷, succi affo- R⁷
 dillorum . $\bar{3}$ vj., calcis viue . $\bar{3}$ ij., auripigmenti . $\bar{3}$ j., medle hem
 32 togidere, & sette hem in pe sunne in pe moneþe of august, & on
 nyztis do it^r out of pe eir, & in þis maner þou schalt^r do til it^r be
 drie, & make herof gobetis, & þan drie hem in pe schadowe. &
 þou schalt^r kepe hem in a vessel of tree in a place pat^r be not to
 36 drie, ne to moist. & whanne þou hast^r nede þerto, grinde oon perof,
 & leie it^r vpon pe place. ¶ Also a good mundificatif for vlcera is
 vnguentum viride, pat^r is maad of oon part of vert^r de grece, & .ij.
 partis of hony, medlid wel togidere. ¶ Also a good oynement for
 40 to make clene, vlcera pat^r ben hori, & festri, & polipum, & wickid

vlcera, & is clepid vnguentum veneris, ouþer vnguentum apostolorum. & it̃ is good for to remeue awei fleisch in vlceris / ¹R̃, cere albe, rasine albe, armoniaci ana .3. xiiij., bdellij, astrologie, olibani gummosi ana .3. vj., galbani, mirre ana .3. iiij., litargiri .3. viij., 4 opoponac, floris eris ana .3. iiij.; þe gummys schulen be maad neische in vinegre, & dissolued wiþ fier þat̃ be lent̃, & þan do þerto wex dissolued wiþ li. ij. of̃ oile in somer, & iiij. in winter. & whanne þei ben molten, do þerto þi poudris, & make þerof̃ an oynement. 8 ¶ Anoþer oynement̃ clensij wel nerues & drawiþ out̃ þe quitture, & it̃ is clepid mundificatiuum rasina² / R̃, rasine, mellis, terbentyn ana .li. ſ., mirre, sarcocolle, farine fenigreci, seminis lini ana 3 j., dissolue þe rosyn, hony & wex togidere, & þan do þerto þi poudris, 12 & make þerof̃ pultes. ¶ Also we moten vse medicyns þat̃ ben more strong̃, & ben clepid medicine cauterizantes, for to make clene vlcera þat̃ ben yuel in neruous place. & þe teching̃ herof̃ þou schalt̃ fynde in þe chapitre de medicinis facientibus opus cauterij. 16

Mundifica-
tium de
rasina.

Of medicyns regeneratiuis & consolidatiuis.

Restorative
Medicines

[³ lf. 256]

are differ-
ently named
by different
authors.

IT pinkiþ bi þe maner of̃ speche þat̃ þe medicyns þat̃ ben seid in þis chapitre ben al oon, but̃ þer is miche difference bitwixe / ffor ³of̃ summen alle þei ben clepid consolidatiuis, 20 But̃ aggregatiue & consolidatiue ben al oon / And regeneratiue, & incarnatiue, & facientes carnem nasci, ben oon to seie; & þer is greet̃ difference bitwixe hem þat̃ ben forseid & þese / And sigillatiuis, & cicatrizatiuis, & consolidatiuis ben al oon; neþeles 24 alle þese names ben not̃ propirli take of̃ alle auctouris / But̃ oon herof̃ is taken for anoþer ofte tyme / But̃ for to seie þe soþe, a medicyn þat̃ is clepid aggregatum or conglutinatum, & A. in diuers placis taketh diuersli þese names of̃ medicyns: & I suppose þat̃ it̃ 28 were for defeaute of̃ men þat̃ translatid þe science / But̃ for to seie þe soþe, aggregatiua or consolidatiua is a drie medecyne, & hap gummosite in him; & whanne it̃ is leid to þe lyme, it̃ wole resolue wiþ his drienes. It̃ drieth vp superfluite of̃ moistnes þat̃ is bitwixe 32 þe lippis of̃ a wounde, wiþ a litil ligature or sewing̃ it̃ soudiþ togidere.⁴ & A. clepiþ þis incarnatiuam, & summen clepen it̃ consolidatiuam, & ben þese / Sanguis draconis, calx, thus masculinum

Auicenn.

Auicenn.

² Lat.: mundificatiuum de rasina.

⁴ Add. 26,106, fol. 105: "superfluam siccatur humiditatem que inter duo vulneris labia, per medicum ligatura sola vel sutura conducta, reperitur."

folia pirorum, pomorum, porri, lilij cortices, palme,¹ arnaglossa, Consolidative medicines. [2 lf. 256, bk.]
 caulis, folia cipressi, folia vitis ²albe, nux recens, folia acetose, Simples.
 pulvis molendini, ordeum vstum, flos sorbe, lac acetosum, & opere

- 4 manie þat ben vnkowen for us / Sumtyme men maden grete Compound Consolidatives.
 woundis & leiden þervpon manie herbis, & weren hool in þe same
 dai; & þei camen for to take of þe same herbis, & ne miȝten noon
 fynde þat wolde do so more / **A good medicyn for þis entencioun :**
 8 Rȝ, frankencense. partem vnam, sanguis draconis partes duas, calcis
 viue partes tres, & make herof poudre; & leie ynowȝ vpon þe .ij.
 lippis of þe wounde þat is sewid togidere, as it is aforseid in þe
 chapitre of woundis. ¶ Anoþer poudre þat is good for þis enten-
 12 cioun; but in placis þat is myche fleisch aweie, it is nede for to
 leie þerto þingis to regendre fleisch, þat we wollip speke þerof soone
 heraftir. Rȝ, olibani lucidi, aloes, sanguis draconis ana, make þerof
 poudre. ¶ Anoþer comoun for to streyne blood, & for to soude
 16 woundis: Rȝ, sarcocolle partes duas, sanguis draconis, balaustie ana
 partem vnum,³ olibani lucidi partem ſ, & make herof poudre.

- ¶ Medicyns forto regendre fleisch haueþ propriete forto conpile Medicines which promote the regeneration of flesh. [4 lf. 257]
 blood, þat comeþ to þe place wiþ tempere drienes, & makip þerof
 20 ⁴fleisch, & makip clene superfluite þat wexip þeron. & þis is in
 diuers maner / ffor whi, if a lyme be woundid in þat maner þat it
 be nede for to regendre fleisch þeron, & þe place is drie, & þer is
 miche quittance in þe wounde, þan it is nede þat þou haue swiþe
 24 drijng⁵ medicyns. ¶ If þat he haue litil quittance & his bodi be
 moist, — — alle þese techingis þou hast had tofore.⁵ ¶ Medicyns Simple incarnative medicines, mild medicines,
 þat ben liȝt þat þou schalt vse þere, þat þer is litil quittance yn
 moist bodies: Rȝ, thus minutum, mastix, farina ordeï, fenigreci. Rȝ
 28 And þese beþ sumwhat more drier: aristologie, yreos, & orobum,
 aloes, mirra, pix greca, farina fabarum; & more strong⁶ þat þou
 schalt vse in bodies: astrologia, yreos, farina lupinorum, dragantum
 adustum, vitriolum adustum; for if it be brent it wole be þe lasse strong medicines.
 32 bityng, & his drienes ne schal not be alaskid. ¶ For .vij. causis
 diuers þingis ben brent: Summe ben brent, for sum vertu in hem
 schulde wexe / And summe þat þe malice þerof schulde goon awei: Nota
 as mirabolani, þat haueþ vertu of laxatif, & virtutem stipticam, for
 36 whanne it is brent his vertu laxatif is maad lasse; & his vertu þat
 is clepid stiptica, is neuer þe lasse, but it is þe more. In þe same
Substances are burnt for medical use for several reasons.
 .1.

¹ MS. *pullme*.³ *sic*.⁵ Lat. : si vero pauca fuerit sanies, & membrum & corpus fuerint humida, medicina tunc indiges minus sicca, sicut superius habuisti.

- [1f. 257, bk.] maner ¹ vitriolum lesiþ his scharpnes, & his drienens is not lost /
- .2. The .ij. is pis, þat his greet substaunce mowe be maad sutil, as
- .3. cancri *id est* crabbis þat ben brent / The .iij. cause is pis, þat it mowe gadere scharpnes, as stoonys, oistris, & schellis of eiren, þat ben 4
- .4. brent þat me mai make lyme of hem / The .iiij. is, þat it mowe be aparailid for to be grounden, as seta sericum² / & among alle medicyns þat ben for þe herte þat mowe be grounde, ben þe beste as gold & siluir³ / In pis maner þou schalt digte hem for to grinde / 8
- Seþe hem in sulfur in leed, þat þei mowe þe bettir be grounde /
- .5. The .v. cause is pis, þat þe wickidnes þerof mowe be take awei : as of scorioun þat ben brent, þat we mowe vse hem in medicyns,
- .6. þat ben for þe stoon. The .vj. cause is pis, þat his vertu mowe be 12
- maad þe more, as squillis whanne þei ben brent, her vertu wole be
- .7. þe more / The .vij. cause is pis, þat his vertu mowe be take fro him : as psillium, whanne it is brent / his vertu wole be þe lasse //
- In what maner þou schalt go fro medicyn to medicyn, þou hast it 16
- [1f. 258] pleynerli ynow; in þe first tretis, ⁴boþe simple medicyns & also compound / þe whiche þou miȝt vse as þou seest best to done / If þou wolt regendre fleisch in a deep put þat vlcus is, take poudre of thuris, whanne vlcus is⁵ maad clene, & fille ful þe hole þerof, for 20
- it wole engendre fleisch wel. ¶ In þes vertues, & it is moost competent to consolidatif medicyns.⁶ & his gummosite þat is clepid thus masculinum ouþer olibanum, & þat is best for medicyns þat is conglutinatif, þat ben forseid in þe bigynnyng of þis chapitre. & 24
- þe poudre of him, whanne it is maad smal & falliþ adoun of a sarce, is clepid minutum thuris, & þat is best to regendre fleisch.
- Bi pis maner distinccioun þou schalt gadere þe difference of þre medicyns þat ben in þis chapitre, & of summen þei ben clepid alle 28
- [consolidatiues]. ¶ The .j. þerof þat is seid conglutinatif, þat makip þe lippis of a wounde soude togidere / The .ij. it driþ &
- .1. Conglutina- makip clene, & helpip blood for to turne into fleisch / The .iij. it
- .2. Incarnatives, driþ wiþ vertu þat is clepid stiptica, þat makip hard fleisch to 32
- .3. remedies pro- arise in þe stide of skyn. ¶ This is a good medicyn for to regendre
- cicatrization. fleisch, þat is clepid litargirum nutritum, þat is norischid ⁷as it is
- [7 1f. 258, bk.]

The best incarnative medicine is thus.

One uses its bark, its gum;

it is further used as a powder, Minutum thuris

Three kinds of consolidating medicines.

.1. Conglutinatives,

.2. Incarnatives,

.3. remedies producing cicatrization.

² Lat.: sicut seta aut sericum.

³ Add. 26,106, fol. 105, bk.: quod inter medicinas cordiales fit, quod assatur ut teri possit, et aurum & argentum, que decoquantur cum sulphure . . .

⁵ is, above line.

⁶ Lat.; Et nota quod de thure tria sunt, sive cortex, & illud est siccius omnibus, & convenit plus in consolidatiuis medicinis facientibus pellem & cicatrizantibus, quas ita habebis.

aforseid in þe chapitre de vlceribus. ¶ **Anoþer poudre þat engendriþ fleisch** / Take thuris minute, masticis, fenigreci ana, fiat An incarnative powder and ointment.

puluis. þis poudre regendriþ fleisch wel & drawiþ, & nyle not
4 suffre þat vlcus schal stynke, but it makip for to haue a good
sauour. ¶ **Also an oynement þat is good for to regendre fleisch** /

R̄, litargiri nutriti ʒ .ij, puluis thuris, sarcocolle, galbani, colofonie,¹
ana ʒ .j, medle hem alle togidere, & make þerof an oynement.

8 ¶ **Anoþer poudre**, R̄, radicem malui visci, þat summen clepen²
sanaticlam,³ & sumen clepiþ it vngaria; & waische it & drie it in a
furneis in sich maner þat þou ne brenne it not. & þan grinde it &
make þerof poudre, & leie þerof a good quantite in vlceribus þat

12 ben holow / for off his owne propriete it engendriþ fleisch, boþe
bi him-silf & also whanne it is medlid wiþ opere þingis / **Also**
take of þe forseid poudre ʒ .j, of thus þat be smal ʒ ʒ, vernicis,⁴
aloes, sarcocolle, masticis, fenigreci ana ʒ .ij, medle hem wiþ þe

16 þingis aforseid, & þou miȝt make þerof an oynement wiþ oile &
wex; & do ʒ .j. of þe poudre in ʒ .iiij. of oile, & ʒ ʒ. of wex.

⁵ And þis þou schalt knowe, þat þere þou puttist poudris, þou
schalt putte none oynementis for to regendre fleisch / But whanne

20 poudre ne mai not come þerto to þe botme þerof, þan þou muste
leie þeron oynementis, for þe moisture of þe oile makip þe poudre
peerse to þe botme. ¶ **Also þis oynement is good, for it drawiþ**
out quittance / R̄, olij li. ʒ, resine ʒ .j, cere ʒ .ʒ, minute thuris,

24 fenigreci ana ʒ .ʒ, make herof an oynement & cole it. ¶ **Also**
anoþer oynement þat is good for þis entencioun. R̄, consolide
majoris & minoris, cinoglosse, pilocelle,⁶ plantaginis maioris & mi-
noris, ana. ʒ .j, vermes terrestres longos, qui dicuntur lumbrici,

28 li. ʒ; kutte alle þes smale,⁷ & leie hem in li. j & ʒ. of oile of oliue,
& lete hem ligge þere .viij. daies, & þan boile hem a litil & þan cole
hem, & do þerto schepis talow maad elene id est molten & colid,
picis naualis li. ʒ, picis grece ʒ .iiij, armoniaci, galbanum, opoponaci,

32 terbentine, masticis communis minuti, ana ʒ .ʒ. In þis maner

¹ colofonie, see *Alphita*, p. 42.

² clepen, above line.

³ sanaticla. See Wr. Wül., 554, 8: "Saniculum, i. sanicle, i. wudem-
merch." *Minsheu* quotes the following proverb: "Celuy qui sanicle a, de
Mire affaire il n'a. Et qui a du bugle & du sanicle, fait au chirurgien la
nique. He that hath Sanicle, respects not the Poticarie, and he that hath
Sanicle and Cumfrie, makes a iest of the Surgeon."

⁴ Halle, *Table*, p. 134: "Out of the Iuniper tree sweateth certeine teares,
in the spring tyme chiefly and therefore called *Vernix*, quasi Vernus ros."

⁶ Lat. pilosella. See Wr. Wül., p. 556, 18.

⁷ MS. *pesmale*.

R⁷ þou schalt make hem : Take armoniaci, galbanum, opoponaci, & dissolue hem in vinegre, & aftirward dis¹solue hem in caziola.² & whanne þei ben dissolued, do þerto oile, wex & pich, & þan do þerto alle þe opere þat¹ ben maad to poudre, & þan cole hem & kepe 4 hem for þin vss. ¶ If þou leist¹ þis oynement¹ in þe botme of a wounde, it¹ wole drawe out þe quittance & aswage þe akyng, & it¹ wole make clene & regendre fleisch in vlcera. ¶ This þou muste knowe, þat¹ þou; I sette proporcioun of poudris, & oile, & wex, 8 neþeles þou schalt¹ proporcioun þi þingis more or lasse as þou seest¹ þat¹ þou hast¹ nede þerto. ¶ If a wounde haue miche quittance, & be in a drie place, þan þou schalt¹ do þerto þe more poudre, & þe lasse oile & wex / If it¹ so be þat¹ a wounde be in a moist¹ place, 12 þan þou schalt¹ do þerto þe lasse of þe poudre, & more of þe oile & of þe wex, as it¹ is aforseid. ¶ Medicina consolidatiua, cicatrizatiua, & sigillatiua ben al oon ; & þat¹ ben medicyns þat¹ driep þe moisture of a wounde, & makip a rynde aboue vpon þe fleisch, & makip a 16 strong¹ keueryng¹ for³ to defende þe fleisch fro harm / And A. seiþ, þat¹ in vlcera þat¹ is holow, þat¹ pere⁴ ne schal neuere be no skyn engendrid þeron, for þe skyn in a man is engendrid of þe spermis of þe fadir & of þe modir / And alle þe partijs of a man þat¹ ben 20 engendrid oonli of sperme, & þei be kutt¹ awei, þei schulen neuere wexe azen / And alle þese þingis in a man ben engendrid oonli of sperme, as a mannes skyn, & boonys & senewis ; & þerfor & þer be ony gobet¹ kutt¹ awei of þese, þei ne mowe neuere be regendrid 24 azen, as .A. seiþ, & it¹ is soop / But in þis caas medicynes mowe helpe for to engendre hard fleisch aboue, & schal be in þe place of skyn, vpon which place nyle neuer wexe here afterward⁵ / ¶ Simple medicyns þat¹ ben in þis caas makyng¹ skyn vpon a soor þat¹ is 28 clene / **Cortices** arboris, pini, cortices thuris, centaurea combusta, ossa combusta, abrotanum combustum, balaustie, galle, cipressi, psidie, cucurma, rubea maioris combusta, lumbrici terrestres adusti, cathinia argenti & auri, alumen sissum, folia fici, stercus canis 32 comedentis ossa siccatum,⁶ aristologia longa & rotunda combuste, es vstum lauatum, & ius medicina⁷ / ⁸ Sumtyme we medlide medicyns

The physician has to use his own discretion as to the doses.

Remedies which produce cicatrization.

Auicenn
[¹ lf. 260]

Skin which has been destroyed cannot be reproduced.

Auicenn
It may be replaced by a hard substance.

Simple medicines.

² Matth. Sylv. : "*Cazola* est quoddam vas." See Ital. cazzuola. *Tomm. Dict.* ³ MS. *fro*.

⁵ Lat. : "medicina ista namque adiuuat, vt nascatur caro calosa dura, que est loco cutis, super quam non nascitur pilus."

⁶ MS. *sucatum*.

⁷ Lat. : "et omnis (abbr. *ois*) medicina, que fit in duabus actiuis propter temperamentum."

- conglutinas wiþ a fewe corrosiuis, þat schulen be seid in þe nexte chapitre here aftir / But for to medle medicyns in þis maner, þer mote be miche kunnyng for to proporcioun hem, & summe þerof
- 4 þou muste haue bi experience, & summe of þe knowing of þe mannes complexioun, boþe of his bodi & also of his lyme / Of þe forseid simple medicyns þou miȝt vse hem in powdre, & if þou wolt þou miȝt make oynementis of hem, as it is aforseid / But þe oile
- 8 þat þou wolt make þese oynementis wiþ, schal algate be stipticum, as *oleum rosaceum* & *mirtinum*. ¶ A good composicioun þat þou schalt vse in somer in woundis & in vlceribus þat ben hote, & in euery place þere þe skyn is aweie in a mannes bodi, of riding, eipir
- 12 of pustulis, or of fier, or off hoot watir, & it is clepid vnguentum Rasis, þat is maad in þis maner: R̄, olij ro. ʒ iiij, cere ʒ ʒ, in þese regiouns þat ben hoot &¹ in somer ʒ .ij, & aftir þe regioun þou schalt do þerto dyuers quantite of wex, ceruse ʒ .j, camphore ʒ .j,
- 16 þe whitis of ij. eggis. þou schalt make it in þis maner / first þou schalt grinde .ij. almaun²dis blaunchid & stampid in a mortar, & þan do out þe almaundis þat ben to-broke of þe mortar, & make clene þe mortar; & þan leie þeron camphore, & grinde it smal; & þan do þerto ceruse, & grinde it smal; & þan do þerto oile, & grinde hem wel togidere wiþ þe pestel. & whanne it is almoost coold, þan do þerto .ij. whitis of eiren, & meue hem wiþ a selise longe, for þe more þat þei ben stirid togidere þe bettir it wole be /
- 24 Summen doon þerto ceruse wiþ þe forseid quantite of oile & wex, and camphore & whitis of eiren ʒ .v, litargiri ʒ .iiij. & þis is a good consolidatif, but it makþ coold. & if þou wolt do þerto litarge, do more or lasse as þou seest þat it is to done // ¶ This is a
- 28 good poudre for þis entencioun / R̄, aloes, *balaustiarum*, *cathinie argenti*, eris vsti triti,³ & lauati partes equales; make herof sutil poudre, & herof leie vpon þe place þere þou wolt haue þe skyn. ¶ Anoper poudre þat is more strong þan þis / R̄, aloes,
- 32 cucurmie, *vermium terrestrium combustorum*, *balaustiarum*, *mirre*, *gallarum*. ¶ A good oynement / R̄, *fecem argenti* ʒ .xxx, *merdam ferri*, *cymolie ana* ʒ .vij & ʒ, *cathinie argenti*, ceruse, litargiri, *plumbi vsti ana* ʒ .v, *argille rubie* ʒ .x; medle hem alle
- 36 wiþ oile of ro., & make an oynement, & it is clepid vnguentum de palma. ¶ Also anoper þat G. made, þat wole soude vlcera þat ben oold & yuel for to hele / R̄, *adipis porci antiqui sine sale id est freisch swynys grese molten*, & colid þoruȝ a cloop / olij li. j & ʒ,

Compound medicines.

An ointment to be used in hot countries and in summer.

vng^m Rasis

R̄

Direction how to make it.

[2 lf. 261]

Two powders.

R̄

R̄

R̄

[4 lf. 261, bk.]

Consolidating ointment prescribed by Galien.

R̄

¹ MS. om. &.³ MS. certis.

- litargiri li. ß, calamenti¹ 3 .iiij; make it in þis maner: grinde
 R7 litargirum & calamentum in a morter, & do þerto a litil & a litil of
 oile & grese, molten togidere / ¶ Also: R7, spatulam id est quæ fit de
 palma viridi, & þe middil þerof^t aboue kutt^t smal to gobetis, & do it^t 4
 in þi medicyn, & wiþ þe half^t of þe opere medicyns medle þis
 medicyn; þis is good for to regendre & soude togidere. ¶ Anopir
 medicyn þat is good for to regendre fleisch & make clene &
 soude, & is clepid medicamen Iohannis Mesue, þat is maad in 8
 R7 þis maner / R7, pistatiue & resine,² panni albi vetusti 3 .j, opopo-
 nacum 3 .ij, vini, mellis, olij ro. vel mirtini 3 .x, litargiri, aloes,
 sarcocolle, mirre, ana 3 .ñ, make herof^t an oynement^t; þis wole
 [3 lf. 262] regendre & hele woundis þat^t ben³ wickid & yuel for to hele, & þis 12
 medicyn is as good as þat^t, þat^t is sett^t in þe chapitre de vlceribus
 virulentis; þis makij clene, & driep & regendrij fleisch, þerfore
 ioyne þat^t & þis togidere. ¶ Also an oynement þat Maister
 R7 william someris⁴ made / R7, rasinam albam & liquefactam in vino 16
 acerimo, & cole þe wijn & þe rosyn togidere into coold watir, &
 anoynte þin hondis, & tempere it^t wel in þin hondis, & kepe it^t, &
 if^t it^t be in somer do þerto half^t so miche of whit^t wax; make þis
 abroad vpon a lynnen cloop, & leie it^t vpon þe wounde, & þis wole 20
 R7 drie wel. ¶ Item: R7, olij ro. 3 .iiij, rasine 3 .ij, cere 3 .j, nucis
 cipseissi, cucurmie ana 3 .j, make herof^t a gobet^t & kepe it^t; þis
 is more worþ þan apostolicon Nicholai. ¶ The maner of worching^t
 of þese medicyns, þat^t of summen ben clepid consolidatiuis, schal 24
 be do in þis maner / The firste dai þat^t a wounde is maad, & þou
 hast^t brouzt^t þe lippis of þe wounde togidere with sewinge oupir wiþ
 sum oper maner, þan leie þerto of þe firste medicyn, þat^t is clepid
 conglutinatif^t, vpon þe place þat^t is sewid, & leie þerof^t ynow³; & 28
 [5 lf. 262, bk.] þan þervpon leie a lynnen cloop⁵ wet^t in whitis of eiren, & þan leie
 þerto defensiuis & opere necessarijs til þe lippis of þe wounde be
 soudid togidere faste. ¶ The .ij. medicyn, þat^t is clepid regenera-
 tium, þat^t schal be leid in vlceribus & in depe woundis, for to 32
 regendre fleisch. ¶ At þe laste þou schalt^t leie consolidatiuis, or þe
 fleisch wexe to hize; & but^t if^t þou do þus, þou muste leie corosiuis
 for to frete awei þat^t fleisch þat^t is woxe to hize, & þat^t is double
 traueile & also vnkunnyng^t of þe leche. ¶ Thou muste knowe wel 36

A regenera-
 tive ointment
 prescribed
 by Johannes
 Mesue.

Ointment of
 resin.

Direction for
 the applica-
 tion of con-
 solidative and
 regenerative
 medicines.

¹ *calamentum*, a mistake for *calcantum*. Phillips: "Calcanth a Chymical word, being the same as Vitriol."

² Lat.: rasure vel pistature.

⁴ I cannot find a physician of this name. Perhaps it is *Gulielmo Corvi*, author of the *Tractica*, who was a friend of Lanfranc. *Hæser* I, p. 710.

where & whanne þou schalt vse þese medicyns, & in þis maner þou schalt folowe þe riȝt rule of medicyns, & þan þi medicyns wolip worche as þei schulde /

¶ Of medicyns cauteratiuis & corrosiuis /

COROSIUIS & cauterizatiuis we vsip in cirurgie in manie causis, & of corosiuis summe ben feble, & summe ben strong, & summe beþ more stronger / These ben feble, hermodactilis, aristologia, brionia, gencina,¹ vitriolum adustum, & þese haueþ moost vertu in moist bodies. ¶ More strong ben þes: vitriolum not combustum, tapsia, pees milui,² apium rampnum,⁴ cortex viticelle⁵ / And þese ben more strong: flos eris, viride eris, es vstum, arsenicum, sulphur. ¶ Also þese ben more strong: calx viua maad of stoonis, & of schellis of eiren & oistris, & strong lye, & arsenicum sublimatum, & watir maad of þese pingis; & of þese medicyns þou miȝt make medicyns boþe simple & compound, whiche þou miȝt vse whanne þou wolt take awei deed fleisch, more strong & lasse strong as þou seest þat it is nede þerto. ¶ Of medicyns þat ben compound I wole telle þee a fewe, for of simple medicyns þou miȝt compound manie. ¶ A poudre þat wipouten ony greuance & liȝtli fretiþ awei deed fleisch / Rȝ, viride eris, hermodactulorum, aristologia rotunda, make þerof poudre & kepe it in a drie place, & whanne þou wolt do awei deed fleisch / Take lynet eiper linnen cloþ, & wete it with þi spotil & leie it in þe poudre, & turne it vp & down, & leie it vpon þe place. ¶ Thou schalt attende superfluite of fleisch⁶ in .ij. maners / In oon maner superfluite of fleisch as of clene fleisch þat wexiþ tofore aboue a wounde, & þis is clepid superfluite of good fleisch / In an oþer maner we clepiþ superfluite of fleisch þat is medlid wip quittance, & is liquide, & þis comeþ in defaute of þe leche, whanne he leiþ regeneratiuis to a wounde ouþir to ony ping til it be perfitli clene, so þat þe newe fleisch & þe quittance wexiþ forþwip / In þe firste cause is noon nede of oþer medicyn, but a simple corosif⁸ þat fretiþ wipouten violence awei þe fleisch þat is woxen to hiȝ aboue þe wounde. ¶ In þe .ij. cause it is necessarie for to haue a medicyn corosif & clensynge as it is

Simple
caustics.

Mild caustics.

Strong
caustics.
[³ lf. 263]

Compound
caustics.

Rȝ

Innocent ex-
crescences.

[⁷ lf. 263, bk.]

Malignant
excrescences.

Each requires
its own treat-
ment.

¹ Lat.: gentiana.

² MS. *vulpi*. Pes milui "crow-foot."

⁴ *Alphita*, p. 11: "*Apium ranarum* siue *apium rampnum* crescit in pratis . . ." See *rampinus*. uncus.—Dufr.

⁵ Wr. Wül., 138, 28: "Viticella, wipwinde."

⁶ *fleisch* in margin.

⁸ MS. *corosif*.

A corrosive
powder of
caustic lime
and arsenic.

R̄

aforseid in þe chapitre off mundificatiuis. ¶ Anopir good poudre þat remeueþ awei superfluite of fleisch & rotid fleisch & crustons¹ / R̄, calcis viue ʒ. ij., arsenici ʒ. ij., succi affodillorum radicis ʒ. vj., medle hem togidere & make þerof gobetis & kepe hem & drie hem in schadowe & kepe hem in a drie place, for in a moist place it wole rotie anoon. & whanne þou hast nede for to vse ony herof, þan make þerof poudre & leie it vpon þe place. ¶ Also an oynement þat is clepid vnguentum viride & is a list corrosif, & makip² superfluite of rotid fleisch & is maad in pis maner. R̄, mellis partes .ij., viride eris partem vnam, & medle hem togidere.

vng^m viride
[² If. 264]

R̄

An ointment
to cleanse
ulcers.

R̄

¶ Also anoper vnguentum viride þat makip clene & regendrip good fleisch in vlceribus þat ben olde, & fretip awei wickid fleisch wipouten violence / R̄, celidoyne radicis, alleluya,³ folia centrum⁴ galli, leuistici agrestis, scabiose, ana ʒ. j., grynde wel alle þese herbis togidere wip .li. j. of schepis talowe & .li. j. of oile, medle hem togidere, & lete hem ligge .x. daies & rotie, & þan do 16 hem to seþing on þe fier til þe herbis falle to þe botme, & þan cole hem, & do þerto wex, terbentyne, ana ʒ. ij., colosonie ʒ. j., masticis, olibani, ana ʒ. ʒ., viridis eris ʒ. j. þat schal be do in in þe ende of þe hoilyng, & medle hem wel togidere, & make þerof an oynement. 20

An ointment
to be applied
R̄
on fistulous
and cancer-
ous sores.

R̄

¶ If þou wolt make a stronger medicyn for to slee a festre & a cancre / R̄, vitri albi combusti, sulphuris viui, viridis eris, galle, attramenti, vitriole viridis, ana ʒ. ʒ., auripigmenti foliati ʒ. ij., make herof poudre, & distempere hem wip strong vinegre & lacte 24 anabulle⁵ til it be as picke as it were hony, & sette it to þe sunne

[⁵ If. 264, bk.]

in somer, & lete it drie. & if it be in wintir þou miȝt drie it wip lent fier, and whanne it is drie poudre it aȝen, & tempere wip þe forseid licour, & þan drie it aȝen, & þus þou schalt do .iiij. siȝis ouȝir 28 .iiij. & þan make poudre þerof & kepe it in a drie place. ¶ Anoper poudre þat driep a cancre & a festre, & remeueþ superfluite of fleisch / R̄, radices brionie ʒ. v., tapcie, laureole, esule, ana ʒ. ij., ciclaminis, yreos, aristolochie, longe & rotunde, hermodactulorum, 32 affodillorum radicis ʒ. j., & herbarum celidonie, leuistice agrestis, buglosse, summitates oliuarum, & mirte ana ʒ. j., tempere þe herbis & þe rotis in vinegre bi .iiij. daies, & þan seþe hem & cole hem, & take þat licour þat comeþ þerof, & seþe it & caste þeron quik lyme 36

A corrosive
powder.

R̄

¹ crustons, O.Fr. *crouston*.

³ *Sin. Bart.*, p. 10: "Alleluia. i. *nodesour*."

⁴ *Alphita*, p. 38: "*Centrum galli gallitricum* . . . *nux muscata*." Wild Sage, Cancerweed.

⁵ *Matth. Sylv.*: "Anabulla est species titimalli." Compare *Alphita*, p. 9.

- poudrid sotilli li. j., & medle hem wel togidere, & at þe laste do þerto auripigmenti ʒ. iij., & medle hem wel togidere, & make þerof gobetis & kepe hem in a drie place, & whanne þou hast nede þerto, 4 grynde oon þerof, & leie þe poudre þerof vpon þe place þat þou wolt haue frete. ¶ **Anopir poudre of þe same kynde.** Rʒ, arsenici rubri & citrini, calcis viue, aluminis¹ de pluma, gallarum nouarum ana, grynde hem with vinegre² & medle hem & drie hem, & kepe hem [2 lf. 265]
- 8 as it is aforseid / ¶ A strong³ medicyn þat is as strong⁴ as oni fier, & vnquenta ruptoria þat mortifieþ quyk fleisch & etip it, & oon herof is riȝtt strong⁴ & is a poudre maad bi sublimacioun. Rʒ, limature ferri, vitrioli viridis, alumen iamini, antymonij ana ʒ. ij. salis armoniaci, 12 arsenici citrini, sulphuris viui³ extincti cum saliuā, & tempere hem wiþ vinegre, ouþir wiþ watir, ouþir wiþ strong⁴ lye, & þe lie wole be þe bettir if it be maad wiþ bene scelis, & þan drie it & putte it in alutel⁴ & sublime it / This is þe maner of sublimacioun / loke þou 16 haue a strong⁴ vessel maad of glas þat it mowe dure in þe fier, ouþir a vessel of erpe wel glased wiþinne, & loke þat þe couerle þerof & þe bodi be wel closyng, & do þerin þi poudre, & lute it wiþ good lute, & sette it in a furneis & make liȝt fier half adai, & þan 20 do out thi fier, & whanne it is coold opene it, & þat, þat leueþ in þe botme of þe vessel caste it out, & þat, þat cleueþ faste to þe couerle aboue, take it & kepe it, & if þou wolt worche þerwiþ þou muste worche ful quentliche, for it wole⁵ brenne as strongli as fier, [5 lf. 265, bk.]
- 24 & wole make impressioun in depnes þan fier. þis poudre wole cor- rumpe & brenne þe place þat it is leid vpon, & þe same doiþ realgar sublimed, & if þow wolt ouercome þe wickidnes of it, make poudre of it & distempere it wiþ þe iuys of lactuce & plaunteyn til it be 28 in pickenesse of hony, & þan drie it, & þus þou schalt do manye tymes / & in þis maner þou schalt take awei greet malice, & it wole worche neuer þe worse. ¶ Also an oynement ruptorie for to breke fleisch þat is hool & maketh blak & brenneþ it, & wole make it 32 falle awei, & þan þer wole leue þere vlcus. Manie men vsip þis in diuers maner, for to opene an enpostym, & for to do awei superfluite of fleisch. Rʒ, quik lyme as miche as þou wolt, & resolue it in Rʒ

Nota bene.
Escharotics,
medicines as
strong as fire.

Rʒ
A corrosive
sublimate.

Nota
The process
of sublima-
tion.



A burning
ointment
made of
quick-lime.

¹ Halle Table, p. 9. *Alumen de pluma* = *Alumen Liquidum*.

³ a caret is placed here and this added later, but does not follow on:—
flos eris ana ʒ j f̄
calsis viue G ʒ
argenti viu. ʒ j. [in margin.]

⁴ Castelli: "*Aludel* vel *Alutel* vocatur Vitrum sublimatorium." Arab. al-outhal (*Devic. Dict.*). A vessel used in sublimation.

strong^r lie þat^r is aforseid, and make þerof^r þe maner of an oyne-
ment^r, & whanne it^r is maad, al freisch leie it^r þerto, for þe more
freisch þat^r it^r is þe bettir it^r is / In þis maner þou schalt^r make þe
lie / ffile a vessel ful of askis of bene scelis, & þe .iiij. part^r of quik^r 4
lyme, & poudre hem alle togidere & leie hem in ¹a vessel & presse
hem þat^r þei bicomē fast^r togidere, & make a put^r in þe middil aboue,
in þe same put^r caste hoot^r watir seþing^r, & þis vessel schal be
holowe þat^r þe lie mowe passe þoru^r. & vndir þis vessel sette anopir 8
vessel for to resseyue þe lie. ¶ Also anopir good ruptorie / R^r,
calcis viue, partem vnam, arsenici, partem .ñ., poudre hem & medle
hem wip sope & hony, & summen doiþ þerto li .ñ. of tartre / Also
mel anacardi is swiþe strong^r for to make vlcera. & if^r it be do to 12
opere medicyns it^r worchþ þe more strongli / In þis maner þou
schalt^r do / whanne þou ne miȝt^r fynde mel anacardi, þan grinde
anacardos greet^r & leie hem in vinegre adai & anyȝt^r, & þan boile
hem wel, & þan presse out^r þe licour þerof^r, & þat^r, þat^r goiþ out^r 16
þerof^r is a medicyn þat^r wole make vlcera. / Oupir take anacardos &
seþe hem in hoot^r tenacis þat^r smiþis vsen, & streyne hem, & þer
wole distille þerof^r hony. ¶ Also take þe wombis of cantarides &
grinde hem wip leueyne & leie hem in what^r place þou wolt^r & it^r 20
wole make vlcera / But herof^r þou muste be war þat^r in what^r place
þou settist^r cantarides þer ²wole come greet^r brennyngē of vrine, &
sumtyme it^r makþ so greet^r brennyng^r þat^r a mannes vrine is stoppid
þerwip. & þe cure þerof^r is þis / Seþe malue, paritorie, violet^r, watir- 24
cressen in watir, & lete þe patient sitte þeron anoon to þe nauele, &
herwip þe akyng^r schal be taken awei, & also he schal make vrine
liȝtlich / & herof^r þou schalt^r take hede, þat^r in what^r place of
a mannes bodi þou makist^r a cauterie, anoon þeraftir þou schalt^r leie 28
a mitigatif^r þat^r schal make þe cruste falle awei þat^r was brent^r, & þou
ne schalt^r in no maner take awei þe cruste wip violence, but^r þou
schalt^r leie þerto a mitigatif^r, & lete þe cruste falle awei liȝtli.
¶ Medicyns þat^r wolen make þe cruste falle awei, & do awei þe 32
aking^r, ben þese: ȝelkis of eiren wip oile of rosis, þat^r is þe beste
of alle medicyns / Also, take þe leeuēs & grinde wip grese, ouper
wip buttir & leie þervpon / Also grese oupir buttir is good þer-
fore. ¶ Also pultes maad of mele, oile & watir, ben good þer- 36
fore & accessiþ wel þe akyngē & makþ þe crustis falle. ¶ Also
wip þe cauterie of an hoot^r iren þou miȝt^r ³do awei deed fleisch,
oupir wip oon of þe medicyns þat^r ben forseid. ¶ Also if^r þou wolt^r

³ MS. *do awei*, twice, the second one marked for erasure.

R^r
A caustic
ointment
made of
quick-lime
and arsenic.

Cantarides.

[² lf. 266, bk.]

The applica-
tion of can-
tharides
excites
strangury.
dubium

Treatment.

[³ lf. 267]

vse medicyns for to make cauterijs, þou muste take kepe of þis
 caas / In feble men & in a litil cause þou muste vse feble medicyns,
 & þou muste be war þat þou brenne no nerue ne no greet veyne ne
 4 noon arterie wiþ þi canterie, ne wiþ þi medicyns þat makij cauterijs.
 ¶ Also in a strong^t man & in a boistous man, þou miȝt worche at
 oonys þat þou muste worche at manye tymes in a feble man / ffor
 in euery medicyns þat a leche doiþ he schal take kepe of the
 8 strenkþe & of þe vertu of þe pacient //

Nerves and
 great blood-
 vessels
 must not be
 cauterized.

Use caustics
 according to
 the patient's
 strength.

Of mollificatif medicyns or softenyng.

WE vsij þese medicyns þat ben .iiij. in eueri cause.¹ Oon cause
 is þis, whanne þe mater þat þou wolt resolue is swiþe hard,
 12 for þan oonli wiþ. resolutiuis as it is aforseid þe sotil mater wole
 resolue, & þat opir part wole bicom hard, & þan þou muste make
 mollificatiuis. ¶ The .ij. cause is þis, whanne ony lyme is to-broke
 oupir out of þe ioyncte, þouȝ it be broȝt² yn aȝen, þe place wole be
 16 hard, & þe patient mai not meue þerwiþ, þan þou muste do³ þerto
 mollificatiuis til þe lyme be bettere as it is aforseid. ¶ The .iiij.
 cause is þis, whanne ony lyme þat haþ ben out of ioynct longe
 tyme, þan þou muste make þingis forto make þe place moist aȝen,
 20 þat þe boon mowe come into his ioynt aȝen. ¶ The .iiij. cause is,
 whanne a lyme is corrupt & is yuel ioyned, & makij al þe lyme foul,
 as whanne a boon is to-broken & is not ioyned, þan þou muste breke
 þe boon aȝen, & bringe it into his propre place as it schulde be /
 24 In alle þese causis we mote vse medicyns þat ben mollificatiuis, as
 ben þese: camomille, mellilotum, fenigreci, semen lini, & almaner
 fatnes, & marowe, & manie gummis, & euery medicyn þat is hoot
 & moist wole make a lyme mollificatif / **A good composicioun for**
 28 **þe firste cause** / Take oold oile .iiij. partis, wex partem .j., & make
 þerof an oynement, and anynte þerwiþ a lyme þat þou wolt resolue
 þe mater þat is þeron / ffor it wole make þe mater mollificatif, &
 make þe poris⁴ open to resolucioun // **Anoper þat is more strong^t** /
 32 R̄, radicis malua visci ̄.j., & kutte it to smale gobetis, & putte
 hem in a morter wiþ ̄.iiij. of oile of lilie. & þou schalt sett þis
 vessel of glas in hoot boilyng watir, & pere it schal stonde til þe
 36 place, & leie þervpon lanam succidam id est wolle vnwaischen. & þis

.1.
 Emollients
 are used
 if other medi-
 cines prove
 insufficient,
 to relieve ten-
 sion ensuing

.2.
 the fracture
 [2 lf. 267, bk.]

.3.
 or dislocation
 of a limb,

.4.
 and if re-
 breaking
 becomes
 necessary.

An ointment
 of oil and
 wax.

R̄

[4 lf. 263]

A stronger
 emollient.

R̄

¹ Lat. : Mollificatiuis vtimur medicinis in quatuor casibus.

³ do, above line.

Directions
for fomenta-
tion.

pou schalt' wite, þat' whanne pou wolt' make þese oynementis, first pou shalt' make a fomentacioun wiþ hoot' watir til þe place bicomē reed. & if' þe place be swithe hard, þan take a stoon þat' is clepid lapis molaris, & make him hoot' in þe fier, ouþir a greet' gobet' of' 4 iren, & do it' in strong' vinegre. & þe place of' a mannes lyme þat' is hard, holde ouer þe fume þat' comē out' of' þe vinegre, & þan anoynte him aftirward / þis is þe maner for to make a lyme mollifi-

1. catif, & þer ben .iiij. maners.¹ þe .j. maner is þis : pou schalt' make 8 a decoccioun of' flouris of' camomille, mellilote, fenigrec, semen lini,

[² If. 268, bk.]

& rootis of' malua visci, soden in water. & pou schalt' ²make a fomentacioun to þe lyme in þis watir longe tyme, & frote þe lyme softli. & þan anoynte þe lyme wiþ oon of' þese oynementis / R̄, 12 auxungie porci antique sine sale 3 .iiij, pinguedinis anseris, anatis & galline ana 3 .j., melte hem alle togidere & cole hem, & do þerto 3 .j. of' wex. þis wole make mollificatif, & restore moistnes. & if' pou wolt' make it' for to be good for drienes of' a mannes brest, & 16 good for men þat' ben etik, do þerto 3 .j. of' clene dragaganti, & þan it' wole be a good oynement' restoratif. ¶ Anopir oynement.

An ointment
to be applied
on consump-
tive people.

R̄, adipis porci antique sine sale 3 .iiij., fecis olij de semine lini, bdellij ana 3 .ij., storacis, calamite, galbani, oppopanacis, armoniaci, 20 ana 3 .j. putte þe gummys in wijn for to tempere, & whanne þei ben temperid, putte hem in a morter, & stampe hem wel, melte þe remenaunt, & do hem togidere, & medle hem togidere. ¶ Also an

R̄ oynement' mollificatif & comfortij / R̄, auxungie porci 3 .iiij., 24 pinguedinis anseris, anatis, galline, ana 3 .j. olis communis antiqui 3 .iiij. farine fenigreci, seminis lini, ana 3 .j., bdellij, oppopanacis,

[³ If. 269]

masticis, thuris 3 .ñ., tempere þe gummis ³in wijn, & þan aftirward medle hem wiþ grese, wex, & oile, & melte hem alle togidere & cole 28 hem. & of' þese þingis þat' schulen be grounde make poudre þerof, & medle it' þerwiþ & kepe it' for þin vss. & whanne pou hast' maad a stuwe as it' is aforseid ouþir a fomentacioun, þan anoynte him bi þe fier, & þis is clepid vnguentum Rasis. & I it' haue ofte preued euer- 32 more goddis grace goinge tofore wiþout' which grace is no þing' ful- endid ne no sijknes do awe / But' eueri good ende & eueri good dede al it' comē of' þe miȝt' of' god / And þe help of' god I bad in þe firste bigynnyng' of' þe book / ffor of' goddis grace I am þat' I am, 36 & goddis grace was neuere voide in me / And þe ende of' þis book was fulfillid þe noumbre of' 3eeris from goddis beyng' .M.CC. nona- gesimo sexto. & god of' his swete grace ne wernede me not' to make

vngm
Ras'is

God has
helped me
throughout
my work,
and this book
has been
finished in
1296.

¹ Lat. : modus autem mollificandi membra in 2°, 3° & 4° casu est unus.

an ende of þis book. & ful ofte I haue bede goddis grace þerto /
 wherfore god haþ grauntid, & god for his blessid name blesse þis <sup>God may
bless this</sup>
 book & alle werkis þat ben wrouȝt in his name / ^[1 lf. 269, bk.] ^{And god for his}
 4 miche grace lete hem wel worche þat takip þis werk on honde, & <sup>book and
those who
use it.</sup>
 bringe errouis out of her herte, & bringe hem & us to a good
 ende / To þe worschip of his blessid name & profit of his ser-
 uauntis, & me to forȝeuenes of my synnes, god it graunte et imperat
 8 per omnia secula seculorum AmeN.

Explicit.

Here endip þe book of lankfrank.²

² In red ink, but nearly erased.

Here bigynneþ a table of þe chapitris of þe book of
lankfrank //

[leaf 270]

The firste book conteyneþ .xv. chapitris /

- 4 The .i. c°. is maad of alle vniuersal woundis & vlcers [p. 31]
 The .ij. c°. is of woundis maad in þe fleisch / [p. 33]
 The .iiij. c°. is of woundis maad in senewis / [p. 39]
 The .iiij. c°. is of woundis maad in boonys / [p. 47]
 8 The .v. c°. is of woundis maad with strokis or kuttinge / [p. 50]
 The .vj. c°. is of woundis with postyms, & yuel discrasiam / [p. 54]
 The .vij. c°. of woundis maad of arauidschyngt hound, or opir
 venymous beest / [p. 59]
 12 The .viij. c°. is of curis of woundis which folowip brekyngt of
 boonys / [p. 62]
 The .ix. c°. is of flux of blood of woundis / [p. 64]
 The .x. c°. is of dietyngt of woundid men / [p. 72]
 16 The .xj. c°. is of vlcers / [p. 77]
 The .xij. c°. is of fistulis / [p. 89]
 The .xiiij. c°. is of cancris / [p. 92]
 The .xiiij. c°. is of causis & lettyngis of sowdyng of woundis &
 20 vlcers / [p. 97]
 The .xv. c°. is of spasmus aboue comynge on woundis // [p. 99]

The .ij. book conteyneþ vndir o summe .x. c°.

- The .i. c°. is of woundis of þe heed, & his anothamia / [p. 106]
 24 The .ij. c°. of curis of woundis in þe face & of membris þat ben [leaf 270, bk.]
 conteyned in hem / [p. 141]
 The .iiij. c°. is of woundis in þe neeke, and of anothamia [p. 145]
 The .iiij. c°. is of woundis of þe splet boonys of þe arme & of þe
 28 hondis, & anothami / [p. 155]
 The .v. c°. is of woundis in thoracis & membris conteyned in
 hem / [p. 161]

- The .vj. c°. is of curis of woundis of þe spine ouþir spondilium. [p. 166]
 The .viij. c°. is of woundis of þe stomac & entrailis & wombe, & anothamia / [p. 167] 4
 The .viij. c°. is of woundis of þe lyuere, splen, reynes, & þe bladdre & anothamie / [p. 171]
 The .ix. c°. is of woundis of þe 3erde and placis aboute it [p. 173]
 The .x. c°. is of woundis of þe haunche & grynde & feet, & 8 anothamie / [p. 176]

The .iiij. book conteyneþ .viij. chapitris /

- The .i. c°. is of makynge of fair heer / [p. 178]
 The .ij. c°. is of lesynge of heer, or calowþnes or allopuce [p. 180] 12
 The .iiij. c°. is of smale pusches and scalis and crustis / [p. 188]
 [leaf 271] The .iiij. c°. is of cloþ and fraclis, & gowte roset & 3olowisch / [p. 189]
 The .v. c°. is of smirþynge, scabbe, & icche / [p. 191] 16
 The .vj. c°. is of þe morphu & impetigine / [p. 193]
 The .vij. c°. is of lepre & of domys of lepre / [p. 196]
 The .viij. c°. is of smelnes of membris & leene / [p. 199]

The .iiij. bok þe ij doctrinis, þat is of enpostyms, & conteyneþ 20 .xviij. chapitris.

- The .i. c°. is of generacioun of humours and her kyndis / [p. 201]
 The .ij. c°. is of enpostyms & of sermons þerof / [p. 204]
 The .iiij. c°. is of enpostyms in þe heed, & of gaderynge in þe 24 hedis of children / [p. 214]
 The .iiij. c°. is of enpostyms of rotis of þe eeris [p. 216]
 The .v. c°. is of enpostyms of þe necke, and of þe þrote / [p. 217]
 The .vj. c°. is of enpostym subtilico / [p. 222] 28
 The .vij. c°. is of enpostym of þe helpers aboute þe spondilia / [p. 223]
 The .viij. c°. folowip of þe same tofore / [p. 224]
 The .ix. c°. of enpostym appering in þe mouþ of þe stomak / 32 [p. 226]
 The .x. c°. is of an enpostym in i[n]guine .i.¹ grindis. [p. 226]
 The .xj. c°. is of enpostyme of þe haunche & ¶ of þe core / [p. 227] 36
 The .xij. c°. is of enpostym of þe 3erde & ballok / [p. 228]
 [leaf 271, bk.] The .xiiij. c°. is of scrophulis & glandulis / [p. 229]

- The .xiiij. c°. is of þe cure of þe cancre non vlcerat / [p. 231]
 The .xv. c°. is of Boos / [p. 232]
 The .xvj. c°. is of akyng^t of ioynctis. [p. 233]
 4 The .xviij. c°. is of akyng^e of haunchis / [p. 238]
 The .xviij. c°. is of dieting^t of men þat^t han ache in ioynctis / [p. 240]
 The .iiij. boke and the .iiij. doctrin, and conteyneþ xix.
 8 chapitris //
 The .i. c°. is of egrenes of y3en / [p. 240]
 The .ii. c°. is of egrenes of eeris / [p. 254]
 The .iiij. is of dise of þe nose / [p. 258]
 12 The .iiij. c°. is of dise of þe mouþ / [p. 260]
 The .v. c°. is of dise of þe brest^t, and off^t swellyng^t and greetnes /
¹and coagulation off^t milke.¹ [p. 265]
 The .vj. c°. is of ruptorie of þe siphac, and releuyng^e a3en / [p. 268]
 16 The .vij. c°. is of hernia of þe ballokis / [p. 269]
 The .viij. c°. is of þe stoon in þe bladdre / [p. 273]
 The .ix. c°. is of an yuel þat^t is clepid *hermofrodito*²
 20 The .x. c°. is of watri dropesies. [p. 281]
 The .xj. c°. is of cancer & vlcers in þe 3erde / [p. 287]
 The .xij. c°. is of emoroidis & fistula in ano. [p. 289]
 The .xiiij. c°. is of cancrene & mormals / [p. 293]
 24 The .xiiij. c°. is of vngribus and stykyng^e in handis and feet. [leaf 272]
 ¶ Elephancia / [p. 295]
 The .xv. c°. is of wertis in handis & feet / [p. 296]
 The .xvj. c°. is of blood letyng^t / [p. 298]
 28 The .xviij. is of kutting^t & bleding^t, & water lechis [p. 303]
 The .xviij. is of cauterie large & of streite / [p. 305]
 The .iiij. book schal be algebra, & conteyneþ ij. doctrines /
 The firste doctrine of þe .iiij. book conteyneþ .viij. chapitris //
 32 The .i. c°. is of brekyng^t of boonis, or o. word ¶ for al / [p. 312]
 The .ij. c°. is of breking^t of þe face / [p. 314]
 The .iiij. c°. is of brekyng^t of þe forkid boon of þe brest / [p. 316]
 36 The .iiij. c°. is of brekyng^t of boonys off^t þe spaudis // [p. 317]
 The .v. c°. is of brekyng^e of þe adiutorie / [p. 318]

¹—¹ added in different hand.

² This chapter is omitted; see note 8 on p. 281.

The .vj. c°. is of brekyng^t of boonys þat is clepid coxe // [p. 320]

The .vii. c°. is of brusing^t or brekyng^t of tendir boonys wiþ þe
.viij. chapitre / [p. 321 & 322]

The secunde doctrine of þe fourþe book, & conteyneþ .v. 4
chapitris //

[leaf 272, bk.] The first^t c°. is of failyng^t of place, word for al /

The .ij. c°. is of failyng^t of place of þe chekeboon /

Tho .iiij. c°. is of lacking^t of place of þe spaude /¹ 8

The .iiij. c°. is of goyng^t out of þe ioynct^t of þe schuldre / [p. 323]

The .v. c°. is of þe coniunccioun of þe goyng^t out of þe haunche /
[p. 326]

The antidotarie is þe .v. book, and conteyneþ seuene 12
chapitris //

The .i. c°. is of repercussiuis & þe maner þerof / [p. 328]

The .ij. c°. is of þe maner of resolutif^t medicins / [p. 333]

The .iiij. c°. is of þe .iiij. maturatiuis & þe maner þerof / [p. 336] 16

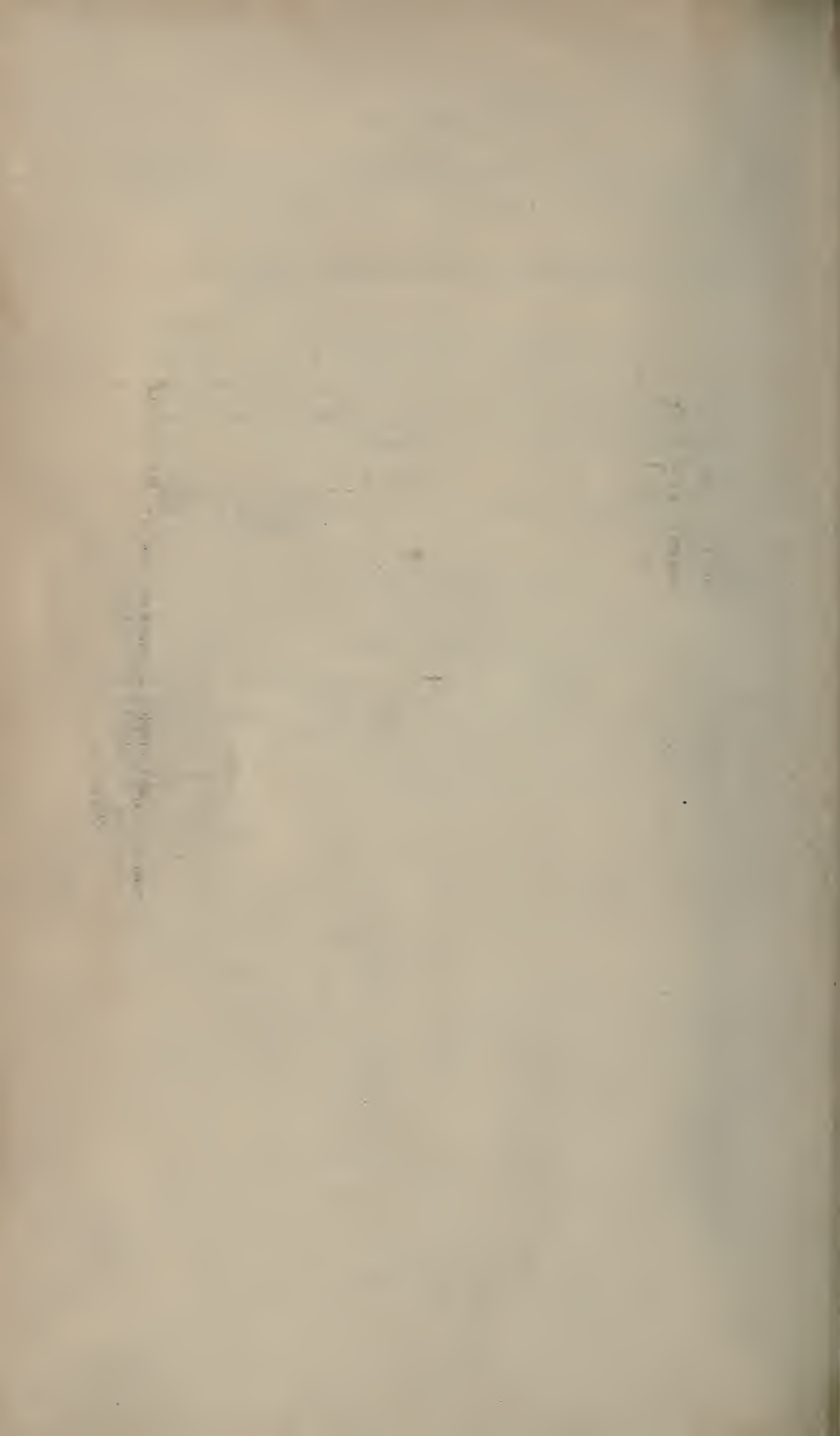
The .iiij. c°. is of mundificatiuis & þe maner þerof // [p. 339]

The .v. c°. is of regeneratiuis & consolidatiuis // [p. 342]

The .vj. c°. is of corrosiuis & cauterisatiuis // [p. 349]

The .viij. c°. is of mollificatiuis or softenyng^t medicyns // [p. 353] 20

¹ These three chapters are left out.



PR Early English Text
1119 Society
A2 [Publications]
no.102 Original series

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH

